

DEPARTAMENTO DE FILOLOGÍA INGLESA (BOSTON
UNIVERSITY)

AN ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH DISCOURSE MARKERS OF
REFORMULATION

M^a. MILAGROS DEL SAZ RUBIO

UNIVERSITAT DE VALENCIA
Servei de Publicacions
2003

Aquesta Tesi Doctoral va ser presentada a València el dia 11 de Març de 2003 davant un tribunal format per:

- Dra. D^a. Angela Downing
- Dr. D. Barry Pennock Speck
- Dr. D. Salvador Pons Bordería
- Dr. D. Vicente López Folgado
- Dr. D. Michael McCarthy

Va ser dirigida per:

Prof. Dr. D. Bruce Fraser i Dra. D^a. Antonia Sánchez

©Copyright: Servei de Publicacions
M^a. Milagros Del Saz Rubio

Depòsit legal:

I.S.B.N.:84-370-5755-8

Edita: Universitat de València
Servei de Publicacions
C/ Artes Gráficas, 13 bajo
46010 València
Spain
Telèfon: 963864115

UNIVERSITAT DE VALÈNCIA

Facultat de Filologia

Departament de Filologia Anglesa i Alemanya

**AN ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH DISCOURSE
MARKERS OF REFORMULATION**

TESIS DOCTORAL

Presentada por:

M^a Milagros del Saz Rubio

Dirigida por:

Dr. Antonia Sánchez Macarro and

Dr. Bruce Fraser

Valencia, 2002

To the memory of Milagros and Lucía

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I would like to express my gratitude to all the people who have directly or indirectly, but always constantly, given me support during the task of writing my doctoral dissertation. First and foremost, I would like to thank my supervisors, Dr. Antonia Sánchez Macarro and Dr. Bruce Fraser, for their help and continuous support, but most importantly for believing in me and in my work.

I am especially indebted to professor Bruce Fraser for his warm welcome during my first stay at Boston University, and for his kindness and helpful guidance during my later visits. His critical comments have been always an invaluable stimulus. Working with him has been an enormous pleasure and an enriching experience. For his patience and understanding, no words can express my gratitude. Likewise, I thank Dr. Antonia Sánchez Macarro for without her I would not have had the opportunity to do research in English. Also I would like to thank her for having confidence in me and my work and for her continuous encouragement and friendship, as well as for her helpful advice on both professional and personal matters during all the years we have known each other. To them both I am deeply indebted.

I would also like to thank my colleagues and friends from the Department of English Philology, especially, Dr. Carmina Gregori Signes, Dr. Barry Pennock Speck, Dr. Paul S. Derrick, Dr. Marta Inigo Ros and Dr. M^a Lluïsa Gea. They have all proofread the preliminary drafts of this dissertation, not to mention the help they gave me filling out numerous questionnaires. Their critical comments on many parts of this dissertation and, above all, their friendship have been decisive during all the stages of my doctoral thesis. I'm especially grateful to Dr. Marta Inigo Ros for her translations into French

and her critical comments on the different chapters of this dissertation. To Dr. Salvador Pons I am indebted for his insights into many theoretical aspects of this dissertation and for his continuous support. I am also extremely grateful to my friends Dr. Elena Ortells, Debra Westall, and my colleagues from the department, Miguel Fuster, Juan José Calvo, Rosana Dolón, Tina Suau, Suzan Young and M^a del Mar Viaño, who were always there when I needed them.

I am extremely grateful to my friends Anne, Karin, Brian, John, Trish and Luann, from the other side of the ocean, for allowing me to stay with them and for offering me their love and kindness during my stays in Boston, even though at first they hardly knew me. Thanks to their hospitality and friendship my visits to the United States were a real pleasure and made my research more enjoyable. Staying with them was an unforgettable experience and the beginning of a great friendship. I also want to thank Julie and Reneé who, even at a distance, were always willing to lend a helping hand. The friends I have met through them have become a priceless gift. Also, my thanks to Mike, Debbie, Ash, Michael, Jason, Eric and all the Garcias who have always looked after me and have made me feel at home. To them, all my love and sincere thanks.

Finally, my greatest thanks must go to my family, my parents, Pedro and Milagros, my sister Marta, my dear friend Silvia, and above all to my boyfriend, Miguel Ángel for their encouragement during the years of my doctoral research. Also because they have been with me during the good and bad times I have gone through during the writing of this dissertation and never failed to offer me their love and understanding.

INDEX.....	pages
1.INTRODUCTION.....	3
2. REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE.....	19
2.1. English studies on Discourse Markers.....	21
2.1.1. Pre-1985 Descriptive contributions to the notion of DMs.....	21
2.1.1.1. Halliday and Hasan (1976).....	21
2.1.1.2. Labov and Fanshel (1977) and Levinson (1983).....	26
2.1.1.3. Quirk et al. (1972, 1985).....	27
2.1.2. Theoretical contributions from a Discourse/Coherence approach.....	37
2.1.2.1. Deborah Schiffrin (1987).....	38
2.1.2.2. Gisela Redeker (1990, 1991).....	49
2.1.2.3. Knott and Dale (1994), Knott and Mellish (1996), Knott and Sanders (1998).....	53
2.1.3. Theoretical contributions from a Pragmatic approach.....	66
2.1.3.1. Bruce Fraser.....	67
A) What do DMs relate?.....	68
B) What are not DMs?.....	70
C) What is the grammatical status of DMs?.....	72
D) What is the meaning of DMs?.....	72
E) What are the main classes of DMs?.....	73
2.1.3.2. Eve Sweetser (1990).....	74
2.1.4. Theoretical contributions from a Relevance-Theory approach.....	77
2.1.4.1. A brief sketch of Relevance Theory.....	78
2.1.4.2. Blakemore on DCs (1987, 1988, 1989a, 1989b, 1992, 1996, 1997).....	85
2.1.4.3. Blakemore's account of DMs of RF (1993, 1994, 1996).....	89

2.1.4.4. Blakemore and rationale for reformulating	94
2.2. French studies on Discourse Markers of Reformulation	97
2.2.1. The notion of Reformulation: origins	97
2.2.2. French researchers on the notion of Reformulation	98
2.2.2.1. The Geneve School	98
2.2.2.2. Gülich and Kotschi (1983)	99
2.2.2.3. Roulet (1987)	109
2.2.2.4. Adam and Revaz (1989)	113
2.2.2.5. Rossari (1990, 1994)	118
2.2.2.6. Charolles and Coltier (1986)	126
2.2.2.7. Murat and Cartier-Bresson (1987)	128
2.2.2.8. Fløttum (1994)	129
2.3. Spanish studies on Discourse Markers of Reformulation	131
2.3.1. Theoretical approaches to DMs and DMs of RF	132
2.3.1.1. Portoles and Zorraquino on DMs	132
2.3.1.2. Pons' approach to Connectives	139
2.3.1.3. Briz on Pragmatic connectors (1993a, 1993b, 1995, 1998)	141
2.3.2. Descriptive research on DMs of RF	145
2.3.2.1. Fuentes (1987, 1993)	146
2.3.2.2. Cortés on <i>o sea</i> (1991)	148
2.3.2.3. López (1990)	151
2.3.2.4. Casado (1991)	151
2.3.2.5. Bach (1996, 1999)	154
2.3.2.6. Vázquez (1994-5)	161
2.3.2.7. Schwenter on <i>o sea</i> (1996)	167
3. ENGLISH DISCOURSE MARKERS of REFORMULATION	175
3.1. The term "Discourse Marker"	175
3.1.1. What is a "Discourse Marker"?	177
3.1.2. Defining properties of Discourse Markers	178

3.1.2.1. Connectivity	178
3.1.2.2. Non-truth conditionality	184
3.1.3. Non-defining properties of Discourse Markers	185
3.1.3.1. Type of meaning encoded by Discourse Markers	186
3.1.3.2. Multi-categoriality	191
3.1.3.3. Weak clause association	194
3.1.3.4. Sentence position	196
3.1.3.5. Optionality of DMs	197
3.1.3.6. Other properties	199
3.1.4. Some notes on the approaches to Discourse Markers	201
3.1.5. Domain of use of Discourse Markers	201
3.1.6. Naturally occurring Classes of Discourse Markers	207
3.1.7. Concluding remarks	209
3.2. English Discourse Markers of Reformulation	210
3.2.1. What is a reformulation?	211
3.2.2. What are DMs of RF?	211
3.2.3. A tentative list of DMs of RF	212
3.2.4. Defining properties of DMs of RF	213
3.2.5. Non-Defining properties of DMs of RF	215
3.2.5.1. Type of meaning encoded by DMs of RF	216
3.2.5.2. Multi-categoriality	221
3.2.5.3. Initiality	222
3.2.5.4. Weak clause association	223
3.2.5.5. Optionality of DMs of RF	223
3.2.5.6. Number of speakers	227
3.2.6. Naturally occurring subclasses of Fraser's Elaborative DMs	231
3.2.7. Subclasses of Discourse Markers of Reformulation	233
3.2.7.1. Explanation Group	234
3.2.7.2. Rectification Group	237
3.2.7.3. Conclusion Group	238

3.2.7.4. Summary Group	239
3.2.8. Discourse Markers s of Reformulation object of the present analysis	240
4. RESEARCH METHODOLOGY	245
4.1. The process of selection of a group of English DMs of RF	245
4.1.1. The Data for the Detailed Analysis	247
4.1.2. The process of Data Collection	248
4.2. Procedure of analysis.....	249
4.2.1. The Descriptive Analysis	249
4.2.2. The Relationship between EDMs of RF	252
5. ANALYSIS AND RESULTS	257
5.1. Explanation group	259
5.1.1. Clarification sub-group.....	259
5.1.1.1. <i>That is to say</i>	259
5.1.1.1.1. Syntactic properties	259
5.1.1.1.2. Pragmatic functions	261
5.1.1.1.3. Domain of use of the reformulator	292
5.1.1.2. <i>In other words</i>	293
5.1.1.2.1. Syntactic properties	294
5.1.1.2.2. Pragmatic functions	295
5.1.1.2.3. Domain of use of the reformulator	323
5.1.1.3. From simple to more technical words	324
5.1.1.3.1. Explanatory Restatement signalling Simplicity	324
5.1.1.3.2. Explanatory Restatement signaling Complexity	328
5.1.1.3.3. Domain of use of the reformulator	329
5.1.2. Identification sub-group	330
5.1.2.1. <i>Viz.</i>	332
5.1.2.1.1. Syntactic properties	332
5.1.2.1.2. Pragmatic functions	333
5.1.2.2. <i>Namely</i>	341

5.1.2.2.1. Syntactic properties	341
5.1.2.2.2. Pragmatic functions	342
5.1.2.2.3. Domain of use of the reformulators: <i>Viz.</i> and <i>Namely</i>	349
5.1.3. Relationships between discourse markers of Explanation	349
5.1.3.1. <i>That is to say</i> and reformulators from other groups	350
5.1.3.2. <i>In other words</i> and reformulators from other groups	375
5.1.3.3. Reformulators of Identification	381
5.1.3.3. Reformulators of Identification and Illustration.....	381
5.2. Rectification group	386
5.2.1. Neutral rectification: <i>Or rather</i>	387
5.2.1.1. Syntactic properties	387
5.2.1.2. Pragmatic functions	389
5.2.1.3. Domain of use.....	400
5.2.2. Rectification and fine-tuning: <i>(Or) More precisely, (Or) more accurately</i> 402	
5.2.2.1. Syntactic properties	403
5.2.2.2. Pragmatic functions: <i>(Or) More accurately, (Or) more precisely</i>	406
5.2.2.3. Domain of use of the reformulator	420
5.2.3. Rectification and Improvement: <i>(Or) better still, (Or) better yet</i>	421
5.2.3.1. Syntactic properties	421
5.3.3.2. Pragmatic functions	425
5.3.3.3. Domain of use of the reformulator	437
5.2.4. Relationships between discourse markers of Rectification	438
5.2.4.1. <i>Or rather and (Or) better still-yet</i>	439
5.2.4.2. <i>Or rather and (Or) more precisely-(Or) more accurately</i>	442
5.2.4.3. <i>(Or) more precisely-(Or) more accurately and (Or) better still-yet</i>	446
5.2.4.4. <i>Or rather and That is to say-In other words</i>	447
6. CONCLUSIONS	451
6.1. The Explanation Group	452
6.2. The Rectification group	469

7. REFERENCES	477
8. APPENDICES	495
8.1. Appendix I	501
8.1.1. Discourse Markers of Explanation	501
8.1.1.1. <i>That is to say</i>	505
8.1.1.2. <i>In other words</i>	509
8.1.1.3. <i>In plainer-more technical words</i>	516
8.1.1.4. <i>Namely and Viz</i>	517
8.1.2. Discourse Markers of Rectification.....	524
8.1.2.1. <i>Or rather</i>	524
8.1.2.2. <i>(Or) more precisely-(or) more accurately</i>	528
8.1.2.3. <i>(Or) better still-yet</i>	531
8.2 Appendix II.....	535

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

DMs: DISCOURSE MARKERS

DMs of RF: DISCOURSE MARKERS OF REFORMULATION

EDMs of RF: ENGLISH DISCOURSE MARKERS OF
REFORMULATION

DCs: DISCOURSE CONNECTIVES

SmRF: SEMANTIC REFORMULATION

InRF: INFERENTIAL REFORMULATION

I: INITIAL POSITION

M: MEDIAL POSITION

F: FINAL POSITION

W: WRITTEN REGISTER

SP: SPOKEN REGISTER

P: PARTIAL CASES OF REFORMULATION

T: TOTAL CASES OF REFORMULATION

D: DECLARATIVE TYPE SENTENCE

IN: INTERROGATIVE TYPE SENTENCE

IM: IMPERATIVE TYPE SENTENCE

1. INTRODUCTION

The present dissertation deals with the notion of reformulation and, more specifically, with a group of lexical units by means of which the activity of reformulation is codified and explicitly signaled in the language. These lexical units will be referred to as **DISCOURSE MARKERS of REFORMULATION** or **REFORMULATORS** throughout the present study.

Since the 1970s, the interest in the study of a group of lexical units called **DISCOURSE MARKERS** has undeniably been on the rise and has constantly expanded throughout the 1980s and 1990s, a fact that has brought to light many illuminating features of the nature of these lexical units. This interest has also led to a growing industry that produces scores of theoretical and descriptive articles on Discourse Markers every year and in different languages all over the world. In fact, studies on Discourse Markers are emerging as a new and very distinct discipline. Interest in the issue of markers and lexical units related to them has grown not only in pragmatics and discourse analysis research, but also in other fields such as sociolinguistics or second language acquisition.

Likewise, due to their versatility, Discourse Markers have been adopted as tools for testing and confirming hypotheses in new frameworks of analysis. Such is the case of the Theory of Language Argumentation (Anscombe and Ducrot 1983), Relevance Theory (Sperber and Wilson 1986/1995), and approaches from Text Linguistics (Van

Dijk 1977, Halliday and Hasan 1976) or Discourse Analysis (Sinclair and Coulthard 1975, Stubbs 1983, Schiffrin 1987, McCarthy 1993), to mention a few. All this has certainly made these lexical units a much more attractive area of study for researchers.

The present work emerges as a tentative contribution to the field of Discourse Markers, and in particular, to the area of reformulation and the markers that help display this function in English. Discourse Markers of Reformulation have been widely surveyed in languages other than English, especially in French, where the notion of reformulation originated (cf. Antos 1982, Gülich and Kotschi 1983, Roulet 1987, Adam and Revaz 1989, and Charolles and Coltier 1986), as well as other languages where it has received great attention, such as Italian (Rossari 1990, 1994) and Spanish (Fuentes 1987, 1993, Casado 1991, Pons 2000, 2001, Briz 1993, 1995, 1998, Portolés and Zorraquino 1999, to name a few). This encouraged me to investigate the phenomenon of reformulation in English.

In comparison with these languages, no systematic approach has been carried out in English (at least to my knowledge), no concerted effort has been made to define what Discourse Markers of Reformulation are, no attempt has been made to elaborate a taxonomy of the lexical units that could be included under the category of Discourse Markers; the only exceptions are a few insightful comments on these units in some of the earliest contemporary grammars of the English language (cf. Greenbaum 1969, Quirk et al. 1985) or in some later ones (Downing and Locke 1992), as well as in semantic classifications of lexical units that serve to bind sentences together and to establish coherence and cohesion (cf. Halliday and Hasan 1976, van Dijk 1977, Halliday 1985, Mann and Thompson 1987, Sanders et al. 1993, *inter alia*).

Notwithstanding, researchers are not unaware of the lack of studies on the topic of reformulation in English and some have already voiced the need to cover this area of research in English. Along these lines, Pons (2001: 233) points out that although English can be considered by far the most thoroughly described language with regard to Discourse Markers, almost nothing is known of its set of reformulators¹.

Regardless of the different frameworks of analysis from which the notion of reformulation may be tackled, the reasons that motivate the activity of reformulation in any language seem to sit well with the interactive nature of communication itself. Speakers throughout the world have the ability to communicate not only about the code they are using, but also about the communication process in which they might be engaged at a certain time. Likewise, speakers are prone to assess the appropriateness of their own contributions or those of other interlocutors during their communicative exchanges, and also to adjust their interventions, as well as to correct or modify different aspects of their talk, if they feel that the direction the interaction is taking is not the one previously envisaged.

Along these lines, speakers who opt to reformulate their first contribution and go through the process of producing a second reformulation normally expect to be clearer in what they are aiming to convey with the help of a new formulation, and thus, to make their contribution more appropriate and more attuned to the interactional goals of the exchange in which they participate. In other words, it could be said that the act of reformulating is mainly oriented towards the achievement of what some authors have labeled *interactive completeness* (Gülich and Kotschi 1983, Roulet 1987 and Rossari 1990, 1994). That is to say, at some point in the conversational exchange the speaker

¹ I owe this observation to Salvador Pons, who made me aware of the existing lack of studies on the area of reformulation in English and encouraged me to delve into the notion of English reformulators.

decides that his/her first formulation does not properly convey his/her communicative intentions, and accordingly, a new formulation or reformulation is triggered. In this account, reformulations act as a sort of remedial work that helps the speaker to achieve his/her communicative goals in the negotiation of discourse and to overcome any communicative problems that may be encountered. The need to be more adequate in what one is communicating triggers the activity of reformulation in order to overcome deficiencies found in the process of communication, such as cases in which the first formulation may be out of place, or incoherent, or might not successfully reflect the speaker's communicative intentions.

In all these cases reformulations are a metalinguistic device for the prevention, signaling, or even solving of problems of misunderstanding. In this light, the activity of reformulation can also be seen as an explicit indication of reflexive talk (Lyons 1977, Archakis 2001, Rossari 1990, 1994); that is to say, as a device by means of which conversational partners “refer to, specify, clarify, identify, define, or modify aspects of their talk” (Archakis 2001: 1250).

Approaches to the notion of reformulation coming from rather different frameworks bring about differences with regard to the nature and the activity of reformulations. Besides the traditional approaches to reformulation already sketched above, Blakemore (1994, 1996), among other authors, states that the need to reformulate may arise as a result of different needs, namely, stylistic choices that writers may adopt in an attempt to create, for example, poetic or even humorous effects (Culpeper 1994). Likewise, other studies have signaled the importance of social factors, such as power and social status, as a determining factor for the effecting of a reformulation (cf. Thomas 1984 on power and social distance and reformulations).

As a linguistic phenomenon, reformulations are best recognized by means of a series of *linguistic markers* that explicitly signal the triggering of a reformulation, or indicate that a new formulation of (a) previous intervention(s) is on the way. These lexical units, which help to explicitly display that a reformulation is taking place, constitute the object of study of the present work. It would seem logical to think that studies on the nature of reformulations and on the reasons why speakers would reformulate should correlate with the study of the lexical features that explicate the existence of a reformulation. However, the area of reformulation and of English reformulators is still an uncharted and unexplored territory. Thus, I have set out the following main objectives, which constitute the point of departure for this empirical piece of research:

Objective 1: to provide an adequate definition of the notion of **REFORMULATION** in the English speaking-world that will allow me to lay the foundations for the detailed study of a group of lexical units that display a reformulative function in English.

Objective 2: to elaborate a justified taxonomy of English Discourse Markers of Reformulation along with their classification into different groups and sub-groups on the bases of the type of reformulation effected on the previous discourse segment or S1.

Objective 3: to exhaustively analyze two groups of English reformulators, namely, the **EXPLANATION** group and the **RECTIFICATION** group, and account for the semantic relationships holding among the units that comprise them, as well as for the relationships established between members from the same and/or different categories.

In order to approach the study of English reformulators, work was carried out in different stages. First of all, a sound definition of the activity of reformulation in English was provided as a starting point for my analysis of a group of English reformulators. Thus, the notion of reformulation entertained throughout this piece of research will be as follows: “A reformulation is a **RECHARACTERIZATION** of the

message conveyed by the whole previous discourse segment S1, or one of its constituents”.

The next step entailed the confirmation of a group of tentative lexical units proposed under the label of reformulators as belonging to the broader category of Discourse Markers. To this end, I drew on Fraser’s (1999, 2002) classification of markers and the defining and non-defining properties listed by this author for Discourse Markers in general. The properties of the set of reformulators under analysis were compared with those of Discourse Markers in general to see if they could be included as a sub-group that would fit into the defined category and display the properties identified for them.

The comparison ascertained that the potential taxonomy of reformulators qualifies them as Discourse Markers, inasmuch as they display the defining properties crucial for the status of marker, namely, that of **CONNECTIVITY** and **NON-TRUTH CONDITIONALITY**.

The next step was to fit this new class of English Discourse Markers of Reformulation within already-existing frameworks of analysis for these units. In this respect, I resorted to Fraser’s (2002) classification of Discourse Markers into four main categories, namely, *Additive*, *Contrastive*, *Inferential-Implicative* and *Elaborative* Discourse Markers. This framework facilitated the task to a great extent. The peculiar characteristics exhibited by English Discourse Markers of Reformulation make them a naturally occurring class within the **ELABORATIVE** group. Discourse Markers of Elaboration are best characterized in that they extend some aspect of the first discourse segment or S1 in one of the following ways: the new formulation or S2 parallels, refines, or augments the content of S1 or some aspect of it. Moreover, within this class

of Discourse Markers, I opted to differentiate between two main categories, viz., that of AUGMENTIVE and that of REFORMULATIVE Discourse Markers or reformulators².

Thus, the present dissertation approaches the description of English reformulators as a distinct sub-class within the category of ELABORATION (Fraser 2002)³. Accordingly, I define Discourse Markers of Reformulation as a sub-group of lexical units within the wider class of Elaborative DMs that carry out recharacterization of the message conveyed by the whole previous discourse segment S1, or one of its constituents.

English reformulators give rise to four different sub-groups, depending on whether the recharacterization renders a reformulated segment S2 in the form of a(n):

1. EXPLANATION,
2. RECTIFICATION,
3. CONCLUSION and/or
4. SUMMARY of the S1.

Further partitioning has been carried out within these four main sub-classes. Reformulators have been further subdivided on the basis of their sharing a close semantic meaning and carrying out a similar type of reformulation. Thus, within the global label of Explanation, for example, I have opted to group reformulators under the labels that best illustrate the main functions displayed by these markers, namely those of *Clarification*, *Identification* and *Illustration*. Likewise, the sub-class of Rectification encompasses markers of *Neutral Rectification*, *Rectification and Fine-tuning*, and *Rectification and Improvement*.

² I am greatly indebted to Professor Fraser for this observation.

³ Downing and Locke (1992) also use the label of *Elaboration* as one of the logico-semantic relationships holding between clauses. Accordingly, some of the conjuncts that make this relationship of Elaboration explicit correspond to some of the reformulators under scrutiny in the present work.

Once Discourse Markers of Reformulation were defined, their properties ascertained and their sub-classes outlined, the groups of Explanation (*that is to say, in other words, in simpler terms, in more technical terms, viz., namely, for example and for instance*) and Rectification (*or rather, [or] more precisely-accurately, [or] better still-yet*) were analyzed in detail and their **SYNTACTIC, DISTRIBUTIONAL PROPERTIES, PRAGMATIC FUNCTIONS** and **DOMAIN OF USAGE** identified. With the assessment of all these properties it was my aim to delimit the **ENVIRONMENTS OF USE** of reformulators and to obtain a principled description of them, both individually and as a group.

Thus, I first looked into the combination of the reformulators under investigation with the declarative, interrogative or imperative type sentences, as well as combination with Discourse Markers from other paradigms, in particular, with *and, or, so, but* and *then*. Their distributional properties, namely, their occurrence in initial, medial or final position within the sequence S1.DM.S2 were also assessed and noted down. The results of the syntactic and distributional properties of the reformulators analyzed are presented and thoroughly illustrated in Appendix I.

Next, I accounted for the pragmatic functions of each reformulator, obtained after observation of a selection of occurrences from the British National Corpus.

At a later stage, I focused on the domain of use where the reformulators selected could operate, namely, the **CONTENT** or propositional, the **SPEECH-ACT** and the **EPISTEMIC** domains of use. The ability to function in at least one of the different domains proposed proved of crucial importance in order to later differentiate environments of use proper to some reformulators and thus exclusive of their counterparts within the same and/or different groups, especially in cases where the pragmatic functions appeared to be closely related at first sight, but were in fact rather

divergent, as could be the case of markers such as *(or) more precisely* and its counterpart *(or) more accurately*. The different domains of use for each reformulator under investigation are provided and incorporated as part of the analysis in chapter five when this tool of analysis has proved determinant in the identification of the environments of use of certain reformulators.

Finally, reformulators of Explanation and Rectification were submitted to a test of **SEMANTIC SUBSTITUTABILITY** where replacement of one marker, *A*, for another, *B*, that did not occur in *A*'s original environment, was accounted for. The results obtained from this test allowed me to organize the taxonomy of English Discourse Markers of Explanation and Rectification into a hierarchy of **HYPERNYMS**, **HYPONYMS**, **EXCLUSIVE USES** and **SYNONYMS**. In this respect, my aim was to help to broaden our knowledge of how these lexical units behave in English and to come up with a clear picture of two groups of English reformulators.

Thus, within the group of Explanation, the relationship between the reformulator *that is to say* and members from the same group was ascertained, and the way it relates to its counterparts *in other words*, *namely-viz.* and *for example-for instance* examined. Likewise, within the group of Rectification, *or rather* is analyzed in relation with markers from the other sub-classes such as *(or) better still-yet*, and *(or) more precisely-accurately*. Likewise, the relationship between the markers from these latter groups was also ascertained.

What remains in this introduction consists of an outline of the structure of this dissertation, which has been organized in eight chapters. I will describe each of these chapters and attempt to show how they fit logically into the organization of the dissertation. This dissertation follows the traditional methodology of empirical research

in which a corpus is chosen and analyzed using the method and approach designed by the researcher after the study and revision of the pertinent literature.

The objective of chapter two is twofold: first, it provides a detailed review of the most outstanding theoretical and descriptive literature on the topic of English Discourse Markers in general; and second, it deals with the notion of reformulation and reformulators in languages such as French and Spanish. Thus, the organization of chapter two is evenly distributed into three main blocks of contributions that go from the far more general notion of Discourse Markers to the more specific one of Discourse Markers of Reformulation, as follows:

- (i) English studies on Discourse Markers
- (ii) French studies on Discourse Markers of Reformulation
- (iii) Spanish studies on Discourse Markers of Reformulation

The first block of contributions focuses on the English studies on Discourse Markers to assess the treatment these units have been given in English from four different perspectives or approaches of analysis. First of all, I examine the Pre-1985 Descriptive contributions to Discourse Markers, where these units are assessed in the light of the most modern grammars in English linguistics, namely, the work of Halliday and Hasan (1976), Quirk et al. (1985), together with Lavob and Fanshel (1977) and Levinson (1983). These latter, though not being grammarians, count amongst the first authors to tackle the notion of discourse markers. In the light of these frameworks, Discourse Markers or rather CONJUNCTS, as they are labeled, are regarded as semantic categories that contribute to the creation of coherence in texts. Although these authors do not concern themselves with the study of markers of reformulation *per se*, their classification of conjuncts incorporates some of the units that are the object of analysis in the present work.

Next, I focus on Post-1985 Theoretical Contributions from a discourse/coherence approach within the coherence/cohesion framework, where these units are considered as devices that help create and achieve cohesion in a text. Accordingly, I review the work of Schiffrin (1987), Gisela Redeker (1990, 1991), Knott (1996, 2001), Knott and Dale (1994) and Knott and Sanders (1998).

A third approach is that of Theoretical Contributions from a Pragmatic point of view. In this respect, I draw on Fraser's work and classification of Discourse Markers, which is taken as an organizing principle for my definition and classification of English Discourse Markers of Reformulation in chapter three. Alongside Fraser's approach to Discourse Markers, I also review Sweetser's (1990) work, which although not concerned with markers *per se*, offers an interesting approach to meaning and accounts in a unified fashion for three diverse areas of lexicon: polysemy, lexical semantic change and pragmatic ambiguity.

Finally, the last group of contributions deals with Blakemore's (1987, 1988, 1989, 1992, 1993, 1994, 1996) approach to what she labels *Discourse Connectives* from a Relevance-theoretical point of view.

The second block of contributions presented reviews work by French authors in the light of their contributions to the notion of reformulation. In this light, I delve into the notion of reformulation and its origins, in order to later look at the works of Gülich and Kotschi (1983) and the definition of reformulation and paraphrastic reformulation. Likewise, the work of Roulet (1987) and his ground-breaking distinction between **PARAPHRASTIC** and **NON-PARAPHRASTIC REFORMULATION** is assessed, along with his proposal for a classification of reformulators. At a later stage, I also revise the contrastive work of Rossari (1990, 1994) and some other authors, whose work focuses

on specific Discourse Markers of Reformulation, such as Charolles and Coltier (1986), Murat and Cartier Bresson (1987) and Fløttum (1994).

The last block of contributions is devoted to the most significant Spanish studies of reformulators, along with the existing classifications of these units. Of special relevance is Portolés and Zorraquino's (1999) recent classification of Spanish Discourse Markers. Likewise, I review the contributions of several authors to the development of the notion of reformulation. Among them, Pons (1999, 2000), Briz, (1993a, 1993b, 1995, 1998) Fuentes (1987, 1993), Cortés (1991), López (1990), Casado (1991, 1993), Bach (1996, 1999, 2001), Veiga (1994-5) and Schwenter (1996) stand out.

Chapter three constitutes a bridge between the review of the literature and the analysis of the corpus. This chapter is divided into two parts. First of all, I provide a definition of Discourse Markers in general, drawing on Fraser's (2002) latest contributions to the topic. Several sub-sections are devoted to outlining the defining and non-defining characteristics of these lexical units, of which the Discourse Markers of Reformulation are a sub-group. With this introductory chapter I aim to shed further light on the somewhat fuzzy notion of Discourse Markers in order to offer a clear and unified definition of the phenomenon before attempting a description of a sub-group of English reformulators.

In the second part of chapter three, I proceed to define the notion of reformulation in English and present a tentative taxonomy of the lexical units that would qualify as Discourse Markers of Reformulation. Finally, I delve into the defining and non-defining properties of reformulators in the light of the properties assigned to the global category of Discourse Markers. Next, I provide a definition of reformulators that constitutes a point of departure for a classification and grouping of the different lexical units that

form the group of reformulators in English. This definition should help to compensate for the existing dearth of studies in English linguistics, where the notion of reformulation has not been systematically tackled before. Likewise, I provide a tentative taxonomy of reformulators into four main groups, namely, Explanation, Rectification, Conclusion, and Summary Discourse markers. Due to time and space limitations I present a detailed analysis of the Explanation and Rectification groups of reformulators only.

Chapter four is devoted to the description of the methodology of analysis. The first section describes the research objectives underlying this dissertation, followed by a description of the corpus selected. The next section is dedicated to the description of the procedure followed in the individual analysis of each reformulator from the groups of Explanation and Rectification.

In chapter five I present a detailed analysis of the two groups of reformulators. Chapter five is divided into two distinct parts. In the first part, I assess the syntactic properties, pragmatic functions and domain of use of the Explanation and Rectification reformulators selected for analysis and illustrate them after observance of occurrences from the British National Corpus. In the second part, I assess the relationships between members from the same and/or different groups by means of the application of the semantic substitutability test.

In chapter six, the significance of the present research is assessed in the light of the results obtained from the analysis carried out. I also point out further areas of analysis that could be investigated in order to complete our knowledge of the reformulative space and of the two other groups of reformulators, namely, Reformulators of Conclusion and Summary.

Finally, chapter seven includes the references employed in the process of writing the present dissertation. In this chapter I have included both the works cited in this study as well as other references that have inspired me in the process of elaboration of the review of the literature, although they have not been explicitly cited in it.

Chapter eight comprises Appendices I and II, which are used as an aid to the analysis of occurrences within the corpus and the results obtained from it. Appendix I presents a detailed description of the syntactic and distributional properties of the reformulators from the two groups under investigation. Finally, Appendix II is made up of the occurrences surveyed in the analysis of each of the reformulators under investigation, which constitute the main source of information. Some 100 occurrences of each English reformulator analyzed are provided from the random selections carried out within the BNC. Appendix II is intended as a complement to Appendix I in that it offers the reader an access to the occurrences on which results have been mainly based and obtained.

Having presented the objectives and structure of this dissertation, I shall now review the most pertinent contributions to the notion of reformulation and discourse markers of reformulation within English linguistics, as well as in other languages such as French and Spanish. This review of the literature will help me lay the foundations for the analysis of a group of English discourse markers of reformulation.

2. REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE

2. REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE

In this chapter I will review the pertinent literature in the field of Discourse Markers (hereafter DMs) in order to lay out the theoretical basis for an analysis of English Discourse Markers of Reformulation (hereafter EDMs of RF). English language researchers who work in the field of DMs do not tackle the issue of reformulation and DMs of RF directly; neither do they view them as a consistent group, except for the descriptive work of Halliday and Hasan (1976), and Quirk et al. (1972/1985). This lack of research within English studies with regard to the notion of reformulation and of DMs of Rf *per se*, makes a review of previous studies on this notion in French and Spanish and the units that help display such a function in languages for the purpose of this study necessary.

The organization of this chapter will be the following:

- (i) English contributions to DMs and DMs of RF;
- (ii) French contributions to DMs of RF; and finally
- (iii) Spanish contributions to DMs of RF.

The first group of studies offers a detailed review of the insightful contributions to the notion of DM within English linguistics. It is divided into four main sub-groups:

1. Pre-1985 Descriptive contributions to the notion of DMs of a Grammar-related nature.
2. Theoretical contributions from a Discourse/Coherence approach
3. Theoretical contributions from a Pragmatics approach
4. Theoretical contributions from a Relevance Theory approach

The second section examines the notion of reformulation and of DMs of RF within French linguistics. In this way, the reader will obtain a general picture beginning with the overarching category of DMs and then the more specific notion of reformulators as a sub-

class of within it. This block of contributions to French DMs of RF aims to compensate for the lack of references among English studies to the notion of reformulation. A thorough presentation of this notion and its origins is offered, followed by a review of the main authors on the notion of reformulation and the DMs of RF: Güllich and Kotschi's (1983) work on reformulation is reviewed, along with Roulet's (1987) distinction between paraphrastic and non-paraphrastic reformulation; Charolles and Coltier (1986), Murat and Cartier-Breson (1987), Fløttum (1994), and finally, Rossari's (1990, 1994) contrastive work on DMs of RF in French and Italian is also assessed. The work reviewed here is of both a descriptive and theoretical nature.

Finally, the last group of contributions stands out as a complement to the French studies, and is aimed to review the main Spanish contributions to the notion of reformulation with the theoretical work of Portolés (1994, 1995a, 1995b, 1998), Pons (1998a, 1998b, 2000, 2001) and Briz (1993a, 1993b, 1995, 1996, 1998, 2000) and Portolés and Zorraquino's (1999) most recent work and classification of these lexical units on the basis of their semantic-pragmatic properties. Similarly, a few descriptive studies are also reviewed. In particular, López (1990) on *es decir*, Fuentes (1987) and Casado (1991) and Cortés (1991) on a group of Explanation DMs of RF (*es decir, o sea, eso es, a saber*), Bach (1996, 1999, 2001) on the Catalan reformulator *ès-a-dir, autrement dit, and dit d'una altra manera, més ben dit/ millor dit*, together with Schwenter (1996) on *o sea*. Finally, I review Veiga's (1994-5) approach to a group of Spanish DMs of Conclusion and Recapitulation.

The review of the French and Spanish studies on reformulation has been included due to the insights they provide and thus, I have not aimed to impose the classifications of these two languages on the analysis of the English units or reformulators.

2.1. English studies on Discourse Markers

2.1.1. Pre-1985 Descriptive contributions to the notion of DMs of a grammar-related nature

In the ensuing discussion I offer a review of the most relevant grammar-based contributions to the notion of DM throughout the literature in English. Of special relevance is the work of the most traditional grammarians from a descriptive and taxonomical point of view, namely, Greenbaum (1969), Halliday and Hasan (1976), Quirk et al. (1985), Halliday (1985) and Quirk et al. (1985). The work of Greenbaum (1969) will not be dealt with here individually, since it is subsumed in the later approach conducted by Quirk et al. (1985). Similarly, Halliday's (1985) individual contribution is included in the work of Halliday and Hasan (1976). In addition to all these grammar-centred approaches, I also review the work of Lavob and Fanshel (1977), along with that of Levinson (1983) and Zwicky (1985) and their early contributions to the notion of DMs.

2.1.1.1. Halliday and Hasan (1976)

Among the coherence-based definitions, one of the first and most important works on textual relations was *Cohesion in English*, co-authored by Halliday and Hasan (1976). Their work can be considered one of the most influential for later authors dealing with relations in discourse and discourse coherence (cf. van Dijk 1977, de Beaugrade 1981, Schiffrin 1987, Blakemore 1987, 1992, 1996; Redeker, 1990, 1991, *inter alia*).

Their starting hypothesis lies in the consideration of COHESION as a textual property and thus a part of the system of a language. Cohesion is also a semantic notion but not a structural property of texts, and it occurs when the interpretation of some element in the

discourse is dependent on that of another. In other words, the one presupposes the other and thus cohesion involves lexical and syntactic continuity in a text (Halliday and Hasan 1976: 4). Notwithstanding, Halliday and Hasan (1976: 173) indicate that cohesion is a relational concept in that "...it is not the presence of a particular class of item that is cohesive, but the relation between one item and another". The range of possibilities for linking something with what has gone before is the authors' main concern: the study of a specific set of linguistic items and structures as semantic resources for linking a sentence. Along this line, Halliday and Hasan distinguish five main categories, or five types of cohesion in English, namely:

1. The expression of **CO-REFERENCE** relations between different entities, mainly obtained through the use of *pronouns, demonstratives, the definite article and comparatives*.
2. **SUBSTITUTION** in the use of items such as the indefinite pronoun *one, the same*, the pro-verb *do*, and the pro-clauses *so* and *not*.
3. **ELLIPSIS**, as equal to the substitution by zero.
4. **CONJUNCTION**, a function that can be realized through the use of *coordination*, various types of *adverbs* and *intonation*.
5. **LEXICAL COHESION**, both in the form of *repetition* and *collocation*.

Among these different categories, that of conjunction is of special relevance for the purpose of this dissertation since it comprises some of the reformulators object of my analysis and most of the lexical expressions currently considered DMs.

Halliday and Hasan's category of conjunction is differentiated from the other types of cohesive expressions in that conjunctive elements do not display anaphoric or cataphoric relations between constituents. Moreover, conjunctive elements are cohesive not in

themselves, that is to say, "...they are not primarily devices for reaching out into the preceding (or following) text, but they express certain meanings which presuppose the presence of other components in discourse" (Halliday and Hasan 1976: 226). With conjunctions there is a specification of the way in which what is to follow is systematically related to what has gone before. In the same vein, Pennock (2000: 35) states that conjunctive elements along with *consecutio temporum* and collocation are devices that "do not refer to the participants in the propositions" in discourse but to "the logico-temporal relations between propositions". They are, therefore, "outside the scope of cohesion proper" and belong to the sphere of discursual coherence.

Halliday and Hasan (1976: 238-9) recognize that there is no single correct inventory of types of conjunctive relation. However, they adopt four main semantic categories, namely, **ADDITIVE**, **ADVERSATIVE**, **CAUSAL** and **TEMPORAL**, with further sub-classification under each of the four main headings. In addition, they also introduce a distinction, common to all four types, between **EXTERNAL** and **INTERNAL PLANES**¹ of conjunctive relations. These two planes are explained respectively as follows:

When we use conjunction as a means of creating text, we may exploit either the relations that are inherent in the phenomena that language is used to talk about, or those that are inherent in the communication process, in the forms of interaction between speaker and hearer; and these two possibilities are the same whatever the type of conjunctive relation, whether additive, adversative, temporal or causal. In fact we usually exploit both kinds. The link between the two is by no means always clear-cut; but it is there, and forms an essential part of the total picture.

(Halliday and Hasan 1976: 241)

¹ Schiffrin's five planes of discourse coherence draw on this basic distinction between internal and external relations, as developed by Halliday and Hasan.

The lexical units I attempt to analyze under the label of DMs of RF, units such as *that is, viz., namely, i.e., in other words, for instance, or rather, or, to sum up, and in short*, to name a few, find their place in at least three of the types of conjunctive relations out of the four identified by these authors: the Additive, Adversative and Temporal. Halliday and Hasan's classification is based on the semantic meaning these lexical units convey and, although they are much more concerned with the way cohesion is achieved within a text, their classification of the units above-mentioned is illuminating in at least one respect: they provide the researcher with a semantic classification of some of the functions these units display. For example, within the Additive category, Halliday and Hasan distinguish four sub-categories, and two of them, EXPOSITION and EXEMPLIFICATION, which structurally correspond to the relation of APPOSITION, rather than coordination, are of special relevance for this dissertation. Lexical items which fall within this function are, in the expository sense, *I mean, that is, that is to say, (or) in other words, (or) to put it another way*; and in the exemplificatory way, *for instance and for example*.

As will be the case with Quirk et al.'s *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*, Halliday and Hasan identify the occurrences of these units as cases of apposition, although they recognize that other items, such as *namely, viz., and i.e.* can also be found linking two sentences.

Within the Adversative category, two sub-categories are distinguished: CORRECTION OF MEANING with the lexical units *rather, on the contrary, instead*; and CORRECTION OF WORDING with *at least, rather, I mean*. Finally, within the Temporal category and under the sub-class HERE and NOW, we find the SUMMARY group, with units such as *to sum up, in short and briefly*, some of which are included as reformulators in the present study.

Halliday and Hasan's classification, although not primarily concerned with DMs *per se* but rather with the different strategies or devices by means of which cohesion can be achieved in a text, attempts a descriptive classification of a group of lexical units or conjunctions on the grounds of their semantic meaning. Halliday and Hasan's major point for the purpose of this dissertation is concerned with the identification of some DMs of RF, such as *that is*, *that is to say*, *in other words*, as clear lexical indicators of the function of Apposition, along with classification based on their semantic meaning. This is a fact that helps corroborate the belief that the notion of reformulation, or at least, the history of some of the markers of reformulation, is initially and closely attached to the function of apposition within the most traditional and earliest approaches to DMs in English.

In the following charts, I illustrate Halliday and Hasan's classification of the units that comprise the category of conjunction. The lexical units in bold type are the ones that entertain the status of DMs of RF and are thus object of investigation in the present study.

HALLIDAY AND HASAN'S CATEGORIES OF CONJUNCTION (1976)

ADDITIVE	ADVERSATIVE	TEMPORAL	CAUSAL
EXPOSITION I mean that is, that is to say (or) in other words (or) to put it another way	CORRECTION OF MEANING rather on the contrary instead	SUMMARY to sum up in short briefly	
EXEMPLIFICATION for example for instance	CORRECTION OF WORDING at least rather I mean		

2.1.1.2. Labov and Fanshel (1977) and Levinson (1983)

In this section I will briefly discuss the views of Labov and Fanshel who, albeit contributing to the notion of DMs indirectly, count among the first authors to approach the study of these units. Labov and Fanshel's descriptive work focuses on the single DM *well*. Levinson, on the contrary, although not using the term DM *per se*, identifies some of the most defining properties of these units.

Labov and Fanshel in their book *Therapeutic discourse* (1977) write the following about the discourse marker *well*:

As a discourse marker, *well* refers backwards to some topic that is a ready shared knowledge among participants. When *well* is the first element in a discourse or a topic, this reference is necessarily to an unstated topic of joint concern.

(Labov and Fanshel 1977: 156)

Levinson (1983), for his part, considers DMs a class worthy of study in his approach to discourse deixis and states:

[...] there are many words and phrases in English, and no doubt most languages, that indicate the relationship between an utterance and the prior discourse. Examples are utterance-initial usages of *but, therefore, in conclusion, to the contrary, still, however, anyway, well, besides, actually, all in all, so, after all*, and so on. It is generally conceded that such words have at least a component of meaning that resists truth-conditional treatment (Grice, 1975; Wilson, 1975; Levinson 1979). What they seem to do is indicate, often in very complex ways, just how the utterance that contains them is a response to, or a continuation of, some portion of the prior discourse. We still await proper studies of these terms, but one kind of approach will be sketched in the next Chapter under the rubric of *conventional implicature*...

(Levinson 1983: 87-88)

Levinson's major observation concerns the identification of indexical properties for DMs, a notion further developed by Schiffrin (1987) and other authors. Likewise, he

assigns a non-truth conditional meaning to DMs, and views them as cases of conventional implicatures.

2.1.1.3. Quirk et al. *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language* (1972, 1985)

Despite the fact that the notion of reformulation has not been systematically approached within English linguistics, some references to it can be traced back to 1972 in the Grammar compilation of Randolph Quirk, Sidney Greenbaum, Geoffrey Leech and Jan Svartvik: *A Grammar of Contemporary English*. Although these authors do not talk of reformulation *per se*, or the lexical units which help display such a function, they deal with some of the DMs of RF, the object of my investigation when they approach the notion of Apposition, in the chapter dedicated to the noun group, and when they attempt to classify Conjuncts into broad semantic categories. Thus, although the literature in English on DMs of RF is substantially less elaborate on this topic, it could be said that the notion of reformulation is certainly an issue in the grammars as early as 1972-1973.

In the ensuing discussion I shall offer a review of the way this notion of reformulation is dealt with in this early work by Quirk et al. (1972, 1985), first in relation to the notion of Apposition, as a relation characteristic of noun phrases; and second, with regard to these authors' classification of Conjuncts into semantic categories.

2.1.1.3.1. The Notion of Reformulation and Apposition

Quirk et al. approach the study of apposition and signal that some of the lexical units under DMs of RF can be used as explicit lexical indicators of this semantic relation. It is normally noun phrases that stand in a relation of apposition. For a linguistic unit to be *appositive*, i.e. in apposition, they must normally be identical in reference, or co-referential.

Thus, in the sentence below both noun phrases are co-referential, that is to say, their reference is analogous:

1. Anne, **(that is to say)** my best friend, is coming tomorrow from Portugal.

Similarly, the units in apposition are of the same rank and the relationship they entertain is analogous to a copular relation. The lexical units in apposition are normally noun phrases but can also be adjectives, predications and clauses.

For Quirk et al. (1985) the notion of apposition is mainly a semantic relation between noun phrases that can be signaled by means of some lexical indicators that help display such relation. Among them, Quirk et al. include most, if not all, of the lexical units studied in this dissertation under the broad label of DMs of RF, a classification that is semantically motivated. That is, Quirk et al.'s (1985: 1308) classification of these lexical indicators is based on whether they help display one of the three major semantic types that can be found "...running from the "most appositive" to loose and unequal relationship ("least appositive")": **EQUIVALENCE, CONTRIBUTION and INCLUSION**, respectively.

The relationship of Inclusion is the most peripheral to the notion of apposition, since it is the only type that needs the explicit presence of a lexical indicator. Thus, if we compare clauses 2 and 3 below, it is only 3 that requires the indicator, where its presence is optional in 2 (adapted from Quirk et al. 1985: 1308):

2. My best friend, **(that is to say)** Anna, was here last night.
3. The children like the animals, **particularly** the monkeys.

Each of these main semantic types of apposition entails different semantic relationships, and only the labels of Equivalence and Inclusion are of any interest for the purpose of this

dissertation since they deal with most of the DMs of RF under scrutiny. Among the different types of relationship within the first semantic type of Equivalence, those of APPELLATION, IDENTIFICATION, DESIGNATION and REFORMULATION stand out. Thus, Quirk et al. first treat Reformulation as a type of relationship under the broader label of Equivalence. According to these authors a Reformulation "...is a rewording in the second (defining) appositive of the lexical content of the first (defined) appositive" (Quirk et al. 1985: 1311). They even distinguish four main categories of reformulation:

A) Reformulation based on *linguistic knowledge*

4. You should have consulted an ophthalmologist, **that is (to say)** an eye doctor.

B) Reformulation based on *factual knowledge*, (although they point that the difference between linguistic and factual is a fine one)

5. Fred-~~or~~ Ginger as he is usually called-....

C) More precise formulation or *correction* in the defining appositive of what was said in the first appositive

6. They started to go to the church, the Catholic church.

D) Revision that includes the form of "*editing*" or "*self-correction*" that is typical of impromptu spoken English where execution and planning take places simultaneously:

7. His party controls London, Great London, **that is to say**.

8. She puts such vitality (**or rather** virility) into her play.

9. Then you add the peaches-**I mean**, the apricots.

The lexical units under the notion of Equivalence are the most appositive, on a continuum ranging from the most to the least appositive, and thus, the semantic contents of S1 and S2 resemble one another to a great degree. In contrast, the category of Inclusion is the least appositive in the running scale, and thus indicates the least semantic resemblance

between the contents of S1 and S2. This last category includes cases of **PARTICULARIZATION** and **EXEMPLIFICATION**.

As far as the different types of Reformulation (as a semantic relationship) are concerned, they are problematic since it is difficult to maintain a distinction between semantic and factual knowledge, the first type being a mere case of synonymy. Likewise, it is peculiar that the more precise formulation does not include any lexical indicator for its linguistic realization; while the sub-class of revision is merely concerned with editing or self-correction.

Quirk et al. also list some of the possible reasons that might trigger the activity of reformulation, among them the need to avoid misunderstanding, or misinterpretation, and to provide a more familiar or technical term. (cf. the French authors on reformulation for a similar insight)

2.1.1.3.2. The notion of Conjuncts

Quirk et al.'s work (1972, 1985) counts as one of the few studies in the English tradition that has attempted to classify markers into broad functional categories, along with Halliday and Hasan (1976). Their *Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language* (1985) is a reworking of Greenbaum's (1969) work and attempts to categorize markers into broad semantic categories which in turn are subcategorized, and thus are more concerned with how markers function as sentence connectors.

In Quirk et al. (1985: 440) some of the lexical items I have been referring to as DMs of RF are classified as Conjuncts that “express the speaker’s assessment of the relation

between two linguistic units". Some examples taken from these authors in order to illustrate this category are as follows:

10. She has bought a big house, **so** she must have a lot of money.
11. We have complained about the noise, and **yet** he does nothing about it.
12. All our friends are going to Paris this summer. We, **however**, are going to London.
13. If they open all the windows, **then** I'm leaving.
14. I didn't invite her. She wouldn't have come, **anyway**.

(Quirk et al. 1985: 441)

These so-called Conjuncts are thought to entail a conjunct-specific set of semantic relations (Quirk et al. 1985: 634) and have an indisputably conjunctive role in expressing the relevant connection between one part of a text and another. Conjuncts are broken down into seven semantic classifications: **LISTING**, **SUMMATIVE**, **APPOSITIONAL**, **RESULTIVE**, **INFERENCEAL**, **CONTRASTIVE**, and **TRANSITIONAL**.

1. LISTING

(i) *Enumerative*: first, second, third, firstly, secondly, thirdly, one, two, three, in the first place, in the second place, on the one hand, on the other hand, for one thing, for another thing....

(ii) *Additive*: equative (correspondingly, equally, likewise, similarly, in the same way, by the same token) and reinforcing (again, also, besides, further, furthermore, moreover, in particular, then, what is more, in addition, to topi it all, to cap it all, above all)

2. **SUMMATIVE**: altogether, overall, then, therefore, thus, all in all, in conclusion, in sum, to conclude, to sum up, to summarize.

3. **APPOSITIVE**: namely (abbreviated viz.), thus, in other words, for example, for instance, that is, that is to say, specifically....

4. **RESULTIVE**: accordingly, consequently, hence, now, so, therefore, thus, as a consequence, in consequence, as a result....

5. **INFERENCEAL**: else, otherwise, then, in other words, in that case.

6. CONTRASTIVE:

(i) *Reformulatory*: (or) better, (or) rather, (or) more accurately, more precisely, alias, alternatively, in other words.

(ii) *Replacive*: again, alternatively, rather, better, worse, on the other hand, better still.

(iii) *Antithetic*: contrairiwise, conversely, instead, oppositely, on the contrary, in contrast, by contrasts, by way of contrast, in comparison.

(iv) *Concessive*: anyhow, anyway, anyways, besides, else, however, nevertheless, nonetheless, notwithstanding, still, though, yet, in any case, in any event, at any rate, at all eents, for all that, in spite of that, in spite of it all, after all.

7. TRANSITIONAL:

(i) *Discoursal*: incidentally, now, by the way, by the by

(ii) *Temporal*: meantime, meanwhile, in the meantime, in the meanwhile, originally, susequently, eventually.

The so-called DMs of RF that constitute the object of this study would be unevenly distributed among several of the semantic sub-groups identified by Quirk et al. Thus, within the Appositive group, we find the same lexical units identified as explicit indicators of apposition: *namely* (often abbreviated as *viz.* in formal written English), *in other words*, *for example*, *for instance*, *that is*, *that is to say*, *specifically*, etc. The lexical units *(or) better*, *better still*, *(or) rather* and *I mean* would fall within the Contrastive group, and more specifically, within the Reformulatory sub-group that comprises *(or) better*, *(or) rather*, *(or) more accurately*, *(or) more precisely*; *alias*, *alternatively*, and *in other words*. Finally, the following largely formal expressions: *in conclusion*, *in sum*, *to conclude*, *to sum up*, *to summarize* (Quirk et al. 1985: 635), also the object of my analysis, are found within the Summative group.

According to Quirk et al., the Summative and Appositive conjuncts have in common the fact that they precede an item which is to be looked at in relation to all the items that have gone before. The summative conjuncts introduce an item that embraces the preceding ones. For the Resultive and Inferential group, Quirk et al. consider that they help portray a final item as a conclusion in more ways than one, and they list the following options: as a mere termination, a reinforcement, a summary, a result, and a basis for further inference. This is reflected in the fact that we can find the same conjuncts under several heads (Quirk et al. 1985: 638).

Within the Contrastive class the sub-group of Reformulatory conjuncts is of prime importance for this study. Contrastive conjuncts present either contrastive words or contrastive matters in relation to what has preceded. Thus, in the former type, certain closeness to the appositive group can be observed, although they differ from the appositive conjuncts in their seeking less to add another formulation than to replace what has been said by a different formulation (Quirk et al. 1985: 638). Let's consider the following example adapted from these authors:

15. He was exceedingly inebriated-hopelessly drunk, **in other words** .
16. She has applied for a transfer-she is tired of her present job, **in other words** (reformulatory)².

(Quirk et al. 1985: 638-9)

The lexical forms *rather*, and *better* are also used as reformulatory conjuncts and are often preceded by *or*. These two conjuncts also fall under the head of Replacive conjuncts,

² Quirk et al. seem to indicate that mere cases of semantic reformulation correspond to cases of Apposition; whereas cases of inferential reformulation, where the scope is total, fall within the category of within the Contrastive class.

which entail a contrastive matter. Notwithstanding, with the replacive conjuncts, the speaker withdraws an item, not to express it better but to replace it by a much more important one (Quirk et al. 1985: 639):

17. He was opposed by his mother, **or rather**, by both his parents.

To sum up, it could be said that Quirk et al. do not directly address the notion of reformulation but succeed in providing a classification of the lexical units that help display the phenomenon of reformulating the previous discourse segment (S1) and providing a new formulation or newly formulated S2.

The notion of reformulation, as they envisage it, is best seen as a semantic relationship within the Equivalence type, and thus, as mainly displaying an appositive relation between noun-phrases. In their approach to conjuncts and the different semantic classes into which they can be classified, the notion of reformulation or Reformulatory conjuncts only refers to a group of lexical units under the semantic type of Contrastive conjuncts, a category that is close to the appositive although more concerned with the notion of replacing what has been said by another formulation. Only the lexical units *in other words*, *(or) better*, *(or) rather*, *more accurately*, and *more precisely*, are included under the Reformulatory group. Similarly, some of these units are further classified under the sub-type Replacive.

The charts below illustrate the phenomenon of apposition and the lexical units that help codify such a relation, along with the classification of conjuncts where some of the DMs of RF seem to fit.

QUIRK ET AL.'S APPROACH TO APPOSITION (1985)

The most appositive

SEMANTIC TYPE OF EQUIVALENCE			
APPELATION	IDENTIFICATION	DESIGNATION	REFORMULATION
<p>namely or that is that is to say in other words</p> <p>(OPTIONALITY-No lexical unit)</p>	<p>namely that is to say</p> <p>(OPTIONALITY-no lexical unit)</p>	<p>that is to say in other words</p> <p>(OPTIONALITY-no lexical unit)</p>	<p>in other words</p> <p>that is to say that is</p> <p>more simply in simpler words in simpler terms put more simply to put it more simply in more difficult language in scientific terminology in more technical terms- technically speaking in words of one syllable</p> <p>or rather I mean</p>

QUIRK ET AL.'S APPROACH TO APPOSITION (1985)

The least appositive

EXEMPLIFICATION	PARTICULARIZATION
<p>for example for instance</p>	<p>notably particularly in particular chiefly mainly mostly</p>

QUIRK ET AL.'S SEMANTIC TYPES OF CONJUNCTS (1985)

SUMMATIVE	APPOSITIVE	INFERENTIAL	CONTRASTIVE
<p>in conclusion to conclude</p> <p>in sum to sum up to summarize</p>	<p>in other words namely</p> <p>that is to say that is</p> <p>more simply in simpler words in simpler terms put more simply to put it more simply in more difficult language in scientific terminology in more technical terms technically speaking in words of one syllable</p> <p>or rather I mean</p>	<p>in other words</p>	<p>(i) Reformulatory</p> <p>(or) better (or) rather (or) more accurately- precisely alias alternatively in other words</p> <p>(ii) Replacive</p> <p>(or) rather (or) better still</p>

2.1.2. Theoretical contributions from a Discourse/Coherence approach

The main post-1985 contributions to DMs are of a theoretical nature in that they aim to further elucidate what a DM is and to assess its status as a linguistic phenomenon from a discourse/coherence perspective. The second sub-group comprises the theoretical works of Schiffrin (1987), Redeker (1990, 1991), Knott (1993, 1996, 1999), Knott and Dale (1994) and Knott and Sanders (1998). All these approaches are best characterized as being cohesion/coherence-based and what ties their work together is a number of background assumptions about texts and coherence, namely that texts are coherent, that there is a definable set of coherence relations, and that the recovery and processing of such coherence relations are essential for comprehension.

Notwithstanding, there are two main approaches to how coherence between discourse segments is established. Some researchers view coherence in terms of a set of implicit relations, such as CAUSE, CONSEQUENCE, CONDITION, EVIDENCE, or ELABORATION, holding between the discourse units. The comprehension of any text then hinges on the identification and recovery of such relations. This is the view maintained by Mann and Thompson (1986), (1987) in their RHETORICAL STRUCTURE THEORY, or that of Hobbs (1978), Schiffrin (1987); Sanders et al. (1983), Knott and Dale (1994), Knott and Mellish (1996), *inter alia*. The other view of coherence has as its underlying hypothesis the notion of topic, as entertained by van Dijk (1977), Brown and Yule (1983) and Giora (1995). However, I will limit myself to the review of the work of the first group of authors since their research hinges on the notion of DMs and thus adds interesting aspects to this thesis.

Within these coherence-based approaches, DMs are mainly viewed as lexical units that help make coherence relations explicit. In a sense, the intuition that DMs are linking

devices is a pervasive belief within the main contributions that I will review in this study. In fact, DMs link two discourse units, two clauses, or a clause and the preceding text, but there still holds the intuition that the discourse units linked should be adjacent or contiguous.

Thus, the works of Schiffrin (1987) and Redeker (1990, 1991) will be first addressed, where DMs (*Discourse connectives* and *Discourse operators*, respectively) are both understood as linguistic signals of textual-coherence (Redeker 1991). To these two main works, a third is added, viz. the work of Knott and Dale (1994) and Sanders et al. (1993), which mainly draws on Mann and Thompson's (1986) Rhetorical structure theory postulates that texts have an underlying hierarchical structure and that there are implicit relations between the sentences in a text that provide it with textual coherence. Within these complementary contributions, DMs are labelled *Cue phrases*, i.e., lexical units whose function is to make explicit implicit coherence relations between adjacent discourse units, much in the same way as Schiffrin's *discourse connectives* (hereafter DCs) and Redeker's *discourse operators*.

2.1.2.1. Deborah Schiffrin (1987)

Schiffrin's book on DMs counts as one of the most widely known studies devoted to the analysis of DMs. Her early interest in the function and role of DMs at a time when few studies had been devoted to their nature and analysis (cf. Östman 1981, Schourup 1983 and Warner 1985) has made her book a necessary point of reference for any researcher dealing with the roles or functions of these units. Her book is among one of the first that attempts to provide a classification and description of the properties of a group of eleven DMs. In fact,

many of the recent studies on the topic owe their insights in part to the model outlined in her book.

Drawing on a series of sociological conversations and thus using recorded material, Schiffrin attempts to study eleven DMs in order to assess their functions as useful cohesive units that help in the successful interpretation of a text. These units are drawn from different categories and form quite a rather heterogeneous group, comprising coordinating and subordinating conjunctions (*and, but, or, because*), temporal and conjunctive adverbs such as *now, then* and *so*, particles like *oh* and *well*, and parenthetical clauses such as *you know* and *I mean*.

The nomenclature she proposes became widely accepted by the subsequent American Linguistics dealing with this same topic. However, the term of DM entails a wider concept in the American tradition than in the European one, where refinements take place regarding the notion. New labels emerge, such as that of **CONNECTIVE**, on the basis of the notion of connection, which plays a key role in the analysis and study of these units. Pons (2001: 226) indicates that these two labels may give rise to a source of misunderstanding although the problem merely concerns meta-language.

Schiffrin's approach stems from the notion of discourse analysis and coherence as defining properties. This coherence-theoretical approach establishes and delimits the scope and orientation of analysis of these units. In other words, Schiffrin's work on DMs primarily views them as useful tools for the establishment of coherence in discourse (cf. Halliday and Hasan 1976, Van Dijk 1977 and Mann and Thompson 1988, for similar insights).

Taking as a starting point some of the following assumptions of discourse analysis, such as the fact that language always occurs in some kind of context, either social, cognitive, or cultural; language is context-sensitive and reflects those contexts because it helps constitute them; language is always communicative and designed for communication), Schiffrin sets out to examine the properties of discourse (to form structures, to convey meanings and to accomplish actions) to further assess the relationships among them. All this leads her to a discussion of coherence as an integrative property of discourse and to view DMs as elements that contribute or serve in the establishment of discourse coherence. DMs are, in this respect, linguistic cues that help contextualize the speaker's message, by means of which hearers infer speaker's underlying intentions. They act as a discourse "glue".

Thus, Schiffrin, drawing on Stubbs' (1983: 147) suggestion for a need for multiple theories of discourse coherence, also proposes a multi-planed model of discourse coherence. Coherence is of central importance to the study of discourse analysis but it is notoriously difficult to define. Gumperz (1982, 1984) suggests an integrated view of coherence based on what he calls *Contextualization cues*: verbal and non-verbal aspects of communication that provide an interpretive framework for the referential content of a message. Thus,

[...] coherence, then, would depend on a speaker's successful integration of different verbal and nonverbal devices to situate a message in an interpretive frame, and a hearer's corresponding synthetic ability to respond to such cues as a totality in order to interpret that message.

(Schiffrin 1987: 22)

Accordingly, Schiffrin proposes a model of coherence in talk, which she also takes to be a model of discourse. This model focuses on local coherence, or coherence constructed

through relations between adjacent units in discourse, although it can be expanded to take into account more global dimensions of coherence. This model also provides a framework for the analysis of DMs, viewing them as indicators of the location of utterances within the emerging structures, meanings and actions of discourse. Thus, it is central to her claim that coherence in discourse is derived from five planes of talk: **EXCHANGE STRUCTURE, ACTION STRUCTURE, IDEATIONAL STRUCTURE, PARTICIPATION FRAMEWORK** and **INFORMATION STATE**. DMs have roles within those different planes, described as follows:

A) Exchange structure: this plane is defined in terms of turns, that is to say, adjacency-pair parts, such as questions and answers, greeting-greeting, etc.

B) Action structure: it includes speech acts that represent actions occurring in constrained linear sequences.

C) Ideational structure: the main units are propositions or what she calls “ideas” and they participate of a semantic unit. Three different relations between these ideas contribute to the configuration of idea structures: cohesive relations, topic relations and functional relations. In contrast to the exchange structure (turns) and the action structure (acts), these units are linguistic *per se*

D) Participation Framework: it concerns the mutual presence of speakers and hearers, their shared responsibility for talk, and the way they relate to each other and to their own utterances-to their propositions, acts and turns in negotiating them.

E) Information state: this plane of talk concerns the presence of speakers and hearers not in their social interactional capacities but in their cognitive ones; in other words, what they know about each other’s knowledge and meta-knowlege and how they organize and manage it for the production and interpretation of a particular message.

Schiffirin’s model ranges from non-linguistic structures such as exchange and action (and thus pragmatic in nature, due to the central role speakers and hearers play in negotiating the organization) to linguistic ones, the ideational plane (units in this structure are semantic). In the participation framework speakers relate to each other and to their

utterances, and in the information state knowledge and meta-knowledge they relate with regard to how ideas are organized and managed.

Schiffrin's five-plane model takes Halliday and Hasan's (1976) distinction between Internal and External relations as a point of departure for the development of her model of discourse. Thus, Schiffrin's ideational plane subsumes external relations; whereas the action structure and information state planes would encompass the internal relations more concerned with the linguistic representation of the world.

The next step in Schiffrin's model concerns the characterization and definition of DMs. For her, DMs are defined operationally as "sequentially dependent elements which bracket units of talk" (Schiffrin 1987: 31). Even though the term "units of talk" seems a vague one, Schiffrin justifies her choice by claiming that a more precise definition would have led her to concentrate on just that unit and neglect many other units of talk that also influence the use of markers. For that very reason, she bypasses syntactic units such as the sentence, or propositions, speech acts or tone units as the units of talk that DMs bracket. Schiffrin expands the notion of boundaries of units not only in the domain of talk, but also in the realm of social life and social organizations. Encounters, she states, are bracketed by opening sentences, and these brackets help ratify participants' identities and the rules and procedures to be followed in the interaction. However, the most important aspect of brackets for the analysis of DMs is their ability to simultaneously look forward and backward, participating of an anaphoric and cataphoric character.

The fact that DMs are sequentially dependent indicates that they work on the level of discourse and are not dependent on smaller units of talk. Thus, the sequentially dependent uses of *and* can link declarative sentences with interrogative or non-sentence elements.

Finally, markers can co-occur with other discourse devices in specific slots such as temporal marker *then*, for example.

The consideration of DMs as part of a more general analysis of discourse coherence led Schiffrin to study their distribution in discourse. One of her conclusions is that many of the expressions examined were not themselves void of their own linguistic properties, and she claimed that, all the markers, except *oh* and *well* have meanings that will influence the general meaning of the discourse. Transforming the logic in use that guided her at the beginning of the book into a reconstructed logic, Schiffrin poses the following questions underlying her study and attempts to provide an answer for them in chapter 10 of her book:

A) What do DMs add to coherence?

Do DMs create, or display, relationships between units of talk (ideas, actions, turns, etc.)?

B) Do DMs have meanings? If so, are those meanings referential and/or social and/or expressive meanings? If so, how do those meanings interact with the discourse slot to influence the total communicative force of an expression?

C) Do DMs have functions? If so, in what discourse component of a discourse system (exchange, action, ideational, information, participation)?

D) Are DMs multi-functional?

E) Are DMs ever functional equivalents for each other?

The contribution of DMs to discourse coherence is mainly explained on the following grounds. The properties of discourse together with the linguistic properties of the expressions provide markers with their indexical functions. By indexical functions Schiffrin points to their ability to relate the location of an utterance with the emerging local contexts. Moreover, it is through their indexical functions that DMs propose the contextual

coordinates within which an utterance is produced and meant to be interpreted. Likewise, markers have the ability to propose more than one contextual coordinate at once, thus contributing to discourse coherence.

DMs can be used in different planes of talk. Schiffrin identifies a primary plane and secondary planes and all the markers have uses on more than one plane, but only one provides them with their primary function. The primary function of all the conjunctions is in the idea structures (ideational structures) but they have functions in some other of the five components of talk.

She suggests that the linguistic properties, such as semantic (referential) and syntactic (grammatical) properties are also responsible for their communicative effect. Conjunctions such as *but* or *and* have pragmatic effects closely tied to their meanings: *but* marks contrast, *or* marks hearer-option, etc.

Schiffrin takes the stance that the CORE MEANINGS of DMs do not fluctuate from use to use, that is to say, it is the slot in which they are used (namely, the slot is in the action, exchange, participation framework, etc) that changes. This suggests that DMs, as Fraser points out “do not convey social and/or expressive meanings. Rather, they are situated in very different discourse slots, and it is the utterance within that discourse slot which is interpreted for social and/or expressive meaning...” (Schiffrin 1987: 318).

DMs then work in the following way: a DM selects one of several meaning relations provided through the content of talk and then displays that relation. Thus, they do not create, but select and display relationships between the stretches of discourse. Sometimes, the relationship holding between utterances is clear to both interlocutors, because they may share certain contextual assumptions, or a cultural background that allows the hearer to

have access to enough evidence to understand such a relationship. In any case, the relationship holds even before the presence of a DM. What the marker really does is to guide the hearer to the intended interpretation. Let us consider the following fabricated exchange 18:

18a. Michael dislikes left-wing politicians. I dislike him.

In 18 the range of potential meaning relationships is already constrained. The above-mentioned exchange can be understood in one of the two possible ways:

18. Michael dislikes left-wing politicians.

- a. **But** I dislike him.
- b. **So** I dislike him.

The first possible interpretation can be reached by considering the case that I dislike left-wing politicians and thus, Michael's disliking of them could be seen as a point in common between us. However, and in spite of this commonality, I don't like him. The use of the DM *but* marks an explicit contrast between both utterances. Another potential interpretation would be that of a consecutive nature by means of the marker *so*: as a consequence of his disliking left-wing politicians and my liking them, I conclude by saying that I don't like the person in question. These two potential meaning relationships are already constrained, even though there is no DM to signal what relationship is to be followed. The presence of one DM or another guides the way in which hearers should interpret the relationship between these two sentences. For someone sharing contextual assumptions, and a cultural background, and thus, aware of my liking left-wing politicians and my distrusting people with opposing political trends, the consecutive relation would

have been clear. However, DMs prove to be extremely useful when contextual assumptions, cultural background or other aspects are not available, for they help the hearer to elucidate the intended relationship. Without the presence of any DM, different potential relations are possible; however, once a marker is used, one relation is selected to the exclusion of the other. Thus, Schiffrin (1987: 321) concludes that "...either relation is possible *without* markers, but only one relation is possible with a marker".

Schiffrin also establishes a correlation between the fact that DMs have a linguistic meaning and the plane of talk on which they are used, the outcome being that there exists a rough correlation between the semantics of these units and their primary functions. Thus, Schiffrin states that:

[...] in general, what such a scale suggests is that if an expression used as a marker does have meaning, its primary use in discourse will be in the organization of referential meanings at a textual level-and that if a marker does not have meaning, its primary use will be elsewhere. What this also suggests is that if as an expression loses its semantic meaning, it is freer to function in non-ideational realms of discourse.

(Schiffrin 1987: 319)

As far as the semantic scope of DMs is concerned, Schiffrin contends that:

[...] the larger the discourse unit over which the marker has scope, the less meaning is conveyed by the marker, [...] when markers have wide discourse scope, they contribute less communicative force to the overall definition of the discourse than when their scope is limited to a single clause.

(Schiffrin 1987: 321)

To further explain the contribution of DMs to coherence she needs another dimension of analysis, namely, deixis. Thus, DMs have an indexical function. Levinson points to this fact when he defines some of the expressions analyzed as discourse deictics:

There are many words and phrases in English, and no doubt most languages, that indicate the relationship between an utterance and the prior discourse [...] It is generally conceded that such words have at least a component of meaning that resists truth-conditional treatment [...] What they seem to do is indicate, often in very complex ways, just how the utterance that contains them is a response to, or a continuation of some portion of the previous discourse.

(Levinson 1983: 87)

Since utterances are context-bound, and presented by a speaker to a hearer at a certain time and a certain place, four dimensions, namely those of speaker, hearer, time and place are often encoded through deictic elements, such as personal pronouns, temporal expressions and locative ones. Taking as the deictic center the dimensions of *speaker*, present tense *now* and *here*, deictics are organized into distal and proximal groups: those that point to this deictic center are proximal, whereas those that point away are distal: *you*, *past tense*, *there*. Markers index utterances to a certain context. Moreover, they also index utterances to participant coordinates, either to the speaker, and/or the hearer, together with textual coordinates, that is to say to prior or upcoming text. The acceptance of these indexical functions helps elucidate some questions regarding the multiplicity of functions and the functional equivalence of DMs.

Thus, markers have only one indexical function, though multiple relations may hold between utterances. As far as the similar function is concerned, Schiffrin points that many DMs can be considered similar or functional equivalents if what is being taken into account is their indexical function or plane of discourse. For example, *so* and *y'know* share their indexical functions, but once indexical functions and discourse place are considered, very few DMs remain as functional equivalents (Schiffrin 1987: 325). And once the linguistic properties of DMs are added there are no functional equivalents at all. Therefore, the

indexical functions, linguistic properties, the discourse slot and the plane of discourse show that DMs carry out very different functions.

Markers provide contextual coordinates, that is to say, they index or relate a certain utterance to the context where it is produced and where it has to be interpreted. They are participant and textual coordinates; they relate the utterance to the speaker/hearer and to the here/there, now-past time. That is why DMs are used in discourse. In this vein, Schiffrin concludes:

Only one linguistic item-discourse marker-with one indexical function, anchors an utterance into more than one discourse component at once. By so doing, it provides a path toward the integration of those different components into one coherent discourse. Another way of saying this is that markers allow speakers to construct and integrate multiple planes and dimensions of an emergent reality: it is out of such processes that coherent discourse results.

(Schiffrin 1987: 330)

In spite of the fact that Schiffrin's sociological and coherence-based approach to DMs was a point of departure for an immense flow of papers on this subject, her work contains considerable shortcomings. Fraser's (1990: 384) critique of her approach seems to have summarized one of the main flaws on the writer's work when he says: "Schiffrin defines her discourse planes in broad and general terms. She does not provide a systematic motivation for them and one is left with a concern that they both overlap and leave areas of interpretation unaccounted for". In this vein, Sweetser's cognitive account (1990) and Redeker's (1991) reduction of the five planes to three also challenge various aspects of Schiffrin's model in an attempt to clarify some of its main postulates.

2.1.2.2. Gisela Redeker (1990, 1991)

Redeker proposes a characterization of DMs that is quite close to Schiffrin's (1987) model of discourse coherence. In this light, Redeker views DMs or *discourse operators*, as she rechristens the term, merely as devices that cue coherence relations that hold between two adjacent discourse units.

Redeker's main contributions to the topic under discussion come in two main articles, one from 1990, "Ideational and Pragmatic markers of discourse structure", and another one from 1991, "Linguistic markers of discourse structure", where she forcefully presents her critique of Schiffrin's five-planed model of discourse coherence.

In her 1990 article, Redeker is mainly concerned with the identification of markers that correspond to the two main structures identified within a paradigm of coherence, IDEATIONAL and PRAGMATIC (further divided into RHETORICAL and SEQUENTIAL). However, the distinction between these three kinds of relations that may hold between adjacent discourse units outlines what will constitute the main levels that integrate the coherence component. The distinction of these three components is closely related to Bühler's (1934) main interpretation of utterances as consisting of a representation of ideas, expression of the speaker and appeal to the reader. This proposal is not new, but it also supported by the theoretical frameworks of authors such as Halliday (1970), Mann and Thompson (1988), Polanyi and Scha (1983), as well as Schiffrin (1987).

However, Redeker's main contribution to the general picture of DMs is her critique of Schiffrin's multi-planed model of discourse coherence and the elaboration of a revised more simplified model, also based on coherence, effected between adjacent discourse

segments, as a better option for differentiating DMs. Her postulates are condensed in her 1991 article. In this vein, Redeker also aims to operationally define *discourse operators* as linguistic signals of textual-coherence links.

Redeker notices the existence of some discrepancies in the five planes identified by Schiffrin. Although she acknowledges the fact that Schiffrin's approach successfully distinguishes between the representational functions of language (cf. Bühler 1934, Halliday 1970) (ideational) and the socio-pragmatic functions of exchange and structure, she views the theoretical status of the last two planes, information state and participation framework, as somewhat unclear.

According to Redeker, the information framework and participation state are conceptually different from the action, exchange and ideational structure in that they are of a cognitive nature when dealing with the speaker's knowledge of the discourse situation and in that they are concerned with individual utterances and only indirectly related to inter-utterance coherence (cf. Schourup 1999).

In this vein, Redeker eliminates Schiffrin's participation framework and information structure planes on the following bases:

Most importantly, the components of information structure and the participation framework are not *on par* with the other three planes. The cognitions and attitudes composing those two components concern individual utterances, while the building blocks at the other three planes are relational concepts. The speaker's information status and attitudes should better be seen as contributing indirectly to coherence by motivating the speaker's choices at the pragmatic planes: markers function in action or exchange structures by virtue of indicating or predicating changes in the speaker's cognition and attitudes.

(Redeker 1991: 1162)

The other three remaining planes are then remodeled as *components of coherence* and undergo some re-naming, as is the case with action structure, which is now labeled Rhetorical structure, along with the exchange structure, now renamed as Sequential structure.

In addition to these theoretical shortcomings, Redeker also points out inconsistencies in Schiffrin's analysis and classification of the eleven DMs under analysis within the five different planes. With regard to the case of *well*, for example, Schiffrin identifies functions in all components of the discourse model. Thus, *well* can initiate a turn, identify a speaker as the respondent and signal that an utterance is an unexpected and/or unwelcome response. It seems quite obvious that *well* performs all the above-mentioned functions simultaneously.

However, as Redeker suggests, the case of *well* confirms the rule, rather than the exception. For the exception, Redeker, using Schiffrin's own data, offers insightful examples in order to corroborate that most DMs discussed by Schiffrin do fit well on all five levels. In this way, states Redeker (1991: 1159) "the planes of talk thus cease to discriminate between the markers" and thus rule out its relevance or worthiness. (cf. Archakis 2001 for a similar view).

Her proposal for a revised model of discourse only encompasses three main components, namely, IDEATIONAL, RHETORICAL and SEQUENTIAL, where "the strongest, contextually most relevant relationship is taken to be the basis of the coherence link" (Redeker 1990: 372). This three-planed model leaves out the information framework and the participation state and is best defined in terms of the relations holding between discourse units. I define them below:

A) Ideational structure. “ Two discourse units are ideationally related when their propositions describe a relationship that holds in the real world. Examples of ideational relations are temporal sequence, elaboration, cause, reason, consequence, and so forth” (Redeker 1991: 1168).

B) Rhetorical structure. When two discourse units are rhetorically related, there holds a relation between the beliefs and intentions motivated between those two states of affairs. Examples of rhetorical relations are concession, evidence, justification and conclusion (Redeker 1990: 369). In other words, the strongest relations must be between the illocutionary intentions the two units convey.

C) Sequential structure. Two discourse units are sequentially related if they contain relations that cannot be identified as either ideational or rhetorical. Topic transition, either to the next topic (paratactic) or leading into and out of a commentary, correction, paraphrase, aside, digression or interruption (hypotactic) are examples of sequential relations (Redeker 1990: 369). This last level is somehow broadened to include topic and other transitions in both interactive and noninteractive discourse.

Thus, coherence elements reviewed constitute the basis for the description and classification of the different links that *discourse operators* can signal. Finally, after discussing the main inconsistencies in Schiffrin’s model of discourse coherence, Redeker proposes the label *discourse operators*, as opposed to that of DCs with the main goal of correcting the pragmatic bias Redeker sees in the use of the term DM. *discourse operators* are thus characterized as follows:

A word or phrase-for instance, a conjunction, adverbial, common clause, interjection-that is uttered with the primary function of bringing to the listener’s attention a particular kind of linkage of the upcoming utterance with the immediate discourse context. An utterance in this definition is an intonationally and structurally bounded, usually clausal unit

(Redeker 1991: 1168)

2.1.2.3. Knott and Dale (1994), Knott and Mellish (1996), Knott and Sanders (1998)

In this section I will review the work by Knott (1993, 1996, 2001) Knott and Dale (1994), Knott and Mellish (1996), Sanders et al. (1992, 1993) and Knott and Sanders (1998). The main underlying premise around which the work of these authors evolves is the belief that a coherent text is more than a simple sequence of sentences. In this light, the different sequences of a discourse form a unified text, in terms of coherence. COHERENCE is not a textual property, as was the case of cohesion, but involves continuity or connectivity at the semantic-pragmatic level. But what is it that provides textual coherence?

Hobbs (1978) was one of the first authors who put forward the idea that coherence relations hold between the propositional content of the text segments: "I will call a discourse 'coherent' if it exhibits structural relationships between its various segments, which depend on the propositional content of the segments" (Hobbs 1978: 5). It follows from his observation that there are implicit relations between the sentences of a text, in the sense that the content of one sentence might offer Justification, Elaboration or Explanation of the content of the other (Knott and Dale 1993: 3). These relations that hold between the different text units of a text contribute to the effect of overall coherence of the text. However, another main aspect concerns the identification of coherence relations in a text as key to utterance interpretation and production. That is to say, the identification of the different relations holding between the different parts of a text is of prime importance for a successful interpretation of it. Coherence is thus analyzable in terms of a set of coherence relations that bind the text together. Sanders et al. (1993: 94) also notice this point when they state that:

Coherence is not a property of the discourse itself but of the representation people have or make of it...we take coherence relations as cognitive entities that play a central role in both discourse understanding and discourse production. For the time being, our argument will be stated from a discourse understanding perspective. Understanding a discourse means constructing a coherent representation of that discourse and a discourse representation is coherent if coherence relations such as Argument-Claim and Cause-Consequence can be inferred between the discourse segments.

But what is this set of coherence relations that holds between successive text segments? Is there a reliable taxonomy? How can they best be accounted for? It should be noted that the set of relations proposed in Rhetorical Structure Theory (Mann and Thompson 1984), though particularly influential, brought about a certain amount of confusion since no two theorists tend to use exactly the same set of relations (cf. Grosz and Sidner 1986, Hovy and Maier 1994, Sanders et al. 1993, etc). Proliferation of relations certainly poses a burden on any attempt to arrive at a clear taxonomy.

Thus, although there seems to be no agreement upon the classification or taxonomy of the relations necessary to account for the phenomenon of coherence, if we take the following example provided by Mann and Thompson (1986: 80), it is clearly perceived that the discourse sequences are perfectly coherent. A a coherence-based analysis of example 19 would go roughly as follows:

19. I'm hungry. Let's go to the Fuji Gardens.

According to Mann and Thompson these two utterances are somehow held together. The hearer or reader is expected to identify the coherence relation that holds between the discourse units. These authors postulate that the coherence relation in question is one of

solutionhood, which could be paraphrased as follows: the event in the second clause provides a solution to the event described in the first clause:

20. Our going to the Fuji Gardens is a partial solution to my problem of being hungry.

Similarly, the following discourse sequence illustrates the so-called relation of cause, where the event described in the first clause causes the event described in the second clause (Hobbs 1979):

21. John cheated on the final. I flunked him.

Notwithstanding, the existing relations holding between segments are sometimes left implicit, as is the case in the example 21 above. In fact, such relations may stay as they are, or alternatively, they can be made explicit by the use of particular linguistic devices, namely, DMs (Schiffrin 1987), *clue words* (Cohen 1984) or *cue phrases* (Mann and Thompson 1986, Grosz and Sidner 1986, and Knott and Dale 1994, *inter alia*)

Although the different terms noted above may not be defined in the same way, and may even encompass a different set of lexical units, they are all examples of linguistic devices used to make the implicit coherence relations between discourse segments explicit. In this line, a cue phrase such as *because* could have been used in example 22 in order to make the relation of cause explicit:

22. **Because** he cheated on the final, I flunked him.

Thus, *cue phrases* can be defined as a set of lexical signals that make coherence relations explicit in surface text, including connectives, clause conjunctions, subordinators and a wide variety of sentential adverbials (cf. Knott and Dale 1994). Moreover, *cue*

phrases are: "...phrases whose function is to link spans of discourse together. Examples of *cue phrases* are *because, meanwhile, but* and *on the other hand*" (Knott and Mellish 1996: 45). To state that *cue phrases* link spans of talk is a way out of the traditional conception that *cue phrases* or conjuncts, in Halliday and Hasan's terms, are linking devices that link a clause with (a) necessary adjacent one(s).

Notwithstanding, traditional cohesion/coherence-based approaches to connectives are unable to account for an example like 23 below, as reported in Rouchota (1998), since their accounts are too strictly rooted in the notion of connectives as linking devices between successive or adjacent clauses:

23. Context: Peter puts some salmon on Mary's plate.
But I'm allergic to fish.

In order to maintain the traditional claim that DCs link propositions, a new account of what is linked should be provided. A way out of the problem could be to say that connectives not only link clauses but also a clause with an ostensive stimulus that is not verbally expressed in this case. However, the impossibility of providing an account of what it is being linked in a sentence like 24 below (as reported in Rouchota 1998: 18) suggests that the coherence-based account of connectives needs to be supplemented by a theory of text construction and selection, of which coherence is just a by-product (Rouchota 1998: 26):

24. Context: Peter comes in through the front door. Mary who was sitting in the living room, goes out in the hall.
Mary: **But** you had to work late shift tonight.

However, one of the most accepted taxonomies is that put forward by Knott and Sanders (1998). In order to identify the many existing coherence relations, four basic notions or primitives are hypothesized as being common to all coherence relations, each of which can take two alternative values (Knott and Sanders 1998: 140):

1. **Basic operation:** every relation is deemed to have either a **CAUSAL** or an **ADDITIVE** component. Causal relations are those where a “relevant” causal connection exists between the spans; all other relations are Additive.

2. **Source of coherence:** every relation is coherent on **SEMANTIC** or **PRAGMATIC** grounds. It is semantic if the spans are related in terms of their propositional content and pragmatic if they are related because of their illocutionary force.

3. **Polarity:** a relation is **POSITIVE** if its basic operation links the content of the two spans as they stand, and **NEGATIVE** if it links the content of one of the spans to the negation of the content of the other span. Negative polarity relations typically involve either a violation of expectation, where the expectation derives from a causal basic relation; or a contrast, where the basic relation is additive.

4. **Order of segments:** this distinction only applies to Causal relations; they are deemed to have **BASIC ORDER** if the antecedent is on the left, and **NON-BASIC ORDER** if it is on the right.

These four cognitive primitives are combined to yield classes of coherence relations, namely, a classification scheme in which 12 classes of relations are characterized. However, these authors were also interested in the linguistic devices used to explicitly signal relations in a text. In this vein, DMs or *cue phrases*, as they call them, help identify the nature of the relations between the sentences of a text, i.e., that the content of one sentence might provide elaboration, circumstances, or explanation for the content of

another. Although *cue phrases* are not defined intentionally, they are said to work in two main linguistic levels³:

1. The **SEMANTIC**: a relation is semantic if the discourse segments are related because of their propositional content.
2. The **PRAGMATIC**: a relation is pragmatic if the discourse segments are related because of the illocutionary meaning of one or both of the segments.

2.1.2.3.1. A Taxonomy of Cue Phrases

On the basis that a text is coherent in virtue of the relations that hold between the elements of that text, and considering that *cue phrases* are the most obvious means of signalling such relations in a text, Knott attempts the construction of a taxonomy or classification of English *cue phrases* entirely based on the author's intuitions. Knott is mainly interested in relational or *cue phrases* as evidence for "psychological" real discourse structuring strategies, and thus a classification of phrases according to their function in discourse is his central objective. The test of substitutability provides him with the necessary tools in order to carry out such task.

Knott follows a three-stage methodology which aims to first assemble a corpus of phrases to study taken from a corpus of academic articles and books. *Cue phrases* are selected by means of a pre-theoretical test for naturally-occurring monologue phrases whose function is to link one unit of text to another. The next step in the methodology is to impose structure on the corpus of *cue phrases*, that is to say, to organize them hierarchically this time to determine whether one phrase can be used in the place of another. A pre-theoretical

³ It should be noted that this distinction between two levels is certainly reminiscent of Sweetser's (1990) three domains of functioning for whom the semantic level would correspond to its content or prepositional domain,

test is developed by means of which a tester chooses a context where one cue phrase *X* naturally occurs, and decides whether s/he, as a writer, would be prepared to replace it with another cue phrase *Y*. Thus, the writer does not want to change what s/he said but how it is said⁴. A total of around 200 *cue phrases* are then carried out into a taxonomy where the relations between each pair of phrases is assessed. In other words, for any two phrases *X* and *Y* in the corpus, it must be specified whether *X* is **SYNONYMOUS** with, **HYPONYMOUS** to, **HYPERNYMOUS** to, **EXCLUSIVE** with, or **CONTINGENTLY INTERSUBSTITUTABLE** with *Y*. Thus, there are four possible substitutability relationships between two phrases *X* and *Y*:

1. If *X* is **synonymous** with *Y*, then they signal the same values of the same features.
2. If *X* is **exclusive** with *Y*, then they signal different values of at least one feature.
3. If *X* is a **hyponym** of *Y* (and *Y* is a **hypernym** of *X*), then *X* signals all the features that *Y* signals, and some other feature(s) in addition, for which *Y* is undefined.
4. If *X* and *Y* are **contingently substitutable**, then *X* and *Y* signal some of the same features, but in addition *X* is defined for a feature for which *Y* is undefined, and *Y* is defined for a feature for which *X* is undefined.

From here the taxonomy is roughly organized into ten categories which are as follows: sequences, causes, results, restatements, temporal relations, negative polarity relations, additional information relations, hypothetical relations, similarity relations and digression relations. As Knott points out, some of these *cue phrases* are unique to a single category, while others are multicategory phrases and thus can appear in more than one category. The taxonomy obtained is moderately hierarchical and does not divide neatly into large

whereas the pragmatic level would embrace her speech-act and epistemic domains of use (cf. Knott 2001 for a detailed critique of Sweetser's tripartite distinction).

⁴ For a full description of the test see Knott and Dale (1994) and Knott (1996).

exclusive sub-groups of phrases. Finally, once the corpus is gathered and hierarchically organized, Knott introduces some motivating individual features expressed in terms of preconditions necessary for the use of different *cue phrases* and the communicative effects achieved by using them. I list them briefly:

1. Semantic and Pragmatic Relations
2. Positive and Negative Polarity Relations
3. Unilateral and Bilateral Relations
4. Causal and Inductive Relations
5. Cause and Result-driven Relations
6. Anchor-based and Counterpart-based Relations
7. Presupposed and Non-presupposed Relations
8. Hypothetical and Actual Relations

2.1.2.3.2. English DMs of RF and Knott's Taxonomy of Cue Phrases

As said above, the taxonomy of *cue phrases* laid out by Knott differentiates ten different categories to express ten different types of relations that normally have a lexical expression associated to it. Among them, the category of **RESTATEMENT** is of special importance for the purpose of this study in that it embraces some of the DMs of RF under investigation, in particular, it provides information about the functions of the following lexical units: *that is to say, that is, in other words, in short, in conclusion, to conclude, to sum up, to summarize, summing up, and to recap.*

The substitutable diagram depicted below allows for the following conclusions with regard to the status these units have and the relations they hold with each other. First of all, the following pairs of synonymous *cue phrases* can be identified:

- That is to say* and *that is.*
- In other words* and *in short.*
- To conclude, in conclusion.*
- To sum up, summing up, to summarize, and to recap.*

These DMs are synonyms in that they occur within the same mother category or the same node. Meanwhile, *in other words* and *in short*, on the one hand, and *or rather* on the other hand, are hyponymous *cue phrases* to *that is to say-that is*. This means, that whenever the former *cue phrases* occur, independently of the context, the latter can always replace them. In a word, phrases in daughter category can always be substituted for phrases in mother category, namely, *that is to say-that is*. For its part, the uses of *or rather* are mutually exclusive with those of *in other words-in short*, and *to summarize-to sum up-summing up* and *to recap*, respectively, which, in turn, belong to exclusive categories as well; that is to say, phrases in one category will never be substitutable for phrases in the other.

The relations holding between the rest of *cue phrases* can be expanded by means of inheritance, which would render *that is to say-that is* as contingently intersubstitutable *cue phrases* with *in conclusion-to conclude*, and *to sum up-summarizing-to summarize-to recap*, respectively. This means that phrases in one category may be substitutable for phrases in the other in certain contexts, but not always.

Or rather stands in a relation of mutual exclusiveness with regard to *in other words-in short*, and *to summarize-to sum up-summing up*, *to recap*. Knott (1996: 181) provides the following examples of substitutability for the group of restatement which in a way illustrate the relations above sketched, where the first lexical cue phrase is the default one, and the rest are provided to the tester in order to account for their suitability. A tick means that they can replace the default cue phrase, whereas a hash indicates just the opposite, a fact that does not indicate ungrammaticality. Notice, however, that not all the relations holding

between each pair of phrases is depicted. He acknowledges this shortcoming and the fact that the taxonomy may not be perfect in that it might be still not very hard to find counterexamples to some of relationships he documents:

25. She'll be here at three o'clock this afternoon.

a. **At any rate, (default expression)**

b. **At least,** ✓

c. **Or rather,** ✓

d. **That is** ✓

e. **In other words,** #

f. **To recap,** #

g. **In conclusion,** #

h. **All in all,** #

i. **Anyway,** #

She hopes to be here at three: she might be a few minutes late.

26. It's high quality, good value for money, and easy to use:

a. **all in all, (default expression)**

b. **to conclude,** ✓

c. **in short,** ✓

d. **summing up** ✓

e. **or rather,** #

f. **on the other hand,** #

g. **at least,** #

the RX-470 is an excellent package, and we highly recommend it.

27. As we have already seen, the story he told to Foley was completely different to the story he has given us.

a. **In conclusion (default expression)**

b. **To conclude,** ✓

c. **In other words,** ✓

d. **In short,** ✓

e. **All in all,** #

f. **To summarise,** #

g. **To recap,** #

h. **Or rather,** #

he must be lying to someone.

28. Foley doesn't like cowards; and if you don't agree to meet him, he'll think you're a coward. If you face up to him, he'll respect you, and he'll be more likely to make concessions.

a. **to sum up, (default expression)**

- b- to recap, ✓**
- c. summing up, ✓**
- d. in conclusion, ✓**
- e. that is to say, ✓**
- f. in other words, ✓**
- g. all in all, ✓**
- h. or rather, #**
- i. anyway, #**

we do think you should go to the meeting, but we don't think that you should agree to his demands.

29. The latest reports indicate that she doesn't want to visit our country.

- a. Or rather, (default expression)**
- b. That is, ✓**
- c. That is to say, ✓**
- d. At any rate, #**
- e. at least, #**
- f. in conclusion, #**
- g. all in all, #**
- h. in other words, #**
- i. to recap, #**

she does not want to visit, but not in the present political climate.

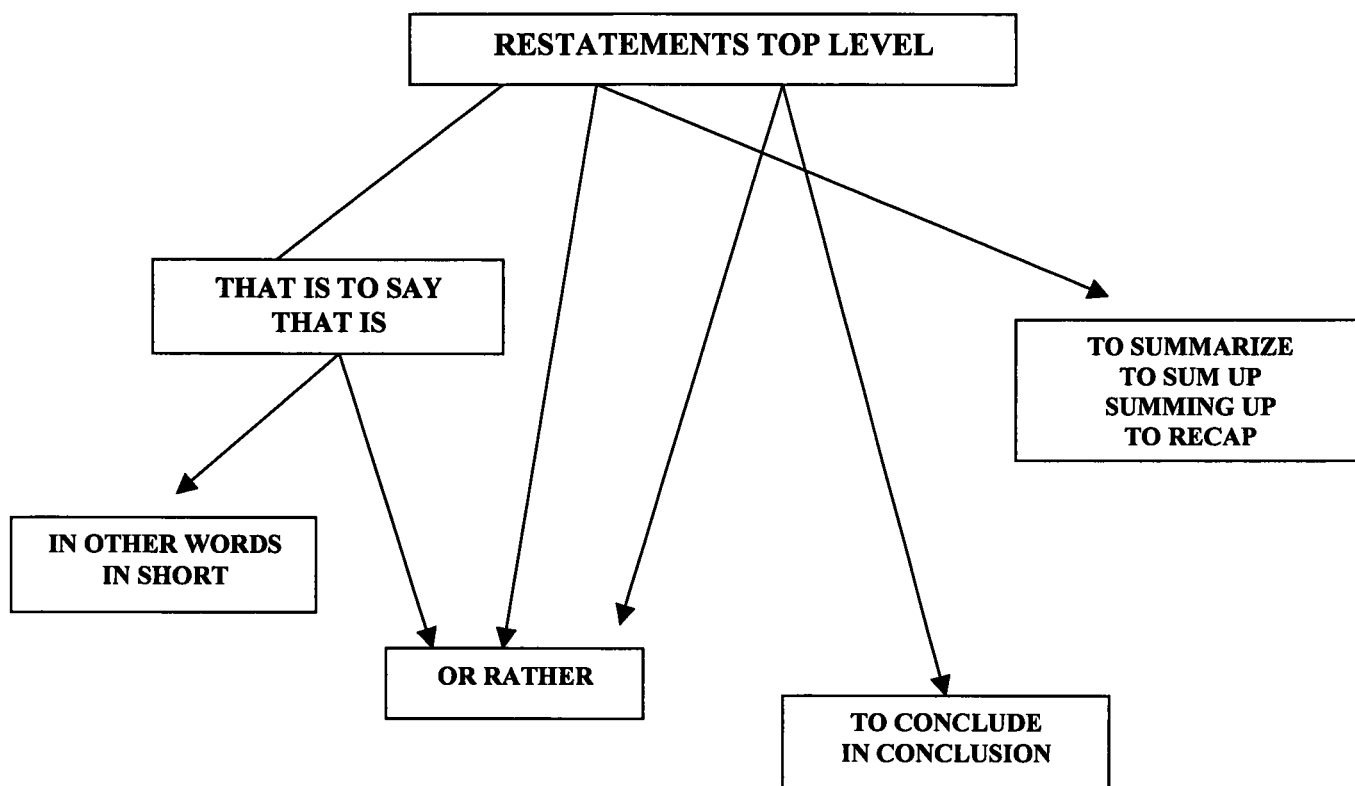


Figure B.6: Restatement Phrases: Substitutability Diagram (adapted from Knott 1996a:

182)

As pointed out before, some of these *cue phrases* are multicategorical in that they can occur in more than one category. Such is the case of *that is-that is to say*, and *in short-in other words*, *in conclusion*, *all in all*, *for example*, *for instance*, and *eg.*, which are can also occur under the category of Result. In this case, *that is to say-that is* are contingently substitutable with *in conclusion* which is the hypernym of *all in all*. Similarly, *in short-in other words* are hyponymous to *that is to say-that is* also under the category of Result. The set of *for example*, *for instance*, and *eg.*, stand in a relation of mutual exclusiveness with regard to *that is that is to say* and by extension-or inheritance-to their hyponyms.

Finally, a set of the following *cue phrases*: *it follows that*, *this implies that*, *hence*, *thus*, *clearly*, *plainly* and *obviously* are hyponymous to *that is to say-that is*, which is, in turn, contingently interchangeable with *so* in some contexts. The following extracts illustrate the relations between these *cue phrases* (adapted from Knott 1996: 179):

30. The footprints are deep, and clearly defined.

a. **It follows that**, (default expression)

b. **plainly**, ✓

c. **that is to say**, ✓

d. **so**, ✓

e. **therefore**, ✓

f. **as a result**, #

g. **finally**, #

the thief was a heavy man.

31. The number is divisible by four;

a. **it follows that**, (default expression)

b. **as a result**, ✓

c. **hence**, ✓

d. **thus**, ✓

e. **instantly**, #

f. **this way**, #

it is divisible by two.

Although Knott does not address the notion of reformulation *per se*, or of the lexical units that I examine here, his taxonomy of *cue phrases* is certainly illuminating in many respects, the outcome being that he sketches a tentative picture of how these DMs relate with each other and members from other groups, and the features developed are a promising test bed for further investigation.

2.1.3. Theoretical contributions from a Pragmatic approach

Within the theoretical contributions from a pragmatic approach I attempt to review the work of Fraser, whose definition and classification of DMs is taken as an organizing principle for my definition and classification of DMs of RF in chapter 3. For that reason, I will briefly present his work here and will later turn to a detailed exposition of his view on DMs in order to show how his framework of analysis bears on the general classification of English DMs of RF that I propose.

Fraser's work on DMs is mainly theoretical, although he has carried out some descriptive effort in his attempt to account for the Contrastive group of DMs, and just recently, for the Elaborative group. Alongside Fraser's contribution, I also review Sweetser's (1990) cognitive approach to conjunctions in order to lay out her postulates about DMs being pragmatically ambiguous and able to function on different domains of use. The presentation of her main postulates lends itself well to a discussion of how different authors have also pointed out the existence of different planes or domains of use of DMs, along with the difference and similarities in their approaches. This would prove, contrary to traditional belief, that this is an issue of long-standing in studies on DMs and

that discriminating between planes of use for DMs is a very useful tool for a pragmatic description of their functions.

2.1.3.1. Bruce Fraser (1990, 1995, 1996a, 1996b, 1998, 1999, 2001, 2002a, 2000b)

For a number of years Fraser has been conducting wide and extensive research on the field of DMs accumulating a substantial body of articles as a result. All these publications aim, in some way, to contribute and elucidate the status and role of these so-called DMs. As Fraser himself points out there has been such a growing interest in the study of DMs that it has almost turned into a growth industry in linguistics. Despite all this work on these units, there is still no apparent consensus on what constitutes a DM, since definitions vary among the different researchers and the frameworks they embrace.

Therefore, in his most recent work on these units (2002) and after reviewing previous theoretical research, the author sets forth to clarify the status of DMs. He approaches these units from a grammatical-pragmatic perspective and addresses several sub-questions to further elucidate what DMs are, along with their defining characteristics:

1. What do DMs relate?
2. What are not DMs?
3. What is the grammatical status of DMs?
4. What are the main classes of DMs?

Fraser's (2002) definition of DM, a definition that will be reiterated in chapter 3 due to its relevance for a description and analysis of EDMs of RF, is the following:

A DM is lexical expressions which for successive discourse segments, S1, S2,
1. is associated syntactically and phonologically as a part of S2;
2. signals a relationship between S2 and S1 which is either one of:
CONTRAST (*but, however, instead...*)
ELABORATION (*and, moreover, in addition...*)
IMPLICATION (*so, then, thus, as a result...*)

TEMPORALITY (*when, then, while,...*)

where S2 and S1 consist of independent messages although they may be syntactically connected⁵.

A) What do Discourse Markers relate?

According to Fraser, DMs are lexical expressions attached to a discourse segment of which they are part, namely S2, which impose a relationship between this S2 segment and some aspect of a previous discourse segment, call it S1. Thus DMs signal a sequential relationship between two parts of discourse, and as such they contribute to the coherence of the discourse. However, the segments related by a DM need not necessarily be adjacent; a DM's scope can relate a segment S2 with the immediately previous segment, but also with several previous segments, or even refer back to a previous stretch of discourse or past conversation, or to non-linguistic contexts. Similarly, a DM can relate the previous segment forward to a sequence of several, associated ones or upcoming discourse. This signaling of sequential relationships roughly coincides with the indexical function that Schiffrin (1987: 315) identifies for DMs, as relating the location of an utterance with the emerging local contexts.

However, for the sequence to be coherent the interpretation of the segments must be compatible with that of the DM used. Fraser takes the position that the relationship is between the explicit interpretation of S2 and some aspect of S1, for example, an implication, a presupposition, and so forth. Thus, a DM more than displaying the relationship between segments, as suggested by Schiffrin (1987), constrains the range of interpretations on S2, given the interpretation of S1 and the meaning of the DM (Fraser 1999: 942).

This relationship can take the canonical form of **S1.DM + S2**, although this is not always the case. A DM can also occur in medial or final positions as illustrated by the following examples, thus participating of certain mobility: (the examples are taken from Fraser 1999: 938):

- 32. Harry is old enough to drink. **However**, he can't because he has hepatitis.
- 33. It is freezing outside. I will, **in spite** of this, not wear a coat.
- 34. We don't have to go. I will go, **nevertheless**.

The initiality that is usually attributed to DMs (although it is not considered criterial for DM status) can be best explained if we consider them as bracketing elements of talk that tend to occur at boundaries (cf. Schiffrin 1987). However, almost all DMs tend to occur initially, fewer occur in final position and still fewer in medial position.

Another issue that Fraser addresses is the grammatical status of the discourse segments which DMs connect. Four cases are identified:

A. The DM relates independent sentences S1 and S2:

- 35. We left late. **However**, we arrived on time.

B. Two independent clauses are joined by a coordinate conjunction (*and, or, but* and *so*) with the canonical structure **S1.DM+S2**, or **S1, DM+S2**. Those cases where *and, but* and *or* merely work as a conjunction within a single message with an elliptical function, are excluded i.e. *Mary and Mike rode horses*; and thus do not introduce a separate message are excluded from the function of DM:

- 36. Jack played tennis. **And** Mary read a book.
- 37. Jack played tennis, **and** Mary read a book.

C. A third case involves DMs such as the following: *As a result (of that), because of this/that, besides, despite this/that, for this/that reason, in addition (to this/that), in comparison (to/with this/that), in spite of this/that, in this/that case, instead (of this/that),*

⁵ The S1 may be empty on some occasion so the discourse segment is not always present.

on this/that condition. These units can occur in the canonical form S1.DM+S2, and in two additional forms:

38. There was considerable flooding. **As a result**, farmers went bankrupt.
39. **As a result of** considerable flooding, farmers went bankrupt.
40. Farmers went bankrupt **as a result of** considerable flooding.

D. The fourth group concerns a group of units, previously rejected as DMs (Fraser 1990) and just recently accepted as such. These set of units only permit the patterns S1, DM+S2 and DM+S2, S1:

41. Mary is angry with you **because** you ran over her cat with your car.
42. Mary will not go, **unless** she's paid an appearance fee.
43. **While** she is pregnant, Martha will not take a plane.

As can be observed, these units function somewhat as subordinate conjunctions and require a previous independent clause present.

B) What are not Discourse Markers?

According to Fraser, excluded from the category of DMs are expressions connecting two segments which, if they signal a relationship between S2 and S1 at all, do not signal one of the four relationships stated above (Fraser 2002: 13-15). Thus, the following types of expressions are not DMs:

Complementizers

44. He believed **that** I was to blame.
45. She had hope **for us to** go.

Assessment markers (*happily, sadly, fortunately, inconveniently,...*) express the speaker's assessment of the message content of S2.

46. We got lost almost immediately. Fortunately, a police officer happened by and helped us
47. Mary hurried as fast as she could. **Sadly**, she arrived 5 minutes too late.

Manner-of-speaking markers (*crudely, frankly, bluntly, metaphorically speaking,...*) express the speaker's view of the manner in which the message in S2 is being conveyed.

48. A: Mark, you've got to do something. B: **Frankly**, Harry, I don't know what to do.

49. You got yourself into this. **Bluntly speaking**, how are you going to get out of this mess.

Evidential markers (*absolutely, certainly, conceivably, most likely,...*) express the degree of assurance with which the speaker is conveying the message in S2.

50. A: Will he go. B: **Certainly**, Harry will go.

51. I have **great concern** over this. **Conceivably**, Tim is right.

Hearsay markers (*reportedly, allegedly,...*) express the source for the message content in S2.

52. A: Is the game on. B: **Reportedly**, the game was postponed because of rain.

53. I won't live in Boston. **Allegedly**, all the politicians are corrupt.

Orientation markers (*now, look see here, y'see,...*) express the speaker's intention to focus on the content of S2.

54. I think you should be concerned. **Now**, take a look over here for a minute.

55. He can't go. **Y'see**, he isn't feeling well.

Modal particles [English is said to have none] (*indeed, German: doch, ya, eben,...*) express emphasis, among other things.

56. John is going to be late. **Indeed**, he is going to be very late.

Focus particles (*even, only, just,...*) express that their meaning applies to a part of the S2.

57. We all took the test. **Even** John sat down and provided some answers.

Pause particles (*hummm, ah, uhhhh, well,...*) express the speaker's intention to hold the floor but without speaking for the immediate future, among other things.

58. A: We should stop now. B: **Hummmmm**, I don't think so.

59. A: Can I leave? B: **Ahhhh**, I wouldn't go just yet.

Interjections (*Gee, Wow, Oh, Nuts,...*) constitute a complete message, a pragmatic idiom.

60. A: The Celtics are playing tonight. B: Oh. At what time? [=I heard and understood you.]

61. A: He won. B: **Wow!** That's fantastic. [=I'm very pleased with that.]

C) What is the grammatical status of Discourse Markers?

According to Fraser, DMs do not constitute a syntactic category *per se*, but rather a functional class. The heterogeneity of this group of units under the label of DMs, the fact that the different syntactic classes from which they are drawn influence their individual syntactic patterning, and that they combine their function of DMs with unrelated functions from the syntactic class to which they belong, along with the different environments where they occur depending on their function, emphasize the difficulty in assigning them a categorial status. DMs are primarily drawn from three sources—conjunctions, adverbs and prepositional phrases—as well as a few idioms like *still and all* and *all things considered* (Fraser 1999: 943). Coordinate and subordinate conjunctions such as *and, or, but, so, since, because* and *while*, also work as DMs, maintaining other functions which are not related to the DM function, as is the case with some adverbials and prepositional phrases whose uses as DMs are less fixed and somewhat ambiguous.

D) What is the meaning of Discourse Markers?

From a semantic perspective, Fraser (2002) maintains that DMs typically have both a CONCEPTUAL meaning as well as a PROCEDURAL meaning, counter to Relevance Theory which analyzes them as having only procedural meaning. Because of this broad notion of DM meaning, both expressions which have very little conceptual meaning (e.g., *but, and, nevertheless*) and those with considerable conceptual meaning (e.g. *as a result, in addition, on the other hand*) are analyzed as DMs, since they function in the same, whereas only the former are permitted by Relevance theorists.

Moreover, Fraser takes up a minimalist approach to the meaning of these units (similar to Schiffrin) and puts forward the idea that every DM has a core meaning for all uses. Notwithstanding, in some specific situations, the context, both linguistic and non-linguistic, together with the core meaning of the particular DM supplies us with whatever additional interpretation is present. This fact does not indicate that there are different uses of the same DM, but, on the contrary, these different interpretations are the result of the interaction between the DM meaning, the specific slot where it takes place and the context (both linguistic and conceptual) that enriches the relationship between the two segments, that is negotiated⁶ under these circumstances.

E) What are the main classes of Discourse Markers?

Fraser latest work (2002) identifies the following four main classes of DMs:

1. ELABORATIVE MARKERS (*above all, also, alternatively, analogously, and, besides, by the same token, correspondingly, equally, for example, for instance, further(more), in addition, in other words, in particular, likewise, more accurately, more importantly, more precisely, more to the point, moreover, on that basis, on top of it all, or, otherwise, similarly, that is (to say), etc.*

2. CONTRASTIVE MARKERS

a. Message Contrast (*alternatively, although, but, contrariwise, contrary to expectations, conversely, despite (this/that), even so, however, in spite of (this/that), in comparison (with this/that), in contrast (to this/ that), instead (of this/that), nevertheless, nonetheless, (this/that point) notwithstanding, on the other hand, on the contrary, rather (than this/that), regardless (of this/that), still, though, whereas, yet.*

b. Topic Contrast (*back to my original point, before I forget, by the way, incidentally, just to update you, on a different note, speaking of X, that reminds me, to change the topic, to return to my point, while I think of it, with regard to).*

⁶ The notion of core meaning as is entertained by most of the authors reviewed, and Fraser in particular, is certainly reminiscent of a strict minimalist approach (cf. Hansen 1998 for a detailed discussion of semantic approaches to discourse markers).

3. IMPLICATIVE MARKERS (*after all, all things considered, as a conclusion, as a consequence (of this/that), as a result (of this/that), because (of this/that), consequently, for this/that reason, hence: accordingly, in this/that/any case, on this/that condition, so, then, therefore, thus*)

4. TEMPORAL MARKERS (*then, after, before, meantime, meanwhile, originally, subsequently, eventually, when, first, second, finally*)

This revised classification includes the group of DMs that relate topics and are mainly concerned with discourse management (expressing digressions, changing the topic, initiating a topic, returning to a topic after a digression, etc.) as a sub-group within the Contrastive group. Similarly, the author chooses the label Implicative over that of Inferential (cf. Fraser 1999) to describe a group where the S2 is to be taken as a conclusion based on S1. Finally, Fraser includes an additional fourth class of DMs, the Temporal group.

Fraser's classification of DMs, and especially his descriptive work on the group of Elaborative DMs, will be taken as the point of departure for the analysis of EDMs of RF in the present study. Thus, I will reiterate the above-sketched classification in greater detail in Chapter 3, where I tackle the issue of DMs in general and provide a definition of reformulation and of EDMs of RF.

2.1.3.2. Eve Sweetser (1990)

A slightly different contribution to the notion of DMs is Sweetser's cognitive approach to meaning that accounts in a unified fashion for three diverse areas of lexicon: polysemy, lexical semantic change and pragmatic ambiguity. Sweetser's study is not concerned with DMs *per se*. Rather, she aims to put forward the claim that some conjunctions (*and, but, or, because*) share three main domains of functioning, the content, speech-act and epistemic

domains. Thus, her initial work on some coordinate and subordinate conjunctions has been extended by others to DMs as a useful tool that helps disambiguate the different domains of use of these lexical units.

Sweetser's standpoint in her book is the fact that multiple form-to-function mappings can be best tackled from a cognitively based approach. In other words, the idea of one semantic value but multiple functions in lexical expressions lies at the core of her approach. Another complementary underlying hypothesis is Sweetser's account of a polyfunctional status of utterances that runs through her book *From Etymology to Pragmatics* (1990). In this light, Sweetser maintains the fact that we have a multi-leveled cultural understanding of language and thought. In particular, she states, we model our understanding of logic and thought process on our understanding of the social and physical world. Simultaneously, she continues, we model linguistic expression itself not only (a) as a description (a model of the world), but also (b) as action (an act in the world being described) and even (c) as an epistemic or logical entity (a premise or a conclusion in our world of reasoning) (Sweetser 1990: 20-21).

Taking all these premises as a starting point, Sweetser accounts for the analysis of verbs, modality, conjunctions and if-then conditionals in terms of multiple form-to-function mappings, according to the domain of the world we perceived, namely, the real or physical world domain (a model of the world), the reasoning world (epistemic or logical entity), and the conversational world (an act in the world being described).

Following the above premises, she considers that conjunctions and if-then conditionals could be understood against a background of this network of inter-domain metaphorical connections" (Sweetser 1990: 22). Thus, it is her main contention that conjunctions, like

modal verbs, are ambiguous among usages in the content, epistemic, and conversational domains in accordance with an utterance's polyfunctional status as a bearer of content, as a logical entity, and as the instrument of a speech act. However, the choice of a correct interpretation depends on a pragmatically motivated choice between viewing the conjoined clauses as representing content units, logical entities, or speech-acts (Sweetser 1990: 78).

She analyzes the uses of some *Contrastive* and *Causal conjunctions*, along with *and*, and *or*, concluding that the syntactic conjunction of clauses can be interpreted in three distinct ways: as a conjunction of content, as a conjunction of premises in the epistemic world, and as conjunction of the speech acts performed via the utterance of the clauses in question. In order to exemplify her postulates let us consider the following examples that illustrate the use of the causal conjunction *because* in each of the three domains identified (taken from Sweetser 1990: 77):

62. John came back **because** he loved her.

63. John loved her, **because** he came back.

64. What are you doing tonight, **because** there's a good movie on.

In 62, real-world causality connects the two clauses: that is to say, John's real love is the real-world cause of his coming back. In 63, however, it is the speaker's knowledge of John's return that causes the conclusion that he loved her. Finally, in 64 the interpretation should be understood within the speech-act domain. It could be observed that the main clause is not even a statement but embodies a speech act whereas the *because-clause* gives the cause of such a speech act. The reading could be along the following lines: "I ask what you are doing tonight because I want to suggest that we go see this good movie".

Sweetser's approach has been retaken throughout the literature as a useful device for the analysis of the pragmatic functions of DMs. Authors such as Fraser (1999, 2002), Knott and Dale (1994), and Jayez and Rossari (2001), among others, have attempted a classification of various discourse units within the three domains posited as a useful method in order to discriminate between the uses of DMs and between the various functions that a DM may display. For that reasons, I have opted to use this terminology for the discrimination between semantic and pragmatic uses of some EDMs of RF. Similarly, I will further assess whether the so-called EDMs of RF can function on other levels than the content or propositional level identified by Sweetser.

2.1.4. Theoretical contributions from a Relevance-Theory approach

The last group of contributions includes those authors who approach the notion of DMs, or DCs within the framework of Relevance Theory. Originally developed by Sperber and Wilson (1984, 1995), this cognitive theory of human communication has brought about a large number of reviews and a constant flow of research in the form of papers not only in the field of linguistics, but also in related areas of research such as psychology and philosophy.

DCs, as DMs are labeled within this approach, constitute first hand ground-testing hypotheses for at least two of the claims that are crucial to this new cognitive approach to human communication. First of all, the claim that DCs are by far "...the best studied case of procedural devices" (Rouchota and Jucker 1998: 3). And secondly, the view that DCs pose constraints on the interpretation of utterances, in opposition to the most traditional

coherence-based approaches to these units as indicators of cohesion between discourse units in a text.

Despite acknowledging the interest of this approach and illustrating the main claims within this framework of analysis for the treatment of DMs, the present study does not use Relevance Theory as a basis from which the description of a group of EDMs of RF follows. Moreover, in chapter three I will look at the reasons for rejecting this framework and will point out some of the deficiencies it poses for the approach of the notion of DM, along the lines sketched in Fraser (2000).

2.1.4.1. A brief sketch of Relevance Theory

Sperber and Wilson's (1986/1995) cognitive model of communication addresses two major questions: first, what is communicated, and second, how communication is achieved. According to this approach, relevance is the key to human cognition. Utterance interpretation involves **DECODING** and **INFERENCE**. Decoding renders the hearer with an incomplete conceptual representation in the sense that it is not fully propositional, to the extent that the speaker has to inferentially enrich the incomplete representation by means of a process of hypothesis formation and confirmation driven by the communicative principle of Relevance.

According to the principle of Relevance, every act of ostensive communication communicates the presumption of its own optimal relevance. In other words, every utterance comes with a guarantee of optimal relevance. Thus, an utterance is optimally relevant on a given interpretation if it achieves sufficient contextual effects to be worth the addressee's while to process it, and if it is the most relevant one the speaker could have

produced taking into account his goals and the hearer's abilities to optimally process the utterance. As a result, the hearer will stop processing as soon as s/he forms and confirms an interpretative hypothesis about the utterance consistent with the Principle of Relevance.

However, the hearer's processing of the information takes place against a background of a set of assumptions, or, in other words, the context where the utterance is expected to be processed. Thus, new pieces of information will combine with the already-existing assumptions or context to yield one out of three main **COGNITIVE EFFECTS**:

1. New information may combine with already-existing assumptions to yield a contextual implication.
2. New information can strengthen already-existing assumptions.
3. New information may combine with already-existing assumptions to contradict or eliminate some of the hearer's already-existing assumptions.

2.1.4.1.1. What do Discourse Connectives link?

One of the main contributions to DMs from a relevance-based theoretical perspective is Rouchota's 1995 and 1998 articles, respectively, "Discourse connectives: what do they link?" and "Connectives, Coherence and Relevance". Rouchota's main aim is to assess whether the linking properties already identified for DMs play any role in language production and especially in language comprehension. She acknowledges the fact that linking properties of these units is a feature that surfaces in almost all contributions in the literature to DMs. However, as she argues, this property does not weigh equally in the different approaches mentioned (Rouchota 1998: 11).

Moreover, if DMs are linking devices we should be able to tell what it is that they link. The two traditional answers suggested in the literature are that connectives link discourse units and that they link propositions. However, both of them fail to build a satisfactory

account of DMs from a relevance theory perspective. Let us consider the following counter-examples where an utterance is linked to a speech-act, to an ostensive stimulus not verbally expressed, and to the contextual situation in general, respectively:

65. Are you busy tomorrow? **Because** there is a Matisse exhibition on.

66. Context Peter hands Mary the \$20 he owes her.

Mary: **So**, you've been paid.

67. Context: Peter is browsing through a PC magazine. Mary comes in the room.

Mary: **So**, you're thinking of buying a computer.

(Rouchota 1998: 16-18)

As can be observed, 65 is a clear counter-example to the traditional claim that DMs link successive clauses. In fact, *because* is linking a clause and the speech act the speaker performs in uttering the sentence. Similarly, examples 66 and 67 are also problematic. A possible solution is the one adopted by Knott and Dale (1994) who analyzes examples such as 66 as a case where the discourse is to be interpreted as a reaction to a previous propositional attitude that they take to arguably be a kind of discourse context (Knott and Dale 1994: 48). In their account, the fact that connectives are linking devices is maintained, although they do not necessarily link a clause and its preceding text as was postulated in earlier approaches. However, and in spite of this illuminating contribution, examples like 67 are inherently problematical for a coherence-based approach. Effectively, in an example like 67 above Mary's reaction cannot even be attributed to the existence of a previous ostensive stimulus, since Peter's behavior might not even be intentional; consider, for example, that he may not have known that Mary was in the living-room.

It is in examples of this sort where Rouchota suggests that traditional coherence-based approaches should be complemented by a theory of context construction and context

selection. This theory, of which coherence would be just a by-product, is Relevance Theory.

The role DMs play within this cognitive approach is slightly different. As was already mentioned, understanding an utterance involves the ability to decide which, amongst its possible interpretations, is the one the speaker intended considering the linguistically encoded content and the contextual implications brought to bear. In order to reduce the number of interpretive hypotheses the hearer may go through before actually arriving at an optimal interpretation, language offers devices that help to achieve this purpose due to their encoded meaning. DMs count among these devices. Connectives are explicit guides that help the hearer in the inferential phase of communication s/he has to undergo in the search for optimal relevance, and thus narrow down the search effort. In this sense, DMs constrain the speaker's search for optimal relevance by offering him/her explicit guidance in the inferential process to follow (Wilson and Sperber 1993; Blakemore 1987).

2.1.4.1.2. The conceptual/procedural distinction

Since Deidre Wilson's lectures on Semantic Theory around 1990 and in many works on connectives since then, (cf. Blass 1990, Blakemore 1992, Wilson and Sperber 1993, Rouchota 1995, 1998, Carston 1995, 1997, or Iten 2000) it has been stressed that the essential property of DCs is that they encode a procedural meaning, that is to say, they guide the inferential process the speaker is expected to go through in order to achieve optimal comprehension. In this way, DMs are best conceived of as CONSTRAINTS on the implicatures of an utterance. It should be noted, then, that this is also the main claim that differentiates the coherence-based account from the relevance-theoretic account of DMs

From a Relevance Theoretic view, the interpretation of utterances involves a process of decoding that renders the hearer with an incomplete representation of the logical form, which needs to be complemented by a process of inference. Thus, it could be argued that utterance interpretation requires the construction of conceptual representations and their manipulation. Utterance interpretation lends itself to the use of two basic tools: REPRESENTATIONS and COMPUTATIONS on which the traditional distinction between two basic types of encoded meaning, viz., procedural and conceptual hinges.

In other words, expressions in language may encode two basic types of information. Some encode concepts, constituents of conceptual representations, i.e., the word “table” or the verb “to jump”. However, not all word meaning is analyzed in terms of conceptual terms. Certain expressions can be seen as encoding information about computations rather than representations: that is, about how the associated utterances should be inferentially processed. Thus their meaning is procedural in that it constrains the inferential phase of comprehension by indicating the type of inference process the hearer is expected to go through (Wilson and Sperber 1993).

The fact that certain expressions do not encode a concept as much as indicate how to “interpret” the sentence or phrase where they occur has also played an important role in Ducrot’s (1972, 1984) and Anscombe et Ducrot’s Theory of Argumentation within Language (1983), in the speech-act theory, where discourse markers were regarded as illocutionary force-indicators, as well as in the Gricean framework where they were seen as embodying a conventional implicature, as we have seen above. Notwithstanding, within the Relevance Theory it was Diane Blakemore who first claimed that an expression might

encode procedural constraints in the inferential phase of comprehension (Sperber and Wilson 1993: 8).

Thus, the role of *so* in a sequence like 68 below is not to contribute to the proposition expressed by the utterance it prefaces, but to constrain the inferential computations the hearer is expected to obtain in his/her search for optimal relevance:

68. a. Tom can open Bill's safe. b. So he knows the combination.

The use of *so* instructs the hearer to process the proposition it introduces in a context in which it can be taken as a conclusion, only if the hearer provides a further contextual premise such as 69:

69. If someone can open Bill's safe, then, they must know the combination.

This view of DMs or connectives as constraining and guiding the inferential phase of comprehension, and the inferences expected to be obtained, along with the context and the contextual effects, is also maintained by some of the Spanish authors reviewed in this work, such as Portolés (1998), Portolés and Zorraquino (1999). Moreover, these authors from the Spanish tradition combine this property along with that of SEMANTIC INSTRUCTIONS and ARGUMENTATIVE ORIENTATION, two notions taken from the Argumentation Theory.

Likewise, Blakemore (1987) analyzes certain DMs in procedural terms. The lexical units *after all*, *so*, *moreover* and *but* act as constraints on relevance, they are both procedural and non-truth-conditional. According to Blakemore (1992: 137) the presence of these constructions in a relevance-based framework is more than justified, since these linguistic units help hearers to interpret utterances in the smallest and most accessible

context by constraining hearers' choice of context, and thus obtain the most adequate contextual effects with no unjustifiable effort.

In this line, it follows that any language will develop structures that constrain the hearer's interpretation of an utterance in one of the three different ways. This gives way to Blakemore's tripartite classification of DCs according to the way their host utterance is intended to achieve relevance⁷:

1. Discourse connectives that introduce contextual implications (*so, therefore, etc*).
2. Discourse connectives concerned with strengthening of already-existing assumptions (*after all, besides, etc*).
3. Discourse connectives that introduce denials (*however, still, nevertheless, but, etc*).

Blakemore's analysis of DMs raises an interesting theoretical question: are the truth-conditional and the conceptual, the non-truth-conditional and the procedural necessarily linked? Does the fact that an expression is truth-conditional imply that it encodes a concept, and the fact that an expression is procedural entail that it encodes a procedure?

Although Blakemore's analysis of these units certainly seems to equate conceptual and procedural meaning with truth and non-truth conditional, respectively, these categories are better seen as crosscutting each other. Wilson and Sperber's recent analysis (1993) has shown that such a correspondence cannot be held. In particular, these authors offer the following possible combinations:

⁷ It should be noted that Blakemore's tripartite classification of *discourse connectives* is strongly reminiscent of the Argumentation Theory's tripartite distinction between Arguments, Counter-arguments and Conclusion.

Conceptual meaning

a. Conceptual+truth conditional

(Most content words including the manner adverbials “seriously”, “frankly”, etc. They encode concepts, which are constituents of the proposition expressed by the utterance, and hence contribute to truth conditions.

b. Conceptual + non-truth conditional

Some types of sentence adverbials, including attitudinal and illocutionary adverbials. They encode concepts that are constituents not of the proposition expressed but of higher-level explicatures. They can be true or false in their own rights.

Procedural meaning

a. Procedural+Non-truth-conditional

Discourse connectives such as *so* and *after all*. They encode procedural constraints on implicatures but do not contribute to the truth conditions of the utterances they link.

b. Procedural+Truth conditional

Certain pronouns which encode procedural constraints on explicatures.

Illocutionary force indicators: mood, word order, illocutionary particles. They encode procedural constraints on higher-level explicatures.

2.1.4.2. Diane Blakemore on Discourse Connectives (1987, 1988, 1989a, 1989b, 1992, 1996, 1997)

One of the most influential authors who put forward the claim that DMs encoded procedural meaning within this framework is Blakemore. As has been already said, this author provides an insightful analysis of these units as encoding procedural meaning and constraining the hearer’s space search for optimal relevance with the outcome of three different types of cognitive effects. Similarly, and faithful to the framework by which she abides, Blakemore offers an insightful account of a group of **PROPOSITIONAL DISCOURSE MARKERS**, or DMs of RF and views them as outside the paradigm of DCs on the basis that they lack procedural meaning and thus are conceptual, although they do not contribute to

the truth conditions of the utterances they introduce, but rather to its higher-level explicatures.

Blakemore's (1987) point of departure for her study on DMs reinterprets Grice's (1975: 45) notion of conventional implicature, a non-truth conditional inference, and reanalyzes it in procedural terms, thus putting forward the claim that DMs encode a particular type of meaning, namely, procedural meaning. Before I begin to delve into Blakemore's approach to DCs as semantic constraints on relevance, it might be useful to shed light into Grice's (1975, 1989) view on some DCs.

Grice (1975) introduced the notion of **IMPLICATURE** which he defined as a proposition conveyed implicitly by an utterance. Such a proposition is considered implicit to the extent that it is not part of what is actually "said", that is to say, it is not part of the truth-conditional content of the utterance that conveys it. In this vein, in the Gricean sense, a **CONVERSATIONAL IMPLICATURE** is an implicit proposition derived from an utterance, on the basis of the meanings of the words uttered, the context, and the assumption that the speaker is observing the Cooperative Principle and certain maxims of conversation.

Thus, as reported in Blakemore (1992: 147), an answer such as the one in 70b will be totally adequate on the assumption that the speaker was trying to be informative, a fact that will lead the hearer to derive assumption 71:

70. A. I've run out of petrol.

B. There's a garage down the road.

71. A can obtain petrol from the garage down the road.

On the contrary, a conventional implicature is an implicit proposition encoded in a particular linguistic expression, and thus semantically decoded rather than inferred. Grice

views linguistic units such as *therefore*, *so* or *but*, as giving rise to conventional implicatures which do not encode truth-conditional meaning, and which, in the specific case of *therefore*, force us to interpret the segment they host as a consequence of the first premise, no matter the context where the utterances may be produced:

72. He is an Englishman. He is, **therefore**, brave.

(Blakemore 1992: 147)

In turn, the use of *therefore* indicates that the utterance it introduces should be taken as a consequence of his being English. Notwithstanding, Grice's initial account falls short of a more elaborate description of this phenomenon of conventional implicature. It is not until more recently that Grice (1989) further developed this notion and set out to analyze conventional implicatures in conceptual terms, which involves a two-level speech act analysis reminiscent of the analysis of performative expressions and parentheticals. Grice exemplifies this new approach with the contrastive expression *on the other hand* in his *Retrospective Epilogue* (1989: 49):

73. My brother-in-law lives on a peak in Darien; his great aunt, **on the other hand**, was a nurse in World War I.

Grice states that:

Speakers may be at the one and the same time engaged in performing speech acts at different but related levels. One part of what [the speaker of (24)] is doing is making what might be called *ground floor statements* about the brother-in-law and his great aunt, but at the same time he is also performing a *higher-order speech act* of commenting in a certain way on the lower-order speech acts (italics are mine).

(Grice 1989:362)

Thus, the higher-level speech act of some contrast between the propositions in 73 is conventionally implicated by means of the use of *on the other hand*, while two lower-

speech acts are simply communicating the propositions that his brother-in-law lives on a peak in Darien, and that his great aunt was a nurse in World War I. Notwithstanding, the higher-level speech act suggests that both of the speech acts explicitly conveyed by the propositions in 73 contrast in some way. Since this implicit proposition of contrast is present with every use of *on the other hand*, it should be considered as encoded by the use of the DC, rather than arising from inference. To sum up, this third higher-order speech act amounts to a conceptual meaning, ('(a) contrasts with (b)'), though one which is non truth-conditional.

In this light, Grice's intuitions show that if we wished to restrict the notion of meaning to truth-conditional meaning, we would be entitled to say that *on the other hand* is totally "meaningless". However, it seems quite clear that Grice himself intended conventional implicatures to be traceable to the meaning of particular words and phrases (Grice 1989:18). The main force of Grice's arguments, then, is to show how an expression could be simultaneously meaningful and non truth-conditional (cf. Wilson and Sperber, 1993, Schourup 1999: 244).

However, the question that remains to be answered is whether DCs such as *so*, *after all*, *on the other hand*, etc, are best seen as encoding procedural or conceptual meaning. Thus, Wilson and Sperber (1993) compare Grice's approach to these units with Blakemore's procedural account by analyzing the connective *so*. This analysis will provide the theoretical grounds for the rejection of Grice's conceptual approach over a procedural and much more adequate one developed by Blakemore. Let us consider 74 below:

74. a. It's raining.
b. So the grass is wet.

According to Grice the use of *so* indicates that the S is performing the speech-act of explaining, with 74b being put forward as an explanation. Thus, what was conventionally implicated by the use of *so* is that '(a) explains '(b). On the contrary, for Blakemore, *so* is an Inferential connective that indicates that the assumption that follows is a conclusion. On her account, 74b is put forward as a conclusion drawn from 74a. The procedural information encoded by *so* is "Process (b) as a conclusion".

Wilson and Sperber (1993) state that there are purely descriptive reasons for preferring Blakemore's approach since Grice's does not account for all uses of *so*. Neither does their approach. Moreover, another piece of direct evidence in favor of Blakemore's approach is the fact that most DCs take a great deal of effort for the speaker to explain them in conceptual terms:

Discourse connectives are notoriously hard to pin down in conceptual terms. If 'now' or 'well' encodes a proposition, why can it not be brought to consciousness? Why is it so hard for non-native speakers of German to grasp the meaning of 'ja' and 'doch' [...] the procedural account suggests an answer to these questions. Conceptual representations can be brought to consciousness; procedures cannot.

(Wilson and Sperber 1993: 16)

2.1.4.3. Blakemore's account of Discourse Markers of Reformulation (1993, 1994, 1996)

Blakemore has been recently concerned with the notion of reformulation (1993, 1994) and Reformulation markers (1996) in an attempt to reconsider the traditional notion of Apposition (cf. Burton-Roberts 1975, 1994; Quirk et al. 1985; Meyer 1992; Halliday and

Hasan 1976, Fraser 1990; Knott and Dale 1994) in pragmatic terms. From a relevance-based theoretical framework this author questions the adequacy of DMs of RF, in particular, units such as *that is (to say)*, *in other words*, or *in sum*, within the so-called group of DMs on the grounds that the former encode conceptual meaning, whereas the latter encode procedural meaning or instructions about how to manipulate concepts in order to facilitate comprehension (cf. Fraser 1990, Jucker 1993 and Schourup 1999). Thus, an utterance such as the one exemplified above, can be interpreted as a premise or a conclusion depending on the DM used. The use of one marker or another imposes a constraint on the implicature to be recovered, on the hearer's choice of context and on the contextual effects to be obtained. Let us just consider again the example presented above:

75. a. Tom can open Bill's safe.

b. Ø/So/After all, he knows the combination.

(Blakemore 1996: 333)

Notwithstanding, Blakemore is well aware of the fact that the equivalence between procedural and non-truth conditional meaning, which her account hinges on, does not seem to hold (Blakemore 1996: 333). Recent work has drawn attention to a wide range of expressions, i.e. illocutionary adverbials or parentheticals that although not contributing to the truth conditions of the utterances that contain them, encode conceptual meaning. In this line, Blakemore equates the function of these illocutionary adverbials with a group of expressions traditionally referred to as Apposition markers, in order to first show their unacceptability within the wider class of DMs, and second, their unacceptability in non-linguistic discourse contexts, within the postulates of Relevance Theory. Among this group of expressions, we find *that is (to say)*, *in other words*, *in sum*, and *for example*.

Blakemore's intuition that Wilson and Sperber's arguments for a conceptual analysis of sentential adverbs also apply to some apposition markers leads the author to establish the following parallelism between the units under analysis:

A. A speaker who uses these linguistic units can be charged with untruthfulness (Wilson and Sperber 1996: 334). Consider the following exchanges.

76. a. **Seriously**, I can't help you.

b. That's not true. You're never serious (Wilson and Sperber 1993: 12)

77. a. She said she no longer requires your services

b. **In other words**, she said I'm fired.

c. That's not true. She didn't say that.

The fact that both sentential adverbs and apposition markers encode conceptual meaning allows for exchanges such as the ones above.

B. Expressions like *in other words* or *that is to say* are semantically complex and very productive. There are variants such as *to put it in other words* or *putting it more elegantly*. (Wilson and Sperber 1996: 334). The same holds for sentential adverbials.

78. **Frankly speaking**, he has a negative charisma.

C. Apposition markers have synonymous counterparts that are truth conditional and encode concepts.

79. Mary told Peter **seriously** that she couldn't help him

a He asked me to put it **in other words**.

b. **That is the same** as saying I'm fired. (Wilson and Sperber 1993: 12)

The only difference between these expressions and their synonymous counterparts is that in interpreting 76-79 above, the speaker has to incorporate these concepts into a **HIGHER-LEVEL EXPLICATURE** some elements of which are not encoded but inferred. Thus, there seems to be good reason to treat illocutionary adverbials as both non-truth-conditional

and conceptual, thus abandoning the idea that all non-truth conditional meaning is necessarily procedural and cut to a single pattern. (Wilson and Sperber 1993: 13).

Similarly, Wilson and Sperber indicate that this analysis of sentential adverbials seems to be co-extensive with the treatment of illocutionary adverbials within a speech-act account in which an illocutionary adverb such as *seriously* is seen not as contributing to the proposition expressed by the utterance, but as modifying the type of speech-act performed.

Infantidou's (1993) analysis of parentheticals is another source for Blakemore's analysis of apposition markers as conceptual and non-truth conditional. According to Infantidou, parenthetical constructions encode elements of conceptual representations, which may be true or false in their own right, even if they do not contribute to the truth conditions of the utterances in which they occur. Similarly, and to the extent that they are non-truth-conditional, parenthetical constructions, rather than contributing to the proposition expressed, contribute to what Sperber and Wilson call higher-level explicatures. By definition, higher-level explicatures do not contribute to the truth conditions of the utterances that communicate them, though they may be true or false in their own right.

Thus, the utterance involves two discourse units, the second of which achieves relevance as a comment on a higher-level explicature of the first:

80. John is in Berlin, **I think**.

a. John is in Berlin.

b. The speaker thinks this. (adapted from Infantidou 1993)

In this respect, it has been put forward that DMs of RF can be treated as parenthetical comments (cf. Tanaka 1997) in that they constitute a syntactically independent unit that achieves relevance by commenting on the relevance of the discourse unit they are linked to.

To recap, Blakemore's approach consists in dissociating units such as *that is to say*, *in other words*, *for example* and *in sum*, which are apposition markers, from DCs on the basis that the former units introduce an Elaboration-Reformulation on the previous discourse segment, whereas, the latter, introduce contextual assumptions in one of the three following ways:

1. Strengthening already-existing assumptions.
2. Rejecting or eliminating already-existing assumptions.
3. Deriving new assumptions.

Despite this innovative approach with regards to Apposition markers which-attempts to dissociate them from the broader category of DMs on the grounds of the conceptual-procedural distinction, I am not working within the Relevance Theory paradigm. For the purpose of this dissertation, the lexical units under the label of DMs of RF are included within the broader category of DMs, and specifically as a sub-class of Fraser's (2002 unpublished manuscript) **ELABORATIVE DMs**, and I maintain, in the line of this author, that DMs can have both types of meaning, though some have one type more than others. Fraser's latest overview on DMs states that "... unless you want to exclude all expressions with transparent content meaning (e.g., *in addition*, *consequently*, *for that reason*, *as a result*, *in contrast*, *conversely*, *furthermore*, etc.) from the ranks of DMs, you have to adopt the position that they all, potentially, have both types of meaning" (Fraser 2002 unpublished manuscript). In chapter three I provide the grounds on which a relevance-approach is not followed and its postulates rejected for an analysis of EDMs of RF.

2.1.4.4. Blakemore and rationale for reformulating

Some questions that Blakemore's account treats in detail are the following: "Why do speakers reformulate their initial utterances?", "Why does a speaker have to bother to reformulate something that has been just uttered?", and "What is the relevance of reformulations?". Although it was not my main concern to offer a detailed explanation of the underlying motivations that might drive speakers to reformulate their utterances, I aim to offer a brief exposition of the possible rationale behind a reformulation in the light of Blakemore's main contribution.

Within this cognitive approach to communication Blakemore views reformulations or the decision to reformulate an utterance as a decision based on the speaker's recognition that his/her initial formulation did not succeed in achieving optimal relevance (cf. Antos 1982; Gülich and Kotschi 1983; Roulet 1987; Rossari 1994 for whom reformulation is aimed towards the achievement of interactive completeness).

Blakemore goes one step further and establishes a distinction between the role of reformulations in unplanned discourse as carried out because the speaker recognizes that the original formulation did not achieve optimal relevance, and thus are directed towards the pursuit of relevance; from reformulations in planned discourse where they can only be justified as a decision about style, which like all decisions about style, is constrained by the search for relevance (Blakemore 1993:102). They are produced to achieve certain contextual effects, rather than to make up for a previous failure to communicate.

In this vein, Blakemore's (1993, 1994, 1996) approach to the notion of reformulation is based on the notion of **INTERPRETATIVE RESEMBLANCE** and the underlying postulates that there are all sorts of phenomena that can be used as representations of phenomena which

they resemble. Notwithstanding no two phenomena are exactly alike, and communicators expect their audiences to identify the respects in which the resemblance holds (Blakemore 1993: 105). This resemblance between two utterances can involve resemblance in phonetic and phonological form, in lexical and syntactic form or in their logical properties. Thus, although the segments in 81 are not logically equivalent, they still resemble each other in some way in the sense that they give rise to the same contextual implications:

81. a. Tom can open Bill's safe.
b **that is**, he knows the combination.

According to Sperber and Wilson, in these cases where the resemblance involves the sharing of logical and contextual implications, the utterance can be said to be relevant as an interpretation of a thought. In this vein, a speaker who intends his utterance to be understood as an interpretation cannot necessarily be attempting to create expectations of truthfulness, since the utterance does not entail a description of a state of affairs, but only to create expectations of faithfulness. Thus, the optimally relevant representation of a thought does not necessarily have to be the fully literal one. The case of *summaries* is a clear example of this.

If the decision to reformulate one's own or some else's utterance is governed by a desire to constrain the interpretation of one's own or another speakers's utterance, it must be further elucidated what type of constraints these DMs of RF under analysis place on the inferential phase of comprehension. According to Blakemore, DMs of RF are best understood as constraints on explicatures, which contribute to the explicit side of communication; whereas DMs such as *but*, *so*, or *therefore* contribute to the implicit side of communication and constrain the implicatures to be obtained.

However, Blakemore's analysis has been widely criticized. Tanaka (1997) has successfully pointed out that some of these apposition markers, namely, *in other words*, can also be seen as contributing to the implicit side of communication and thus introduce the speakers' own implicatures

There are different ways of contributing to explicit communication, namely, by further enriching the proposition expressed in S1, disambiguating it, assigning reference, or embedding it into a higher-level explicature, thus indicating the speaker's attitude towards it. However, in addition to Tanaka's analysis of *in other words*, some other recent approaches have already corroborated that apposition markers can function by constraining both implicated premises and implicated conclusions. For a thorough examination I refer to Murillo's (1999) analysis of Explicatory markers of Reformulation and also Archakis' (2001) analysis of four modern Greek DMs of RF.

In the light of these new results, a clarification of the status of these units is urgently needed, at least within the Relevance Theory perspective, since these markers do not seem to communicate an alternative means for the original formulation any longer. In this sense they would fall under Wilson and Sperber's (1993) procedural and non-truth conditional meaning, along with linguistic units such as *so, therefore, however*, etc.

However, it is my intuition that such discrepancies and the different assessments on reformulators from different authors and different languages, is only indicative of the fact that, although illuminating and certainly insightful for the description of DMs, a radical subscription to the Relevance theoretical framework may only result in an impoverished view of the functions DMs of RF display. Thus, I have opted to stay away from the terminological confusion posited by the strict acceptance of a framework of analysis such

as Relevance Theory. In keeping away from and not subscribing completely to any of the different possible frameworks of analysis, I consider that my analysis will gain in precision and clarity and will undoubtedly present a non-biased description of DMs of RF in the English-speaking world.

2.2. French studies on Discourse Markers of Reformulation

2.2.1. The notion of Reformulation: origins

The deference to French studies on DMs of RF in this study mainly stems from their consideration and development of the notion of reformulation, an aspect overlooked to a great extent by research on English. Moreover, the French studies, both theoretical and descriptive, stand out as work that attempt to provide a classification of the so-called DMs of RF.

The notion of reformulation originates within the Text Linguistics, in particular, in the work of Antons (1982), and it is further developed and reinterpreted into a discourse relation by the work of the Geneve group with Roulet at its head, along with many articles dealing with these units, either individually or as a group. Below, I briefly present the Geneve School's main postulates for a study of DMs within a theory of discourse. Similarly, I will attempt to examine some of the most important contributions to the development of the notion of reformulation.

In this vein, I will begin with the work by Gülich and Kotschi (1993) which triggered numerous studies on reformulation and the markers that display such an activity, along with Roulet's (1987) and Adam and Revaz's (1989) approaches and assessment of these units. Rossari's (1990, 1994) analysis of DMs of RF in French and Italian offers a successful

account of these units from a contrastive perspective and sheds some light on the importance and necessity of contrastive analysis of this sort. Finally, I will present some descriptive studies on individual DMs which pertain to the aim of this dissertation, namely the study of Charolles and Coltier (1986) on *c'est-à-dire* and *autrement dit*, (*that is to say*, and *in other words*, respectively), that of Murat and Cartier-Bresson (1987) on *c'est-à-dire*, and Flottum (1994) on *c'est-à-dire* and its Norwegian counterpart.

2.2.2. French researchers on the notion of Reformulation

2.2.2.1. The Geneva School

The Geneva school provides an important theoretical framework for the study of DMs in French. DMs are studied within the discourse-structural postulates of this school, which in several respects owes its insight to Argumentation Theory (Ducrot 1984) in their attempt to handle authentic and not just “ideal” discourse. Scholars such as Roulet et al. (1987) and Moeschler (1985) have developed this theory of discourse which views conversation as a form of negotiation, subject to certain types of constraints. One of the key notions of this framework, and a recurrent one in later studies is that of interactive completeness, a goal that is achieved when interlocutors reach an agreement upon which the interaction may be closed. This school also sets out to examine the different conditions that allow the interconnection of utterances so that interaction may continue (conditions d'enchaînement) along with the conditions that allow interaction to come to an end (conditions de clôture), based on a notion of well-formedness or co-textual coherence. The interest in extra-linguistic factors is thus reduced to a minimum. The Geneva School views conversation as hierarchically analysed into units of a lower or higher level, namely, acts and interventions

and exchanges, respectively. Thus, DMs or connectives are best seen as connecting the different constituents of conversation, which results in the structuring of discourse.

Drawing on Roulet's (1981) postulates, three main groups of DMs are distinguished:

1. Markers of Illocutionary function
2. Markers of Interactive function that mark the relationship between one or more subordinate constituents and the main act of a given move.
3. Markers of Conversational structure (Auchlin's 1981). Some of them have identical counterparts among the markers of interactive function.

2.2.2.2. Gülich and Kotschi (1983)

Gülich and Kotschi's (1983) work stands out as one of the most important and influential within the field of reformulation. These authors attempt to assess and describe French DMs or RF in a corpus of spoken French. Their starting point lies in the belief that there exist different expressions that can be used to signal a paraphrastic relationship between two segments of discourse, and which play a key role in the organization and structuring of discourse. The fact that these expressions have not yet been systematized and have constituted a neglected area of research leads them to take the notion of paraphrastic reformulation, or simply **PARAPHRASE**, as the object of their study.

For Gülich and Kotschi a paraphrase counts as one effective means which allows speakers to solve any communicative problems likely to be encountered throughout any communicative exchange, such as problems of comprehension or problems regarding the social relationships established between interlocutors, to name a few.

In this line, paraphrastic reformulation, or simply paraphrase, calls for the presence of a marker (from the French "marqueur") since "without the presence of a marker it will be difficult to identify an utterance or understand it as a paraphrase of another utterance

(Gülich and Kotschi 1983: 305) ” (my translation). Thus, it is their main concern to analyze the expressions of segmental nature that they label “marqueurs of reformulation paraphrastique”, or **PARAPHRASTIC MAKERS OF REFORMULATION**. These expressions are, above all, helpful devices in the organization of discourse and their discursive and interactive functions should be assessed. Thus, there are three main questions that these authors set out to answer and which constitute the underlying objectives of their research:

1. What are the elements that can function as paraphrastic markers of reformulation?
2. What function do paraphrastic markers of reformulation play in the organization of discourse and, by extension, in the organization of verbal interaction in general?
3. What are the discursive and interactional functions that a paraphrastic marker displays when used to signal a paraphrase?

In order to account for all these questions, Gülich and Kotschi’s provide an explanation of two basic notions underlying their approach and assessment of paraphrastic markers of reformulation, namely those of reformulation and paraphrase. In the following discussion I shall offer a clarification of these two notions and their relevance.

Gülich and Kotschi’s study ascribes to the postulates of Text Linguistics from which their notion of reformulation is coined, along with Antos (1982) and Franck (1980)’s work on the theory of reformulation and the notion of interaction, (from the French “interactivité”). Thus, the existence of discourse processes is maintained, and that of paraphrase is one of them, triggered by means of paraphrastic markers of reformulation.

Antos (1982) provides one of the key notions for a theory of reformulation, that of **INTENTIONAL ACTIVITY**. According to this author, when a speaker produces an utterance s/he is carrying out an intentional activity and is responsible for the results s/he presents to

the hearer. However, the production of an utterance entails a considerable effort on the part of the speaker in order to overcome certain communicative problems or difficulties. Thus, to formulate a text is an intentional activity on the part of any speaker that principally stems, according to Antos, from the urgent need to solve communicative problems and to successfully transmit the speaker's communicative intention (Gülich and Kotschi 1983: 313). Formulating a text is then a process of successive formulations and reformulations where each new utterance must be accepted or rejected by the hearer. It will be the audience, then, who decides if the first formulation satisfies their communicative needs or if, on the contrary, some further explanation, precision, or correction of it is required in order to obtain interactive completeness.

These communicative problems originate in the interactive nature of discourse itself and in the fact that what one wants to communicate may be different from what one actually says or writes, thus triggering a new formulation or reformulation of a first utterance which fell short of conveying the speaker's communicative intentions. As a result, the use of these markers serves as a trace of the effort that the speaker invests in order to overcome communicative problems and to organize the discursive activity. In other words, with the help of a marker of paraphrastic reformulation, the speaker inevitably conveys the provisional nature of the first proposition while announcing that a new formulation or reformulation is "on the way".

In turn, Antos (1982) states that what triggers the process of reformulation is merely a problem of communication, that is to say, the need to assure comprehension, and overcome problems that concern the interlocutors' face-preserving needs. It is precisely for this very reason that whenever a speaker hesitates with regard to his/her formulation, and indicates

by means of the marker the provisional character of it, s/he is also displaying that s/he has encountered communicative problems or obstacles. Paraphrastic reformulation counts among the means that help surmount these obstacles and resolve communicative problems (Gülich and Kotschi 1983: 335). Therefore, the notion of interaction, and above all, that of discourse as an interactive activity, is of great importance for the study of paraphrastic markers of reformulation, since they are useful tools for the production of discourse, and the organization of oral communication in general.

The notion of paraphrase that Gülich and Kotschi develop is related to the notion of “paraphrase contextuelle” (Ungeheuer 1969) or “paraphrase communicative” (Rath 1979, Wenzel 1981 and Wahmhoff 1981) viewed as the result of a discursive paraphrastic activity (my translation) (Gülich and Kotschi, 1983: 307) or “activité discursive de paraphrasage” (Kohler-Chesny 1981). In this light, the emphasis lies equally on the activity of the speaker, and on the fact that a paraphrase also entails a **PREDICATION OF IDENTITY** between utterances (“prédication d’identité, Mortureux 1982: 51): “deux énoncés sont produits et enchaînés de telle manière qu’ils doivent et peuvent être compris comme ‘identiques’”. (Gülich and Kotschi 1983: 308) (“two utterances are produced and connected/related in such a way that they must and can be understood as identical”) (my translation). This definition of predication of identity inevitably calls for a reconsideration of the notion of paraphrase, traditionally approached from a syntactic-semantic perspective, which would take into account pragmatic considerations.

The structure of a reformulation can be best described as containing a source-segment (énoncé-source), a doubled-segment (énoncé-doublon) and a marker of paraphrastic reformulation to signal the existing paraphrastic relationship. However, the presence of the

marker is not a necessary condition although it counts as one means to indicate the existing paraphrastic relationship, or syntactic parallelism and repetition, among others. DMs of paraphrastic reformulation count among the most explicit mechanisms, and are probably the most important means, to signal a paraphrase (Gülich and Kotschi 1983: 309).

The next step in Gülich and Kotschi's study is to include these markers of reformulation within a sub-category of **PRAGMATIC CONNECTORS** drawing on Roulet's (1981) classification. This author establishes two sub-groups of pragmatic connectors, namely, those of the reactive illocutionary function type ("marqueurs de fonction illocutoire réactive") that portray an utterance as a reaction/confirmation of a preceding utterance; and those of interactive function ("marqueurs de fonction interactive"). Markers of paraphrastic reformulation seem to be closer to the latter group due to their key role in the organization of discourse. On these grounds, Gülich and Kotschi also report some similarities and differences between these lexical units and Auchlin's (1981) markers of conversation structure "marqueurs de structuration de la conversation".

Once the foundations of their framework have been laid out, Gülich and Kotschi attempt a tentative classification of markers of paraphrastic reformulation based on the analysis of several oral conversations. Although they indicate that their approach is tentative and will better remain provisional, these authors succeed in accounting for a group of markers of paraphrastic reformulation. The only criterion they establish in order to identify a lexical unit as a marker of reformulation is the existence of a paraphrastic relationship between two utterances or segments of discourse linked by a certain semantic equivalence (Gülich and Kotschi 1983: 315) (my translation). Thus, they propose the following two main categories of markers of paraphrastic reformulation and within these

categories they identify two subcategories depending on the more or less stereotyped nature of the expressions:

I. Complex expressions containing nouns or verbs which send back to communicative processes such as “*dire*” (to say), “*expliquer*” (to explain), “*préciser*” (to precise), “*terme*” (to name), “*exemple*” (to illustrate), etc. in the line of Text Linguistics’ postulates.

Ia. Less stereotyped expressions: *je vous donne ces précisions, pour préciser exactement ma pensée, quand je dis X, je le répète, je vous l’explique*, etc.

Ib. More stereotyped expressions: *c’est que, c’est-à-dire (que), je veux dire (que), voyez ce que je veux dire, je m’explique*, etc.

II: In the second category they group morphemes and idiomatic expressions that traditionally fall within the realm of conjunctions, adverbs, interjections, etc.

II a Single items: *ah, ah ou, ah ben, alors, bon*, etc.

IIb. Combination of items forming sequences of MPRs: *alors déjà si vous voulez, eh ben alors voyez, ou alors de toute façon*, etc.

Gulich and Kotschi underline the fact that these markers of paraphrastic reformulation can also have other functions besides that of reformulation. Those under sub-group Ib clearly display a paraphrastic relationship between segments of discourse even if the semantic equivalence between them is dubious or non-existent. For others, notwithstanding, it is much more difficult to identify a function of reformulation. This is the case of the markers under the second category, for which the notion of context plays a key role in disambiguating and establishing this function. But what determines the choice of a particular marker of paraphrastic reformulation?

Among some of the factors that may influence and determine the choice of marker Gulich and Kotschi point to structural and semantic constraints. Structural constraints deal with the different positions the marker may occupy, namely initial, medial or final position

in relation with the source-utterance and the doubled-utterance. Moreover, the type of paraphrase is also a key aspect for the choice of a particular marker. These authors establish the following typology of paraphrases:

A. A speaker may reformulate with the aid of a paraphrase his/her own utterances or those of his/her interlocutor. In the former situation, both the source-utterance and the doubled-utterance come from the same speaker. In the latter situation, the interlocutors are different.

B. The initiative to reformulate an utterance may be taken by either the speaker him/herself (the speaker of the doubled-utterance) or by the audience. The first situation seems to be the norm, whereas in the latter the new formulation is triggered by a reaction from the interlocutor or audience.

C. A paraphrastic relationship may link two utterances or segments of discourse that are contiguous or separated, having other segments intercalated in between them.

D. Degree of complexity of the paraphrase. The paraphrastic relationship may be complicated by two main procedures, namely, that of enchainment of paraphrases and that of embeddement.

Thus, they offer the following extract where the uttering of *aha* with an interrogative contour prompts the speaker in question to reformulate his/her initial utterance on the grounds that the audience's reaction may be an indication of the unsuccessful conveyance of his/her communicative intention with the first formulation:

82. A: (...) sur mon balcon j' ai des araignées rouges,

M: aha (aha)

A: euh j' ai eu des an des araignées rouges sur des des pins maritimes, [ES] bon je vous l'explique (...) [MPR1] parce que des pins maritimes sur un balcon.

A: on my balcony I have red spiders

M: eh?

A: I've had red spiders on the sea pine-trees, well, I mean, (laughing a little) because the sea pine-trees on the balcony...) (my translation).

As I pointed above, Gülich and Kotschi aim to elucidate the role of markers of paraphrastic reformulation in the organization of discourse, since they indicate how the speaker organizes his/her verbal activity. For that purpose they set out to first examine the general function of these units as a group, and second the specific functions they may play in different contexts.

The main general function of these markers relates to the notion of SEMANTIC EQUIVALENCE presupposed in any paraphrastic relationship. However, this semantic equivalence is a matter of degree and ranges from maximal to minimal equivalence between both segments of discourse. Cases of maximal semantic equivalence are best exemplified by means of structural repetition, as illustrated with the following extract by Gülich and Kotschi (1983: 325):

83. A: euh, j' ai eu des an des araignées rouges sur des des pins maritimes, bon je vous l' explique (en riant un peu) parce que des pins maritimes sur un balcon
M: *oui ce sont des bonzaïs*
A: *oui ce sont des bonzaïs, voilà.* (M.J.: Araignées rouges 1/6-11).

A: I've had red spiders on the sea pine-trees, well, I mean, (laughing a little), because the sea pine-trees on the balcony....
M: *Yes, they are bonsais.*
A: *Yes, they are bonsais, that's right.*

As opposed to this case of maximal semantic equivalence, there are other situations where the semantic equivalence holding between segments is minimal. In these cases it is obvious that the paraphrastic relationship cannot be established without the help of a marker that helps display a predication of identity (Mortureux 1982: 51) despite the lack of semantic equivalence between segments.

Thus, Gülich and Kotschi (1983: 327) formulate a provisional definition of the general function of markers of reformulation in which they emphasize that their use allows the addresser to identify two utterances as forming the two terms of a paraphrase, even in those cases where the semantic equivalence is reduced, or even non-existent. As a result, it seems to be the speaker who monitors the process of interpretation that the interlocutor has to carry out.

However, another important consideration follows from the discussion above, namely, that the degree of semantic equivalence holding between the discourse segments will be crucial for the choice of marker within one category or another. Thus, the stronger the semantic equivalence between the S1 and S2, the higher the chances that a Group II marker will be used. Let us recall example 83 above, where due to structural repetition the semantic equivalence between the utterances is maximal. Thus, both utterances can be only differentiated by the intonation with which they are produced. In contrast, this example clashes with 84 below where the semantic equivalence between the utterances is minimal:

84. B: cet enracinement dans la mémoire va l'amener es à s'enraciner dans deux valeurs essentielles. Qui sera la terre. La terre russe le paysage russe les forêts de bouleaux les plaines et qui sont merveilleusement représentées sur les images. Et ce qui est beaucoup plus profond, et beaucoup plus délicat étant donné les pays dans lequel il vit. L'âme slave. C'est-à-dire ce qui est difficilement définissable l'âme avec tout ce qu'il y a de mystique.

This deep-rootness in the memory will root him in two essential values. (First) What will be the land: the Russian land, the Russian landscape, the forests of pine-trees, the prairies that are extraordinarily depicted in the images. And (second) that which is much deeper/more profound, and much more delicate given the country where he lives: the Slav soul. That is to say, that which is hardly definable: the soul with all its mysticism.

(Le Masque et la Plume 8/1/1978)

Despite this, the use of a marker from Group I forces the interpretation that the segments connected hold some semantic resemblance, though minimal. Conversely, the weaker the equivalence, the higher the chances that a group I marker will be used. As a result, it seems that the degree of semantic equivalence will constrain the use of markers from one group or another.

Along with this general function of markers of paraphrastic reformulation, Güllich and Kotschi (1983: 328) identify three main types of relationships holding between the members of a paraphrase, namely, **EXPANSION**, **REDUCTION** and **VARIATION**. I briefly illustrate them below.

A. Expansion: The second member or doubled-utterance displays a greater complexity of meaning than the reformulated source-utterance:

85. et ce soufre (...?) qui s'est qui était il est sublimé c'est-à-dire qu'il est vraiment euh en poudre, en poudre très, très fine.

and this sulfur which was sublimated, **that it to say** that it is certainly in a powder, a very, very fine powder.

(Güllich and Kotschi 1983: 318)

B. Reduction: the paraphrases under this label present the doubled-utterance as a condensation of the source-utterance meaning.

86. A: C'est un semis que j'ai fait y a y a deux ans.

M: ah bravo.

A: et euh j'en ai *une véritable petite plantation* puisque j'en ai une quinzaine.

M: ah *une vraie forêt*.

A: It is a field that I sowed, err, two years ago.

M: Ah, great.

A: And, mm, I have a really small plantation, because I have fifteen.

M: Ah, a real forest!.

(Güllich and Kotschi 1983: 329)

C. Variation: this label subsumes those paraphrases that fall neither under expansion nor reduction.

87. A: alors vous savez que les bonsaïs y a une sorte de de d'éthique à respecter on n'aime pas tellement y mettre dessus des produits chimiques, (...)

A: (...) les produits chimiques du commerce. D'abord on n'aime pas très bien...les les les mettre sur des des arbres qui sont quand même assez fragiles.

M: oui et qui sont aussi l'expression de d'un arte de vivre d'une philosophie' et je vous comprends parfaitement, hein'.

A: Let's see, you know that with bonsais one has to follow a certain sort of ethics; we do not like putting chemical products on them at all.

A: (...) the chemical products in the stores. Firstly, we don't like to put them in the trees which are, in themselves, quite fragile.

M: Yes and they are also the expression of an art of living, of a philosophy, and I understand you perfectly well

(Gülich and Kotschi 1983: 329)

(my translation)

2.2.2.3. Roulet (1987)

Roulet, as head of the Geneva group of conversational pragmatics, takes as a starting point for the definition of the notion of reformulation and the markers that serve such a function the conception of discourse as negotiation. This consideration of discourse as a negotiation forces the speaker to grasp more clearly the different constraints underlying the structuring and closing of discourse constituents at two main levels: exchanges and intervention. According to this conception, any intervention is aimed to maintain what he terms interactive completeness, that is to say, that the speaker's intervention might not be perceived as out of place, incoherent or unclear. Moreover, it is precisely the speaker who has to overcome any of these communicative problems by achieving interactive completeness by means of different strategies.

The speaker can achieve interactive completeness by means of one of the following devices: first of all, in order to avoid that his/her intervention should be perceived as

unclear or disorganized, s/he can make use of metadiscursive commentaries addressed towards the specification of the illocutionary act, or to the protection of the interlocutor's image; similarly, s/he can make use of comments that point to the co-text of the intervention. For his/her intervention to be perceived as coherent, the speaker can introduce arguments and then reject them by means of argumentative or counter-argumentative connectors. In this case, the enunciator construes an intervention made up of a main act and one or more subordinated acts.

From this starting point, Roulet develops the idea of INTERACTIVE FUNCTIONS to characterize the relationship holding between main and subordinated constituents of an intervention and further distinguishes between RITUAL and ARGUMENTATIVE interactive functions. Besides these two functions, Roulet (1987: 114) points to a third interactive function which he exemplifies with the following extract:

La leçon de Genette pourrait alors être celle-ci: il faut prendre le paratexte en considération, écouter ce qu'il exprime; il guide notre lecture parfois sans qu'on le sache. En fait, pour nous libérer de l'intention de l'auteur, mieux vaut la connaître partout où elle s'affiche. Ou se dissimule.....
(D. Eribon, *Le Nouvel Observateur*, 20-26.87)

Thus Genette's lesson could be as follows: it is necessary to take the para-text into consideration, listen to what it conveys; the para-text guides our reading, sometimes without us realizing. In fact, in order to get rid of the author's intention it is better to recognize it wherever it is exhibited or disguised...
(D. Eribon, *Le Nouvel Observateur*, 20-26.87)

(my translation)

If one tries to delimit or characterize the interactive relationship between the first discursive movement and the main intervention introduced by the form *en fait/in fact*, it is pretty obvious that it cannot be characterized in terms of an argumentative relationship. In fact, what the speaker does is to retroactively subordinate a first tentative formulation of

Genette's lesson, which he views as incomplete or unsuccessful, to a new formulation, which entails a change in utterance perspective explicitly signaled by means of the marker *en fait*.

In light of the lack of a much more appropriate label, Roulet (1987: 117) terms this third type of interactive relationship non-paraphrastic reformulation, and defines the markers which serve such a function as follows:

Nous posons qu'un connecteur reformulatif subordonne rétroactivement un mouvement discursif antérieur, ou un implicite, à une nouvelle intervention principale, en indiquant un changement de perspective énonciative. Il intègre les deux constituants qu'il articule dans une intervention de rang supérieur. Le changement de perspective énonciative opéré varie selon le connecteur reformulatif utilisé.

We postulate that a marker of reformulation subordinates retrospectively a previous discourse movement or an implicit one to a new and main intervention, and in doing so, signals a change in utterance perspective. It integrates the two constituents and articulates them in a unit of higher rank. The change of utterance perspective effected varies according to the reformulator used.

(my translation)

Thus, a marker of reformulation subordinates retroactively a previous discourse movement, or an implicit one, to a new main intervention, indicating a SHIFT in utterance perspective. Moreover, the two constituents it integrates are articulated in an intervention of a superior rank. This change of utterance perspective varies according to the marker of reformulation used. The aim of this operation of reformulation is to assure that interactive completeness is maintained.

Roulet's posits a distinction between paraphrastic and non-paraphrastic reformulation, motivated by the fact that the former signals a relationship between two segments at the same hierarchical level, thus being a simple case of paraphrase or mere restatement,

whereas, in contrast, the non-paraphrastic is signaled by markers such as *au fond*, *en somme*, *somme toute*, *tout compte fait*, *tout bien considéré*, *finalement*, *en définitive*, or *en fin de compte*, among others. Their use brings about a change in utterance perspective, the result of which can be a reconsideration, distancing or even rejection of the perspective signaled in the first act or intervention.

The label of markers of reformulation is preferred to that of conclusive or reevaluative markers used by other authors (cf. Spengler 1980, Jayez 1983, and Schelling 1982, Roulet et al. 1985, 1986, respectively) on the grounds that their use yields a change in utterance perspective. Moreover, Roulet insists on the notion of utterance perspective and states that sometimes it is difficult to decide whether the reformulation involves an explicit immediate constituent in the discourse, or an implicit one, and in the former case whether the limits of this segment of discourse that is retrospectively subordinated can be established with precision.

Roulet (1987: 120) attempts a classification of these markers of reformulation taking the notion of shift in utterance perspective as a starting point. This shift may be seen to operate in three different ways:

1. By putting in brackets or invalidating the previous utterance perspective, i.e.: *en toute cas, de toute manière*.
2. By signaling the new perspective adopted by the speaker taking into account the degrees of reality or factuality, i.e.: *en fait, en réalité*.
3. By indicating the type of utterance shift operated.
 - (i) By specifying or not the operation that brings about the shift in utterance perspective. Roulet points to the difference between *en fin de compte* and *finalement*, *tout compte fait* and *après tout*.

(ii) By indicating or not whether the operation involves the totality of its elements. Special attention is devoted to *somme toute* and *en somme, après toute* and *finale*.

(iii) By indicating or not temporal dimension. See the differences between *en fin de compte* and *tout compte fait, après tout* and *somme toute*.

2.2.2.4. Adam and Revaz (1989)

Adam and Revaz's work approaches the study and classification of markers of ENUMERATION and REFORMULATION within the framework of Text Linguistics, and more specifically, within the genre of descriptions in French. These authors postulate the existence of different functions that these markers can fulfill depending on the nature of the sequence.

My interest in their approach to the notion of reformulation lies in the tentative classification they provide regarding the different ways of materializing the operation of reformulation. For Adam and Revaz, and in the line of the postulates of Text Linguistics, the notion of reformulation counts among the different means that help achieve cohesion and coherence in a text, while guaranteeing the sequential continuity of discourse. Authors such as Slakta (1975) has emphasized the role of paraphrase in the achievement of textual cohesion and indicates that the activity of reformulation may participate of a similar role, since it allows us to link two lexical segments, but above all, it helps fix sense (cohesion and coherence) in an assemblage of utterances.

Adam and Revaz successfully point out some of the deficiencies posed by previous studies on the notion of reformulation, specially the works of Charolles and Coltier (1986), Roulet (1987) and the number 73 (1987) in the Journal *Langue française*, exclusively dedicated to this notion. All of them are considered far too general in their description of

the phenomenon of reformulation. Charolles and Coltier (1986) identify the notion of reformulation as a too specific operation of textual composition whose presence reveals the effort and work carried out by a writer or speaker, and the control s/he exerts on his/her own contribution in the line of Gülich and Kotschi (1983). Markers of reformulation are thus traces of the speaker's activity always carried out while bearing in mind the presence of a cooperative hearer or audience.

Since Adam and Revaz's work focuses on the assessment of the role of the activity of reformulation within descriptive texts, they mention the need to go beyond the study of paraphrastic reformulation as carried out by Gülich and Kotschi (1983), and Charolles and Coltier (1986). Therefore, they opt to maintain Roulet's traditional distinction between paraphrastic and non-paraphrastic reformulation as a key notion for their assessment of descriptive texts. Similarly, non-paraphrastic reformulation is the type these authors would be more concerned with for their analysis of markers of reformulation in French descriptions. Roulet keeps the label reformulation since it is the speaker's aim to satisfy and fulfill interactive completeness, that is to say, his/her communicative and interactional needs by presenting the main utterance as a new formulation of a first discursive movement, either explicitly or implicitly stated, with a shift in utterance perspective, a shift that is displayed by the use of a marker. Moreover, it is non-paraphrastic to distinguish it from its counterpart, namely, the paraphrastic one, that simply establishes a relation of identity between two successive but differently formulated discourse constituents at the same hierarchical level, and that constitutes, as its name indicates a simple case of paraphrase (Roulet 1987: 115).

Adam and Revaz lay out a classification of markers of reformulation based on their syntactic position, more specifically their final position at the end of a sequence or sub-sequence:

1. A group of reformulators mark CLOSING and relate to the notion of paraphrase where the reformulation is carried out syntactically: *(en) bref, donc, enfin, finalement, en fin de compte, au fond, dans le fond, au total, en somme, somme toute, après tout, tout compte fait*, etc.
2. A second group of markers more involved with INTERPRETATIVE RETAKE than with the notion of closure: *en un mot, en d'autres termes, c'est-à-dire, autrement dit*, etc.

These authors summarized the different forms that the activity of reformulation can take in the descriptive text as follows, where N1 and N2 represent the discourse segments:

- a. N1 + [punctuation] (Apposition) + N2.
- b. N1 + *(bref donc enfin)* + (C'est) N2
- c. N1 + *en un mot, autrement dit, pour tout dire, Autant dire, en d'autres termes, c'est-à-dire* + N2.
- d. N1 + *s'appelle/ nommés* + N2 (proper noun)

Thus, the activity of reformulation can be realized by means of mere paraphrase, or apposition, or with the aid of DMs such as *bref, donc, enfin*, that signal closure, or with *en un mot, autrement dit, pour tout dire*, etc. more concerned with interpretive retake and close to paraphrastic markers of reformulation. It can even be carried out by means of lexicalized expressions such as *s'appelle/nommés*, as illustrate the following examples:

88. Quoi qu'il en soit, l'autobus repart. C'est devenu une voiture particulière (...)

No matter who is in it, the bus leaves. It has become a private car (...).

89. [Context: the description of an ideal young girl in Belle Du Seigneur d'A. Cohen, could be interrupted by:
(...) **Bref**, une Colombe.
(...) In short, a dove.

90. (...) Nous allions être amants, amis, complices. **En un mot** complémentaires.

(...) We were going to be lovers, friends, accomplices. **In a word**, we were going to complement each other. (literally complementary)

91. Ces agrostis **nommés** les épis du vent (Balzac, le lys dans la vallée).

These gramineous plants called “the wind’s ears”.

The activity of reformulation can thus be generally summarized as follows:

- a. N1 + (M.R.) [être (un)] + N2
- b. E.S. (source-utterance) E.R. (reformulated-utterance)
- a) Simple lexeme + enumeration or sequence of utterances (S₁...S_n)
- b) Sequence of utterances (S₁...S_n) + simple lexeme.

As can be observed, the means for the linguistic codification of the operation of reformulation are manifold and can be best seen on a continuum where we find, on the one hand, lexical forms which are more or less specialized, and on the other hand, constructions such as simple apposition. Thus, Charolles and Coltier (1986: 54), state that “...Les possibilités de marquage d’une opération de reformulation sont donc plus nombreuses que celles qu’offrent les seuls marqueurs lexicaux du type ‘c’ est-à-dire’, ‘autrement dit’, ‘en d’autres termes’, etc”. (“The possibilities of signaling an operation of reformulation are then more numerous than the ones offered by the lexical markers of the type “c’est-à-dire” (*that is to say*), “autrement dit”, “en d’autres termes” (*in other words*), etc”) (my translation).

However, the notion of reformulation may operate locally, that is to say, with or without an explicit marker of reformulation; or, on the contrary, it may operate at the level of discourse where it can give way to a **CONDENSATION** or **EXPANSION** of the first segment reformulated. Let us consider the following examples that illustrate a reformulation that

operates locally in 92 and 93 below and an example of condensation and expansion, in 94 and 95, respectively:

92. (...) Un genre de dame patronnesse, la sécheresse de l'entre-deux âges, **c'est-à-dire** la cinquantaine dépassée. (L. Bodard, La Chasse à l'ours)

Some kind of patron lady, the dryness of the in-between-ages period, **that is to say**, being fifty something.

93. Ah, l'antre d'Anne Marie, sa grotte, son salon! (L. Bodard, id.)

Ah, Anne Marie's cavern, her cave, her salon!

94. La Seiche (*Sepia officinalis*) est un Cephalopode d'une trentaine de centimètres, commun au voisinage des côtes où il vit sur les fonds sableux des prairies marines. La tête, flanquée de deux yeux volumineux, porte la bouche munie de deux puissantes mâchoires cornées (bec de perroquet). La bouche est entourée d'une couronne de huit bras courts, couverts de ventouses sur leur face interne (bras locomoteurs), et de deux longs bras grêles, terminés en cuillers munies de ventouses, rétractiles dans deux poches latérales (bras préhensiles). (...)

The cuttlefish (*Sepia officinalis*) is a cephalopod some 30 cm. long, usually found close to the coast where it lives on the sandy bottom of marine prairies. On its head, flanked by two protruding eyes, opens a mouth having two powerful horny jaws (parrot's beak). The mouth is surrounded by a crown of eight short arms, covered with suckers on their internal side (driving arms), and two thin long arms showing, at the end, claws furnished with suckers. These arms can be retracted into two lateral pockets (prehensile arms).

95. (...) Ou bien on les [les cocons] confie au tisserand du village. Il les plonge dans l' eau, les agite avec "l'escoubette"-un petit balai de genêt qui permet d'éliminer les premières couches irrégulières et impropres au filage de la soie-enroule le fil sur un dévidoir et le met enfin en écheveaux prêts à tisser (N. Robatel, Au temps des métiers).

Or, otherwise, the cocoons are given to the village's weaver. He soaks them in water, stirs them with the "escoubette" (a small broomstick which helps eliminate the outer irregular layers which are not suitable for spinning), winds the thread round a bobbin and, finally, makes into balls ready to be woven.

2.2.2.5. Rossari (1990, 1994)

Rossari's book attempts a detailed description and classification of some French and Italian DMs within the framework of the discourse analysis carried out by the Geneva group of linguists with Roulet. The markers she focuses on are labeled non-paraphrastic markers of reformulation from the French term "connecteurs reformulatifs non paraphrastiques". The decision to concentrate on this subgroup of connectives is well explained by the author and I will just briefly outline Rossari's main assumptions, basically drawing on Roulet (1987) and Roulet et al.'s (1985) previous account of markers of reformulation.

Before actually establishing a classification of the different sub-groups of non-paraphrastic markers of reformulation, Rossari attempts a characterization of the main differences that lie between the Interactive function of Reformulation and that of Argumentation, which will undoubtedly shed some light on the notion of reformulation *per se*.

Among the different interactive functions that can hold between two discourse acts, from the French "actes discursifs" (Roulet 1991), the interactive function of reformulation seems more prone to be explicitly codified by means of a connector or marker; whereas the interactive function of argumentation can hold without the presence of a marker explicitly displaying such a relationship. Consider the following fabricated example from Rossari (1994: 6):

96. A: Comment as-tu trouvé le nouvel appartement de Christian ?

B: Il es vraiment génial, il a un quatre pièces avec une vue magnifique sur la cathédrale et le jet d'eau, les pièces sont grandes et lumineuses. Il faut absolument que tu ailles le visiter.

A: How did you like Christian's new apartment?

B: It's really great, there are two rooms, it overlooks the cathedral and the water fountain, and the rooms are spacious and luminous. You really have to go and see it.

According to Rossari, B's answer is made up of two utterances that fulfill an argumentative function since they serve as premises which lead to the conclusion: "you really have to go and see it". However, if we introduce a marker of reformulation such as *enfin, de toute façon*, the relationship of argumentation-that of Argument-Conclusion- is replaced by one of Reformulation. Notwithstanding, the presence of the marker does not rule out the interactive function of argumentation that holds between these discourse acts. Thus, if the only relationship holding between two utterances is that of reformulation, the absence of a marker will render the sequence incomprehensible, since the marker is the signal that legitimates such a relationship. On the contrary, in the case of a function of argumentation, the use of a marker will only make an existing relationship between the segments more explicit.

In this account, Rossari (1994: 7) concludes that "Il semble donc que la relation interactive de reformulation soit tributaire d'un marqueur fonctionnant comme déclencheur de cette relation, à la différence de la relation interactive d'argumentation". ("It can be said that the recognition of an operation of reformulation seems to entail the presence of a marker susceptible of signaling/triggering such a relationship, as opposed to the interactive relationship of argumentation") (my translation). Therefore, an analysis of the semantic-pragmatic features of the markers of reformulation will allow us to further elucidate the specific nature of this operation.

Next, Rossari concerns herself with the classification of these DMs of RF within the framework developed by Roulet et al. (1985) and Roulet (1987). According to Roulet et al. pragmatic connectors can be classified into four main categories, as mentioned above, namely: the Argumentative group, the Consecutive group, the Counter-argumentative group and the Re-evaluative group. All these groups share the property of signaling an argumentative function, although Roulet (1987) questions the argumentative function within the group of the re-evaluative markers. As has been noted above, Roulet (1987) adds to the existing argumentative and ritual functions, a third one, namely the Reformulative that he defines as follows:

Celui-ci est caractérisé par une opération de *changement de perspective énonciative* émanant d'une *rérointerprétation du mouvement discursif* antécédent: le locuteur, suite à une première formulation donnée comme autonome et donc formant un premier mouvement discursif, en ajoute une seconde qui vient englober la première en la subordonnant rétroactivement. Cette nouvelle formulation, présentée comme un acte principal (Ap), est introduite par un connecteur reformulatif. L'usage de ce dernier permet au locuteur d'indiquer explicitement le changement de perspective énonciative opéré. (italics are mine).

(Roulet 1987: 120)

This function is characterized by a shift in utterance perspective resulting from the retrogressive interpretation of a previous discursive movement: the speaker, after a first formulation which is presented as independent, and thus, forming part of a first discursive movement, adds a second formulation or reformulation, which includes the first one by retroactively subordinating it. This new formulation, presented as a main act (Ap) is introduced by a marker of reformulation or reformulator. The use of the marker allows the speaker to explicitly signal the change or shift in enunciative perspective)

(my translation).

This notion of **RETROGRESSIVE INTERPRETATION** becomes crucial for the activity of reformulation since it refers to the speaker's activity of changing his/her attitude towards some point of view or utterance perspective explicitly expressed in a previous discourse

constituent, or accessible from their so far established universe of discourse. Thus, the function of reformulation should be best interpreted as a process of retrogressive interpretation whereby the reformulation does not only entail a modification of the grammatical form, but also of the point of view expressed in the new discourse constituent. This feature of the function of reformulation is best accounted for in the cases of HETEROREFORMULATION (cf. Gülich and Kotschi 1983) where the reformulation involves the interlocutor's discourse and not the speaker's.

Moreover, the notion of retrogressive interpretation along with that of point of view will be a decisive factor for determining what operation falls under the notion of reformulation. Therefore, Rossari postulates that such retrogressive interpretation is not to be found in the case of paraphrastic reformulation. The connectives or markers that indicate this type of operation (*c'est-à-dire*, etc.) establish a relationship of identity between the discourse constituents they link (S1 and S2). Gülich and Kotschi (1983: 307-8) also emphasize that besides the semantic equivalence or resemblance between the discourse constituents, there is a predication of identity (*prédication d'identité*), a notion taken from Mortureux (1982), whereby two utterances are produced and enchainé in such a way that they should and could be understood as identical.

Therefore, in order to identify a relationship of paraphrase they emphasize the need for a marker or connector of paraphrastic reformulation, although there are certain occasions where they admit such a relation without the presence of a marker of reformulation. On the contrary, in the case of non-paraphrastic reformulation: "L'usage d'un connecteur reformulatif se révèle donc indispensable pour que le locuteur puisse exprimer ce en quoi consiste le changement de perspective énonciative" (Rossari 1990: 348). ("The use of a

marker of reformulation becomes indispensable for the speaker to indicate the change or shift in utterance perspective operated”) (my translation).

Similarly, Rossari dissociates herself from this requirement of predication of identity mentioned above and goes one step further in that for her, the relation holding between the discourse constituents does not necessarily have to be one of semantic equivalence. She postulates that the mere semantic and pragmatic instructions of these markers are enough to establish a relation of reformulation, even if the discourse constituents are not semantic equals, as the following example shows:

97. A: Où est le directeur?

B: Le directeur est malade, **c'est-à-dire** il a prolongé ses vacances.

A: Where is the boss?

B: The boss is ill, **that is to say**, he has prolonged his holidays.

In this example, where the first formulation and the reformulation are not semantic equivalents, it is the marker, due to its semantic characteristics, which brings about a predication of identity between the two discourse segments, which results in a relation of paraphrastic reformulation. From her observations, three potential types of paraphrastic relations can be envisaged between two discourse constituents and the use of a marker of paraphrastic relation:

A. Both constituents participate of a semantic equivalence or resemblance without a connector to make explicit such a relation (as reported in Rossari 1994: 15):

98. “Bon, si on humidifie un petit peu plus, ...si on brumise un petit peu le feuillage des plants”

“Well, if we wet it a bit more, if we wet the leaves of the plants a little bit”.

(Gülich and Kotschi 1983: 307)

B. Both constituents are semantic equivalents and are linked by means of a marker. This second case can be illustrated by merely inserting a marker such as *c'est-à-dire* in order to make the semantic equivalence between the verbs "humidifier and brumiser" explicit, along with the syntactic parallelism which can be observed to hold between them:

99. bon, si on humidifie un petit peu plus, **c'est-à-dire** si on brumise un petit peu le feuillage des plantes...

Well, if we humidify a little bit, **that is to say**, if we wet the leaves of the plants a little bit...

C. There is no semantic relation between both constituents but the mere presence of a marker of paraphrastic reformulation forces the reader to interpret them as semantic equivalents, due to the pragmatic and semantic instructions the marker possesses. This third case can be illustrated with an example mentioned before:

100. Le directeur est malade, **c'est-à-dire** il a prolongé ses vacances.

The boss is ill, **that is to say**, he has prolonged his holidays.

Rossari states that it is only in cases such as 99 above that she will call paraphrastic reformulation. With regard to the operation of paraphrastic and non-paraphrastic reformulation, the author operates under the following criteria:

La discrimination entre opérations de reformulation paraphrastique et non paraphrastique se fera donc sur la base du fonctionnement sémantico-pragmatique du marqueur: si ce marqueur permet d'opérer une réinterprétation du point de vue auquel il renvoi selon une nouvelle perspective énonciative annoncée par les instructions sémantico-pragmatiques du marqueur, il s'agit d'une opération de reformulation non paraphrastique. Ce changement de perspective énonciative donne alors lieu à une prise de distance plus ou moins forte de la part du locuteur par rapport au point de vue auquel il renvoie, selon le connecteur utilisé: un marqueur peut indiquer, par exemple, que le locuteur condense sa première formulation, ou, à l'inverse, qu'il la remet en question. Dans le premier cas, la reformulation sera en général introduite par des connecteurs tels que *en somme*, *en un mot*, *bref*, et la prise de distance sera modérée; dans le second, elle sera introduite par *en tout cas*, *de toute manière*, *enfin* et la prise de distance sera plus accentuée.

The discrimination between operations of paraphrastic and non-paraphrastic reformulation will be carried out on the basis of the semantic-pragmatic

properties of the marker: if the marker allows a retrointerpretation of the point of view it refers to according to a new enunciative perspective announced by the semantic-pragmatic instructions of the marker, an operation of non-paraphrastic reformulation is at hand. The shift of enunciative perspective brings about a more or less strong dissociation of the speaker with regard to the point of view it refers to, according to the marker used: a marker can indicate, for example, that the speaker condenses the first formulation, or, on the contrary, that it questions it. In the first case, the reformulation will be carried out by markers such as *en somme*, *en un mot*, *bref*, and the dissociation will be a moderate one; in the second type, the reformulation will be carried out by *en tout cas*, *de toute manière*, *enfin* and the dissociation will be more accentuated.

(Rossari 1994: 17)
(my translation)

Thus, the discrimination between markers of paraphrastic and non-paraphrastic reformulation will be based on the notions of retrogressive interpretation and shift in utterance perspective. If the marker allows for a change in utterance perspective on the basis of a reinterpretation of the preceding discourse unit or first formulation, a non-paraphrastic relation will be displayed. This shift in utterance perspective involves, according to Kotschi (1997), some sort of downgrading of the first discourse segment, in the sense that the point of view it expresses is contrasted with another point of view, introduced by the second discourse segment, and the speaker marks this second point of view as more appropriate than the one in S1, and thus, as decisive for the continuation of discourse. Moreover, this shift in perspective yields what has been called “prise de distance” or some dissociation of the speaker from the first utterance interpretation. Such dissociation is taken as the organizing principle for a classification of French connectives/markers of non-paraphrastic reformulation under the following four sub-groups or sub-sets, depending on whether this dissociation is more or less strong. In this respect:

- 1) Markers of RECAPITULATION or “weak” dissociation (*récapitulation*): *en somme, en un mot, bref*;
- 2) Markers of RECONSIDERATION (réexamen) or “moderate” dissociation: *tout bien considéré, tout compte fait, somme toute, après tout, en fin de compte, finalement, en définitive*;
- 3) Markers of DETACHMENT (distanciation) or “strong” dissociation: *en tout cas, de toute façon, de toute manière, en fait, de fait, en réalité, au fond*;
- 4) Markers of RENUNCIATION (renonciation) or invalidation: *en fin*.

Rossari attempts a detailed study of the French connectives that belong to the four subclasses along with their Italian counterparts using a contrastive approach that is very productive. She succeeds in providing an impressively rich description of the distributions and functions of each of these connectives and of the system of oppositions existing between them (Kotschi 1997: 701).

However, Kotschi (1997) indicates some minor deficiencies that stem from her results. As I have already mentioned, Rossari was mainly concerned with the distinction between paraphrastic and non-paraphrastic reformulation based on the criterion of retrogressive interpretation of a point of view expressed in the preceding discourse constituent. If there operates a shift in utterance perspective the connective belongs to the subset of connectives which signal non-paraphrastic relationships, whereas if there is no such retrogressive interpretation, the connector will signal some sort of identity between discourse constituents and thus “...permet d’opérer une prédication d’identité entre deux points de vue” (“...allow the predication of identity between two points of view to operate”) (Kotschi 1997) (my translation). Notwithstanding, I agree with Kotschi’s (1997) when he states that there seems to be no evidence that the applicability of this very criterion cannot be

considered to give results which are as clear-cut and unambiguous as one would wish them to be. Kotschi's words raise a note of caution that must be taken into account for any approach to the notion of reformulation:

One may therefore still have one's doubts about whether it is really possible to think that the distinction between paraphrastic and non-paraphrastic reformulation neatly corresponds to the opposition between retrogressive interpretation and the process of establishing a relation of identity between the two segments of discourse in question. (Kotschi 1997: 702)

Similarly, Pons' (1998) assessment of Rossari's work brings our attention to the fact that the author introduces several notions which do not seem to further develop, what results in certain terminological confusion for the reader. According to Pons (1998), these notions are point of view (from the French "point du vue"), state of things (from the French "état de chose") and dissociation (from "prise de distance"). These three concepts are valuable in that they help conform the notion of utterance perspective and successfully develop it throughout the book. To sum up, Rossari's approach and her assessment of markers of reformulation have proved to subsume that of Roulet's in some aspects, although it is also slightly different from it in some respects.

2.2.2.6. Charolles and Coltier (1986)

These authors focus on the study of two markers of paraphrastic reformulation, *c'est-à-dire* and *autrement dit* in written texts drawing on the previous work by Güllich and Kotschi (1983). For them a reformulation is an operation that reveals the work effected by the speaker or writer of a text in order to control interpretability and thus, the production of a paraphrastic reformulation should be seen as a cooperative effort on the part of the speaker. Charolles and Coltier point out that reformulation does not necessarily have to be found in

the principle of equivalence of meaning in language. They present reformulation as dependent on the context, a fact that helps differentiate paraphrase-a discourse activity- from synonymy-which is merely an internal relationship of the lexicon (Charolles and Coltier 1986: 55).

Charolles and Coltier extend Gülich and Kotschi's paraphrastic reformulation to include what they label **DENOMINATION**, **CONSECUTION** and **CORRECTION** to the already-existing operations. Thus, the typology of paraphrastic reformulation would be as follows (Charolles and Coltier 1986: 53-7):

1. Paraphrastic reformulation:

101. Le R.P.R., **autrement dit**, le premier parti de l'opposition, n'est pas contre la cohabitation.

The R.P.R., **in other words**, the first party in the main opposition party, does not oppose cohabitation.

2. Denomination:

102. Si on a bordé la préparation de cire ou de mastic **c'est-à-dire** si on l'a luté (...)

If the preparation has been covered, **that is to say**, if it has been coated with wax or mastic (...)

3. Consecution:

103. Il est Arcadie, et l'Arcadie, c'est en Louisiana. **Autrement dit**, dans les Amériques.

He is Arcadian, and Arcadia is in Louisiana. **In other words**, in the United States.

4. Correction:

104. Le R.P.R. **c'est-à-dire**, J. Chirac, n'est pas contre la cohabitation.

The R.P.R., **that is to say**, J. Chirac, does not oppose cohabitation.

For these authors there is a reformulation whenever the speaker presents an expression that explicates the meaning of another by means of an expansion or condensation, or the reformulation might be justified by reference to the lexicon, as is the case of reformulation close to DENOMINATION, or to COMMON PLACES (topoi) as in the case of reformulation close to cases of CONSECUTION and CORRECTION as illustrated above.

2.2.2.7. Murat and Cartier-Bresson (1987)

These two authors approach the study of *c'est-à-dire* from the postulates of Text Linguistics and thus view it as signalling a complete discursive act: an interpretative retake (from the French *reprise interprétative*). Although they insist on considering it as different from paraphrase, they acknowledge that both operations, reformulation and paraphrase, yield the same result. In a sequence such as *A-c'est-à-dire B*, the formulation A is rectified and retroactively marked as insufficient. Thus, the interpretation in B is given as normal in that it satisfies the necessities of communication pursued, namely, intelligibility and awareness of the interlocutor. The notion of interpretation that they entertain is a metalinguistic one and exterior to the subject in that the first formulation appears as a way of saying, an expression that can obscure thoughts or induce to error. They distinguish between two types of interpretation, in INTENSION, when the sense of the words is privileged, and in EXTENSION when the focus is on the identity of the things that the words refer to:

1. In Intension: the interpretation with *c'est-à-dire* corresponds to a definition retake.

105. *C'est-à-dire* est un gallicisme, **c'est-à-dire**, une construction propre à la langue française.

C'est-à-dire is a galicism, **that is to say**, a construction proper to the French language.

(Murat and Cartier-Bresson 1987: 5)

2. In an Extension interpretation the retake may be coreference, quantification or enumeration-specification.

106. La voiture la plus vendue en Europa, **c'est-à-dire**, la Golf, est techniquement dé passée.

The best selling car in Europe, **that is to say**, the Golf, is technically obsolete.

(Murat and Cartier-Bresson 1987: 12)

2.2.2.8. Fløttum (1994)

Fløttum carries out a deeper analysis of *c'est-à-dire* and its comparison with Norwegian markers in order to contribute to the description of the strategy of reformulation. Within the postulates of French structural semantics, and acknowledging the work of Güllich and Kotschi (1983) she draws on Rastier's (1987) **MICROSEMANTICS**, an interpretative theory which extends its object of study to textual units.

Fløttum (1994: 113) presents a typology of functions for *c'est-à-dire* according to two broad semantic categories: **HORIZONTAL** relations and **VERTICAL** relations. The former type deals with the relations between the semes that conform the lexemes of the two members of a reformulation, when they concern the same levels of generality or specificity.

Within this category we find the semantic operation of **DEFINITION**, conveyed by the function of *c'est-à-dire* to *name*, and **REPLACEMENT**, conveyed by to make precise or to correct (Fløttum 1994: 118-9).

Vertical relations, on the other hand, occur when the lexemes of the members that make up the reformulation belong to different semantic levels. Thus, we find the relations of **GENERALISATION**, conveyed by the functions to generalize or to summarize, and

SPECIFICATION conveyed by the function to exemplify. Fløttum (1994: 118-120) provides the following typology of functions for *c'est-à-dire*:

1. To explain

107. Les gains du grand marché intérieur auront deux sources. Primo, la suppression des barrières non tarifaires (**c'est-à-dire** tous les processus qui limitent le commerce entre des États qui ne sont pas des taxes).

The benefits from the internal market will derive from two sources: first, the suppression of duties, **that is to say** all the non-taxing procedures that limit trade among States.

2. To name

108. Si on a bordé la préparation de cire ou de mastic **c'est-à-dire** si on l'a lutée.

If the preparation has been covered, **that is to say**, if it has been coated with wax or mastic.

3. To make precise-to correct

109. En 1986, le balancier est repassé à droite parce qu'on pensait en pouvoir sortir de la crise, **c'est-à-dire** avancer de nouveau vers le mieux-vivre, qu'à condition de libérer les initiatives des entraves de l'État et de l'impôt.

In 1986, the pendulum had swung to the right because an escape from the crisis was thought possible, **that is to say**, to advance again towards a better life, by removing the obstacles posed by the State and the taxes.

4. To generalize-to to summarize

110. De nos jours, il y a des Juifs pour qui la substance de leur judéité n'est que l'État sioniste, le pouvoir politique, l'armée, l'héroïsme miliatarie, **c'est-à-dire**, tous les idéaux fascistes!

Nowadays there are Jews for whom the essence of their jewishness is only the Sionist State, the political power, the army, the military heroism, **that is to say**, all the fascist ideals!

5. To exemplify

111. M. Mitterrand est, selon 39% des consultés, le plus capable d'exercer la fonction de président de la République, **c'est-à-dire** de préserver l'unité des Français (37%), de régler les conflits sociaux difficiles (34%) de faire face à une grave crise internationale (33%) et d'accroître le rôle de la France dans le monde (32%)

Mr. Mitterrand is, according to 39% of the people who answered the survey, the most able to carry out the function of president of the Republic, **that is to say**, to preserve the unity of the French (37%), to solve the difficult social conflicts (34%), to face a serious international crisis (33%), and to enhance the role of France in the world (32%).

2.3. Spanish studies on Discourse Markers of Reformulation

In this chapter I will review the most pertinent contributions to the notion of DMs in general and to the notion of reformulators, in particular, within the Spanish tradition. Thus, two main groups of contributions will be distinguished:

1. A group of authors whose approach to DMs and DMs of RF is mainly theoretical and which includes the works of Portolés (1998), Portolés and Zorraquino (1999) and Pons' (2000, 2001) latest overview on connectives; and
2. A group of contributions that attempt a *descriptive* analysis of individual DMs of RF, some of them of great relevance for the purpose of this study: López (1990) on *es decir*, Cortés (1991) on *o sea*, Casado (1991) and Fuentes (1987, 1993) on a group of DMs of Explanation, Bach (1996, 1999) on the Catalan reformulators *és-a-dir*, *autrement dit*, *dit d'otra manera*, Schwenter (1996) on *o sea*, and Veiga (1994-5) on a group of markers of Recapitulation and Conclusion.

Before I proceed with the description of the different contributions, it should be noted that among Spanish contributions, a distinction is normally established between the label Connective and that of Discourse marker to the point that some authors view connectives as a subset of the wider class of DMs. Likewise, among Spanish authors there is a clear preference for the label Connective over that of Discourse marker (cf. Portolés 1998, and Portolés and Zorraquino 1999, among others) In fact, Pons (2000, 2001) advocates the

existence of a function called CONNECTION that is displayed by lexical units from different classes of words which he labels connectors.

Both approaches, however, address the issue of reformulation and DMs of RF. The main difference lies in the fact that for Portolés and Zorraquino reformulators are a subclass within the more general class of DMs, and differ from the category of connectives in that they do not display linking properties in the same way as connectors do; whereas in the second approach, within the function of connection, a metadiscursive sub-function, or that of organization and structuring of discourse, can be distinguished. It will be within this sub-function where DMs of RF would be classified (cf. Briz for a similar insight). Thus, reformulators are just a sub-group within connectors.

Despite the slight differences between the theoretical approaches I examine below, their underlying hypotheses basically remain the same, inasmuch as they draw on previous studies on these units from three main frameworks, namely Argumentation theory, as developed by Ducrot (1980, 1984), Relevance theory (Sperber and Wilson 1986) and Information structure (van Kuppevelt 1991, 1995a, 1995b).

2.3.1. Theoretical approaches to Discourse Markers and Reformulators

2.3.1.1. Portoles and Zorraquino on Discourse Markers (1999)

Portolés and Zorraquino attempt an analysis of DMs in Spanish by utilizing the three main tools of analysis that the three major frameworks mentioned above have at their disposition: semantic instructions of DMs; the fact that they are guides or constraints on relevance; and their ability to distribute topics and comments.

Portolés and Zorraquino's (1999) latest general classification of DMs in Spanish is inductively based and takes as a starting point their discursive functions, determined to a great extent, by their semantic instructions or meaning. In this vein, they state that:

[...] more than attempting a strict correspondence between semantic properties and discursive functions, we have considered of prior importance the role that markers play in communication in order to offer the reader a clear and representative framework of these discourse particles in Spanish.

(Portolés and Zorraquino 1999: 4080)
(my translation)

Since their classification of DMs is functionally motivated, and takes as a central hypothesis the fact that these units are made up of a series of semantic instructions, some of which can be shared by members from the same class, and some of which are exclusive of certain DMs, I briefly present the different types of semantic instructions that DMs can entertain.

Three major types of semantic instructions, namely, instructions of connective meaning, argumentative instructions and instructions of informative organization can be distinguished:

A. Instructions of connective meaning

Portolés and Zorraquino distinguish between those DMs that link two or more constituents of discourse due to their meaning, from others whose meaning only affects one constituent of discourse. The markers under the latter group are called OPERATORS (from

the Spanish “operadores”⁸), while in the former group most of the lexical units traditionally included under the label of **DISCOURSE STRUCTURING MARKERS, CONNECTORS and MARKERS OF REFORMULATION** can be found. According to Portolés and Zorraquino (1999), some of the DMs of RF object of analysis in this study can gradually become operators when the constituents they recapitulate are omitted, and thus can signal a purely pragmatic relationship between the segment of discourse they introduce and the preceding one. The fact that Portolés and Zorraquino do not view the existence of a previous discourse segment as a necessary condition for a DM to function allows them to include under the label of DMs the category of operators. Pons and Briz’s approach to DMs openly rejects this view and considers the presence of a previous and explicitly stated discourse segment as a necessary condition for a DM to work. In this light, Rodríguez (2001) excludes the so-called operators from the category of discourse markers in her study of connectives.

B. Argumentative instructions.

This second type of semantic instructions normally makes up the meaning of a great number of the so-called DMs. These instructions have their origin in the argumentative ability of every utterance to favor or impede certain continuations of discourse. Let us consider the following examples, adapted from Portolés and Zorraquino (1999: 4074):

- 112. They are divorced. They do not live together any longer.
- 113. He has a car. He knows how to drive.
- 114. #⁹ They are divorced. They still live together.

⁸ This difference is based on Ducrot’s (1983) distinction between argumentative connectors and argumentative operators. Notwithstanding, Ducrot’s category is broader and includes some units that would not fall under the notion of discourse marker developed here.

⁹ The hash # indicates grammatically correct utterances which are unclear from a pragmatic point of view.

115. # He has got a car. He does not drive.

The fact that examples 114 and 115 above may strike us as odd is due to the fact that the first constituents or segments have a certain argumentative orientation, and thus presuppose or favor a certain continuation of discourse that the second constituents do not share.

C. Instructions of Informative structure

These instructions are based on the notions of **TOPIC** and **COMMENT** which are useful tools in the task of elucidating the particular uses of a marker with regard to the distribution of topics and comments in discourse (van Kuppevelt 1991, 1995a, 1995b). Some DMs provide, due to their special meaning, instructions as to the distribution of topics and commentaries. The most representative markers of this function fall under the label of Markers of information structuring. For example, the pair of discourse markers *on the one hand*, and *on the other hand* presents the segments of discourse they relate as different parts of a single commentary.

These authors also state that DMs whose meaning is mainly argumentative or reformulative can also have instructions dealing with the informative structure of discourse. (cf. Murillo Ornat 1999, Portolés 1998, Portolés and Zorraquino 1999). Thus, a DM of RF such as *a saber/ namely* relates two segments of discourse that comment on the same topic. Let us consider the following utterance taken from Portolés and Zorraquino (1999):

116. Nombró a los de siempre. **A saber**, Alicia y Juan.
He named the usual people. **Namely**, (he named) Alicia and Juan.

Both segments can be an answer to the same question: Who did he name?

2.3.1.1.1. Classification of Discourse Markers in Spanish

These authors distinguish five main groups of DMs that are briefly presented below:

1. MARKERS of INFORMATION STRUCTURING: these units lack any argumentative meaning and their main function is to signal the organization of discourse. There are three main-subclasses:

-The *Commentators* (they introduce a new commentary): *pues bien, pues, así las cosas*, etc.

-Those that *organize* the constituents of discourse and group them as part of the same commentary: *en primer lugar/en segundo lugar; por una parte/por otra parte; de un lado/ de otro*, etc.

-Those which are *digressive* and introduce a side-comment with regard to the previous discourse: *por cierto, a todo esto, a propósito*, etc.

2. The so-called CONNECTORS: these markers pragmatically and semantically relate a constituent of discourse (or segment) with a previous one, and indicate that the inferences to be drawn must take into account both constituents and their argumentative orientation. Three sub-categories can be identified:

-*Additives*: *además, encima, aparte, incluso*, etc.

-*Consecutives*: *por tanto, por consiguiente, por ende, en consecuencia, de ahí, entonces, pues así, así pues*, etc.

-*Counter-argumentatives*: *en cambio, por el contrario, por contra, antes bien, sin embargo, no obstante, con todo*, etc.

3. MARKERS of REFORMULATION: they present the constituent where they occur as a more adequate expression of what was said in the previous segment. They distinguish four main sub-groups:

-*Markers of Explanation*: *o sea, es decir, esto es, a saber*, etc.

-*Markers of Rectification*: *mejor dicho, mejor aún, más bien*, etc.

-*Markers of Detachment*: *en cualquier caso, en todo caso, de todos modos*, etc.

-*Markers of Recapitulation*: en suma, en conclusion, en definitiva, en fin, al fin y al cabo.

4. **ARGUMENTATIVE OPERATORS**: these markers determine, due to their meaning, the argumentative orientation of the member where they occur, without linking it to a previous one. Two main sub-groups can be distinguished:

-Operators which *boost* or *reinforce* the argumentative orientation of the segment where they occur: en realidad, en el fondo, de hecho, etc.

-Operators which *specify* or *generalize* the segment they introduce: por ejemplo, en particular, etc.

5. **CONVERSATIONAL MARKERS**: they include those elements most commonly used in conversation, although they are not ruled out in written texts. Four main sub-categories can be distinguished:

-*Markers of epistemic modality*: claro, desde luego, por lo visto, etc.

-*Markers of deontic modality*: bueno, bien, vale, etc.

-*Alter-oriented markers*: hombre, mira, oye, etc.

-*Metadiscursive markers*: bueno, eh, este, etc.

As can be observed, these authors clearly differentiate between connectives or connectors, and reformulators. For Portolés and Zorraquino, connectors are units that pragmatically and semantically relate two segments of discourse, the one they introduce with a preceding one that may be explicit or implicit. The meaning of the connector provides a series of instructions that guide the inferences to be drawn from the whole, that is to say, from both segments. S1 needs not always be explicit, it can be accessible from the context, or inferred from it. In sum, connectors relate two segments of discourse semantically and pragmatically, S1 and S2 (Portolés 1993: 144). Among the most prototypical connectors, we find coordinate conjunctions (cf. Pons 1998). Three sub-groups

are distinguished based on their meaning: the Additives, the Consecutive group and the Counter-argumentative group.

2.3.1.1.2. Discourse Markers of Reformulation within the Spanish tradition

Portolés and Zorraquino (1999: 4121), drawing on Rossari (1994), state with regard to this group of markers that “reformulators are discourse markers which present the member of discourse they introduce as a new formulation of a preceding member or segment, or of its point of view”). Portolés (1993) states that, contrary to what happens with connectors, where a mutual inferential restriction holds, in the case of markers of reformulation, this restriction is retroactive, that is to say, they allow the interlocutor to go back to his/her first formulation and assign it a new interpretation (cf. Rossari 1990: 346).

It follows from this definition that the speaker who uses a reformulator considers that his/her communicative intention has not been successfully transmitted by means of the first segment of discourse (S1) and thus, introduces a second segment (S2) in order to compensate for this failure in the transmission of information. This new formulation can be understood as effected in an attempt at “making the S1 more adequate ” or even as a “rectification of S1”. In any case, Portolés states that it is the new formulation or reformulation of S1 the one which should be taken into account for the continuation of discourse. This idea equates with those of Rossari (1990, 1994), Roulet (1983) and Roulet et al. (1985).

Thus, for Portolés (1998), this group of markers differs from the group he labels connectors in that the meaning of the latter is built up taking into consideration the meaning of both constituents of discourse, whereas in the group of the reformulators, it is the second

segment that counts for the successful comprehension of discourse. Portolés and Zorraquino classify Spanish DMs of RF into four main groups according to their semantic meaning:

1. Markers of Explanation: they display S2 as an explanation of S1
2. Markers of Rectification: S2 is presented as a rectification of S1 or some aspect of it.
3. Markers of Detachment: they display S1 as irrelevant for the comprehension of discourse and emphasize the relevance of S2.
4. Markers of Recapitulation: they display S1 as a recapitulation or conclusion from S1 or other members of discourse.

2.3.1.2. Pons' approach to Connectives (2000, 2001)

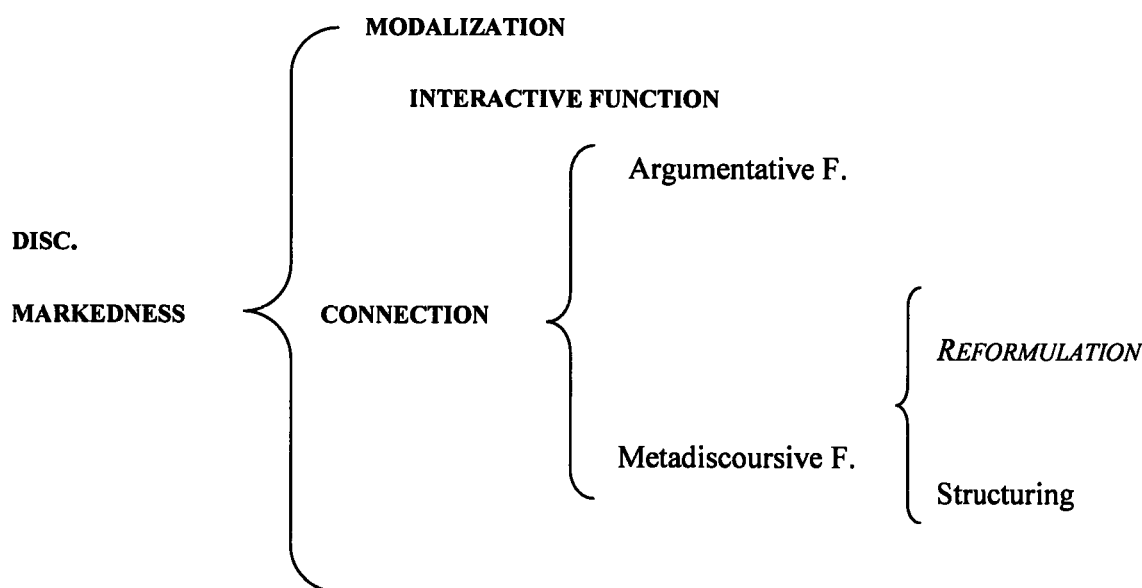
The second approach to DMs or connectives is Pons' (2000, 2001) latest overview on these units where he mainly distinguishes the existence of a global function of **DISCOURSE MARKEDNESS** that can be further divided into three related functions (i) Connection, (ii) Modalization and (iii) an Interactive function. Within the sub-function of connection, two broad sub-functions are distinguished, an argumentative function, that agglutinates the argumentative (Anscombe and Ducrot 1993) and the inferential (Grice 1975, Sperber and Wilson 1986) properties of connectives, and a **METADISCURSIVE** one (cf. Briz 1998) mostly concerned with the structuring and organization of discourse. Within this sub-function, the discourse relation of reformulation, originally developed within Antos (1982) and Gülich and Kotschi (1983) and reinterpreted by Roulet (1987) and Rossari (1990, 1994), stands out and is characterized in the following terms:

When we speak we do not always maintain the same point of view. As the conversation progresses, the speaker paraphrases what s/he has already said in order to make himself/herself understood; thus, s/he dissociates

himself/herself from his/her first formulations if the flow of the conversation requires so, or reinterprets the words of his/her interlocutors in order to build up his/her own discourse. This function, which cannot be equated to that of argumentation, is called **REFORMULATIVE**.

(Pons 2000: 209)

This definition is reminiscent of the postulates of Antos (1982), Gülich and Kotschi (1983) and Roulet (1987) for whom reformulations were aimed towards the achievement of interactive completeness. Although Pons does not attempt a systematic classification of the lexical units that serve the reformulative function, he maintains the traditional distinction between paraphrastic and non-paraphrastic reformulation, as is almost a general tendency within Spanish authors on these units (cf. Casado 1991, Cortés 1991, Bach 1996, *inter alia*). Below I illustrate Pons' (2001: 230) tentative classification of the function of **DISCOURSE MARKEDNESS** and of the different broad functions and sub-functions within it.



2.3.1.3. Briz on Pragmatic connectors (1993a, 1993b, 1995, 1998)

Briz's contribution to the notion of DMs within the Spanish tradition is reviewed. I firstly set out to review the units of analysis that he labels *pragmatic connectors*; and secondly, I try to shed some light on the relevance and adequacy of his framework for the notion of reformulation and the DMs of reformulation under scrutiny in this dissertation.

Briz's contribution to the study of DMs within the Spanish tradition is aimed at examining the main functions they display in conversation. A basic notion for Briz is that of conversational coherence, which in opposition to local coherence between utterances is achieved by means of the combination of monologic and dialogic units in conversation. Briz chooses the label *pragmatic connector* to refer to a group of units which serve two main functions in what he terms spoken/colloquial Spanish conversation, (i) an argumentative, and (ii) a metadiscursive/metacommunicative function.

Briz (1998: 167) concerns himself with the study of a heterogeneous functional set of elements that helps make the relationship holding between contiguous utterances explicit in spoken and colloquial Spanish. Similarly, these units help in the achievement of cohesion and coherence in discourse, in that they signal "the progress of the text as a coherent structure, not only syntactically and semantically (coherent), but also pragmatically, that is to say, coherence and cohesion from the point of view of the text as a product, and also as a strategy". (my translation).

This group of pragmatic connectors includes units from different grammatical categories mainly used in spoken Spanish, which share a similar function, namely:

[...] to link units of talk and to assure the transition of certain sequences of (spoken) text, helping in the maintenance of the discursive continuity and communicative tension; the outcome being that they could be more generally referred to as *transitions of talk*, or as D. Schiffrin (1987) labels them *discourse markers*.

(Briz 1998: 167)

Among these signals and expressions used in everyday spoken Spanish the following stand out:

y, o, pero, además, incluso, entonces, bueno, pues, es que, porque, aunque, así (es) que, claro (que), ahora que, en efecto, ciertamente, sin embargo, vamos (que), por cierto, oye, en consecuencia, en suma, en fin, en definitiva, total, en primer lugar....

A pragmatic connector combines argumentative and discursive functions. As an argumentative connector, the connector guides the inferences that interlocutors are expected to draw for an optimal comprehension of the intervention. However, when working at the utterance level, linking speech acts, their role runs parallel to the organization of the discursive activity as metadiscursive and metacommunicative markers. In other words, the *pragmatic connector* predominantly fulfils an argumentative or illocutionary function, or predominantly fulfils a metadiscursive or metacommunicative role. That is the main difference between units such as *pero/but* and *porque/because*, on the one hand, and *bueno/well* and *primero/first*, on the other hand. Notwithstanding, both functions co-exist despite of the predominance of one over the other.

Whenever we talk to somebody, in a broad sense, we carry out the activity of argumentation. This argumentative activity is closely related to the activity of formulation. To FORMULATE means to solve the communicative problems that can be encountered in any conversational exchange, especially in the case of face-to-face conversation. The notion of reformulation is taken and developed from Antos (1982) and Chafe (1982). In

spoken discourse the speaker lacks the time to prepare his/her discourse beforehand and thus, some effort is required to successfully produce, formulate and organize his/her own interventions and those of other interlocutors. All this effort is reflected on the use of a series of traces that have been labeled *metadiscursive/metacommunicative markers*. They are traces of the discursive activity, of the production and formulation of messages.

Thus, two main functions can be distinguished for pragmatic connectors, the argumentative and the formulative functions, namely, that of solving problems of formulation and organization of discourse. Sometimes, only the context can help elucidate which function is predominant over the other. In this vein, to say that the Spanish pragmatic connector displays a metadiscursive function entails considering a set of expressions whose functions are oriented, on the one hand, towards the control and organization of the message as it flows; and on the other hand towards the control of the communicative roles and the contact between participants of the enunciation and the message¹⁰.

Metadiscursive connectors go beyond the mere signaling of the argumentative relationship between two utterances, and prove to be pervasive and useful tools by means of which speakers face the activities of formulation and reformulation of their utterances in unplanned discourse. With their use, speakers organize their discourse. Thus, Briz, despite recognizing a connective use, in that they link two units of talk or utterances (like the argumentative connectors), sees in them a wider and more important function as transitions of talk that help in the **SERVOCONTROL** of the communicative situation, control on the part of the speaker, and mutual control that participants exert among them. Their use helps solve

¹⁰ See also Pons (2001) for a description of discourse connectors as mainly metadiscursive.

problems that originate in the process of communication. In this light, speakers can go back to their intervention, make it clearer to the hearer, make it more precise, expand or reduce it if necessary, etc, for an optimal comprehension of the audience. Similarly, they can be used to make the discourse move forward.

From the exposition above, it can be concluded that more than considering the metadiscursive marker as a type of connector different from the argumentative type, we should be looking at a complementary function, a secondary one, the formulative, which helps in the solving of the problems encountered in the formulation of an utterance.

Metadiscursive DMs are mainly drawn from a heterogeneous group that includes conjunctions, adverbs, interjections, along with stereotyped expressions. Their function is thus twofold, on the one hand they contribute to the organization and control of the linguistic message as it flows, and on the other hand, they exert some control on the communicative roles of interlocutors and on the contact between participants and their relationship with the message. These units coincide with Portolés' (1993, 1998) DMs of Reformulation and Markers of Discourse structuring. Notwithstanding, Briz's perspective is different since their assessment is carried out on the basis of the unit and conversational rank where they are used.

The first group, that of message control, displays a demarcation function: they help delimit the different parts of discourse (cf. *ordenadores del discurso*, Alcina y Blecua 1975, and *marcadores de estructuración de la conversación*, Auchlin, 1981) and could also be labeled as *organizers of the discursive content*. Their role has been compared to that of

markers of punctuation. More specifically they regulate the opening, progression and closing of turns, movements and sequences that make up conversation.

Among the prototypical markers of progression, we find a group that could be labeled markers of reformulation, drawing on Gülich and Kotschi (1983), Roulet (1987), Adam and Revaz (1989) and Rossari (1994). By means of these markers the speaker can change, recover, add detail, explain in the sense of a paraphrase, or re-orient, a topic, an argumentative act, and even an attitude.

However, some of these metadiscursive markers specialize in the signaling of certain operations of reformulation. This is the case of *es decir*, *o sea/that is to say*, which fall under the label of Explanation within the so called paraphrastic reformulations. These markers show a certain semantic equivalence or resemblance between the two segments they conjoin, the source utterance and the doubled-utterance. However, the equivalence may vary from a maximum to a minimum one, with the addition or restriction of semantic-informative traits in the S2 in relation to the S1. Even if the semantic equivalence is total, the new formulation in the S2 may convey certain information, such as the speaker's perplexity or surprise, their disagreement with the speaker's attitude, etc.

2.3.2. Descriptive research on DMs of RF

In this section I aim to describe some of the most insightful contributions to DMs of RF from a descriptive perspective. The authors reviewed in the ensuing sections normally deal with individual markers of RF, or a group of them, as is the case of López (1990) on Spanish *es decir*; Cortés (1991) on *o sea*, Casado (1991) on a group of reformulators of explanation (*es decir*, *esto es*, *o sea*, *a saber*), Fuentes (1987, 1993) on the units *o sea*, *a*

saber, es decir, esto es, Veiga (1994-5) on reformulators of recapitulation and conclusion, Bach (1996) on the Catalan reformulator *ès a dir*, and later Bach (1999, 2001) on *ès a dir, dit autrement and millor/mes ben dit*. It should be noted that most of the studies on individual DMs of RF concentrate on the lexical expressions from the group of Explanation, all of which are Spanish counterparts of the reformulators object of this study. Only Veiga (1994-5) and Fuentes (1993) devote some attention to a group of markers they label of Conclusion and Recapitulation.

2.3.2.1. Fuentes (1987, 1993)

Fuentes (1987) approaches a group of DMs of RF, units such as *o sea (that is), a saber (namely), es decir (that is to say), and esto es (that is)* involved in the process of enunciation and thus with the enunciative verb and which always occur in initial position in Spanish. She outlines the following main properties for these DMs:

1. *Explicative value*: only *es decir* and *esto es* have this generic value.
2. Use of other means for an *Explanation*:
 - i) By the expression of a *consequence*, mainly with *o sea*, although *es decir* might also appear.
 - ii) By *enumeration*, with *a saber*, but also with *es decir* and *esto es*.

Fuentes (1987: 184) also lists a series of expressions with a reformulative value which are not included due to the fact that they are not sufficiently grammaticalized to bear the status of DMs: *quiero decir, (I mean) o lo que es lo mismo (or what is the same), en otras palabras (in other words)* to convey explanation; *mejor dicho (better said)*, to convey correction, and *es a saber* and *conviene a saber (it is convenient to know)* to indicate an

enumeration, as variants of the form *a saber*.

In a later article, Fuentes (1993: 176-7) outlines the following typology of uses for these units:

1. Paraphrastic reformulation. This relationship includes cases of Explanation (117), Denomination (118) and Correction (119):

117. En Málaga, **es decir**, en la ciudad donde nací, (...)
In Málaga, **that is to say**, in the town where I was born.
118. Quisiéramos algo fuerte de beber, vamos, un café o un coñac.
We would like something strong to drink, **vamos**, a coffee or a cognac.
119. Estuvimos enfermos, **bueno**, algo pachuchos.
We were ill, **I mean/your know**, a little under the weather.

2. Non-paraphrastic when one segment is connected to a series of them ($S_1 \dots S_n$):

i. Generalization by means of condensation, which includes: Conclusion (120) and Recapitulation (121). Within the latter there is a subtype "*label*", when a hypernym is given, as shown above:

120. Estuvimos andando de un sitio para otro, fuimos al cine, charlamos, **total**, nada interesante.

We were walking from here to there, we went to the cinema, we chatted, **you know**, nothing interesting.

121. Hemos estado haciendo gestiones para conseguir una subvención por parte de la junta. Hemos hablado con el Rector, el Decano...**en fin**, ya no sabemos adónde ir más.

We have been trying to arrange a subsidy from the Junta. We have talked to the Rector, the Dean, **to be honest**, we don't know where else to go.

122. Vinieron Antonio, Pepi y Bernabé, **en otras palabras**, el grupo completo de disidentes.

Antonio, Pepi and Bernabé came, **in other words**, the whole breakaway group

ii. Expansion, which includes Enumeration and Definition (examples 123 and 124) with Particularization or Exemplification, as in example 125:

123. Estaban de acuerdo conmigo todos los filólogos presentes. **Es decir**, Antonio, Juan y Eloy.

All the philologists there agreed with me. **That is to say**, Antonio, Juan and Eloy.

124. Hay varios aspectos oscuros. **O sea**, no parecen estar claros ni la procedencia del dinero que gastan, ni las relaciones que existen entre ellos, ni la identidad de algunos de sus amigos.

There are some obscure aspects. **That is**, neither the precedence of the money they spend, the relationships between them, nor the identity of some of their friends seems to be clear.

125. Podríamos ir ahorrando tiempo y avanzando. **Por ejemplo**, mientras tú haces cola en este pabellón, yo me acerco a comprar las entradas para el teatro.

We could be saving time and making some progress. **For example**, while you stand in line in this pavilion, I can go to buy the tickets for the play.

Fuentes' classification distinguishes between paraphrastic and non-paraphrastic types of reformulation on the following basis: when the reformulation is effected on a series of S1 a case of paraphrastic reformulation is at issue. On the contrary, if the reformulation involves only one S1 then we are facing a case of paraphrastic reformulation.

2.3.2.2. Cortés on *o sea* (1991)

In his book Cortés (1991) makes a few precisions concerning the use of *o sea* in a corpus of spoken Spanish. This lexical form could be the equivalent for the English reformulator *that is to say*. Thus, this author establishes a first and insightful distinction between the uses of *o sea* as a connector, an expletive and some other occurrences without identification. It is his classification of *o sea* as a connector that is of most interest here.

Cortés establishes a main distinction between the uses of *o sea* on the sentence level, as an indicator of the relationship of apposition, and its use on a level that goes beyond the sentence. The similarity between his assessment of this unit and that of the early

grammarians of the English language, for example Quirk et al. (1985), is certainly striking. Quirk made a similar distinction if the reformulator was used to link noun-phrases, as a marker of apposition, or if it linked units beyond the sentence as a conjunction. Thus, Cortés' classification of the main functions of the connector *o sea* can be best summarized as follows:

A) Sentence level

- Apposition:

126. Por otra parte/creo que es interesante/porque antes se daba una xenofobia/la que tenía el pueblo español// **o sea una especie de racismo**
(una xenofobia=una especie de racismo)

On the other hand/ I think it is interesting/because before you could feel the xenophobia of the Spanish people/**that is to say** some sort of racism.

(xenophobia=some sort of racism)

(Cortés 1991: 50)

-The semantic information contained in the first sentence, or S1 and the introduced by the lexical form stands in a relationship of equivalence.

-The use of *o sea* is initially restricted.

B) Connector of units beyond the sentence

(i) Explanation or Justification. Normally after a pause, *o sea* introduces a justification or explanation for the information in S1:

127. y entonces/yo me siento mucho más cerca y más próxima a los asturianos que lo que me siento a los gallegos// **o sea/ yo/ de la cuna de la montaña de la que soy/no tenemos nada que ver con los gallegos//**

so/ I feel closer to the people from Asturias than to the people from Galicia// **that is to say/** to the heart of the mountain where I come from/ we have nothing in common with people from Galicia//

(Cortés 1991: 54)

(ii) Conclusion. The form *o sea* combines with *que* (that) in the uses where it introduces some sort of conclusion:

128. entonces/cayó a mi lado/ junto a la barra de un tablón// **o sea** que de haberme pillado/seguro que me quedo allí///

then/ it fell just beside me/ next to the girder of a billboard//**that is to say** that if it falls on me there/I'm sure it would have killed me right there.

(Cortés 1991: 55)

(iii) Continuation. The continuative value constitutes one step towards the grammaticalization of this form:

129. Yo veo mi bachiller y el de mis hijos y es mucho más duro el de mis hijos// **o sea** you me indigno cuando las reuniones de padres como yo/decimos/ ahora no saben nada//

I look back on my secondary school days and my children, my children's is much tougher// **that is to say** I get really annoyed when in the meetins with parents like myself/ we say/ they do not know a thing now///

(iv) Correction.

-Rectificative correction:

130. y hoy he visto/**o sea**/ no lo he visto pero me lo han contado que...///

and today I have seen/ **that is to say**/ I haven't seen it but someone told me that...///.

(Cortés 1991: 60)

-Atenuative correction:

131. E.-: ¿usted normalmente la ve siempre?
I.-: No // **o sea**/ si estoy en casa la veo pero si no estoy no me importa mucho///

E.-: ¿Do you watch it always? (talking about TV)

I.-: No// **that is to say**/ if I am home I watch it but if not I don't care much.

(Cortés 1991: 61)

2.3.2.3. López (1990)

This author drawing on previous approaches to the notion of reformulation, specifically the work of Roulet (1987), defines DMs of RF as having a very specific discourse function: to retrospectively subordinate a previous discourse movement to a new main act. This new

main act is the one introduced by the reformulator and is presented as a new formulation from the first one. Thus, she provides two main uses of the form *es decir*:

1. *Es decir* is a marker of Reduplication that establishes a figure of equivalence between the discourse segments connected with a semantic function of identification:

132. Empezaré el próximo martes el apartado de semántica interpretativa, **es decir**, la semántica que se abre hacia una teoría integradora de la interpretación (1990: 93).

I will start the section of interpretative semantics next Monday, **that is to say**, the semantics that moves towards a new integrative theory of interpretation (1990: 93).

2. *Es decir* introduces an Explication of an implicit and the marker re-orientes discourse towards a new meaning. For example:

133. Pedro ha dicho que vendría sin falta a las cinco, **es decir**, a las seis.

Pedro said that he would be coming at 5 for sure, **that is to say**, at six.

The presupposition implied in this last example is that Pedro normally arrives an hour later than he should. Thus, the author states that the main function of this reformulator, as is the case with its French counterpart *c'est-à-dire*, can be summarized as follows:

(i) To reintroduce what has already been said, or take it up again in the newly reformulated S2, or

(ii) To reintroduce what has not been explicitly stated, but is *implicit* in the S1 with the consequent reorientation of discourse to a new interpretation.

2.3.2.4. Casado (1991)

Casado approaches a set of discourse markers, units such as *es decir*, *esto es*, *o sea*, and *a saber*, which have been traditionally viewed as explanatory or clarifying and have not been dealt with in depth within the most traditional Spanish grammars, except for a few remarks in the works of Fuentes (1987) on the so-called “enlaces conjuntivos” and Mederos Martín (1988). The latter, in his chapter on Additive Conexion, indicates that they

structurally correspond to cases of apposition; as well as in Moliner's Dictionary of the Spanish language.

For this author, the basic value of *es decir*, *esto es*, *o sea*, and *a saber* is that of Explanation, as the etymology from the Latin verb "explicare" in the sense of "to unwrap" shows. The explanation effected in the new discourse segment introduced by these lexical expressions can be of an expression, content, presupposition, inference or implication. Casado's approach distinguishes two main functions for this set of DMs from a Text Linguistics perspective:

A. Reformulation of what has already been said by means of an alternative expression. The "reformulation" can take the form of a Precision or a Rectification (Casado 1991: 108-109).

a. *Precision*: This implies an equivalence between the two discourse segments reformulated and since there is no hierarchy between the two members, they can be reversed:

134. Un dos por ciento de la población filipina, **es decir**, un millón de personas, tiene como lengua materna el español.

Two percent of the Philippine population, **that is to say**, one million people, has Spanish as their maternal language.

(my translations)

This is the standard function of *esto es*, but *es decir* and *o sea* can also convey it.

Likewise, this function can also be paraphrased with other explanatory expressions such as *dicho de otro modo*, *mejor dicho*, or *lo que es lo mismo*.

Definition is also considered within this first type and illustrated below:

135. Relaciones de dependencia, **es decir**, las que se establecen entre un miembro superior o regente y un término inferior o subordinado (V. Báez San José. Fundamentos críticos de la gramática de dependencias, p. 16).

Relations of dependency, **that is to say**, those established between a superior or regent member and an inferior or subordinate one.

b. *Rectification*: this is a type of reformulation that does not imply equivalence and can be best conveyed by *esto es, es decir (que), o sea (que)*:

136. Me ha dicho usted que estaba, **o sea**, no estaba de acuerdo con esa generación (Madrid pág. 41)

You said that you agreed, **that is**, that you didn't agree with that generation.

These two formulations are not equivalent and thus there is no possibility of inversion of the discourse segments. It is only the second discourse segment that should be considered for the continuation of discourse as the appropriate one since it has been corrected and improved. Some of the DMs with this function of rectification are *esto es, es decir (que), o sea (que)*, that can be replaced by *quiero decir, mejor dicho*, but not by *dicho de otro modo, o lo que es lo mismo*.

B. Explicitation of what has not been said.

a. Explicitation of the presupposition or the inference

137. Cuando terminó su condena, **es decir**, cuando salió de la cárcel, se dedicó a estudiar una carrera.

When he finished his sentence, **that is to say**, when he got out of prison, he studied a degree.

138. Fernando es profesor, **o sea**, (que) puede jugar al fútbol.
Fernando is a teacher, **that is to say**, he can play football.

b. Explicitation of the implication, that is to say of that information that is implicitly stated and only known to the speaker. In these cases Casado states that it is not the main aim to introduce a much more intelligible expression for the hearer, but rather to communicate a piece of information that s/he is not aware of.

-What is made explicit has not been announced

-Intensification by means of repetition conveyed by *o sea* and *es decir*.

139. Juan ha trabajado mucho, **o sea**, mucho.

John has work a lot, **that is to say**, a great deal.

-Enumeration. This value, practically exclusive of *a saber* is announced by a numeral or linguistic element with a cataphoric function

140. Los puntos cardinales son cuatro, **a saber**, norte, sur, este y oeste.
The cardinal points are four, **namely**, north, south, east and west.

Finally, this author establishes three main functional oppositions:

- A. Cases where *esto es*, *es decir*, *o sea*, *es decir que (+V)*, *o sea que (+V)*, but neither *namely*, nor *esto es que (+V)* can be used.
- B. Cases where *es decir que*, *o sea que*, but not *esto es que*, or *a saber que* can be used.
- C. Cases of exclusive use of *a saber*.

Despite this tentative classification of the different functions that these units display, Casado succeeds in the identification of some of the most outstanding properties of DMs, such as the fact that they constitute independent tone units, separated from the utterance by means of intonation. He also recognizes the fact that these units are highly grammaticalized and do not admit variation; likewise, he identifies a double adherence to what has been previously said and reformulated and to what comes next in the text. Casado recognizes that their default position would be the initial one but they can also appear in other positions and have a variable scope. Finally, he also accounts for cases of optionality of the DM, although he indicates that the absence of the marker can result in a loss of sequence interpretation sometimes.

2.3.2.5. Bach (1996, 1999)

Bach's contribution to the notion of reformulation and DMs of RF comes in two main articles. One is dedicated to the study of a group of DMs of RF in Catalan, in an attempt to

isolate their syntactic, morphologic and semantic properties to describe them and account for their similarities and differences by means of the traditional method of semantic substitution. In a second article, Bach approaches the study of the Catalan reformulator *ès a dir* in order to (i) show that the activity of paraphrase does not exist in real discourse, (ii) that some of the so-called traditional paraphrastic reformulations possess an argumentative value, and (iii) to propose a classification of the reformulator *ès a dir* on a gradual continuum of semantic equivalence. I turn to them in order.

The framework of analysis she adopts in both articles mainly draws on the postulates of Argumentation Theory, (Ducrot 1984) the Geneve School (Roulet et al. 1987), and Relevance Theory (Moeschler, Luscher et al. 1994). Within the framework of Argumentation Theory, DMs or connectors, are linguistic units that possess their own meaning and guide hearers towards their decodification of discourse by orienting them towards a certain conclusion. They link an utterance or an utterance constituent semantically and pragmatically to another one, or various ones that make up the co-text or context for interpretation. Bach views the reformulators under investigation as connectors, and even states that they should be better seen as a sub-group within this category, rather than isolating them as Portolés and Zorraquino (1999) do in their latest classification as a different category. Alongside Pons (2000, 2001) and Briz (1998), DMs of RF are connectors and thus share with them argumentative properties, that is to say, the ability to orient the hearer towards some interpretation. These are precisely the grounds on which Portolés and Zorraquino exclude them from the category of connectives and place them in a separate category, that of reformulators. Bach also differs slightly with Pons in the fact that for him reformulators are a sub-group of connectives which are more concerned with the

metadiscursive function of organization and building up of discourse, whereas the argumentative-inferential function is a property of the traditionally called argumentative connectors, which are the traditional conjunctions, units such as *and*, *but*, or *so*. It is precisely this last argumentative function that Bach recognizes in these units, and thus acknowledges that they possess argumentative properties. This is not a new fact since traditional authors such as Roulet had identified argumentative properties in them.

With her article on *ès a dir*, Bach aims to prove that (i) the traditional relationship of paraphrase does not hold in real discourse; (ii) that some of the uses of paraphrastic reformulation with *ès a dir* share argumentative properties, and (iii) to propose a classification of the functions of *ès a dir* on a gradual continuum ranging from maximal to minimal semantic equivalence, by drawing on Güllich and Kotschi's (1983) traditional classification and applying it to a corpus of Catalan newspapers. The reformulator *ès a dir* as a marker of paraphrastic reformulation can display the following functions:

A) Non variational

- Expansional
- Reductive
- Inoperational

B) Variational

Thus, two main categories can be identified, that of non variational markers of paraphrastic reformulation, where the same topic initiated in S1 is maintained, although this does not imply 100% resemblance between the S1 and S2; and that of variational markers of paraphrastic reformulation where the semantic resemblance between S1 and S2 is not expected and thus means that they occupy the lowest ranking in the scale of semantic resemblance. In this last use, the traditionally paraphrastic marker *ès a dir* would be

functioning as a non-paraphrastic DM. These variational functions can entail a change in the topic of S1 to the point that the reformulator can be replaced by a counter-argumentative connector. These cases are the less frequent and they merely present S1 and S2 as equivalent even though they are not. Some other times it is not the case that the topoi invoked stand in opposition but rather that the S2 invokes an unexpected topical form, as shown in example 142 below:

141. El poder nos quiere aburridos, **es decir**, dóciles.
Those in power wants us bored, **that is to say**, docile.

Within the Non Variational markers, there are three main operations, that of **EXPANSION** of the topic in S1, by means of a clarification, those of **REDUCTION** of the previous utterance or some aspect of it, to the point that the new formulation may take the form of a summary or conclusion, and thus participate of argumentative properties; and those which are **INOPERATIONAL**, that is to say, the semantic resemblance between S1 and S2 is total, and thus there is no progression of discourse because the topic is maintained. In these cases the omission of the marker is possible without a loss in sequence interpretation. Let us consider the following examples provided by Bach where 142 illustrates a reduction of what is formulated in the S1; 143 is a clear example of expansional reformulation, and finally 144 illustrates a case of inoperational reformulation, where the S2 merely paraphrases the message in S1:

142. En este sentido Tanguy es un retrato histórico que tendría que ser conocido por todos, y muy especialmente por los que no vivieron ni sufrieron el franquismo directamente, **es decir**, por las nuevas generaciones.

In this sense Tanguy is a historical portrait that should be known by all, and especially by those who didn't live or suffer Franquism directly, **that is to say**, the new generations.

143. La asimilación del trato que se pretende comprende un doble orden de institutos jurídicos, **es decir**, las denominadas prerrogativas y los beneficios fiscales en sentido estricto.

The assimilation of the deal that is pursued entails a double order of juridical institutes, **that is to say**, the so-called prerogatives and the fiscal benefits in the strict sense of the word.

144. Así en Cataluña se producen cada año entre 10 y 11 nuevos casos de diabetes del tipo 1, **es decir**, aquella que afecta a los jóvenes por cada 100.000 habitantes.

Thus, in Cataluña there are around 10 and 11 new cases type 1 diabetes every year, **that is to say**, the type that affects youngsters per each 100.000 inhabitants.

Thus, she concludes by stating that *ès a dir* is a paraphrastic marker of reformulation that has a clear anaphoric value in that it recaptures the totality of the S1 or some of its constituents and whose semantic value forces the interpretation of S1 and S2 as equivalent, even when their contents bear no semantic resemblance whatsoever.

In a later article, Bachs (1999) approaches the study of a group of what she calls paraphrastic DMs of reformulation in Catalan, units such as *ès a dir (that is to say)*, *més ben dit/millor dit (better yet-still)*, and *dit d'una altra manera (in other words)* in an attempt to account for their morphologic, syntactic and semantic properties in a corpus of written specialized English. Bach takes the following underlying assumptions with regard to the group of markers she investigates as a starting point for her research:

- 1) The three lexical units under investigation share the same semantic instruction: they establish a relationship of EQUIVALENCE between the utterances they linked through the activities of reformulation and discourse organization.

2) The discourse segments connected by the paraphrastic reformulator are not totally equivalent, although there always holds some minimal semantic equivalence that allows the S2 to be presented as a paraphrase of the S1 (Fuchs 1994: 141).

3) **POLIPHONY** is an inherent property of paraphrastic reformulation, where two different voices can be distinguished: that of the locutor of S1, and that of the locutor of the reformulated S2.

In what follows I will present the main defining features identified for each of the three reformulators under analysis:

A) *Dit d'una altra manera* (in other words)

1. It conveys a partial paraphrastic reformulation because only a progression of some aspects of S1 is carried out.

2. By means of this reformulator some of the implicit aspects of S1 are amplified.

3. *Dit d'una altra manera* is clearly anaphoric due to its semantics, the form “other” necessarily refers back to a previous utterance or utterance constituent.

4. This paraphrastic marker is one of the least grammaticalized.

5. There is no hierarchy between the S1 and the S2, thus both segments stand in a position of equivalence, where the S2 presents a different point of view. It normally combines with the disjunctive form *or*.

6. The semantic equivalence of the discourse segments linked by *dit d'una altra manera* is high: both utterances invoke converse topic forms and the second explicitates some of the implicit elements in S1

Bach provides the following examples to illustrate her claims:

145. A pesar de esto, con cierta picardía comenta que si se supiese qué opinan en Europa sobre un cambio de gobierno en España “se llevarían alguna sorpresa”. **Dicho de otro modo**, González lanza el mensaje que en Europa se ve con desconfianza un gobierno presidido por Aznar.

In spite of this, he comments tongue in cheek that if it were known what it is thought in Europe of a change of government in Spain “there would be some

surprises”. **In other words**, González launches the message that in Europe a government presided by Aznar is viewed with unease.

B) Mes ben/millordit (Better yet-still, better said, or rather)

- 1) The reformulation that this lexical unit brings about can affect the whole S1 or just part of it. Its scope is thus global or partial.
 - 2) In opposition to *dit d'una altra manera*, this reformulator connects both segments by means of *expansion and reduction* of the enunciative aspects of S1, or by means of *a change in the topic* invoked in S1.
 - 3) In all the uses of *més ben dit/ millor dit* there is a *corrective nuance*.
 - 4) *Mes ben/millor dit* can also combine with the disjunctive conjunction *or*.
 - 5) There is a clear hierarchy between the discourse segments linked by this reformulator due to its semantics. The presence of the superlative form *mes ben (rather-more)* or *millor (better)* provides certain higher status to the S2 introduced by means of polyphony.
 - 6) There is also a patent anaphoric value attached to this reformulator due to the fact that it brings about a comparison that inevitably calls for two elements to be compared, one of them in the S1, and the other in the newly reformulated S2.
146. Hasta que uno de estos casos llegue al Supremo y sepamos que piensan los magistrados de arriba del todo al respecto, estas sentencias son un precedente que hace jurisprudencia-mejor dicho, jurisprudencia.

Until one of these cases gets to the Supreme Court and we know what the top magistrates think about this, these sentences are a precedent that set jurisprudence-**better still**, jurisprudencia.

C) Ès a dir (That is to say-that is)

1. This reformulator is the conveyor of paraphrastic reformulation *par excellence*.
2. *Ès a dir* establishes a semantic relationship between the discourse segments connected by means of **EXPANSION, REDUCTION or VARIATION** in the topoi invoked in S1.
3. The different operations that its use brings about range from mathematical operation with the outcome of total equivalence between the messages of S1 and S2, to anti-oriented argumentation, correction, designation, labelling, exemplification and oriented argumentation.

4. The degree of semantic equivalence between the discourse segments linked can range from high to low.
5. The reformulation effected with *ès a dir* can be partial or total.
6. Sometimes the reformulation can bring about some hierarchy between the segments connected.
7. *Ès a dir* is the most fixed of all the reformulators under investigation. It does not allow variation and it does not admit combination with the disjunctive *or*.
8. Its semantics determine its behavior in that the presence of the present simple form of the verb to be-“es/is”-forces some equivalence between the segments reformulated even if their contents do not resemble each other at all, or do so minimally.

Bach concludes that the pragmatic differences observed between the different reformulators are based on the presence or absence of the participle form, together with the semantics of the different units that make them up. Although all the markers under analysis establish certain semantic relationship between S1 and S2, their specific behavior is determined by their semantic composition. In this light, *ès a dir* is the only one that can invoke a mathematical operation where the degree of semantic equivalence between S1 and S2 is high; *més ben dit/millor dit* possesses a corrective nuance, whereas *dit d’una altra manera* cannot carry out anti-oriented argumentative moves in the reformulated S2.

2.3.2.6. Vázquez (1994-5)

Veiga attempts a description of the following Spanish DMs with the functions of SUMMARY, CONCLUSION and CLOSING for some of which I provide the English counterparts: *en resumen (in summary)*, *resumen (summary)*, *en resumidas cuentas (after all)*, *en suma (in sum)*, *total*, *en conclusion (in conclusion)*, *conclusion (conclusion)*, *en fin*, *finalmente* and *por último (last, lastly)*. In particular, she aims to look into the discursive uses of these units, along with their possible lexicalization, the pertinence of their presence,

the type of syntactic relations and the degree of autonomy they bear in a corpus of spoken and written language.

Veiga's analysis of these DMs takes as a starting point their linking properties and the fact that DMs help in the creation of coherence/cohesion in a text. She ascribes to the postulates of Text Linguistics and thus identifies the textual functions of summary, conclusion and closing in order to group them. She observes that most of these forms are completely grammaticalized, to the extent that they do not accept any variation. An exception would be the form *conclusion* that admits a number of variations.

As far as the optionality of the DM is concerned she distinguishes between the presence of the marker in written versus spoken discourse. Thus, in written discourse their presence is always pertinent, to the point that if we omit the marker, the sequence may be totally incoherent, or there may be a suppression of the semantic relationship holding between both discourse segments. For example, if the DM is omitted from the instance below, there is a suppression of the intention of closing a series.

On the contrary the spoken language has other resources in order to compensate for the absence of the DM and still thus maintain the semantic relationship holding between S1 and S2. Normally, these DMs under investigation combine with other conjunctions, especially with *y/and* and *pero/ but*.

With regard to the type of syntactic relationship these DMs display, the author refers to Stati (1990) who identifies seven types of relationships, and some of the DMs under analysis fall within the type of reformulation. She views these units as independent tone units that are separated from the utterance by means of pauses or intonation. Moreover, she points out that the use of pauses that separate the DM from the rest of the utterance is also a

way of distinguishing the discursive use from its use as other parts of the sentence:

147. Todo esto viene, **en resumen**, al final./Todo esto viene **en resumen** al final.
All this comes, **in brief**, at the end./ All this comes summarized **at the end**.

As far as their distributional properties are concerned, these units can refer to a whole segment or to just a constituent of it. Their mobility ranges from those that do not seem to have any restriction (*en resumen, en suma, en fin, en conclusión y finalmente*), although they tend to occur in initial position, to those that present restrictions (*por último, total, resumen y conclusión*) where *por último* cannot occur in final position, whereas the rest can only occur in initial position. Let us consider the following examples adapted from Veiga (1994-5: 361-2):

148. **En resumen**, la estructura de La verdad sobre el caso Savolta supone un gradual deslizamiento desde las formas más complejas de la narrativa actual hasta viejas (o “marginales”) formas de contar, intencionadamente resucitadas (LE, pág. 436).

To sum up, the structure of the Truth about the Savolta case entails a gradual move from the most complex forms of current narrative to the oldest (or marginal) ways of telling, intentionally brought to life again.

149. La octava, **en resumen**, es un excelente ejemplo del estilo de Góngora (Fernando Lázaro Carreter y Evaristo Correa Calderón, *Cómo se comenta un texto literario*, pág. 125)

The octave, **in short**, is an excellent example of Gongora’s style.

150. “Ahora diga usted-siguió diciendo Andrés-qué es lo que usted quiere, **en resumen**”. (Pío Baroja, *El árbol de la ciencia*, pág. 119)
Now, tell me-continued Andrés-what is it that you want, **in brief**.

151. [**Por último**], Pueden, **por último**, aparecer a un tiempo mismo con varios matices as operaciones del alma, [**# por último**] (RAE, Gramática de la lengua española, 1981, pág. 124)

[**Finally**], they can, **finally**, appear simultaneously with varying nuances as operations of the soul, [**# finally**].

152. **Total, un desastre, # total.**
Una situación, **total**, desastrosa.
In a word, a terrible, # **in a word**, situation, **in a word**.

With regard to the discursive uses of these markers, Veiga notes the proximity of the textual functions of summary, conclusion, closing and that of consequence, a fact that would account for the proximity of their functions and for the fact that they might coincide and some of the forms may look like synonyms at first sight. However, she points out that each marker has a specific value provided by its semantic meaning. I turn to examine some of the DMs of RF she investigates and that are of relevance for our study.

A) En resumen (in short-brief) and en suma (in sum)

These two forms have been traditionally considered synonyms and it is a fact that their discourse uses are certainly close. They share in common the function of reformulation, since after a first formulation, they introduce a shorter version that contains the first one and retroactively subordinates it. These two forms would be labelled Recapitulative DMs of RF. Thus, the S2 should be interpreted as a short version of S1. Two main types of recapitulation can be distinguished:

(i) Recapitulation or Condensation: it recaptures the S1 in order to extract the essential aspects from it. The recapitulation takes place at the content level, in that the message of S1 is condensed:

153. **En suma**, Cela no ha dejado de renovarse, rivalizando con escritores más jóvenes en los caminos de la experimentación (LE, pág. 376).
In sum, Cela has not ceased to evolve, competing with younger writers in the paths of experimentation.

(ii) Evaluative recapitulation: it recapitulates the S1 but besides the intention to be brief, there can also be an aim to clarify or complete the previous formulation on the part of the speaker. This value is close to the consecutive:

154. La cumbre de Maastricht ha terminado con un saldo positivo. El nuevo Tratado de la Unión Europea será redactado y firmado en los primeros meses de 1992. La moneda única y el banco Central serán realidad en los últimos años del siglo (...). **En resumen**, unas jornadas históricas (José María de Areilza, *LVG*, 12.12.91. pág. 11)

The Maastricht summit meeting has ended with a positive balance. The new Treaty of the European Union will be drawn up and signed during the first months of 1992. The common currency and the Central Bank will be a reality in the last years of this century. **In short**, some memorable meetings.

B) Total

This marker is used when the speaker wants to present a result, related to what has been said before. The sense of *total* is used in a mathematical sense. It combines a nuance of conclusion, to put an end to a previous S1, alongside one of result; hence the fact that its use is pervasive in enumerations. Thus, two main uses can be differentiated:

(i) *Total* as introducing a recapitulation, where *total* hosts either a summary or a conclusion and there is no aim to continue the discourse:

155. H: Y, bueno hombre, en plan estudiosos yo lo recuerdo muchísimo mejor que Santiago, con una diferencia...fundamental, pero...después era aburridísimo y (...). Claro, es que toda la semana metida en un Colegio Mayor sin poder salir, el fin de semana nadie salía, si salías tú sola pues...tampoco era divertido; no conocías demasiado a gente de otros Colegios Mayores porque...eran como guetos muy cerrados...**Total que...**que más que un problema de ...de aburrirse que de....no estar contenta. (CLO, M, 41-59, a).

H: And well, for a student, I remember it a lot better than Santiago, with a main difference, but ...then it was so boring and (...), well, all the whole week inside the dormitory, without going out, and during the weekends nobody went out, if you decided to go out, it was on your own, and it wasn't fun either, one didn't know many people from other dormitories because they were like very exclusive ghettos...**In short-in conclusion**, (it was) more a problem of being bored, than of being unhappy.

(ii) *Total* as a communicative strategy in order to recapture the discourse: with this use the speaker goes back to the central point of his/her discourse after going around the bush. The reformulated S2 does not necessarily have to be shorter than the reformulated one:

156. H: Fuimos a comprar el televisor, llegamos a la tienda, vino el vendedor y nos enseñó varios...

E: A qué tienda fuisteis?

H: A San Luis. **Total q ue**, como te iba diciendo, cuando al fin ya lo habíamos elegido...(CLO H, 25-40, m-a).

H: We went to buy the TV, we arrived at the store, the shop-assistant came and he showed us various models...

E: Which store did you go to?

H: San Luis. **So, anyway...**as I was telling you, when we had finally chosen it....

C) En conclusión/In conclusion

It could be said that the main meaning of *en conclusión/in conclusion* is to present a reformulated discourse segment, already mentioned while putting an end to it or part of it.

In this light, two main uses can be distinguished:

(i) Paraphrastic conclusion¹¹: in these cases the S2 is presented as a conclusion of what has been said in S1, that is to say, of its content.

157. **En conclusion**, la trayectoria de Buero Vallejo resume, como ninguna otra, los pasos que ha seguido el teatro español más digno, y es ejemplo de rigor y fidelidad a las exigencias de su creación. Ya resultó excepcional que, con su naturaleza inquietante e inconformista, lograra abrirse paso en los años de la posguerra.

In conclusion, Buero Vallejo's development summarizes, unlike any other, the steps that the most dignified Spanish theatre has followed, and it is an example of rigour and fidelity to the exigencies of its creation.

(ii) Non-paraphrastic conclusion: the conclusion is presented as the result of an assessment of what has been said before, and it is certainly close to a *consecutive* value.

158. **En conclusión**, estamos ante otra de las figuras excepcionales de la poesía escrita en castellano durante este siglo

In conclusion, we have before us another of the most outstanding authors of poetry written in Spanish in this century.

¹¹ The notion of paraphrastic and non-paraphrastic is different from the way used by Roulet (1987) and Rossari (1990, 1994) and later authors on reformulation.

Finally, Veiga distinguishes a group of markers whose function is that of CLOSING with *en fin* and *finalmente*, forms that share the semantics of “fin” (end). I do not delve into them in detail since their English counterparts are not the object of analysis of this dissertation.

However, it is interesting to notice that *En fin* is one of the most multifunctional markers with seven different uses, namely, ENUMERATIVE, CONCLUSIVE or SUMMARY, RESIGNATION, CONNIVENCE, RECTIFICATION, CHANGE OF TOPIC, and EXPLETIVE, whereas for *finalmente* only two functions are distinguished, those of ENUMERATION and RESOLUTION.

2.3.2.7. Schwenter on *o sea* (1996)

Scott Schwenter examines the Spanish DM *o sea* and groups its uses into two broad classes: (i) Connective uses, and (ii) Epistemic uses. Connective uses guide speakers towards the correct semantic interpretation between propositions, while epistemic uses mark the hearer’s degree of commitment to what they say, increasing the modal content of utterances (Schwenter 1996: 855). In addition, the author contends that some uses of Spanish *o sea* seem to carry out both connective and epistemic functions and thus challenges Fraser’s distinction between DMs and pragmatic markers (1990). Likewise, Schwenter argues that the pragmatic meaning of DMs is derivable from the meaning of their homophonous non-DMs uses, and *o sea* will, in turn, reflect the propositional meaning of its source.

In order to prove his hypotheses, Schwenter uses a corpus of spoken Spanish gathered from different sources, namely the group of examples used by Cortés (1991), a set of transcripts of four recorded conversations published in the corpus *El habla de la ciudad de*

Madrid (Esgueva and Cantarero, 1981) and data from recordings made in Alicante.

A) Connective uses of *o sea*

Schwenter identifies the following main defining properties for Spanish *o sea*:

- (i) It is prosodically independent, often separated from the surrounding context by pauses, intonation breaks or both.
- (ii) Morphologically, the phrase is completely fused and does not admit variation.
- (iii) Syntactically, *o sea* is insulated from the rest of the sentence and can appear flexibly in initial, medial or final utterance position.
- (iv) The use of *o sea* is similar to pragmatic expressions such as *you know*, *you see*, and *I mean*.

After reviewing the connective uses that Casado (1991) identifies for *o sea*, **APPOSITION, CAUSAL EXPLANATION, CONTINUATION and CORRECTION**, Schwenter identifies other connective uses that Cortés failed to identify alongside the possible motivations that may underlie the speaker's choice of *o sea*. Some of these uses concern the use of *o sea* in the chunking of narratives, *o sea* in answers to questions, marking a semantic link between a preceding (set of) utterance(s) and the utterance that follows and thus *o sea* reflects or reinforces one of the possible relations holding between discourse segments. In addition, *o sea* can also perform an interpersonal function by lending politeness to an utterance. In these cases *o sea* can be replaced by another DM such as *así que*, (*so/therefore*) and the discourse segment that contains it is considered more polite than the other one. Let us consider the following exchange, as reported in Schwenter (1996: 861):

159. A: Luego, como se forman las coaliciones esas de Estados,
Then, as they form those coalitions of states,

Tienes que acordarte de quiénes estaban.
You have to remember who were in them.
B: Bueno, es que nos deja libros!
Well, he lets us use books!
A: Ah, claro
Oh, right.
B: **O sea** que no memorices tanto.
O SEA, don't study too much.
Lo que hay que tener es un poco
What one needs to have is a little.....

As Schwente points out in this example *o sea* prefaces an imperative and helps lessen its force by means of the form “que” to make it seem more indirect. *O sea* can even index utterances that do not necessarily have to be adjacent and utterances from different speakers, as shown in the example below, to introduce a conclusion from the preceding S1, or in an attempt to get the floor in conversation:

160. M: le han dicho, que ya no le dan (prórroga)
They've told him, that they won't give him another extension
R: **o sea** ya tiene que: irse a Valencia, no?
O SEA now he has to go off to Valencia, right?

One final connective use concerns the variant form *o sea que*. This use is more specialized as a marker of speaker conclusion or consequence (cf. Casado 1991, Cortés 1991 and Fuentes 1987) and thus can be substituted by English *so/therefore*. Let us consider the following example adapted from Schwenter (1996: 863):

161. León es puro llano.
León is completely flat.
O sea que puedes extenderte perfectamente.
O SEA QUE you can extend yourself (i.e. travel) perfectly.
(C.R.: 56)

B) Epistemic uses of *o sea*

In addition to the wide range of connective uses identified for the Spanish *o sea*, Cortés (1991) also identifies an expletive use as a semantically empty form overused by speakers (cf. Vigara Tauste 1992: 252-253). These expletive uses allow *o sea* to have greater mobility and it occurs in utterance-medial or –final positions most of the times, as illustrated below:

162. y tiene que estar todo, **o sea**, más detallado.
and everything has to be, **O SEA**, more detailed.

However, in these expletive uses, *o sea* does not seem to be connecting anything and thus it is excluded from the category of DMs since they are mere forms employed to aid the expressive vacillations of the spoken language. Notwithstanding, Schwenter has observed that the appearance of these forms has certain regularity in that they are normally accompanied by a verb of opinion or belief about some issue to mark the speaker's personal opinion. This co-occurrence of *o sea* with first person singular objects and belief verbs appears to be the most common context for what Schwenter calls epistemic uses of *o sea*. Let us consider the following examples that illustrate the epistemic use: (Schwenter 1996: 864-5):

163. pues que pienso que es positivo, porque, **o sea**, a mi modo de ver
well I think that it is positive, because, **O SEA**, in my view
la mujer es necesaria en la sociedad.
The woman is necessary to society.
164. yo creo que, **o sea**, lo tienen un poco coto
I think that, **O SEA**, they've got it a little limited.
para pasar las vacaciones
to spend the vacation

In both examples the speaker is presenting his/her opinion or beliefs about some issue and is somehow committing himself/herself to the proposition expressed. Schwenter does not consider these uses as resulting from the pressures of on-line conversation. Rather, they are taken as evidence of the fact that *o sea* signals the speaker's orientation towards the utterance (Schwenter 1996: 865) and in a sense its use equates that of epistemic parentheticals, such as *I think, I believe, etc.*

However, Schwenter goes even further in contending that some uses of Spanish *o sea* combine very clearly a connective and epistemic use. This claim clashes with Fraser's (1990) early classification of DMs as separate and distinct from pragmatic commentary markers. The following examples illustrate the connective and epistemic readings of *o sea* (Schwenter 1996: 869):

165. y eso lo dice todo el mundo
and that's what everybody says (lit. the whole world)
o sea que debe ser verdad
O SEA QUE it must be true.
(C.R. : 56)

In 165 *o sea* connects or links two utterances and it is simultaneously epistemic in that "it constitutes a subjective comment on the propositional content of the second utterance" (Schwenter 1996: 869). This comment goes as follows "I, speaker, believe that this must be true because the whole world says it". Similarly, in example 166 below where the speaker is talking about a professor that supposedly sets tough exams, both uses seem to co-exist:

166. a mí me han dicho que en los exámenes
they've told me that on tests,
que dando la clase no
but not teaching the class
dando la clase, yo te lo digo, que es,

teaching class, I'll tell you, that she is,
es muyu maja, muy agradable y muy simpática
she is very nice, very pleasant and very kind
o sea, da gusto con ella, ¿no?
O SEA, it's nice to be with her, you know?
pero me han dicho que en los exámenes ya sí.
but they've told me that on tests yes.
no te puedo decir cómo es porque es que
I can't tell you how it is because the truth is
yo no he tenido ninguno
I haven't had any.

(Madrid: 429)

Through these examples Schwenter states that there seems to be a hybrid DM category that includes *o sea* and that overlaps Fraser's two types of pragmatic commentary markers and manifests properties of both types. Another implication is that we cannot strictly separate semantics and pragmatics in that the original meaning of some DMs still plays an important part in their connective or epistemic functions. Finally, Schwenter also extrapolates some interesting conclusions for cross-linguistic studies on DMs. It has been observed that the wide range of functions and meanings that *o sea* can display overlaps considerably with those of English markers, thus making the translation problematic to the point that *o sea* can be rendered at times as *that is* or *so*, and other times it seems to be closer to *maybe* or *I guess*. Likewise, the lexical items that make up *o sea* have no clear analog in English and thus polysemies are not predictable cross-linguistically.

3. A DEFINITION OF ENGLISH DISCOURSE MARKERS OF REFORMULATION

3. A DEFINITION of ENGLISH DISCOURSE MARKERS of REFORMULATION

3.1. The term “Discourse Marker”

Since the 1980s there has been a growing interest in the pragmatic and contextual aspects of utterance interpretation, together with special attention to those elements of linguistic structure that are more directly involved in the relation of separate units. This is the case of a functionally related group of connective expressions commonly referred to as Discourse Markers, such as *and*, *but*, *in addition*, *thus*, *nevertheless*, and *moreover*, as illustrated by the following sequences:

1. John can't go. **And** Mary can't go either.
2. A: I'm almost packed. B: **But** when are you going to finish your lunch?
3. I'm not going to that party. I feel nauseous. **Moreover**, Mike will be there too.
4. The shops were closed when we got there. **Thus**, we couldn't buy the costume for the party.

Although serious systematic research on the use of these units did not begin until the 1980s (cf. Levinson 1983), there has been a rapidly growing body of research focusing on (i) the theoretical status of DMs (cf. Schiffrin 1987, Schourup 1985, 1999, Maschler, 1994, Fraser 1988, 1990, 1999, 2002, Lenk 1998, Pons 1998, 2000, 2001, Portolés 1998, Portolés and Zorraquino 1999); (ii) the description of individual DMs in English (cf. Lakoff 1973; Svartvik 1989; Owen 1981; James 1983; Schiffrin 1985, and Watts 1986 on *well*, Birner 1994 on *but*; Blakemore 1988 on *so*, Carston 1995) and in other languages (Fuentes 1987, 1993, López 1990, Casado 1991, Bach 1996, 1999 Schwenter 1996, Gregori 1996, Rodríguez 2001, in Spanish); as well as (iii) a few from a historical and language change (Traugott and Köenig 1991) perspective or from a synchronic point of view (Brinton 1996).

However, and despite this interest, which has resulted in dozens of articles, a generally agreed upon definition of the notion DM has not yet emerged. Likewise, it is difficult to find “comprehensive overviews of the literature in the field” (Pons 2001) and there is no agreed upon core definition around which the work can revolve. At present, there is a wide variety of terms being used currently to refer to these elements: *discourse deictic items* (Levinson 1983), *conjunctive expressions* (Halliday and Hasan 1976), *discourse marker* (Schiffrin 1986, Fraser 1990, 1999), *pragmatic marker* (Fraser 1996, Brinton 1996), *discourse particle* (Labov and Fanshel 1977, Schourup 1985; Abraham 1991; Kroon 1995), *pragmatic particle* (Östman 1981), *pragmatic expression* (Erman 1987), *discourse connective* (Blakemore 1987, 1988), *cue phrases* (Knott and Dale 1994, Knott and Sanders 1998), *phatic connectives* (Bazanella 1990), *discourse operators* (Redeker 1990, 1991), *gambits* (Faerch and Kasper 1982, 1984), *connecteurs pragmatiques* (Roulet et al. 1985), *mots du discours* (Ducrot 1980), *inter alia*. Not only is the terminology confusing, but also, not surprisingly, it reflects the multiplicity of frameworks (pragmatics, relevance theory, discourse analysis, language acquisition, socio-linguistics, just to name a few) from which DMs are examined.

All this results in the absence of a well-accepted criterion to determine which specific elements in a specific language should be considered DMs, and which features proposed in the literature are characteristic of these units. I have chosen the label discourse marker as the term I will use in this study, since it is widespread and widely accepted as one of the major terms in this area, and I will define DMs in what follows.

3.1.1. What is a “Discourse Marker”?

A wide range of semantic, pragmatic, syntactic, lexical, phonological, sociolinguistic and even stylistic features have been proposed throughout the literature as defining properties of DMs (cf. Brinton 1996, Hölker 1996, Martín Zorraquino 1998, Greenbaum 1969, Fraser 1999, 2002, *inter alia*). However, the putative members of the class do not always share all these features. Pons (1998), after a thorough revision of the existing literature on these units, offers a detailed description of the most relevant defining properties of what he calls connectives, which allows him to propose the notion of the *prototype*. This notion proves a useful tool for the inclusion or exclusion of certain linguistic units from the category of DMs (cf. Brinton 1996 for a similar insight into the notion of prototype).

However, in this study, I mainly follow Fraser’s insight into the definition along with Schourup’s (1999) outline of the defining properties of DMs as connectors that express a specific relationship between successive discourse segments. Drawing on Fraser’s (2002) most current work, I adopt the following definition:

A DM is a lexical expression which typically for successive discourse segments, S1, S2,

Is associated syntactically as a part of S2;
Signals a relationship between S2 and S1 which is one of:

Contrast (*but, however, instead...*) “John is fat **but** Mary is thin.”

Elaboration, (*and, moreover, in addition...*) “John went home. **And** he, took his toys”.

Implication (*so, then, thus, as a result...*) “John is here **so** we can start the party.”
or

Temporality (*when, then, while...*) “John went home. **Then** he went to the store.”

Sequences with a DM typically have the canonical form of two discourse segments separated by a *DM*, namely, **S1.DM.S2**, where S2 and S1 consist of independent messages although in some cases they are syntactically connected, as in the example with *but* above. Later, in section 3.2, I will return to this definition in order to assess its value in the light of the features advocated in the various approaches to DMs of RF in English.

In the ensuing sections I will attempt to characterize DMs, drawing mainly on Fraser's framework (2002) and contributions from Schourup (1999) and other researchers. I distinguish between defining properties for the status of DM, and non-defining properties of this category.

3.1.2. Defining properties of Discourse Markers

Two main properties have been identified as criterial for a lexical expression to have the status of DM: (i) connectivity and (ii) non-truth conditionality. I turn to them in order.

3.1.2.1. Connectivity

Schourup (1999: 230) states that the most prominent defining property of DMs is their ability to relate utterances to other discourse units. Most authors subscribe to this view that often surfaces in the literature on DMs (cf. Labov and Fanshel 1977, Halliday and Hasan 1976, Van Dijk 1977, Zwicky 1985, Levinson 1983, Schiffrin 1987, Redeker 1990, 1991, Fraser 1990, 1999, 2002, Hansen-Britt 1998, Portolés 1998, Portolés and Zorraquino 1999, Pons, 1998, 2000, 2001, *inter alia*), although the way they approach connectivity might be slightly different¹.

¹ For a detailed insight into this property see Pons (1998) who classifies contributions to DMs around the organizing principle of connection with (i) contributions that go beyond the linking of discourse segments, (ii)

This well-accepted criterion for DMs status finds its fiercest opponents in authors who subscribe to the postulates of Relevance Theory, namely Blakemore (1987, 1996, 1997), Sperber and Wilson (1984), Blass (1990), Unger (1996) or Rouchota (1998), for whom DMs are not *linking devices per se* in that they do not link propositions at any stage of the interpretation process but indicate the computations such representations are intended to undergo (cf. chapter 2 for further insights).

In contrast, those authors who attempt to explain textuality emphasize the linking properties of DMs. Halliday and Hasan (1976) view DMs among the lexical devices that create cohesion, i.e. lexical and syntactic continuity in a text. From a coherence-oriented framework, where connectivity is established between segments at the semantic-pragmatic level, two main blocks of authors can be distinguished: (i) the work of van Dijk (1977), Brown and Yule (1983), and Giora (1995), who approach coherence from the crucial notion of topic; and (ii) the work of Mann and Thompson (1986), Sanders, Spooren and Noordman (1993); Knott and Dale (1994); Knott and Mellish (1996), who analyze coherence in terms of a set of implicit relations which bind text segments together. DMs (or cue phrases) explicate or display the implicit relations holding between successive discourse segments and contribute to the creation of coherence.

Schiffrin (1987: 31) offers the following definition of DMs as “sequentially dependent elements which bracket units of talk”. Redeker (1990, 1991) takes a similar view as she focuses on the primary function of DMs of bringing to the listener’s attention a particular

contributions specifically circumscribed to the notion of connection, (iii) contributions related to the notion of connection, and finally (iv) contributions related to the organization of conversation.

linkage of the upcoming utterance with the immediate discourse context. However, the way this notion of connectivity is conceived does not weigh equally in the different approaches mentioned above. There is certain disagreement about whether the connectivity of a DM must involve more than one textual unit (Schourup 1999: 230). Thus, although Schiffrin's definition of connectivity bypasses syntactic units such as the sentence, or propositions, speech acts or tone units, as the units of talk that DMs bracket, for her DMs relate two adjacent textual units and thus contribute to inter-utterance coherence. Knott and Dale (1994) and Knott and Mellish (1996) indicate that DMs, or cue phrases link spans of discourse and thus acknowledge the possibility of linking a discourse segment with a non-necessarily adjacent one. Except for these researchers, the rest of coherence-based approaches maintain that connectivity holds between two successive and linguistically stated discourse segments, and thus exclude the possibility of linking a discourse segment with the extra-linguistic context.

A slightly different approach to connectivity is that of Fraser (1990, 1999, 2002) who defines DMs as lexical units that signal a sequential relationship between the interpretations of the discourse segment they host, namely S2, and the previous segment, S1. Thus, they function like a two-place relation, one argument lying in the segment they introduce the other lying in the previous discourse (Fraser 1999: 938). However, Fraser acknowledges that there are special cases, where the S1 may be linguistically empty and only contextually inferred (cf. Fraser 2000). In this light he contends that DMs link the discourse segment they host (S2) to (a) previous or upcoming discourse segment (S1) or even to non-linguistic context, in which case the previous material referenced by the DM can vary from a non-

linguistic context, a non-immediate segment, more than one discourse segment to upcoming or looking forward material, as illustrated below²:

A) Non-linguistic context or empty S1:

(i) that implies a previous message arising from the interpretation of a prior action with the markers *so, and, but, or, alternatively, after all, on the other hand, then, and too*:

5. [Context: On seeing a friend laden with parcels B exclaims]
B: **So**, you've been doing some shopping after all!

(ii) that implies a previous message originating from the interpretation of a prior action to which the DM has the ability of referring back, sometimes optionally as in 6 (as an alternative (to this/that, as a consequence of/to this/that), as a result (of this/that), besides (this/that), in addition (to this/that), in contrast (to/with) this/that) and sometimes obligatorily as in 7 below (because of this/that, compared to this/that, despite this/that, in light of this/that, in spite of this/that):

6. [Context: Walking through a garden, Harry holds up a bunch of withered flowers]
Harry: **In comparison** [with these flowers], my flowers look spectacular.
7. [Context: Susie's parents walking home after her poor performance at a piano recital]
Father: **Despite** the terrible performance, I think she should continue lessons.

B) Non-immediate segment:

8. A:[I don't want to go much]
B: John said he would be there.
A: **However**, I do have some sort of obligation to be there.

C) More than one discourse segment:

9. [He drove the truck through the parking lot and into the street. Then he almost cut me off. After that, he ran a red light]. **However**, these weren't his worst offenses.

D) At other times, the DM refers to upcoming material or "forward looking":

10. You want to know the truth. **Essentially**, [John stayed away. Jane came but didn't participate. And Harry and Susan fought the entire evening].

² The scope of the DM over the discourse segments is indicated here by means of brackets [].

Fraser (2002) also argues that the connection between S2 and S1 may occur in several ways:

- 1) Syntactic requirement forced by DMs such as *and, alternatively, or, so, but, since, although, whereas*, etc.
- 2) Anaphoric expressions: *despite that, in spite of that, in addition (to that), as a consequence (of that), regardless (of that), for that reason, in comparison (with that)*, etc.
- 3) Or implied by the meaning of the DM: *above all, also, alternatively, analogously, besides, moreover, in top of it all, what is more*, etc.

Clearly there is a progressive inclination to abandon the belief that connectivity obtains between textual and adjacent units. In this light, Hansen (1997) defines DMs as linguistic items of variable scope that can link their host utterance not only to the linguistic co-text, but also to the context in a wider sense (cf. also Portolés 1998). Notwithstanding, authors who view DMs as a means of obtaining coherence seem reluctant to abandon this view, since for them discourse coherence is most often defined in terms of “local” relations between successive discourse units.

In contrast, writers who approach the study of DMs within the Relevance Theory framework seem to be unaware of the dispute and merely view coherence as a consequence or by-product from the application of the principle of Relevance (cf. Blakemore 1987, Blass 1990, Unger 1996, Portolés 1998, among others).

To sum up, it can be said that in the simplest case DMs can link two discourse segments as in 11, an utterance and the preceding text in 12, an utterance and a speech act in 13, an utterance and non-verbal context in 14, or even an implicit S1 and an implied S2 in 15, as suggested by Fraser (2001: 1629):

11. Peter has bought a new house in the mountains. **Moreover**, he has bought a new car.
12. Lucy was in bed with a cold. Peter came down with the flu. So I decided to stay home and look after them.
13. Are you busy tomorrow? **Because** I'm going shopping with Mike.
14. Context: Mary sits down in a chair reserved for Lucy without her knowing. Peter notices it and exclaims:
Peter: But that's Lucy's chair!
15. Context: Husband, after his wife throws several dishes at him in anger.
Husband: **And?**

The notion of connectivity as necessary for the status of DMs can be also used to distinguish these units from various other initial elements, such as illocutionary adverbials (*frankly, confidentially*), attitudinal adverbials (*fortunately, sadly*), and from primary interjections (*yipes, oops*). However, connectivity alone may, under some circumstances, prove to be insufficient in order to distinguish DMs from other lexical units, such as coordinators joining intra-sentential elements (Schourup 1999: 231). Let us consider the following examples below, where the status of *and*, despite its linking properties is far from that of a DM:

16. Peter is cooking a chicken **and** potatoes.
17. John **and** Susan rode horses.

Fraser considers that examples like 16 and 17 above are merely elliptical sentences, where *and* functions purely as a conjunction within elements from a single message. Thus, its use should be separate from that of DMs which introduce a separate message with its propositional content.

3.1.2.2. Non-truth conditionality

Non-truth conditionality is accepted as a necessary criterion for DMs status within the most pertinent studies on these units. DMs are thought to contribute nothing to the truth-condition of the proposition expressed by the utterance they host (cf. Grice 1979, Levinson 1983: 87-8; Blakemore 1988: 183; Hansen, 1997: 161; DeFina 1997: 340, *inter alia*). Fraser (1996: 167, 2002: 2), however, does not make this a defining condition but states that DMs do not contribute to the meaning of the segment of which they are a part and thus *cannot* affect its truth-conditions. Rather, what DMs seem to do is to “...have a discourse organizing function, signaling conceptually where the discourse is heading” (Fraser 2002: 2). Let us consider the following exchange:

18. She should be more tolerant with her family, **that is to say**, she should try to understand their problems more.

The truth conditions of the propositions expressed by the S1 and S2, “that she should be more tolerant”, and “that she should try to understand their problems more”, are indeed independently of the presence or absence of the DM, which signals that the S2 is intended as a reformulation of the previous S1.

However, to say that DMs do not contribute to the truth conditions of the proposition expressed by the utterance they host does not mean that DMs lack any meaning at all. Thus, I assume that when Schifffrin (1987) states that some markers are meaningless, she is merely indicating that they do not contribute to truth conditions, not that they lack meaning *per se*. Even Grice (1979), in his *Retrospective Epilogue*, intended conventional implicatures conveyed by lexical units such as *so*, *but*, *however*, *thus*, etc, to be traceable to

the meaning of particular words and phrases. The problem arises when it comes to delimiting what type of meaning DMs encode. However, this is a different issue and not criterial for DMs status.

In short, the two features analyzed so far, (i) connectivity, and (ii) non-truth-conditionality are all frequently taken together to be necessary attributes of DMs (Schourup 1999: 232). Likewise, Fraser acknowledges these two properties when he states with regard to DMs:

- 1) They do not contribute to meaning of the segment of which they are a part and thus do not affect the truth conditions.
- 2) They have a discourse organizing function, signalling conceptually where the discourse is heading.

The remaining features to be discussed are however less consistently regarded as criterial for DMs status. I turn to them below.

3.1.3. Non-defining properties of Discourse Markers

In this section I illustrate a set of generally descriptive properties that do not necessarily apply to the category of DMs although they are normally considered in some detail within most treatments of DMs:

1. Type of meaning encoded by DMs
2. Multi-categoriality
3. Weak clause association
4. Initiality
5. Optionality of DMs
6. Other properties

3.1.3.1. Type of meaning encoded by Discourse Markers

As has been outlined above, delimiting the type of meaning DMs encode is an issue of long-standing within the studies on DMs, and one that has certainly proved to be problematic. Researchers' views on the type of meaning DMs encode vary according to the different frameworks they embrace, and to the lexical expressions thought to have the status of DMs. The issue of what type of meaning these lexical expressions encode rose to prominence with the work of Grice (1979) and was later fueled by Blakemore's (1987, 1992) reinterpretation of Grice's view on conventional implicature.

Blakemore (1987, 1992) reinterprets Grice's notion of conventional implicature but rejects his higher-level speech-act analysis and considers that linguistic expressions encode one of two types of meaning, namely, conceptual or procedural meaning, but not both. That is to say, that they convey either conceptual information, or indicate how to manipulate that information. For Blakemore, DMs, or lexical units such as *so*, *moreover*, *but*, *however*, etc., carry procedural, not conceptual, information about the inferential phase of communication. Thus, Blakemore maintains the belief that DMs are meaningful although the type of meaning they encode is not conceptual but rather procedural in that they show how to manipulate conceptual representations in the inferential phase of comprehension, more specifically, in the calculation of implicatures. On this basis, Blakemore excludes from the category of DMs everything "which has a scintilla of conceptual meaning" (Fraser 2002 unpublished manuscript). This condition justifies the exclusion of certain lexical expressions that despite having the same discourse function differ in the type of meaning encoded. For example the DMs *however* and *contrary to expectations*, which have the same discourse function are classified differently according to Blakemore. Only the former is

included under her category of DMs, while the latter is discarded due to the fact that it encodes certain conceptual information while its counterpart *however*, encodes no conceptual information (cf. Sperber and Wilson 1996).

Fraser (2000) challenges this view by contending that linguistic forms, or at least, some classes of them, can simultaneously encode both types of meaning, conceptual and procedural. In particular, this author challenges the view that DMs and Illocutionary adverbs only encode procedural meaning, and shows that they, in fact, encode conceptual meaning as well. Likewise, and on the other end of the scale, he shows that Attitudinal adverbials (*frankly, sadly, unfortunately, etc.*), which are traditionally considered as conceptual, encode procedural meaning too.

In order to show that DMs are devices that encode both types of meaning, Fraser reviews the four main arguments advocated for the inclusion of DMs and other expressions under the category of procedural/conceptual devices and lays out some of their shortcomings and inconsistencies. I review them in order below:

A. Conceptual devices allow the denial of truthfulness in their use. Thus, an illocutionary adverbial such as *frankly* in 19 can be denied on the grounds that it encodes some sort of conceptual meaning. On the contrary, 20 is unacceptable on the grounds that *moreover* encodes procedural meaning:

19. A: **Frankly**, the party has been a success.

B: *That's not true, you're not being frank.* You didn't like it at all and I know.

20. A: I'm sure Mary's on a diet: she went jogging this morning; moreover she skipped lunch.

B: # That's not true. That she skipped lunch is not additional evidence that she is on a diet.

However, as Fraser points out, if we change 20 to 21 the denial of truthfulness of 20 becomes more acceptable:

21. A: We have two reasons to believe that Mary is on a diet: she went jogging this morning; **moreover**, she skipped lunch

B: That's not true. *You don't have sufficient reasons to reach this conclusion*, since neither the fact that she went jogging, nor your second, additional reason, that she skipped lunch, are grounds for concluding that she is on a diet.

Likewise, Fraser shows that it is possible to deny the truth of at least the following DMs: *thus, consequently, instead, in addition, however, because*, and *in contrast*. Thus, the argument of denial of truthfulness proves inappropriate to discriminate between procedural and conceptual uses of expressions.

B. Expressions that encode procedures are difficult to define conceptually. The fact that they tend to be semantically opaque, makes it almost impossible to bring them to consciousness (cf. Wilson and Sperber 1993).

Fraser shows this argument does not seem to hold, since the meaning of some DMs can be certainly teased out, not only in the case of transparent DMs, such as *consequently, in contrast* and *in addition*; but also in the case of most opaque ones, such as *thus, however, or instead*. Let us consider the following examples taken from Fraser (2001):

22. A: Sally was forced to work overtime. **Consequently**, she quit.

B: That's wrong. *It's not the case that Sally quit because she was forced to work overtime*.

23. A: Mary doesn't drink. **However**, she had a little brandy this evening.

B: Not true. *Contrary to what you might have expected*, she maintained her abstinence quite nicely tonight.

C. Compositionality. Conceptual expressions can engage in larger compositional expressions and are thus semantically complex and very productive. However, Fraser shows that some of the so-called DMs, though not all, can also undergo compositionality: *as a(n) (unexpected and welcome) result, in (striking) comparison, in (a chance) addition, as a(n) (unfortunate consequence), that's (exactly) why, (to put it) in other words*. Other DMs such as *however, nevertheless, thus* and *moreover* do not enjoy the privilege of compositionality, though.

D. Homophonous counterparts. The last test for the inclusion of lexical expressions under the category of conceptual devices is the fact that they have synonymous counterparts that are truth conditional and encode concepts. However, some DMs also have semantic counterparts used as different parts of speech:

24. a. I couldn't find the key; **so**, I couldn't get into the car till Mike came back.
b. He was **so** mad at me that he didn't speak to me till midnight.
25. a. John passed the exam, **since** someone told him the questions.
b. **Since** Christmas, we haven't seen each other.

Fraser's revision of these four tests adduces compelling evidence for a rejection of DMs as procedural devices. He challenges the four claims on which the status of procedural-conceptual review is based and concludes that, since the ways out of this problem are not very promising, viewing DMs as having both types of meaning is the only realistic alternative to account for these units:

In effect, one is faced with one of two alternatives. On the one hand, one could analyze DMs as either encoding conceptual or procedural meaning, not both. This would mean that synonymous DMs pairs such as *furthermore* /*in addition* and *however* / *contrast to expectations* would have different types of meaning. On the other one could treat every DM as encoding both procedural and conceptual meaning. In view of the evidence presented above, it seems to me that the latter position is the only realistic alternative.

(Fraser 2001 draft)

Along the same lines, H. K. Lee (2002) provides a unitary account of the type of meaning that DMs encode. She presents a new typology of connectives that disregards the boundary between conceptual meaning and procedural meaning as advocated in standard approaches, and contends that all connectives occupy places on a scale which ranges from logical connection to inferential connection.

Another issue, which is unrelated to the dispute between conceptual-procedural meaning of DMs, but related to the type of meaning these units encode is that of core meaning. The notion of core meaning is used in an attempt to provide DMs with an

individual unified semantic meaning. Some researchers contend that DMs have a core meaning³ (Schourup 1985, Schiffrin 1987, Fraser 1990, 2001 Jucker 1993). Fraser (2001), among them, claims that every DM can be attributed a single meaning⁴. For example, the DM *but* has the core meaning of contrast, whereas *so* has the core meaning of conclusion. However, the more precise interpretation of each DM gets elaborated in terms of the segments and the specific context where they are used (Fraser 2002: 14). In other words, besides this core meaning, which every individual marker displays, more specific interpretations are created by the context where their specific nuances are to be worked out (cf. Hansen 1998 for a critique of this minimalist approach to the semantic meaning of DMs). The stance taken by those authors who support the idea of core meanings is a minimalist approach to semantic meaning, in contrast with other authors who view DMs as polysemous devices, that is to say, having more than one meaning, rather than a single core meaning.

In this respect, Fraser's core notion resembles the MEANING/SENSE distinction proposed by Portolés (1998) and Portolés and Zorraquino (1999) in their approach to Spanish DMs. They contend that DMs have a certain meaning in the language, before they are actually used in a specific context. For example, *but* encompasses a meaning of contrast, and can take on different senses in its realization in different contexts.

³ The notion of "core meaning" is akin to that of Heritage's (1984) "generic meaning", Östman's (1995) "abstract meaning", or Fox and Schrock's (1999) "basic meaning".

⁴ Notwithstanding, Fraser also acknowledges that there might be some exceptions to this claim. For example, he recognizes that the lexical unit "rather" can take on two very different meanings, that of reformulator, in combination with "or" and that of contrastive DM.

3.1.3.2. Multi-categoriality

DMs are not drawn from a single grammatical source; rather, they originate in quite different distributional classes, where they normally have formally identical counterparts, which are not used as markers (cf. Hansen 1998, Portolés 1998, Schourup 1999, *inter alia*). Fraser (2002) claims that there is no overlap in the linguistic environment in which a homophonous DM and a content form can occur. The environments for their different functions are in complementary distribution and it is always possible to tell which function is intended from the position of the DM. For example the use of the reformulators *in other words* and *in short* is clearly distinct in 26 and 28, where they function as prepositional phrases which are integrated within the utterance, and in 27 and 29, where they have a connective role as DMs and are detached from the main clause by means of pauses:

26. She tried to explain **in other words** what she had meant by “they are all a bunch of weirdoes”.
27. **In other words**, she finally explained what she had meant by “they are all a bunch of weirdoes”.
28. She announced **in short** that half the workers would be given the sack in less than a week.
29. He remembered that day they spent together and how beautiful she looked. He loved how the brownness of her stomach contrasted with the whiteness of the parts the sun couldn't get too. Later she came into the room wearing the sweetest pair of shorts imaginable. Days later he thought of those shorts and her gorgeous body and his head spinned, he could think of nothing else. **In short**, the thought of her dressed in those shorts was driving him crazy.

DMs reflect the various traditional syntactic classes from which they originate throughout the lexical inventory, as well as other categories (interjections or prepositional phrases) that do not seem to fall nicely into any of the usual grammatical slots (Fraser 1990:

338). For all these reasons, there is no basis to posit DMs as a separate syntactic category (Fraser 2002: 11). Rather, we should consider DMs as a **HETEROGENEOUS FUNCTIONAL-PRAGMATIC CLASS** (cf. Lamiroy & Swiggers 1991, Hansen 1997, Pons 2001) whose main function is connective and whose lexical units are mainly drawn from the following syntactic classes:

A. Coordinate Conjunctions (*and, but, or, and so*) that work primarily as DMs, although they can function in other ways as well, i.e., as intra-sentential coordinators:

30. Mary **and** Peter rode horses.

31. Oil **and** water don't mix.

B. Subordinate Conjunctions (*although, so, since, while, whereas, because*) that also function as DMs although they function in other ways as well:

32. **Since** last summer, I haven't seen him again.

33. Why don't you visit Bruce **while** you are in the States?

C. Adverbials: *anyway, besides, consequently, furthermore, still, however, then*. Some of these forms are exclusively used as DMs, whereas some others are ambiguously used:

[Uniquely as a DM]

34. Sue won't eat. **Consequently**, she will lose weight.

35. Bill likes to walk. **Conversely**, Sam likes to ride.

[Ambiguously used as adverbs and DMs]

36. I believe in fairness. **Equally**, I believe in practicality.

37. I treat all my students **equally**.

D. Prepositional phrases (*after all, in addition, for that reason, as a result, in comparison, in other words, in short, in brief, in conclusion*), some of which uniquely function as DMs as in 38, and some which are ambiguous as in 39-40:

38. He didn't get up in time. **As a consequence**, he missed the parade.

39. Mike promised we'd go to the party. However, he didn't go **after all**.

40. I will take a nap now. **After all**, it's my day off.

Schourup suggests that the status of DMs is independent of their syntactic categorization: an item retains its non-DM syntactic categorization but does extra duty as a non-truth-conditional connective loosely associated with clause structure (Schourup 1999: 234). Thus, DMs seem to lose the syntactic properties of the class from which they are drawn although their syntactic properties seem to determine to a certain extent (i) the function they fulfil (cf. Hansen 1997 Portolés 1998, Portolés and Zorraquino 1999, *inter alia*); (ii) the distributional properties of DMs, i.e., their occurrence in initial, medial or final position; (iii) as well as their combination with DMs from other paradigms.

Along the same lines, Fraser states that their occurrences are constrained by the properties of the syntactic category to which they belong:

1) Coordinate conjunctions (*and, but, so*) occur in initial position only:

S1+DM+S2 We started late. **And**, we arrived on time.

S1. DM+S2 I want to sit with Cindy, **and** I don't want to hear any remarks.

2) Subordinate conjunctions (*whereas, while, although, since, because*) occur in initial position before S1:

S2, DM+S1 He came back **because** he loved her.

DM+S1, S2. **Because** he loved her, he came back.

3) Adverbials (*however, moreover, also...*) may occur in initial, medial and final positions, depending on the lexical form used:

S1. DM+S2 We started late. **However**, we arrived on time

S1. NP+DM+VP John brought his children. Moira, **moreover**, brought her five dogs.

S1. S2+DM There were five cars there. There was a truck, **also**.

4) Prepositional phrases (*for that reason, despite that*) may occur in initial, and final positions depending on the particular prepositional phrase:

S1. DM+S2 We left late. **Despite that**, we arrived on time.

S1. S2+DM We left late. We arrived on time **despite that**.

DM+S1, S2 **Despite the fact that** we left late, we arrived on time.

Similarly, the sequencing of DMs also seems to be constrained by the syntactic properties of the class from which they are drawn. Thus, when there are two DMs the first is usually a DM from the category of coordinate conjunctions (*and, so, but*) followed by a member of the same class of markers but from the adverbial or prepositional phase class:

41. John is home. **And furthermore**, he is going to stay there.
42. He was order to work overtime. **So, as a result**, he quit.
43. John isn't here. **And furthermore**, neither is Mary.
44. That is OK with me. **But** this one is ok **also**.

A second type of sequence is the coordinator *and* followed by narrower focus DM of another class, as in:

45. He was home, **and yet** he hadn't spoken to his wife.
46. He was angry, **so, in addition**, he stopped speaking to her.

Thus, it can be concluded that the syntactic patterning of DMs follows their syntactic lineage to the point that the latter imposes a hierarchy for the combination of DMs within the same sequence.

3.1.3.3. Weak clause association

DMs are usually thought to occur "either outside the syntactic structure or loosely attached to it" (Brinton 1996: 34; cf. Hansen, 1997: 156; Schiffrin 1987). Quirk et al. (1985) classify many forms included elsewhere among DMs, as conjuncts, which are considered to be clause elements but to have a detached role in relation to "...closely interrelated clause elements such as subject, complement, and object" (Quirk et al. 1985: 631). With regard to prosody, Zwicky (1985) states that DMs are prosodically independent, being both accented and prosodically separated from their surrounding context by pauses,

intonation, or breaks, in just the same way as parenthetical constructs. DMs can also be unstressed, without pauses and with possible phonological reduction.

Weak clause association is very frequently correlated with phonological independence. Thus, DMs are often thought to constitute independent tone units (Hansen 1997: 156), or are set off from the main clause by means of comma intonation and punctuation in writing and thus are external to its structure (cf. Greenbaum 1969, Martín Zorraquino 1998, Hansen & Britt 1998). Brinton (1996) identifies the following phonological and lexical features for DMs:

1. They are short and phonologically reduced.
2. They form a separate tone group
3. They are marginal forms and hence difficult to place within a traditional word class.

Hansen (1997: 156), in contrast, notes that some uses of French markers *puis* and *donc* are intonationally integrated with the utterance. Similarly, Pons (2001) also questions this property along the lines that basic connectives, like traditional Spanish conjunctions *y*, *pero*, *pues*, are integrated into the intonational contour of the utterance. Thus, relying on a series of analyses performed on real conversations carried out by Hidalgo (1997) and Pons (1998) himself, he states that "...many of those instances are, in fact, cases, where not a pause but a falling pitch is found after the connective, for which to the well-known schema #C#, where C stands for a connective and # for a pause, we should add a second schema, namely #C↘, where ↘ stands for "falling pitch". Likewise, Fraser (2002) considers that DMs are phonologically associated as part of the S2, implying that they are part of the prosody of the sentence and somehow have to be considered in its intonational curve, with or without punctuation signals.

3.1.3.4. Sentence position

There seems to be no dispute when it comes to establishing the syntactic patterning of DMs: they prototypically introduce the discourse segments they mark (Hansen, 1997: 156; Schiffrin, 1987: 31-32, 328). Schourup interprets this tendency of initial position as related to their superordinate use to restrict the contextual interpretation of an utterance “before interpretations can run astray” (Schourup 1999: 233).

Although the defining property of initiality is not criterial for DMs status, almost all items considered DMs are at least possible in initial position, and many occur there predominantly, except for *though*, as pointed out by Fraser (1999: 938). As was noted above, Fraser (2002) indicates that the syntactic class from which they are derived constrains their occurrence in initial, medial or final utterance. Thus, there seems to be some sort of syntactic restriction on the position of DMs, inasmuch as those DMs drawn from traditional class of conjunctions, (*and, but, so, or, because*) tend to exclusively occur in initial position:

- 47. Mary came late. **And** she #**and** didn't bring the memo, #**and**.
- 48. Peter arrived on time. **But** he #**but** didn't bring the results of the survey, #**but**.
- 49. He gave me the number, **so** I # **so** called Mary immediately, # **so**.
- 50. You can bring us a bottle of wine. **Or** you # **or** can just bring some dessert, # **or**.
- 51. She call me home **because** she # **because** couldn't find me anywhere else # **because**.

On the contrary, DMs drawn from the syntactic classes of adverbials, or prepositional phrases display a greater mobility within the utterance. Thus, some of these DMs can only occur in initial and medial positions, or in initial and final position only:

- 52. He found the key to the back door. **Thus**, we **thus** could enter and rescue the little cat, # **thus**.

53. She was allowed to go to the party. **However**, she **however**, didn't feel like going, # **however**.
54. She proposed a few places to spend our holidays, **for example**, Greece and Italy, **for example**.

And some DMs can even occur in initial, medial or even final position:

55. The train was 5 minutes late. **Nevertheless**, we **nevertheless** managed to arrive in time, **nevertheless**.
56. He said that she would behave differently from now on. **In other words**, she, **in other words**, repented from her previous acts, **in other words**.
57. We have no money, the car is broken, the kids are ill and my mother is spending the weekend with us. **In short**, there is, **in short**, no way we can go to Gandía with you this weekend, **in short**.

3.1.3.5. Optionality of Discourse Markers

Fraser, in his early approaches to DMs, contends that the presence or absence of a DM does not alter the potential discourse relationship between the foregoing discourse and the message which follows, since DMs do not contribute to the truth-conditional or propositional content of the utterance they host. Thus, omitting them has normally no effect on the truth-conditional meaning of the sentence they introduce and there is no loss of sequence interpretation either. However, Fraser has recently stated that "...often, but not always, they may be elided without loss of sequence interpretation" (Fraser 2002: 2). Thus, counter to traditional approaches to DMs, these lexical units cannot always be deleted for this may result in ungrammatical sequences. Let us consider the following examples:

58. If you have the time give my regards to Peter. **Or better still**, don't. I will call him tonight myself.
59. If you have the time give my regards to Peter. # don't. I will call him tonight myself.
60. They came to see her **since** she had been so nice to them.
They came to see her # she had been so nice to them.

Likewise, Schourup states that DMs are claimed to be optional in two distinct senses. First, it could be argued that these units are almost universally regarded as syntactically optional in the sense that removal of a DM does not alter the grammaticality of its host sentence (also cf. Fraser 1988: 22). Second, if omitted, DMs cannot be said to enlarge the semantic relationship between the elements they relate. The semantic relationship holding between elements is still available to the hearer, though not explicitly signaled. The utterances below can be understood in roughly the same way, whether the DM is removed or maintained (taken from Schourup 1999: 231):

61. The others are going to Stoke. **However**, I am going to Paris.
62. The others are going to Stoke. I am going to Paris.

However, even those authors who regard DMs as optional seem to agree on the fact that these units help guide the hearer towards a particular interpretation and simultaneously (and perhaps most importantly) help rule out unintended interpretations (Brinton 1996: 34; Brown and Yule 1983: 106), etc. Therefore, DMs display or reflect existing propositional connections (Schiffrin, 1987: 9, 318, 320-321; Brinton, 1996: 34; Schwenter, 1996: 861; Fraser 2002), and they also serve to reinforce and make much more explicit the interpretation that the speaker may have in mind at a particular point of his/her discourse. Despite their optionality DMs are explicit lexical guides to what the speaker takes to be the discourse relationship (Fraser 1990: 390). Fraser (2002) argues that some times the optionality of some of these units is ruled out on the basis of:

- A) Syntactic constraints, especially in the case of subordinate conjunctions *because*, *although*, *while*, *since*, etc.:

63. We left **although** we shouldn't have.
64. She never came back **because** she didn't love him.

B) Infelicity [usually unnoticed]:

65. A: John is at home now. B: **(But)** I just saw him on television.
66. A: Fred is a gentleman. B: **(On the contrary)** he is a bore.

For Fraser, DMs typically signal but do not create a relationship between S1 and S2 as the examples below illustrate:

67. This flight takes 5 ½ hours. There's a stop-over in Paris.
68. This flight takes 5 ½ hours, **and** there's a stop-over in Paris. [Joint]
69. This flight takes 5 ½ hours, **because** there's a stop-over in Paris. [non-volitional cause-result].
70. This flight takes 5 ½ hours. **So**, there's a stop-over in Paris. [evidence]
71. This flight takes 5 ½ hours, **but** there's a stop-over in Paris. [contrast].
72. This flight takes 5 ½ hours. **After all**, there's a stop-over in Paris.

3.1.3.6. Other properties

Finally, there are some other non-defining properties generally true of all DMs. I will refer to the ones identified by Fraser (2002):

A) Literal Interpretation: The interpretation of S1 and S2 together, and not their semantic reading, contributes to the full interpretation of the DM. In this way, cases of irony, ambiguity and metaphor are also accounted for.

-Cases of Irony

73. I just love Boston drivers. **However**, I seldom yell at them. [sequence does not make sense without the ironic interpretation being imposed on S1]

-Cases of Ambiguity

74. Murdock bought WNAC-TV in Boston. **Therefore**, he couldn't legally buy the Globe. [there are two Globes: the company and the newspaper. Only the former would foreclosed by law]

-Cases of Metaphor

75. His mind rusted on vacation. **Consequently**, he required a little time to get up to speed again.

B) The number of speakers in a sequence may depend on the DM used. That is to say, there are DMs that will allow for the presence of two or more speakers, and others whose use would be restricted to only one speaker. Let us consider the examples below, where *but* takes on one or two speakers in 73 and 74 respectively, whereas *on the contrary* in 68 allows only one possible reading, that of two different speakers:

76. We started late. **But** we arrived on time.

77. A: We started late.

B: **But** we arrived on time.

78. A: Jack is a nice guy. #⁵**On the contrary**, he's a bore!. (one speaker)

B: **On the contrary**, he's a bore!

C) The Discourse Marker's scope may vary from global to local, that is to say, it may refer to the whole utterance or just some constituent of it:

79. AE0 2289 Lying together. Book-domain: imaginative

When I wrote that I would need to know more about you, I wasn't thinking in terms of your physical appearance. I am particularly interested in details about your parents. Has either of them suffered from insanity? Masochism is congenital; **that is to say**, you must have inherited it.

80. ABV 445 I Believe. Book-domain: belief and thought

He argues that the danger of an ecological collapse of the earth-what he calls "ecological death"-is greater than the danger of a nuclear catastrophe. He cites in support of this the population explosion. In 1926, the year of his birth, 2 billion people inhabited this planet. By the year 2020 there will be 8 billion people living here. **That is to say**, within 100 years the human population will have quadrupled.

In 79 the scope of the DM is local, in that the previous referenced material, the notion of congenital is recharacterized and explained; whereas in 80 the scope is global in that the recharacterization concerns the whole preceding utterance.

⁵ The hash # indicates that the sentence is not grammatically correct, since the correct reading forces the presence of two different speakers.

3.1.4. Some notes on the approaches to Discourse Markers

The study of DMs can be carried out from two different but complementary perspectives: on the one hand, one can consider that these units belong to a word class focusing on their GRAMMATICAL status in an attempt to delimit the DM category; or, on the other hand, one can focus on the FUNCTIONAL status of DMs, that is to say, describing the connective function they perform and the particular units which can display such a function (Pons 2001: 228).

The former approach entails the well-known fact that the units under the label of DMs have grammatical counterparts that display a rather different function in line with the grammatical properties they have. Several authors have attempted to delimit the DM as a single well-defined grammatical class, among them Zwicky (1985), Fraser's (1988, 1990, 1996) partly grammatical approach, and Quirk et al. (1985). However, as has been suggested above, DMs do not constitute a single well-defined grammatical class, but rather a functionally related group of items drawn from other classes (Schourup 1999: 236, Hansen 1998). Thus, the most adequately grounded criterion for the classification of discourse markers into classes is a FUNCTIONAL or PRAGMATIC one (also in this line Pons 2001, Portolés & Zorraquino 1999, Schourup 1999, also Fraser's 2002 latest work on DMs, *inter alia*).

3.1.5. Domain of use of Discourse Markers

The fact that DMs can function on different levels or domains of use is not a new issue within the most current approaches to these units. In this section I revise the most insightful

contributions to this issue by making a clear distinction between Sweetser's (1990) cognitive approach to these units, and those of authors who have approached the study of coherence relations from a systemic perspective (Halliday and Hasan, 1976, Martin 1992), from a psycholinguistic/text-linguistic perspective (van Dijk 1979, Redeker 1990, Sanders, Spooren and Noordman, 1992), and from computational/semantic approaches (Hobbs 1985, Knott and Mellish 1996, Knott 1999, *inter alia*). All the approaches mentioned above, except for Sweetser's, take as the underlying assumption the fact that intersentential/interclausal conjunctions can be used to signal coherence relations in surface text and they all roughly distinguish relations that hold between the content of the text spans they link, which are termed semantic, and those that hold between the utterances of the texts spans themselves, or the beliefs which underlie them, which are termed pragmatic.

Let us consider the following examples that help illustrate the distinction just depicted with reference to two types of causal relations: those that simply describe a cause-effect occurring in the world, as in 81, and those that possess a rhetorical force, as illustrated in 82 (adapted from Knott 1999: 2):

81. Bill was starving, **so** he had a sandwich.

82. Bill had five sandwiches, **so** he/must have been starving.

In 81 it is the fact that Bill was starving which caused him to have a sandwich; whereas in 82 it is the speaker's belief that Bill had five sandwiches, which prompts him to reach the conclusion that he must have been starving.

Different terminology has been used in order to refer to this two-way distinction, although the definitions are fairly similar. Thus, Halliday and Hasan (1976), along with Martin (1992), refer to external and internal relations; van Dijk (1979) refers to semantic

and pragmatic relations and thus he distinguishes between **PRAGMATIC CONNECTIVES** that express relations between speech-acts, and **SEMANTIC CONNECTIVES** that express relations between denoted facts (van Dijk 1979: 444). Later authors, such as Sanders et al. (1992), Knott and Dale (1996), and Knott (1999) adopt van Dijk's terminology; whereas Redeker (1990) refers to **IDEATIONAL** and **PRAGMATIC** relations.

Sweetser's approach entails a useful modification of the bi-partite notion of semantic and pragmatic relations and proposes a tri-partite distinction, where the class of pragmatic is divided into the class of epistemic relations, which hold at the level of premises and conclusions, or the speaker's beliefs, and that of speech-act relations, which hold between the utterances themselves or their illocutionary forces. Although previous contributors were aware of the existing variations between intentions and beliefs within the category of pragmatic relations, their approaches were attempting to generalize by dividing the class into two. Sweetser contends that some lexical units, among them some coordinate and subordinate conjunctions are pragmatically ambiguous in that they can operate in at least one of three man domains (see also Fraser 2002, Hansen 1998, and Javez and Rossari 2001):

1. Content or semantic-propositional domain
2. Epistemic or logical domain
3. Speech-act domain

Sweetser (1990) applies the distinction of domain of use to traditional coordinators, *and*, *but*, *or*, to the conditional uses of *if*, the disjunctive *or* and temporal relations brought about by the use of *and*, and shows that they can function in all the three domains sketched above. The following examples illustrate the use of DMs on the three different domains.

Thus, 83, 86, and 89 illustrate the use of *and*, *or* and *if* on the content or propositional domain of use, 84, 87 and 90 illustrate their use on the epistemic domain, while 85, 88, and 91 illustrate their use on the speech-act domain:

83. John eats apples **and** pears

84. King Tsin [A Chinese restaurant] has great mu shu pork **and** China First has good dim sum.

85. Go to bed now! **And** no more backtalk!

86. Every Sunday, John eats pancakes **or** fried eggs.

87. John is home, **or** somebody is picking up his newspapers.

88. Have an apple turnover, **or** would you like a strawberry tart?

89. **If** Paris is the capital of France, (then) two is an even number.

90. **If** John went to that party, he was trying to infuriate Miriam.

91. How old are you, **if** it's not a cheeky question?

Authors such as Fraser (1999, 2002), Knott and Dale (1994), Javez and Rossari (2001) (*inter alia*) have attempted a classification of various DMs within the three domains posited as a useful method in order to discriminate and capture alternative senses of DMs. Fraser, for example, recognizes the possibility of DMs functioning in all three domains of use. However, he states that although some of the markers in the Implicative class can operate in all three domains, it is difficult to find an epistemic reading for DMs in the Contrastive group, as well as in the Elaborative and Temporal classes. Let us consider the following examples as reported in Fraser (2002) that illustrate the pragmatic ambiguity for the implicative DM *so*:

A. Semantic/Propositional domain

92. He was asked to work late **so** he quit. [Fact (S1) justifies or causes Fact (S2)]

B. Epistemic/Logical domain

93. The water won't boil, **so** we can't have tea. [Knowledge of (S1) justifies Conclusion (S2)]

C. Speech-act domain

94. The theatre is closed. **So** where do you want to go? [Fact (S1) justifies Speech Act (S2)]

As has been mentioned before, the discrimination between the different pragmatic domains is a very useful tool in order to distinguish between the functions that DMs display. Moreover, the distinction between these three main domains has proved very useful to differentiate the uses of close DMs within the same class. Notice that even some languages specialize and possess different lexical units for the different domains of use. For example, French *parce que*, equivalent to the English *because*, is used specifically for content conjunction readings, whereas *puisque*, is the correct causal conjunction at the epistemic or speech-act level, which suggests that the domains are distinct and distinguishable (Sweetser 1990: 82). The table below aims to present a clear picture of the different authors who have distinguished between two or three distinct domains of use for DMs, along with the terminology they have used in making such a distinction.

Table 1 DOMAINS OF USE OF DISCOURSE MARKERS OF REFORMULATION

AUTHOR	DOMAIN OF USE OF THE DISCOURSE MARKER	
	EXTERNAL RELATIONS	INTERNAL RELATIONS
HALLIDAY&HASAN	SEMANTIC	PRAGMATIC
MARTIN	SEMANTIC	PRAGMATIC
VAN DIJK	SEMANTIC	PRAGMATIC
REDEKER 1990, 1991	IDEATIONAL	PRAGMATIC
SANDERS ET AL.	SEMANTIC	PRAGMATIC
KNOTT AND DALE	SEMANTIC	PRAGMATIC
SWEETSER	CONTENT DOMAIN	SPEECH-ACT
FRASER	CONTENT-PROPOSITIONAL	SPEECH-ACT
JAVEZ&ROSSARI	CONTENT-PROPOSITIONAL	SPEECH-ACT
		LOGICAL/EPISTEMIC
		LOGICAL/EPISTEMIC

3.1.6. Naturally occurring Classes of Discourse Markers

Of researchers on DMs, only Fraser proposes a classification of the expressions into four main naturally occurring classes of DMs. I will also briefly interpolate alternative categorizations into these units as proposed by Quirk et al. (1985), Halliday and Hasan (1976), Blakemore (1987, 1992) in order to show how they differ or complement those proposed by Fraser (2002). Once his four main groups have been described, I will attempt to assess how DMs of RF fit within his category.

Fraser's (2002) defines DMs as lexical expression that signal a relationship between the S1 and the S2, which is either one of (i) Contrast, (ii) Elaboration, (iii) Implication or (iv) Temporality.

1. Contrastive markers: The explicit interpretation of S2 contrasts with an interpretation of S1, either an explicit, or implicit one, a presupposition or an entailment of S1. The contrast can occur on the message or topic level:

a. **Message Contrast:** *alternatively, although, but, contrariwise, contrary to expectations, conversely, despite (this/that), even so, however, in spite of (this/that), in comparison (with this/that), in contrast (to this/ that), instead (of this/that), nevertheless, nonetheless, (this/that point) notwithstanding, on the other hand, on the contrary, rather (than this/that), regardless (of this/that), still, though, whereas, yet.*

b. **Topic Contrast:** *back to my original point, before I forget, by the way, incidentally, just to update you, on a different note, speaking of X, that reminds me, to change the topic, to return to my point, while I think of it, with regard to.*

Halliday and Hasan (1976) refer to DMs of this class with the label Adversative conjunctions, whereas Quirk et al. use the label of Contrastive and further recognize four main subdivisions: (i) reformulatory (*more accurately, rather, alternatively*), (ii) replacive (*better, again, on the other hand*), (iii) antithetic (*conversely, on the contrary, in comparison*) and (iv) concessive (*anyway, yet, all the same*).

Blakemore (1987, 1992) classifies DMs into three main groups depending on the cognitive effect their use brings about. The Contrastive group would roughly fall within those discourse connectives that introduce denials, units such as *but, still, however, nevertheless* that deny the assumption conveyed in the preceding utterance. However, it should be considered that while Fraser, Halliday and Hasan, and Quirk et al.'s classifications are semantically based, Blakemore is much more concerned with the way these DMs facilitate the hearer's processing by indicating the direction in which relevance is to be sought by virtue of the inferential connections they express (Blakemore 1987: 141). Knott and Dale (1994).

2. Elaborative markers: The DM indicates a relationship, where the explicit message of S2 parallels and even augments or refines the message of S1:

Above all, also, alternatively, analogously, and, besides, by the same token, correspondingly, equally, for example, for instance, further (more), in addition, in other words, in particular, likewise, more accurately, more importantly, more precisely, more to the point, moreover, on that basis, on top of it all, or, otherwise, similarly, that is (to say).

Halliday and Hasan use the label additive to refer to a set of lexical expressions that Fraser considers elaborative. However, they distinguished further subdivisions: (i) additive (and, and also, furthermore), (ii) negative (nor, and...not) and (iii) alternative (or, or else, alternatively). Quirk et al. use the same label of additive (equative and reinforcing) within the general semantic category of listing. Elaborative DMs would also fall within the appositional category.

Within Blakemore's classification, DMs of Elaboration would fall within the type of DMs concerned with the strengthening of already-existing assumptions.

3. Implicative markers: The DM signals that S2 should be understood as a conclusion based on S1:

After all, all things considered, as a conclusion, as a consequence (of this/that), as a result (of this/that), because (of this/that), consequently, for this/that reason, hence,; accordingly, in this/that/any case, on this/that condition, so, then, therefore, thus.

Halliday and Hasan refer to this group of Implicative DMs as Causal, and use it as a cover term for relations of Result, Reason, and Purpose. Quirk et al. (1985: 638) posit a distinction between the Inferential (*otherwise, in that case, in other words*) and the Resultive category of conjunctions (*so, accordingly, as a result*) on the grounds that the former indicate a conclusion based on “logic and supposition”.

This third group would correspond to Blakemore’s connectives that introduce contextual implications.

4. Temporal markers: *Then, after, before, meantime, meanwhile, originally, subsequently, eventually, when, first, second, finally.*

This class of Temporal markers has recently been incorporated into Fraser’s classification of DMs. Halliday and Hasan refer to these markers as Temporal conjunctions, whereas Quirk et al. class them within the transtional category further subdivided into (i) discoursal and (ii) temporal.

3.1.7. Concluding remarks

Fraser’s (2002) latest analysis has been taken as a starting point for my definition of DMs and its properties. I reiterate here the definition sketched in 1.2. above for a DM:

[...] a lexical expression which for successive discourse segments, S1, S2,
(i) is associated syntactically as a part of S2 and
(ii) signals a relationship between S2 and S1 which is either one of **Contrast, Elaboration, Implication** or **Temporality**.

His definition outlines some of the underlying properties that sustain the most influential stances on the notion of DMs within English linguistics. Suffice it to say here, that this definition recognizes an indexical component in DMs (cf. Levinson 1983, Zwicky 1985, Schiffrin 1987, Fraser 1990) and thus a connective function. Likewise, for Fraser DMs are non-truth-conditional, properties around which the most insightful contributions reviewed revolve. Similarly, the appropriateness of this definition lies in its classification and identification of the different sub-groups of DMs, and of especial relevance for this study, of the sub-group of Elaborative DMs of which I will later contend that DMs of RF are a sub-group.

3.2. English Discourse Markers of Reformulation

Despite some early contributions to reformulative expressions in English linguistics, (c.f. Greenbaum 1969, Quirk et al. 1973, 1985, Schiffrin 1980, 1987, Halliday and Hasan 1976, Hobs 1979, 1983, Halliday 1985, Mann and Thompson 1987, Sanders et al. 1993, *inter alia*), there are very few studies concerning the notion of reformulation and the lexical units that display such a function. In addition, some of the descriptions offered are sketchy and merely provide a tentative and scattered classification of some of the lexical units that, for the purpose of this study, will be classed under the label of English DMs of RF.

I will now define the notion of reformulation in English, as it will be used throughout this dissertation and provide its defining characteristics. Then, I will propose a tentative list of English reformulative expressions in order to show that they qualify for DM membership through an assessment of their defining and non-defining properties, and more specifically, that they are a sub-class of Elaborative DMs (drawing on Fraser's framework of analysis).

Finally, I will present a tentative classification of the different sub-classes that comprise the category of DMs of RF. I turn to these issues in order.

3.2.1. What is a Reformulation?

In order to carry out the analysis of a group of lexical units I will call reformulators or DMs of RF, a unitary definition of the term must be first provided, broad enough to contemplate the inclusion of a range of lexical units whose main function would be that of reformulating in English. Contributions from other languages, such as French and Spanish, have been consciously avoided and only taken as illustrative of the phenomenon of reformulation in other languages in order to stay within by the *emic* perspective that underlies this study. A reformulation is defined as follows:

A reformulation is a recharacterization of the message conveyed by the whole previous discourse segment S1, or one of its constituents.

A reformulation takes place between a source discourse segment S1 (cf Güllich and Kotschi 1983) or any of its constituents, and a reformulated segment, or S2, along with the presence of a marker or reformulator, which displays the type of relationship accomplished between the two linked discourse segments and indicates that a recharacterization of the previous discourse segment (S1) has been carried out, so that a new formulation or reformulation is “on the way”.

3.2.2. What are Discourse Markers of Reformulation?

In this section, I will show that some of the English reformulative expressions, classified elsewhere as Conjuncts, Conjunctions, or Appositional markers, are indeed a sub-group of Discourse Markers. In order to show that these lexical units qualify for DM

membership, and are a sub-class of Elaborative DMs, I will first provide a tentative a list of candidates in English, and then I will assess their defining and non-defining properties in the light of the ones sketched above for the wider category of DMs. Thus, by showing that they display two key properties necessary for the status of DMs, namely, connectivity and non-truth conditionality, I will corroborate their inclusion within the broader category of DMs, to finally propose a definition and classification of DMs of RF.

3.2.3. A tentative list of Discourse Markers of Reformulation

The following lexical units are proposed as potentially DMs of RF whose use brings about a recharacterization of the message conveyed by the whole previous segment S1 or some of its constituents:

(Or) better (yet/still)
Especially
For example/for instance, e.g.
I mean
In a few words/to put it in a few words
In a nutshell {in sum}
In a sense {in other words}
In conclusion/to conclude
In more technical terms
In one word/In a word/in words of one syllable
In other words/To put it in other words
In short/in brief/in a nutshell
In sum/to summarize/to sum up
More accurately/to be more accurate
More clearly/to be more clear/to make things clear
More exactly/to be more exact
More precisely/to be more precise
More simply/in simple(r) terms/Put more simply/to put it more simply
More specifically/to be more specific
Or rather
Particularly/in particular
Say (for example/for instance)
Technically speaking
That is/that is to say/I.e (id est)

To cap it off
To recap/to recapitulate
To simplify
To top it off
Viz. (Videlicet)/Namely/To wit
What I mean is
What I'm saying is

Since DMs of RF are viewed as a sub-class of DMs, in particular, of Elaborative DMs, it is expected that they share some properties with the general class of lexical expressions to which they belong. Thus, in the following section I outline the defining and non-defining properties of DMs of RF that permit their consideration as DMs in the light of the features identified in 3.1.2 and 3.1.3 above.

3.2.4. Defining properties of Discourse Markers of Reformulation: Connectivity and Non-truth conditionality

DMs of RF are connective devices in that they signal a sequential relationship between the interpretations of the discourse segment they host, namely S2, and the previous segment, S1, and conceptually signal where the discourse is heading. This property of connectivity has been widely accepted among the approaches to DMs of RF (cf. Halliday and Hasan 1976, Quirk et al. 1985, Archakis 2001, Matsui 2001, Bach 1996, 1999, Casado 1991, Pons 1998, 2000, 2001, Veiga 1994-95) although the way it is conceived may vary (cf. Portolés 1998 for a distinction between proper connectives and reformulatives).

English DMs of RF establish a two-place relationship, where there is a source discourse segment ($S_1...S_n$) and a reformulated discourse segment or S2, linked by means of a DM of RF. Accordingly, the canonical form is the one identified by Fraser for DMs in

general, namely, S1 for the first discourse segment, DM of RF, for the marker of reformulation, and S2, for the reformulated discourse segment: **S1. DMRF.S2.**

It is normally the case that the S1 is an explicitly stated discourse segment, but the presence of a linguistic S1 cannot be taken to be a necessary condition for a reformulation to take place. As Fraser points out, a DM can link the segment that hosts it to a previous or upcoming discourse segment (S1), or even to a non-linguistic context. DMs of RF, or at least some of them, do not always require an explicitly stated discourse segment, similar to other DMs that can function with a non-linguistic S1.

Let us consider the following pre-fabricated examples that show the impossibility of some reformulators with a non-linguistic S1 that would render the sequence incoherent:

95. Context: [On seeing her son covered in mud, a mother angrily exclaims]

- (a) **#That is to say**, you've disobeyed me again
- (b) **#In other words**, you've been playing in the mud again!
- (c) **#To sum up/#In short/** you've ignored your father's warning.

96. Context: [A man on seeing his wife laden with parcels]

- (a) **#That is to say/#To sum up**, you've been shopping again this week!
- (b) **#In other words/#In conclusion**, you weren't at your mother's.

97. Context: On seeing her sister trying on a new dress:

A: **#For example**, you could also wear my shawl.

This requirement fits well with the fact that some of these DMs of RF contain a referring expression and are thus anaphoric, that is to say, they presuppose a previous linguistic discourse. Such is the case of the reformulators *that is to say*, *videlicet*, *in other words*, *to cap it all*, and *to top it off*, where the presence of "that", "licet", "other" and "it" makes explicit reference to some previously stated message or part of it. Likewise, with the reformulators *for example*, *for instance*, there needs to be a previous DM of which the S2

might be an example or instance.

Although the need for linguistic discourse seems to be true for all the sub-classes of DMs of RF, the status of some DMs of rectification seems more controversial. Let us consider the following pre-fabricated examples, where the use of *better still-better yet* is possible with a non-linguistic discourse, while the rest of the forms from its group are unable to function without a linguistic discourse segment:

98. [Context: Anne's grandmother comes in the living room, where the tailor is taking in a few inches from her dress. After taking it in at the waist, Anne looks at her granny who says⁶:]

A: **Better still**, take in a few inches at the hips.

B: **#More precisely**, take in a few inches at the hips.

C: **#On second thoughts**, take in a few inches at the hips.

D: **#More accurately**, take in a few inches at the hips.

The second defining property of DMs of RF is that of non-truth-conditionality. As noted for DMs in general, DMs of RF have a meaning that does not affect the truth-conditions of the sentence they host. We will deal below with the controversy created around DMs of RF involving the traditional dichotomy between conceptual-procedural meaning.

3.2.5. Non-Defining properties of Discourse Markers of Reformulation

In what follows I look into the following non-defining properties of DMs of RF, along the lines of the ones identified for DMs in general:

1. Type of meaning encoded by DMs
2. Multi-categoriality
3. Weak clause association

⁶ I thank Professor Bruce Fraser for pointing out this example to me.

4. Initiality
5. Optionality of DMs
6. Number of speakers

3.2.5.1. Type of meaning encoded by Reformulators

The type of meaning that DMs of RF encode has not been a central concern in the approaches to these lexical expressions, neither theoretical nor descriptive. Although most authors agree on their non-truth-conditionality, few set out to assess the type of meaning they encode. Thus, the English studies on DMs of RF do not normally address the issue, except for Blakemore's (1996) analysis, whose binary distinction between conceptual and procedural meaning has sparked off an enormous flow of contributions with detractors and supporters of her view of DMs of RF as encoding conceptual meaning. The French contributions on this notion also seem unaware of the dispute between these two types of meaning. For them, connectives encode semantic instructions that guide the hearer in his/her interpretation of discourse towards one direction or another. The notion of semantic instructions is certainly reminiscent of the notion of procedural meaning inasmuch as procedural expressions indicate how to manipulate conceptual information and thus facilitate the inferential process by constraining the context and the contextual assumptions to be obtained.

Blakemore (1996) analyzes DMs of RF, units such as *that is (to say)*, *in other words*, *in sum*, *for example*, as encoding a constituent of a propositional or conceptual representation that allows them not to contribute to the truth-conditions of the utterance they host but to what is called higher-level explicatures. According to this view, reformulators differ from DMs such as *so*, *therefore*, or *after all*, that guide the speaker's process of utterance

interpretation, and pose constraints on the relevance of implicatures. Blakemore's arguments for the conceptual status of DMs of RF is based on the following evidence (cf. chapter 2 for further insights) briefly repeated here:

1. A speaker who uses DMs of RF may be accused of lying;
2. DMs of RF are expandable compositionally;
3. DMs of RF have synonymous counterparts which clearly encode concepts that contribute to the truth conditions of the utterance that contain them; and
4. DMs of RF are easy to define conceptually.

These tests are taken as analytic tools and constitute the bases on which to distinguish between proper DMs and lexical expressions that encode concepts, as is the case of DMs of RF.

Although Fraser does not tackle the issue of DMs of RF *per se*, he challenges this binary distinction and the belief that lexical expressions might encode either conceptual or procedural meaning, but not both. As was shown in 3.1.2.2.1. Fraser contends that DMs should be seen as encoding both types of meaning, procedural and conceptual as the only plausible alternative. Likewise, other approaches to DMs of RF, (Portolés 1998, Murillo 2000 on a group of Explanatory DMs, Matsui 2002 on Japanese *dakara/in other words*, Archakis 2001 on a group of Greek DMs of RF, *inter alia*), have shown that some reformulators encode both types of meaning, conceptual and procedural due to the fact that they might be in the early stages of GRAMMATICALIZATION and thus retain traces of their original conceptual meaning. These contributions strongly suggest that Blakemore's analysis is overstated and have opened a new perspective in that a linguistic item may encode a concept and simultaneously impose a procedural constraint, a claim that has not been excluded in the theory (in this line cf. Blass 1990 and Nicolle 1998)

As far as the lexical units that form the group of EDMs of RF object of analysis in this dissertation, it has been observed that not all of them can be subjected to the four tests with the same degree of success for their inclusion under the conceptual category. Some reformulators seem to resist inclusion as conceptual devices. Let us consider the four main tests again to see how well they work for English DMs of RF:

A. Conceptual devices allow the denial of truthfulness in their use. Along with *in other words*, the following reformulators seem to accept denial of truthfulness: *in plain terms*, *in more technical terms*, *in short*, *in brief*; and with less certainty *in conclusion*. In contrast, acceptability is impossible for *namely*, *viz.*, *that is to say*, and *or rather*. The following examples illustrate this claim:

99. A: She said she no longer requires your services.
B: **In other words**, she said I'm fired.
A: That's not true, she didn't say that.
100. A: The doctor told us that he was suffering from a severe carcinoma with developing metastasis enhanced by a testicular malignancy, **in plain words**, a cryptorchism.
B: That's not true. Those are not plainer words, they are even more confusing!
101. A: How did you enjoy your holidays?
B: Well, the hotel was packed with tourists who were certainly disrespectful and didn't let us get a wink of sleep till late in the morning; the rooms were rather dirty and they didn't clean them once in the whole fortnight. Moreover, the weather was terrible, it was chilly and the beach was just awful. **In short/In brief**, it was a disaster.
A: That's not true. You've been far from brief in your description. In fact, it's taken you a while to explain.
102. [Context: Pam has been cheating on her boyfriend Paul with his best friend Sam for a while. One day Paul comes back home earlier than expected and catches them red-handed. Poor Paul leaves the house beside himself with anger]
- Pam: I'll go and talk to him. He deserves an explanation. **(Or) Better yet**, we'll both go together and talk to him. After all, you're his best friend.
Sam: *That's not true. Your wanting me to go is not a better option.* If I go I will only makes things worse.

B. Expressions that encode procedures are difficult to be defined conceptually. Most DMs of RF can be conceptually explained and brought into consciousness, except for the reformulators *namely* and *viz.*:

- In other words**: These are other words for S1.
- In plain/more technical words**: These are simpler or more technical words for S1.
- That is to say**: This is another way of saying S1.
- For example-instance**: This is a form of illustrating S1.
- (or) better yet-still**: This is a better option or alternative to that of S1.
- (or) more precisely, more accurately**: This is a more precise or accurate way of saying S1.
- Or rather**: This is a preferable option to that of S1
- In short-brief**: This is a short way of putting S1.
- In conclusion-to conclude**: This is a way of concluding from S1.
- To sum up, to summarize**: This is a way of summarizing S1
- To recap, to recapitulate**: This is a way of recapitulating S1.
- #Videlicet**: This is a way of identifying S1.
- #Namely**: This is a way of naming S1.

C. Compositionality. Conceptual expressions can be subsumed within larger compositional expressions and are thus semantically complex and very productive. This is true for the following reformulators:

- In other words**, (*to put it in other words, to put it more elegantly, in plain words, in simpler terms, in more technical terms...*)
- For example-instance** (*say for example-instance, to give an example-instance*)
- (or) more accurately** (*far more accurately*)
- more precisely** (*speaking more precisely, putting this more precisely*)
- In conclusion** (*to conclude, as a conclusion, I want to say in conclusion*)
- To recap** (*this is to recapitulate briefly, and so to recap, but just to recap*)

Although less acceptable for the following lexical forms:

- In short-brief** (*to cut a long story short, to put it briefly???*),
- That is to say** (*that is, more exactly, to say*),

And just impossible for the following reformulators not amenable to compositionality:

- namely**
- viz.**
- (or) better yet-still**
- or rather**

4) Homophonous counterparts. One of the criteria for the inclusion of lexical expressions under the category of conceptual devices was the fact that they have synonymous counterparts that are truth conditional and encode concepts. This seems to apply for all

DMs of RF except for *namely, for example, viz., and or rather*, as the examples below show:

103. AN8 2063 The Meddlers-Book: domain imaginative
So far all we know is what has appeared in the newspapers, that you have, shall we say, brought into life a baby-a human baby just like any one of the infants sleeping in their mothers' arms all over the world-in a way **that is to say** the least unusual.
104. J2D 182 Research on animals in Oxford. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: natural sciences
One major problem affecting growth is that residential accommodation in the City is expensive and **in short** supply, and the local planning authority expects the University and the colleges to provide accommodation for all additional students.
105. H9M 86 Rational Expectations in Macroeconomics. Book-domain: commerce
We can derive the term as the covariance between Y and the terms on the right-hand side of equation (3.8) since these terms **in sum** equal C.
106. ANH 653 The morality of freedom. Book-domain: belief and thought.
These doubts stem from a failure to appreciate the many ways in which the communal character of political authorities affects their claim to legitimacy vis-a-vis each individual. Let us examine some of these points **in brief**.
107. CS3 1340 Theories of the state. Book-domain: social science
At the same time quasi-governmental agencies have multiplied beyond the reach of any effective control by representative politics. Authoritarian statism carries the "seeds or certain scattered elements of fascism" and Poulantzas asserts **in conclusion** that "All contemporary power is functional to authoritarian statism.
108. A0N 123 King Cameron. Book-domain: imaginative
Now he looked over at Cameron, taking stock of the quizzical lift of his right eyebrow when he looked out below his black fringe, the down-turn of his mouth under his long curved nose, and began **to recapitulate** his argument with care, uncomfortably aware that Angus might think he was trying not to sound drunk.
109. A04 1375 Art Criticism: A user's guide. Book-domain: arts
He admired it and talked about the artist's meaning, and the noble ideas he attributed to him. David listened and frankly avowed that he had not been conscious of all these grand ideas. "What" said Diderot, "you did it from instinct without knowing what you were doing! That is **better still!**". David was greatly encouraged by this warm admiration expressed by a celebrated man, and it helped to develop his talent.

110. A0H 1563 Gliding Safety. Book-domain: leisure
Polishing your flying: During training, your instructor makes you practise and insists that you try to fly **more accurately** and efficiently all the time.

As far as the notion of core meaning is concerned, while all English DMs of RF share the core meaning of reformulation, a more elaborated meaning is created for each DMs individually in the different contexts in which it is used in order to provide it with specific meanings. Thus, a DM such as *in other words*, shares the core meaning of reformulation, in that it effects a recharacterization of the previous message in S1 but acquires different nuances of meaning when realized in a specific context, such as Clarification, Explanation, Identification, or Conclusion, to name a few.

3.2.5.2. Multi-categoriality

Heterogeneity is one of the defining properties of DMs in general, and thus English DMs of RF are mainly drawn from various traditional syntactic classes. Some of these lexical units do not fall nicely within the traditional syntactic classes and are best given the label of conjuncts, conjunctions or apposition markers in most traditional grammars (cf. Greenbaum 1969, Halliday and Hasan 1976, Quirk et al. 1985). Reformulators are mainly drawn from the categories of adverbials (*viz., namely, or more precisely, more accurately, or better yet, better still, or rather*) prepositional phrases (*in other words, in plain words, in simpler terms, for instance, for example, in conclusion, in brief, in short, in sum*) and non-finite clauses (*that is to say, to sum up, to conclude*). Thus, rather than positing a syntactic class, they are grouped together as a functional class which shares a reformulative function.

3.2.5.3. Initiality

Reformulators vary from initial, to medial or final utterance position, although all DMs of RF are possible in initial position. Since they are mainly drawn from the category of adverbials and prepositional phrases, some of them admit at least two positions, if not all of them. *That is to say* and *in other words* count among the most ubiquitous reformulators and are possible in initial, medial and even final positions. In contrast, *viz.*, and *namely* are initially restricted, as well as *(or) more precisely*, *(or) more accurately*, *(or) better still-yet*, and *or rather*. The following examples illustrate the behavior of some of the most representative DMs of RF with regard to their position within the sequence:

111. She came back from the hotel, [**that is to say**] the Plaza Hotel, [**that is to say**].
112. I inquired on her reasons for never showing up at the party. [**In other words**], I [,**in other words**,] called her boyfriend and found out [, **in other words**].
113. She identified two of the names the Police gave to her, [**namely**], Jeremy and Ronald [**# namely**].
114. You can follow any framework you want for your analysis, [**for example**] Schiffrin's, [**# for example**] Redeker's or my own [**for example**].
115. She tried to reach you on the phone first time in the morning and left several messages on your id caller during the morning. **In short**, she wanted [, **in short**,] to talk to you badly [,**# in short**].
116. There has been a decrease in both output and intake of goods. Likewise, two of our main companies have been taken over by Repsol. [**To sum up**], this year's benefits [,**to sum up**,] have dwindled enormously [, **to sum up**].
117. I'll catch you in a moment. [**Or better still**], wait here with me till I'm done [**# or better still**].
118. I offered my house because she happened to say her friends were in town. [**More precisely**], she said [,**more precisely**,] that some of her friends from the States were in town and needed a place to stay [**# more precisely**].

119. If you need a sieve and do not have one at home, you can always use a small colander, [or rather], a sifter [# or rather].
120. A. Did you get the articles for the exam?
B. Well, I went to the library and the Xerox machine was out of ink. Then, I asked my friend Mike to lend me his articles and he couldn't find them...
- A: [In conclusion/to conclude-In short], you haven't read them and the exam is in less than 2 hours, [# in conclusion/to conclude-in short].

3.2.5.4. Weak clause association

Likewise, reformulators, like DMs in general, are loosely attached to the syntactic structure and constitute an independent tone unit, since they are prosodically independent and separated from their surrounding context by means of pauses and intonation.

3.2.5.5. Optionality of Discourse Markers of Reformulation

As far as the optionality of English DMs of RF is concerned, standard approaches to these units have argued that the presence of the marker is necessary only in cases of non-paraphrastic reformulation, whereas in cases of paraphrastic reformulation or mere paraphrase, the presence of DM of RF is not a necessary condition, since the relationship between discourse segments is patent, even without the explicit presence of the reformulator (cf. Gülich and Kotschi 1983, also Quirk et al. 1985, *inter alia*).

Thus, some of the Explanation DMs of RF might be elided without a loss of sequence interpretation. Such is the case of traditionally considered markers of paraphrastic reformulation: *that is to say*, *viz.*, *namely*, *in other words*; whose use presupposes certain semantic resemblance between the messages of S1 and S2. However, optionality is more difficult to accept for DMs of Rectification, Conclusion or Summary, traditionally viewed as non-paraphrastic, since their elision brings about an incomprehensible sequence in most

of the cases and suppresses the type of relationship intended to for them by the speaker (cf. Veiga 1994-5 for a similar insight with regard to Spanish DMs of recapitulation and conclusion).

Let us consider the following examples, where optionality of some DMs of RF renders the sequence perfectly grammatical:

121. ABM 1124 The Empiricists. Book-domain: belief and thought
(a) Persons, for Descartes, are mental or immaterial thinking substances. I am, says Descartes, “a substance the whole essence or nature of which is to think... This “me”, **that is to say**, the soul by which I am what I am, is entirely distinct from body... and even if the body were not, the soul would not cease to be what it is.

(b) Persons, for Descartes, are mental or immaterial thinking substances. I am, says Descartes, “a substance the whole essence or nature of which is to think... This “me, [] the soul by which I am what I am, is entirely distinct from body... and even if the body were not, the soul would not cease to be what it is.
122. (a) She quoted two main authors, **namely**, Dickens and Shakespeare.

(b) She quoted two main authors: [] Dickens and Shakespeare.
123. (a) A: Mike has arrived late for work again.
B: **In other words**, the twins must have kept him up all night.
B: [] The twins must have been kept him up all night.
124. (a) She visited some of the most interesting landmarks of the city, **for example**, the Torre del Oro and El Parque de María Luisa, and then came back to the hotel.

(b) She visited some of the most interesting landmarks of the city, [] the Torre del Oro and El Parque de María Luisa, and then came back to the hotel. [The interpretation of this sequence without the marker could be correct with the correct pronunciation or with the use of a colon].

However, in the following examples the relationship holding between both discourse segments is certainly more difficult to assess without the explicit marker of the reformulator:

125. (a) They wanted to be with each other. **In other words**, they wanted to be alone.
- (b) They wanted to be with each other. [] # they wanted to be alone.
126. AAY 276 Adkin. Miscellanea-domain: commerce
- (a) Adkin Financial Services offers comprehensive financial advice and support to clients of Adkin based on the extensive experience and know-how of its professional staff. Each of our advisors is registered with Fimbra, the Financial Intermediaries Managers and Brokers Regulatory Association and as such has to meet high standards of knowledge, experience and professional competence. **In short**, our status as Independent Financial Advisors means we must always give you the best possible advice regarding your options in the financial marketplace.
- (b) Adkin Financial Services offers comprehensive financial advice and support to clients of Adkin based on the extensive experience and know-how of its professional staff. Each of our advisors is registered with Fimbra, the Financial Intermediaries Managers and Brokers Regulatory Association and as such has to meet high standards of knowledge, experience and professional competence. [] # Our status as Independent Financial Advisors means we must always give you the best possible advice regarding your options in the financial marketplace.
127. CM6 1059 Europe 1880-1945. Book-domain: world-affairs
- (a) The family, for example, was at the same time tending to lose some of its authority and responsibilities .By the end of the nineteenth century, the political side of this process was far advanced. **More precisely**, it meant that discussion about the organization and use of state power turned more on means and less on ends. This did not mean there were not still big divergences of belief about ends.
- (b) The family, for example, was at the same time tending to lose some of its authority and responsibilities .By the end of the nineteenth century, the political side of this process was far advanced. [] # It meant that discussion about the organization and use of state power turned more on means and less on ends. This did not mean there were not still big divergences of belief about ends.
128. A7G 235 Charity leaflets and letters. Miscellanea-domain: social science
- (a) Or, to join our campaign now and get your gift to us even faster, please phone 01-200 0200 and speak to one of our helpers, quoting your Access or Visa card number. **Better still**, if you can, please arrange to give regularly to UNICEF's work so we can carry our campaign for better child health care into the future.
- (b) Or, to join our campaign now and get your gift to us even faster, please phone 01-200 0200 and speak to one of our helpers, quoting your Access or Visa card number. [] # If you can, please arrange to give regularly to UNICEF's work so we can carry our campaign for better child health care into the future.

129. EDG 1785 Ideal Home. Periodical-domain: leisure
- (a) I listen to the silence and stare into the space and I have a sense of belonging. Iona has accepted me, welcomed me to her forgiving shores. She has woven her spell and allowed me to see another world, another life, a life of the spirit. I am happy. **Or rather** I know that happiness waits here for those who know where to look.
- (b) I listen to the silence and stare into the space and I have a sense of belonging. Iona has accepted me, welcomed me to her forgiving shores. She has woven her spell and allowed me to see another world, another life, a life of the spirit. I am happy. [] # I know that happiness waits here for those who know where to look.
130. ATA 1327 Woman: a cultural review. Periodical-domain: social science
- (a) Dickinson, to be fair, poses the biographer special problems: so many theories, so few facts-**or, more accurately**, so few biographical facts which can be neatly matched to the tussles and triumphs of individual poems.
- (b) Dickinson, to be fair, poses the biographer special problems: so many theories, so few facts [] # so few biographical facts which can be neatly matched to the tussles and triumphs of individual poems.
131. A75 500 Your body clock: how to live with it. Book-domain: natural sciences
- (a) It makes the heart pump blood faster (we have all felt the pounding and racing of our hearts when we are roused); dilates the airways of our lungs (so we can breathe faster); and causes a great increase in the release of energy-by breaking down glycogen (the form in which glucose is stored) for muscles, and fat (from fat storage depots) for the rest of the body. **In sum**, it enables the body to be most able to deal with danger and to be most efficient physically.
- (b) It makes the heart pump blood faster (we have all felt the pounding and racing of our hearts when we are roused); dilates the airways of our lungs (so we can breathe faster); and causes a great increase in the release of energy-by breaking down glycogen (the form in which glucose is stored) for muscles, and fat (from fat storage depots) for the rest of the body. [] # It enables the body to be most able to deal with danger and to be most efficient physically.
132. BNF 1671 Marriage inside out. Book-domain: belief and thought
- (a) In later life the daughter may find herself self-condemned as, without adequate inner resources, she fails to live up to the ideal standards she has set for herself. In this situation the psychological process known as “splitting”, which we have described earlier, is apt to occur. **To recap**, idealized “good” relationships (often the product of fantasy) are unconsciously separated from the “bad” relationships in which failure, anger, depression and other negatively connoted feelings are experienced.

(b) In later life the daughter may find herself self-condemned as, without adequate inner resources, she fails to live up to the ideal standards she has set for herself. In this situation the psychological process known as “splitting”, which we have described earlier, is apt to occur. [] # Idealized “good” relationships (often the product of fantasy) are unconsciously separated from the “bad” relationships in which failure, anger, depression and other negatively connoted feelings are experienced.

Although some DMs of RF can be optional in some cases, especially when the semantic equivalence between S1 and S2 is high, the presence of reformulators serves as an explicit guide in order to account for the relationship between discourse segments, as well as to guide the hearer towards the correct interpretation of the relationship brought about by means of the reformulator used, and thus rule out unintended interpretations (cf. Portolés and Zorraquino 1999, Blakemore 1987, Fraser 1999).

3.2.5.6. Number of speakers

Another interesting feature of DMs of RF, which has not been discussed for DMs in general, concerns whether they can function in monologic and dialogic exchanges, thus allowing for one or two speakers in the sequence where they occur. All the reformulators under investigation are possible in monologic discourse. However, not all of them are equally acceptable in dialogic exchanges.

For example, DMs such as *for example, for instance, namely, or viz.*, are hard to place in dialogic exchanges, due to the fact that their uses are restricted to cases of apposition, and to the assignment of reference to an utterance constituent of the S1, or illustrating some aspect of it. However, they seem to be acceptable in situations that involve three or more speakers, where at least two of them work together so that their interventions should be

better understood as cooperative and sharing the same objective:

133. [Context: two barristers A and B adducing evidence for the innocence of the accused say]
A: Your honor, our client had two main reasons not to kill her husband.
B: # **Namely**, that she would lose her house and the custody of her children in case she were found guilty of the crime.
134. [Context: A father and his twin sons are planning their summer holidays. The twins want to go somewhere on the Mediterranean coast and have previously agreed to persuade their father to go there when asked about their preferences]
A: So, where could we go this year?
B: Well, we could go somewhere on the Mediterranean coast...
C: **For example**, Spain or Italy.

Some DMs such as *in conclusion*, *in one word*, *in short*, *in brief*, *in sum*, or *to recap*, also seem to function in these situations, where two or more speakers engage in a cooperative effort to convey their communicative intentions to a third one:

135. [Context: Alex and Danny have just come back from a meeting with their coach. They have been discussing their continuity in the team. Their mother asks them about the meeting]
- Mother: How was your meeting with Terry?
Alex: Well, he gave us the skinny about the financial situation of the team: they don't have any sponsors or any other means of financial support, they have a debit of 1 million dollars and they won't be able to afford any new signings for the next season.
Danny: **To sum up**, they still want us in the team for at least two more seasons.
Danny: **In one word**, they still want us in the team for at least two more seasons.
Danny: **In conclusion**, they still want us in the team for at least two more seasons.
Danny: **In short-in brief**, they still want us in the team for at least two more seasons.
Danny: # **To recap**, they still want us in the team for at least two more seasons.

Reformulators such as *(or) better still*, *(or) better yet*, *or rather*, *(or) more precisely*, and *(or) more accurately* also seem to be acceptable in dialogic exchanges as shown below:

136. [Context: It is 9 am on a lovely Sunday morning. Julie, Anne and Ken are planning to go to the beach. However, at the last minute Ken gets an e-mail informing him that his boss is going to call around midday from his office in New York. It seems important and he decides to wait for the call. Anne and July are in sort of a rush because they promised their boyfriends they'd be at the beach before midday. However, if they leave, Ken won't be able to go to the beach, since he has no car and there is no bus after 10.30. They are considering the possible solutions]

Julie: Don't worry we'll wait for you till you get your call, and then we can go together. I don't think the guys will be too mad at us for being late again.

(i) Anne: **Or better still/ # or rather**, why don't we take the bus and he can take my car and join us later?

(ii) Kenn: **Or better yet/ # or rather**, why don't I divert all my calls to one of your cell phones so that I can go with you before midday?

137. [Context: Sheila's explaining to Candy that her boyfriend, who repeatedly fails to keep his promises to visit her, will be unable to visit her again. Candy, however, is aware that he is seeing his old girlfriend again, something that she knows that Sheila also knows for sure but pretends not to know]

Candy: Is Mike dropping by tonight?

Sheila: Well, actually he called to tell me that something has come up....

Candy: **Or rather**, that SOMEONE has come up.

Candy: **Or more precisely**, that SOMEONE has come up.

Candy: **# Or better still**, that SOMEONE has come up.

DMs of RF such as *in conclusion*, *in one word*, *in short*, *in brief*, *in sum*, *to sum up*, *to recap*, among others, are the most pervasive in dialogic discourses in that a second speaker B is entitled to conclude something from the evidence provided in the message of a previous speaker A, or summarize it:

138. [Context: Talking about a friend who has recently suffered from depression]
A: How's Sheila doing?
B: She seems to be better, she feels like going out, visiting her friends and family, she even takes the initiative to go out and have a good time with the people that love her.
A: **In short**, she's pretty much recovered.

However, some of the markers of the Explanation group are also possible in those

contexts where the second speaker draws a conclusion from the message in S1. Such is the case for *that is to say* and *in other words* in the examples below:

139. A: You look terrible! Did you sleep well last night?
B: Well, Paul and the kids were still home by midnight, and Sheila just came up with the great idea of organizing a karaoke party when I was already in bed....
A: **In other words/That is to say**, you didn't get a wink.
140. A: Do you know if Mike finally got that position with IBM?
B: Well, I talked to him yesterday but he told me that they were still in the process of negotiating the type of contract, the salary, and the holidays. And he also had another interview with someone from the Programming department.
A: **# In conclusion/ # In one word/In other words/ That is to say** that he didn't get the position, because they wanted someone to start today.

Sometimes a second speaker B might reformulate another's S1 in an attempt to seek clarification and/or merely corroborate that s/he has understood his/her interlocutor correctly, by means of a marker of Explanation, as the examples below show:

141. [Context: Sheila is explaining to Dorothy (who is looking after her mother for the night) the steps to follow in case her mother, who suffers from Alzheimer, has a crisis]
- S: If she starts yelling and asking for my daddy or myself, just tell her that we've gone somewhere, that he's gone to the shop around the corner to get her some strawberries and that I'm at school, that would work. However, if she wanders around for a while, that means that she may be disoriented and not know where she is. She won't even let you get near her so, the best thing to do is to hum her favourite song so she will realise she's home. Luckily she may go straight to bed after that.
- D: **That is to say/In other words**, if she yells and asks for you or your daddy, I just tell her you'll be back right away and if she gets up and starts moving around, I just sing her a song. Is that right?
- S: Yeah perfect, but remember not to get too close to her, she may kick you or hit you, cause she won't recognize who you are till you hum her song.
142. [Context: Sheila is giving some instructions to Candy, who is looking after her little daughter Martha this time]

S: And after lunch, she should take a nap. I normally play her a video and that gets her to sleep. If she doesn't take a nap, she should be in bed by 8, otherwise, she won't go to sleep at all and she will have you up the whole night. And after dinner, avoid any sweets or chocolates, she gets really hyperactive and has problems sleeping. Also, don't allow her to drink anything between 7 and 8, and make sure she goes to the toilet before going to bed.

C: **In other words**, no chocolates or sweets after dinner, no liquids between 7 and 8, and preferably a nap after lunch.

S: That's right.

To sum up, English DMs of RF can function with one or two speakers, in monologic and dialogic exchanges, and also in cooperative efforts between two speakers with regard to a third one.

3.2.6. Naturally occurring subclasses of Fraser's Elaborative Discourse Markers

Fraser's (2002) broad classification of DMs in English is taken as a starting point for the description and assessment of the functions of a group of lexical units that reformulate in English. Fraser classifies units such as *in other words*, *that is*, *for example*, *for instance*, or *in particular*, as Elaborative DMs within the broader category of DMs. The function of Elaborative markers is to extend some aspect of S1 in one of the following ways: the S2 **PARALLELS**, **REFINES**, or **AUGMENTS** the content of S1 or some aspect of it. Fraser (2002) distinguishes two main sub-classes of Elaborative DMs:

- (i) Augmentative markers
- (ii) Reformulative markers⁷

⁷ I will be indistinctly referring to the lexical units under analysis as discourse markers of reformulation, reformulative discourse markers, or reformulators.

Augmentative markers add new information to the topic at hand. That is to say, they host a discourse segment or S2 that contributes new information to the topic entertained in S1. Some of the markers under this sub-class are: *and, moreover, furthermore, in addition, above all, also, besides, and on top of it all*:

143. I don't want to go out with John any more. He is always talking about his job and his promotion. **Moreover**, he does not show the slightest interest in my project. **And on top of all**, he stood me up last time we had a date.

In contrast, reformulative markers, as we have specified earlier, rather than adding new information to the topic at hand, can be defined as follows:

Reformulators are a sub-group of lexical units within the wider class of Elaborative DMs, a group of markers that elaborate on the previous message by augmenting or refining it.

With DMs of RF a recharacterization of the message conveyed by the whole previous discourse segment S1, or one of its constituents, is carried out, the rendition of which is a newly reformulated segment, or S2, that explains, rectifies, summarizes the S1, or concludes from it.

The examples below illustrate the use of some of the lexical units under this category of DMs:

144. I'll go with you and read a book while you're at the meeting. **Or better yet**, I'll bring my computer and do some work.
145. Who has taken the last piece of chocolate cake? **In other words**, why are you always disobeying my orders?
146. She gave me two reasons for standing him up at the altar, **namely**, that he was already married, and that he had not told her about it.
147. We are planning to move somewhere close to my mother's, **for example**, Sommerville or Cambridge.

148. I've put on weight again and my new dress is size 38. **That is to say**, that I won't be able to fit in it for the wedding.
149. The financial situation we are undergoing is the worst ever. We're broke and have no financial support from the government. **In sum**, a merger with IBM seems inevitable

Fraser's classification, although tentative, is full of illuminating insights developed in the present account. Thus, the approach to DMS of RF that I outline here directly draws on this distinction and thus is aimed to describe a group of EDMs by delineating a tentative picture of the different lexical units that might well fit in the category of reformulators as a sub-class of elaborative DMs. To my knowledge, no one has so far proposed a single and unified classification of EDMs of RF that would succeed in accounting satisfactorily for all their uses and sub-classes. In this light, I strongly support the claim that reformulators, as they are envisaged in this study, could be considered as a naturally occurring sub-class within Fraser's Elaborative DMs.

3.2.7. Subclasses of Discourse Markers of Reformulation

The semantic properties of English reformulators allow for their classification into four main groups, namely, Explanation, Rectification, Conclusion and Summary. These four general groups are further divided into sub-classes, where DMs are grouped on the basis of the very specific function they display within the general class to which they belong. Below, I provide a table that summarizes the different tentative classes of DMs of RF identified in English, together with the lexical units that comprise each class and sub-class. In the next section, I shall offer a description of the main properties of each of the four main groups and list the different lexical units that I have identified within each group. It

should be noted that the four main groups of reformulators that I present here are open classes, and thus new lexical units could be added to them.

3.2.7.1. Explanation Group

A reformulator from this group carries out a recharacterization of the message conveyed by the whole previous discourse segment S1, or one of its constituents, which takes the form of an Explanation in the reformulated S2. This group comprises a set of lexical units that have been traditionally envisaged as the carriers of the activity of paraphrastic reformulation (cf. Gülich and Kotschi 1983, Roulet 1987, Rossari 1990, 1994, Portolés 1998, etc.) *par excellence*, especially in the case of the reformulators *that is to say*, and *in other words*.

This first group of Explanation is further divided into three main sub-classes of reformulators. Thus, the explanation of the message of S1 can be in the form of an Identification, with *namely*, *viz.* and *to wit* as its most outstanding DMs; in the guise of a Clarification with *that is to say*, *in other words*, *in plain terms*, *in simpler words*, *in more technical terms* and *technically speaking*; or, it may take the trappings of an Illustration with *(say) for example* and *for instance*.

3.2.7.1.1. Clarification sub-group

A reformulator from this group carries out a recharacterization of the message conveyed by the whole previous discourse segment S1, or one of its constituents, the rendition of which is a newly reformulated discourse segment S2 that clarifies some aspect of S1. Within this sub-group we find the prototypical reformulators of Explanation, *that is to say*, along with the form *in other words*. These two lexical forms are given the status of neutral

markers of Clarification. Even a third level of specificity can be distinguished, considering that the explanation or clarification can be oriented towards semantic simplicity or complexity. Thus, if the recharacterization of S1 or some of its constituents renders a simpler explanation, the reformulators *in plain words*, *in simpler words*, would be used; on the contrary, if it renders a semantically complex S2, *technically speaking* and *in more technical terms* would be preferred. The following examples illustrate the use of these reformulators:

150. B7G 413 New Scientist IPC Magazines. Periodical-domain: applied science
The problems of confusing AIDS with other conditions has led the Communicable Disease Surveillance Centre, based at Colindale, north London, to adopt a set of criteria. A person has AIDS if: The patient has a reliably diagnosed disease which is at least moderately indicative of a defect in part of the body's defence mechanism. Such a disease is likely to be "opportunistic"-**in other words** it is unable to attack a normal healthy body where the defence system is fully operational.
151. A04 219 Art criticism. A user's guide. Periodical-domain: art
Thus the best account of a picture may well be a sonnet or an elegy... as for criticism properly so-called...To be just, **that is to say**, to justify its existence, criticism should be partial, passionate and political, that is to say, written from an exclusive point of view that opens up the widest horizons.

3.2.7.1.2. Identification sub-group

A reformulator from this group carries out a recharacterization of the message conveyed by the whole previous discourse segment S1, or one of its constituents, the rendition of which is a newly reformulated discourse segment S2 that identifies or assigns reference to it.

The following lexical reformulators have been identified as reformulators of Identification: *namely*, *viz.*, and *to wit*. Only the forms *viz.*, and *namely* are the objects of study in this dissertation. The basic meaning shared by the reformulators from this group is

that of the Identification of the reference of some utterance constituent in S1. This utterance constituent in S1 can be an indefinite expression to which reference is assigned, although this is not necessarily the case. Sometimes, the S1 is a definite noun-phrase that is further identified for contextual purposes. Let us consider the following examples:

152. BP5 1283 Competition and business regulation in a single market. Book-domain: commerce
The Commission pointed out that these percentages would have been even higher for certain types of plane. The proposed concentration would not only have significantly strengthened ATR's position in the commuter markets, but also have eliminated De Havilland from the relevant market, where there are only few competitors, **namely** British Aerospace, Saab, Fokker, and some minor firms.
153. EWS 480 Falcon Mystere 20 Production History. Book-domain: social affairs
Crew will normally comprise eight members, which will include two pilots, a Surveillance Systems Operator at a fully equipped console and two observers at search window stations. The special missions will fall into one of these main categories, **viz.** search and rescue, pollution surveillance, law enforcement of U.S.A. territorial waters and the 200 miles fishery conversation zone.

3.2.7.1.3. Illustration sub-group

A reformulator from this group carries out a recharacterization of the message conveyed by the whole previous discourse segment S1, or one of its constituents, the rendition of which is a newly reformulated discourse segment S2 that illustrates some aspect of S1. This group comprises the units *for example*, *for instance*, and the more informal *say for example-instance*. As their semantics indicate, with these reformulators a recharacterization is effected to the point that the content of S1 or some of its constituents is further identified by means of an illustration or example:

154. BM9 481 Britain's deaf heritage. Book-domain: social science
The latter did lead to the establishment of classes for deaf children, but because the provision of this education was not compulsory, many local school boards evaded

their responsibilities and pleaded poverty. Conversely, conditions in deaf institutions and asylums were often grim and unhygienic. At Boston Spa, **for example**, there were no adequate washing facilities for 16 years; at Exeter, it was 1887 before the school got hot water facilities; at Old Kent Road, the installation of gas pipes which could have provided better lighting was rejected in 1833 on the grounds the cost was exorbitant and that the children could make do with candles.

3.2.7.2. Rectification Group

A reformulator from this group carries out a recharacterization of the message conveyed by the whole previous discourse segment S1, or one of its constituents, the rendition of which is a rectification in the newly reformulated S2. As shown above, *or rather* and *on second thought* would mark the cases of Neutral Rectification. Then, a first sub-group of Rectification and Improvement on the message of S1 is distinguished. Thus, the S1 is not only rectified, but some improvement has also been effected on its message. The lexical markers that comprise this sub-group are *(or) better still*, *(or) better yet*, and *(or) better said*. Finally, the group of Rectification can be divided into another sub-group, that of Rectification and Fine-tuning of the message of S1, which would include the following lexical units: *(or) more accurately*, *(or) more precisely*, *(or) more exactly*, and *(or) more specifically*. The specific meanings that these reformulators convey entail a rectification of the message in S1 along with a fine-tuning of it. Only *(or) more precisely* and *(or) more accurately* are object of investigation in this study:

155. B7L 2425 New Scientist. Periodical-domain: applied science
The wines under examination were American, **or more accurately**, Californian. I had tried three of them, swallowing the small amounts in the glass with what I thought was a superbly noncommittal expression when I discovered that in the middle of the room were two iron spittoons, waist-high.
156. EBX 450 The Art Newspaper. Periodical-domain: arts
“Towards a museum of fashion in Milan” looked forward to the creation of an institution that is finally about to happen, albeit in a different form, and with

- radically different contents to that originally envisaged. **More precisely**, this will be a museum with no contents at all: the first museum of costume entirely on computer.
157. CLG 1334 Do it yourself. Periodical-domain: applied science
Never leave a chip pan unattended; **better still**, replace it with a thermostatically-controlled deep fryer.
158. BN2 552 Gdansk. Book-domain: world affairs
The land we have to take from Russia, whether she is willing or not, must be large enough to allow us to resettle, in Bessarabia or northwest of there, all the Rumanians now living in Austria and Turkey (minus Rumanian Jews, who together with those of Poland, Russia and Austria, should be packed off to Palestine, **or better yet**, to Madagascar)...
159. A73 2301 The Best man to die, Rendell, Ruth. Book-domain: imaginative
If the girl noticed that he didn't refer to them as her parents she gave no sign. She sat stiff and tense with her finely sculpted head held high. "Not at first," she said and he sensed a faint diffidence creep into her voice. "My parents and I hadn't been on good terms for some time. I went back to live with them-**or rather**, to stay with them-in the middle of May.
160. A18 1275 Dostoevsky. Book-domain: arts.
Suicide for this reason-to free mankind of the consoling yet imprisoning fictions of religion-is the highest expression of self-will, a perfectly free action, a divine gesture. The man who kills himself thus, becomes god. **More exactly**, he becomes man-god as opposed to God-man who is the Christ of Christianity.
161. ABM 638 The Empiricists. Book-domain: belief and thought
In general, the Aristotelians were thought to lay too much stress on words and books, terminology and merely verbal classifications, and debate and controversy, and too little on things and observation of the world. **More specifically**, the scholastic conception of scientia, or scientific knowledge, was thought to be an inappropriate model for empirical knowledge of nature.

3.2.7.3. Conclusion Group

A reformulator from this group carries out a recharacterization of the message conveyed by the whole previous discourse segment S1, or one of its constituents, the rendition of which is a concluding restatement drawn from the S1. The following lexical units have

been identified as reformulators of conclusion: *to conclude* and its variant *in conclusion* along with the more informal forms *to cap it off* and *to top it off*:

162. ASH 976 Today's Horse. Periodical-domain: leisure
Purpura haemorrhagica is difficult to treat, and prolonged antibiotics and cortisone therapy is used. **In conclusion**, always treat any horse which develops a sudden temperature rise and respiratory signs as potentially infectious and always isolate any cases.
163. CEM 1105 Today. News Group Newspaper, Ltd. London. Periodical-domain: world affairs
I know it's going to just kill Pilar to give up the house she loves. She packed it full of photos and mementos, turning it into a shrine to her husband. She's a very proud woman who refuses to hold her hand out. But she owes £55,000 on credit card bills and loans. **To top it off**, the state of California has slapped a £97,000 tax on the house.
164. B3J 2841 Yanto's summer. Book-domain: imaginative
There was some moon which would illuminate the scene suddenly, then be gone as though switched off by the scudding cloud. This had made it easy for him to reach the traps as there were no banks here as such, just flats of mud and rock. To his absolute delight the first trap had held what must have been a seven pound salmon, plus a couple of mullet which he had ignored. **To cap it off**, the last but one trap contained a ten pounder.

3.2.7.4. Summary Group

A reformulator from this group carries out a recharacterization of the message conveyed by the whole previous discourse segment S1, or one of its constituents, the rendition of which is a shorter version of it. Under the general label of Summary, I have opted to differentiate two main sub-groups, DMs of Recapitulation, namely, *to recap*, and its longer version *to recapitulate*, along with DMs of Summary, with varied units such as *in sum*, *to summarize*, the shorter form *to sum up*, *in short* and its synonymous counterpart *in brief*, and the most informal *in a nutshell*, along with *in a word*, and *in a few words*. Let us consider the following examples:

165. CCE 1428 Enemy Territory. Book-domain: belief and thought
The great growth in Christianity at the present time is in the Third World and those parts of Eastern Europe that are still under atheistic leadership. It is one thing to attack the Soviet system or Third World countries not yet under the sway of Western democracies (and business), but it is in these countries that the gospel is spreading like wildfire. **To recapitulate**, the essential feature of the most important aspect of secularisation, laicisation, is that Christian authority and institutional control have been virtually removed from modern life.
166. ABJ 2332 The Economist. The Economist Newspaper. Periodical-domain: commerce
If the republican governments pressed for full wage-indexation, the central bank would be unable to keep its promise not to finance budget deficits by printing money. That would mean that the best part of the programme-its price reform-would only cause inflation (already in three digits) to spiral out of control. Meanwhile, thanks to the bad parts, output would fail to recover. **In short**, things would get worse, leaving a stark choice between civil war or martial law.
167. AMG 456 The evolution of human consciousness. John H. Crook. Book-domain: applied science
This input is fed to certain parts of the brain stem and filtered. The filtering operation is crucial, because the total amount of environmental information could swamp virtually any receiver not adapted to selective perception. **In brief**, filtering consists of a monitoring for novelty by a match - mismatch comparison with expected values based on physiological norms and established knowledge (see further in Chapter 9).
168. B15 680 Environmental scanning and Business strategy. Book-domain: applied science
Moreover, we believe that the knowledge worker in its broadest sense is any member of the labor force who adds value to a data or information product whether or not that added value is primarily in terms of packaging and delivering the message, or in terms of enhancing the meaning and usability of the message... **In sum**, our definition of a knowledge worker is anyone, in any work context (office, factory, laboratory, classroom, hospital, school, government meeting room) who adds value either to a message or to the message's package (container). [Marchand & Horton (1956), pp 238-239]

3.2.8. Discourse Markers of Reformulation object of the present analysis

From the four main groups of EDMs of RF identified, I have opted to carry out an in-depth analysis of two of them, namely, the group of Explanation and that of Rectification

DMs of RF. A detailed analysis of all the groups and sub-groups identified within them would have been an insurmountable task for a doctoral thesis and would have undoubtedly proved too general.

Accordingly, within the group of Explanation, I have opted to analyze the functions of *that is to say* and to exclude those of its counterpart *that is*, since it is my intuition that both forms are synonymous markers (cf. Knott 1996 for a similar insight). I have not carried out the analysis of the markers of Illustration, due to the specificity of their functions, that of illustrating a constituent of the message in S1. Likewise, within the group of Rectification I have opted to exclude the reformulators *more specifically*, *more exactly* and *more particularly* on the grounds that they have a very specific function and do not seem to pose any challenge for the researcher. On the contrary, I have analyzed the forms *(or) more accurately* and *(or) more precisely* and assessed their environments of use. To sum up, it could be said that I have opted to attempt a detailed analysis of those units whose environments of use could prove more problematic and thus could be of more interest for the researcher in the field.

Table 2. GROUPS OF DISCOURSE MARKERS OF REFORMULATION

EXPLANATION	RECTIFICATION	CONCLUSION	SUMMARY
<p>Clarification that is to say-that is in other words in more technical terms- technically speaking in plainer terms-in simpler terms, to put it more simply</p> <p>Identification namely, viz. (videlicet) to wit,</p> <p>Illustration (say) for example-instance</p>	<p>Neutral Rectification or rather (or) on second thoughts</p> <p>Rectification and Improvement (or) better yet, better still (or) better said</p> <p>Rectification and Fine-tuning (or) more precisely (or) more accurately (or) more specifically, (or) more particularly, (or) more exactly</p>	<p>in conclusion-to conclude to cap it off, to top it off</p>	<p>Recapitulation to recap, to recapitulate</p> <p>Summary in sum, to summarize, to sum up in short-brief, in a nutshell, in a word, in a few words</p>

4. RESEARCH METHODOLOGY

4. RESEARCH METHODOLOGY

The methodology of this research falls into two distinct parts. First, I had to determine what constituted the class of EDM of RF and its subclasses, alongside the collection of the data for the analysis. Second, I had to analyze their syntactic and distributional properties and their semantic-pragmatic functions to obtain a full and clear picture of how DMs of RF were used in English, and especially the groups of Explanation and Rectification. I detail these two processes below and present the analysis and results in Chapter five.

4.1. The process of selection of a group of English Discourse Markers of Reformulation

The first step was to compile a list of lexical expressions in English that were potentially DMs of RF. This task was accomplished by means of a thorough revision of the existing research on the topic as well as from my analysis of the way DMs of RF function in naturally occurring language. Thus, I resorted to the observation of these markers in naturally occurring language, (TV, radio, newspapers, books) along with contributions from native speakers of English.

Once a list of lexical units was obtained, I pared it down and made an initial classification of the various English DMs of RF. This classification was based on the meaning relationship they brought to the discourse segments S1, and S2 that they linked. This resulted in four main groups: English reformulators of Explanation, Rectification, Conclusion and Summary. Neither the number of groups nor the basic meaning they

display were decided *a priori* or imposed on the data. On the contrary, this classification was mainly data-driven.

The next level of analysis involved a closer look at the different markers of each of the groups in order to account for differences and similarities between them. A further partitioning was effected on the basis of their meaning and similar environments of use. For example, within the Explanation group, a further sub-division was carried out resulting in subclasses of Clarification, Illustration and Exemplification. Thus, all the DMs in this sub-group effect a recharacterization of the message of S1 in such a way that the new S2 is an explanation that can take the guise of a clarification, illustration or exemplification.

Likewise, in order to make my objective manageable, I decided to concentrate on a thorough analysis of two main groups of reformulators, Explanation and Rectification. Otherwise, an analysis of each of the markers that make up the four main groups of DMs of RF would have been an insurmountable task and would have proved too general for the purpose of this study. Thus, by restricting the field of study to two types of reformulators it was possible to appreciate the similarities and differences between them, as well as markers from other groups, without losing sight of the group of reformulators as a whole.

Finally, since my main objective in this dissertation was to make a contribution to the notion of reformulation and a descriptive analysis of two groups of English Discourse Markers of Reformulation, and by extension, a contribution to the existing research on Discourse Markers as a whole, the type of analysis carried out for a study of English reformulators is of a qualitative nature. I have opted to exclude a quantitative analysis for the purpose of this doctoral thesis on the basis that the nature of the type of research did not require it.

4.1.1. The Data for the Detailed Analysis

In my analysis of EDMs of RF I studied their use by native (British) English speakers who use the language (both written and spoken) for purposes of communication. Specifically, I used the British National Corpus (hereafter BNC), a very large corpus (over 100 million words) of contemporary English, both spoken and written. Thus, the data on which I based my analysis have been taken from actual texts with their surrounding contexts, and not from other people's intuitions or from the analyses of other languages such as Spanish or French on which there have been studies of Discourse Markers of Reformulation (cf. Rossari 1990, 1994, Portolés and Zorraquino 1999, to name a few).

By using the BNC, with its 100,000,000 words of text, and designed to represent as wide a range of contemporary British English as possible, I have been able to obtain a broad picture of the use of reformulators, one that is representative enough to draw conclusions about the uses of these markers. Moreover, the varied sources from which the texts have been selected (books, newspapers, miscellaneous published material, brochures, advertising leaflets, personal letters, diaries, essays, memoranda, political speeches, play texts, broadcast scripts, among others) account for the BNC's appropriateness as a source of data and guarantees that the results for the individual queries on EDMs of RF are pervasively used by British English speakers. Thus, I rely on the BNC as the primary source on which to partially base my results of the analysis of EDMS of RF.

Notwithstanding, the use of a linguistic corpus, no matter how large, as the sole source of data collection brings with it the risk that a certain discourse function of a marker within the language may be overlooked. In spite of this, I believe the results obtained from the

corpus are sufficiently indicative and representative of the everyday use of DMs of RF in contemporary English, or at the very least British English.

However, since I could not expect all DMs of RF to occur in all syntactic positions and with all discourse functions, I undertook an additional measure to check the less clear-cut or more opaque aspects of the markers under investigation with native speakers of English. Their judgments were integrated into the analysis obtained from observance of the BNC to provide a more complete and exhaustive picture of how EDMs of RF work.

4.1.2. The process of Data Collection

I used the BNC as a primary source of data collection in order to obtain information about the distributional and syntactic properties, and semantic-pragmatic functions of English reformulators, alongside the domain of use on which they were ascertained to function.

The procedure for obtaining and extracting information on the different uses of DMs of RF within the BNC was carried out by means of global queries about the lexical form of the marker under analysis. Since most of the DMs of RF analyzed have syntactic counterparts, it was necessary to carry out a careful filtering of the results, discarding those uses that were not connective in nature and were totally irrelevant to the present study. The total number of instances surveyed varied depending on the versatility of the reformulator. Thus, in those cases where there were thousands of examples, a reduced random selection of around 150-200 examples was selected for the analysis of each marker in question. The occurrences analyzed are included in Appendix II.

4.2. Procedure of analysis

Here I present my own proposal for a thorough description of English reformulators. The procedure of analysis does not heavily rely on any of the frameworks described in chapter two, but benefits from the tools that the different approaches offer for a description of these units.

Once the corpus for analysis was defined, each marker was analyzed individually. The analysis is a descriptive one and it allowed me to account for the semantic-pragmatic functions and interchangeability of markers within the same and or different groups.

4.2.1. The Descriptive Analysis

The procedure of analysis followed in this study consists of the following steps. First, I proceeded to account for the grammatical and distributional properties of each reformulator within the Explanation and Rectification groups. I examined the position of the reformulator, whether it could occur in utterance-initial, -medial or -final position and its syntactic properties in order to assess whether they could combine with the most representative DMs from other paradigms, mainly, *and*, *but*, *so*, and *then*. Their occurrence in the declarative, interrogative and imperative mode was also assessed. Finally, the scope of the reformulator was also considered; in other words, in those cases where the referenced material concerned an utterance constituent the scope was partial, whereas in those where the referenced material concerned the whole utterance the scope was total. The most pertinent syntactic features of each DM of RF proved to be of great aid when it came to the process of clarifying their environments of use and the interchangeability within members of the same class.

Secondly, I turned to the assessment of the pragmatic functions of each of the DMs of RF under investigation. The classification of functions was made on the basis of the semantic meaning of the markers, along with a test on the different domains where DMs can function. In this respect, I followed Sweetser's (1990) tripartite distinction between three domains of use, namely, the content, the speech-act and the epistemic domain of use. Thus, depending on whether the marker in question was used on the content, speech-act or epistemic level, I referred to cases of semantic or pragmatic reformulation, respectively, drawing on Knott and Sander's (1998) distinction between these two main linguistic levels, as stated below:

Semantic: a "relation is semantic if the discourse segments are related because of their propositional content". This linguistic level equates Sweetser's content domain of usage.

Pragmatic: a "relation is pragmatic if the discourse segments are related because of the illocutionary meaning of one or both of the segments". Thus, this linguistic level would comprise the speech-act and the epistemic domains of use.

Once the functions of each DM of RF were assessed individually I determined whether reformulators within the same group or sub-groups under investigation shared some or none of their pragmatic or semantic functions with members from the same or different classes. In those cases where two or more DMs of RF shared some of their functions, further corroboration was obtained by means of the traditional method of substitution to see if (i) two lexical expressions were interchangeable in all contexts, and were thus synonymous or (ii) if, on the contrary, they only shared some environments of use and thus one of them stood in a position of hypernym with respect to the other. In addition, I checked on the status of all the reformulators that displayed a certain resemblance in their

environments of use in order to come up with a clear picture of their functions and the relationships between them. This method allowed me to decipher the most intricate relationships that are woven between English reformulators from the two groups under investigation.

The procedure of analysis devised for the assessment of each discourse marker can be summarized as follows:

A. Distributional aspects:

Position of the reformulator in a sentence (initial, medial or final), i.e.:

1. The results of these studies were published extensively in catalogues of private and public collections, and in what in French are termed catalogues raisonnés, [**that is to say**] complete lists of artists' works [**that is to say**].
2. Anything which could not be proven in a laboratory by scientific method-[**that is to say**] anything, **that is to say**, which was bigger than science-was ruled out of court.

B. Syntactic properties:

(i) Syntactic patterning with declarative, interrogative and imperative sentences.

3. I'm pretty tired today, **that is to say**, I'd appreciate it if you could do the washing up for me.
4. Is this situation making you feel uneasy? **That is to say**, are you losing appetite, being incredibly tired and wanting to sleep more than usual?
5. Why don't you stop fooling around? **That is to say**, pull yourself together and face facts.

(ii) Sequencing or combination with the DMs from other paradigms, *and*, *but*, *or*, *so* and *then*, if possible.

(iii) Scope of the reformulator: Cases of total or partial reformulation.

6. Is {this situation}¹, **that is to say**, being left alone the whole summer, affecting you negatively, or, on the contrary, are you happier than before?
7. He won't come back before seven. **That is to say**, you won't get a chance to see him while you're around.

C. Pragmatic functions:

- (i) Basic semantic functions identified.
- (ii) Domain of usage: content, beliefs and/or speech-act (Sweetser 1990).

4.2.2. The Relationship between English Discourse Markers of Reformulation

Once I had accounted for the distributional and syntactic features of the units under examination, I set out to assess the possible substitutability relationships between reformulators within the same group. My main concern was to account for the different environments of use and determine whether one marker can appear in another marker's environment, as well as to provide a relevant explanation for that. For these reasons, I resorted to the traditional method of semantic substitution of one marker for another in order to account for cases of interchangeability and/or restriction of contexts of use (cf. Knott 1996, Archakis 2001 for Greek DMs, Fraser 1998 for English Contrastive DMs, Rossari 1994 for French and Italian DMs, Roulet 1991 for French DMs, to name a few).

For this purpose, I mainly followed Knott and Sanders' (1998:142-3) procedure, as devised in their test for the substitutability of DMs, or cue phrases within their framework. These authors indicate that if we generalize on all contexts, there are four possible substitutability relationships between DMs *X* and *Y*, which are as follows:

¹ I use the symbol {} to signal the piece of referenced material that the reformulator recharacterizes.

- X is **synonymous** with Y if in any context where one can be used, the other can also be used.
- X and Y are **exclusive** if they can never be substituted for one another in any context.
- X is a **hypernym** of Y-and Y is a **hyponym** of X-if whenever Y can be used, so can X; but there are some contexts where X can be used and Y cannot.
- X and Y are **contingently substitutable** if there are some contexts where they can be substituted, other contexts where X can be used and not Y, and still other contexts where Y can be used and not X.

Similarly, these authors state that each of the substitutability relationships in the taxonomy readily admits of a feature-theoretic interpretation (Knott and Sanders 1998: 145):

- If X is **synonymous** with Y, then they signal identical features (*For example and for instance* are synonyms).
- If X is **exclusive** with Y, then they signal different values of some features (i.e. the uses of *(or) more precisely*, and *in other words* stand in a relation of mutual exclusiveness).
- If X is a **hypernym** of Y, then X signals all the features that Y signals, and some other feature in addition, for which Y is undefined. This would be the case of the reformulators of *in plain terms*, *technically speaking*, *in more technical terms*, with regard to their hypernym *in other words*.
- If X and Y are **contingently substitutable**, then X and Y signal some of the same features, but in addition X is defined for a feature for which Y is undefined, and Y is defined for a feature for which X is undefined. This would be the case of some uses of *(or) more precisely-accurately* and *or rather*.

Thus, by means of this substitutability test my main aim was twofold, namely:

- (i) To examine the semantic relationships holding between reformulators from the groups of Explanation and Rectification respectively, in order to place them within a hierarchical structure that would allowed me to identify which reformulator (if any)

bears the status of hypernym, which reformulators stand in a position of hyponyms, and which markers are synonymous or display exclusive uses.

(ii) To assess whether the Discourse Markers from different groups can be described in terms of the relationships sketched above, despite their belonging to a different group.

After having laid out the methodology devised for the purpose of this dissertation I shall analyze the Explanation and Rectification groups of English discourse markers of reformulation.

5. ANALYSIS AND RESULTS

5. ANALYSIS AND RESULTS

This chapter comprises the analysis of each of the EDMs of RF from the Explanation and Rectification groups selected for investigation. The procedure to follow for the analysis of occurrences of these units within the BNC involves the assessment of the following aspects: firstly, I delve into their syntactic and distributional properties in order to account for their combination with DMs from other paradigms and with different sentence types, namely, the declarative, interrogative and imperative modes. Secondly, I consider the semantic-pragmatic functions these markers display and, accordingly, indicate the domain of use where the markers selected can operate. Once their functions and environments of use are established, I outline the possible relations between them, indicating whether they can replace other members from their same or different class, and signal the environments where substitutability of one for another applies, and the environments where substitutability is, on the contrary, ruled out.

The first group of analysis is the Explanation group, with the following reformulators: *that is to say, in other words, in plain words, in more technical terms, technically speaking, namely, and viz.* The second group of reformulators is that of Rectification, with the following units of analysis: *(or) better yet-still, or rather, (or) more precisely and (or) more accurately.*

5.1. Explanation group

The lexical units that comprise the group of English reformulators of Explanation have been traditionally analyzed in languages other than English, especially in French and Spanish, where they are viewed as establishing a predication of identity between the S1 and the newly reformulated S2. Portolés and Zorraquino (1999) use the label of

markers of Explanation to refer to a group of Spanish reformulators on the basis that they explain the first discourse segment or some aspect of it. French approaches include most of the units selected as markers of Explanation under the category of paraphrastic reformulation and thus postulate a certain semantic resemblance holds between the two discourse segments linked by the reformulator.

Approaches to these units in English linguistics view them as appositional conjuncts that explicitly signal a relationship of apposition between noun phrases. In this light, Greenbaum (1969) and later Swan, (1985) label these markers **EXPLANATORY**.

In the same vein and for the purpose of this dissertation, I will be using the label of Explanation to refer to a group of English reformulators whose basic core meaning is that of *explaining* the message in the previous S1 or some aspect of it. The core meaning of *Explanation* gets elaborated along with the specific contextual co-ordinates and the specific properties of the marker in order to yield different uses of the reformulator. Thus, I have identified three main sub-classes of reformulators within the group of Explanation, as listed below:

- (i) Clarification
- (ii) Identification
- (iii) Illustration

All the lexical units in each of these sub-groups share the basic meaning of explanation, although the nuances that their use brings about are different, inasmuch as the explanation of the message in S1 or some constituent of it can take the form of a clarification, identification or illustration.

In the ensuing sections I will analyze the three main sub-classes identified above and the syntactic and pragmatic properties of the reformulators that comprise them.

5.1.1. Clarification sub-group

5.1.1.1. THAT IS TO SAY

5.1.1.1.1. Syntactic properties

The reformulator *that is to say* counts as one of the most grammaticalized forms within the lexical units that comprise the Explanation group. This finite clause combines the form “*that*” with the invariable third person of the verb *to be*, “*is*”, a combination that does not admit apostrophe and to which the infinitive form of the verb “to say” is added. This form of the reformulator is metalinguistic *per se*, in its use of the verb “to say” in the infinitive (see its French counterpart *c’est-à-dire*, the Spanish *es decir*, or the Catalan form *ès-a-dir* with a similar morphology). Rossari (1994) states with regard to *c’est-à-dire* that the lack of perfective aspect in the verb *to be* entitles this reformulator to establish a relationship of certain semantic equivalence between the two discourse segments linked, even if the semantic resemblance holding between them is slightly minimal. This contrasts with reformulators from the same group, such as *in other words*, where the past participle form “said” is presupposed, or from different groups, such as *better said*.

That is to say, along its shorter counterpart *that is*, has been traditionally approached from two main perspectives, first as a discourse markers of paraphrastic reformulation (cf. Güllich & Kotschi 1983, Charolles & Coltier, *inter alia*); and second, among traditional approaches to the notion of apposition, as an explicit indicator of this relation or as an appositive conjunct (cf. Quirk et al. 1985 and Meyer 1992 for English; Mederos 1988 and de Paula 1983, for Spanish, among others). In Quirk et al.’s account (1985) *that is to say* is an indicator of apposition under the semantic type of Equivalence and, accordingly, displays a function in all four types of relations identified, namely,

Appellation, Identification, Designation, and Reformulation. This fact indicates that *that is to say*, along with *that is*, are going to be the most versatile reformulators from the Explanation group.

The use of *that is to say* has been reported to be anaphoric (cf. Archakis, Bach 1996, 1998 and Quirk et al. 1985, to name a few) and consequently, some connection is presupposed between the S1 or some utterance constituent, and the reformulated discourse segment S2. This is mainly due to the semantics of the reformulator, where “that is” and the explicit verb “to say” signal that what has been previously stated in S1 is reformulated by means of the lexical unit *that is to say*.

As far as its syntactic patterning is concerned (cf. Tables 1 and 2 in Appendix I), *that is to say* has been found in initial, medial and even final position and it combines well with the declarative, interrogative and imperative type (cf. Archakis 2001 for a similar insight into Greek reformulators).

With regard to the scope of this reformulator, *that is to say* can reformulate the whole utterance or just some constituent of it, and thus its scope can be partial or total, working on the intrasentential or intersentential level, respectively. In this vein, a certain correlation can be established between the traditional appositional uses and cases where the reformulation affects an utterance constituent and the scope is partial. In contrast, in the non-appositional cases, the scope of the reformulator is total and thus affects the whole discourse segment S1 (cf. Bach 1996, 1999, for a similar insight).

The reformulator *that is to say* can occur in both written and spoken registers. A total of 40 examples within a range of 23 different texts have been registered in the spoken component of the BNC. Likewise, this reformulator has been accounted for in

cases of monologic and dialogic discourse that involve one speaker who utters the S1 and recharacterizes it with a newly formulated S2; or, on the contrary, more than one speaker, where the reformulation is prompted by a speaker different from the one that actually carries out the reformulation.

That is to say allows combination with some of the lexical units that form the paradigm of the different sub-classes of DMs as identified by Fraser (2002). In this light, it will be shown that the combination of the reformulator under analysis is possible with *and*, and the contrastive *but*, but ruled out with the implicative *so*, the temporal *then* and the disjunctive *or*. Along the same lines, Fraser (2002 unpublished manuscript) accounts for the occurrence of *that is to say* in combination with *and*, *but*, and rules out its combination with *so*. Due to space limitations, examples of the syntactic characteristics of *that is to say* are provided in Appendix I of this thesis.

5.1.1.1.2. Pragmatic functions

The global enquiry for this reformulator rendered a total of 726 examples in a range of 343 different texts (726: 343). However, for the purpose of this study a thorough examination of a randomly-thinned selection of 200 examples has been carried out. The rest of the occurrences have been examined as a necessary complement in order to corroborate the different pragmatic functions and the environments of use identified for the reformulator *that is to say*.

Archakis approaches the Greek counterpart of *that is to say*—*diladi*—and identifies the following functions or environments of use: a CLARIFICATION, DEFINITION and CORRECTION environment, on the one hand, and a CONTEXTUAL INFERENCE and CONTEXTUAL PRESUPPOSITION environment of use, on the other hand, thus aiming to

differentiate between uses on the ideational and information state planes in Schiffrin's terminology (1987). The stance taken in this study also opts to differentiate between two main distinct levels of use for this reformulator that result from the analysis of the occurrences encountered. Thus, *that is to say* can work on a SEMANTIC level, where the reformulation effected concerns the PROPOSITIONAL content of the discourse segments S1 and S2, and on an INFERENTIAL level, where the reformulation affects the shared implications between S1 and S2. Accordingly, I will refer to cases of SEMANTIC REFORMULATION as SmRF, and to those of INFERENTIAL REFORMULATION as InRF

However, the distinction sketched for the reformulators *that is to say* should be kept distinct from the domains of use on which the reformulator can operate, which are assessed after the functions are identified.

In this light, an SmRF is a recharacterization of the propositional content of the message previously stated in S1 or some constituent of it, whereas an InRF is a recharacterization of the shared implications contained in the S1, rather than of its semantic content. Thus, the reformulation can affect what has already been said or stated, and also what is implied from uttering the S1. The recharacterization of shared implications normally takes the guise of a CONCLUSION in most of the cases analyzed. Notwithstanding, this two-leveled distinction is not new in the literature on this reformulator. As early as 1991, Casado identifies these two main uses for a set of Spanish markers, namely, *o sea*, *esto es*, *es decir* and *a saber*. Casado defines their main function as: "explanation of the expression of the propositional content, of the presupposition, of the inference (mutual knowledge available for the hearer) or of the implicature (knowledge of the hearer)" (Casado 1991: 108-9) (my translation).

In the ensuing discussion I shall present the main pragmatic functions identified for the reformulator *that is to say*, namely, those of Explanation, Definition, Identification, Rectification, Illustration and Summary, all of them carried out on the semantic content of S1 or some aspect of it, and that of Explicitation of Implicated assumptions, in the form of Conclusions for the Inferential cases of RF.

A) Semantic cases of Reformulation

With *that is to say* there is a recharacterization of the semantic content of a previously stated S1 or some of its constituents, and thus the operation effected is an explanatory or clarificatory restatement of it in the form of a newly reformulated discourse segment S2. In this vein, in cases of semantic explanatory restatement, some predication of identity is presupposed between the discourse segments reformulated, since what the S2 merely does is to differently restate the semantic content of S1. Within the cases of SmRF the main organizing function would be that of Explanation, which also gives the name to the group, whereas the other functions displayed are just the result of the elaboration of the marker along with the context where it is being used and its semantic meaning.

There is a clear correlation between cases of partial reformulation, where the scope only tends to affect an utterance constituent, and cases of SmRF. On the contrary, in the inferential uses of *that is to say* the scope of the reformulator normally broadens and affects the whole utterance.

This binary distinction between SEMANTIC-PARTIAL scope and INFERENTIAL-TOTAL scope cases of reformulation will be a distinguishing feature of the analysis of the reformulators within this first group of Explanation DMs of RF.

Below, I shall present the exposition of the different functions assessed for the reformulator *that is to say*.

A1) Explanation

This pragmatic function counts as one of the commonest for this marker and it involves the semantic recharacterization of the content of the discourse segments connected. This recharacterization renders a reformulated segment S2 in the form of an explanation that aids the hearer's comprehension. With the pragmatic function of Explanation, a semantic continuation of the message initiated in S1 and a certain resemblance between the semantic contents of S1 and S2 are presupposed, since the S2 is merely reinterpreting the information conveyed in S1 and further explaining it with different words.

The explanation or clarification normally concerns the meaning of expressions or notions that need elucidation for a better understanding of the hearer. Sometimes, this function of explanation of a previously stated S1 or some constituent of it overlaps or takes the form of a definition, especially when the explanation concerns foreign expressions, or words that are difficult to understand within a specialized field of knowledge.

In the same vein, Olivares (2001) recognizes the function of Explanation for the French reformulator *c'est-à-dire*, especially when this reformulator is used in scientific contexts and when the meaning of key scientific notions is explained. With regard to this use of *c'est-à-dire* she states that "al tratarse de textos de divulgación científica con una intención didáctica prevalece la función metalingüística, explicar al lector una

noción del dominio de la especialidad, frente a la puramente inferencial” (Olivares 2001: 171).

In example 1 below, the reformulation is motivated by the speaker’s desire to explain what s/he had in mind when s/he said “to have reference”. Similarly, in example 2 the speaker explains the legal notion “a trust for sale of the land” in the context in which it is presented. Both cases involved an explanatory recharacterization of the semantic content of S1, where the scope of the reformulator involves just an utterance constituent:

1. AOT 323 The pursuit of mind. Book-domain: belief and thought.
I would say that there are two major problems with the mental-sentence thesis which both lead-one ultimately, the other directly-to the kind of developmental questions I shall be raising shortly. The first problem arises once we admit that in order for a “system” (I shall use this neutral term) to think, its thoughts must have reference: **that is to say**, they must refer to things regarded by the system as existing and enduring independently of itself.
2. ABP 1065 Introduction to English law. 10th edition. Book-domain: social science.
The transaction is regarded as a change of investment. The policy was continued, with a number of amendments, in the 1925 legislation. Thus all land, however tied up it may be by complex entails and other interests, has since 1882 been alienable by the tenant for life under his statutory powers. Much the same result could be achieved by creating a trust for sale of the land; **that is to say**, by conveying the land to trustees upon trust to sell, and to hold the income of the land until sale, and the proceeds of sale, upon trust for beneficiaries in any desired order. Here the over-reaching principle is clear.

In the following example 3, the notion of “congenital” is further clarified by the speaker, using simpler words, by means of a paraphrase. The same applies to the notion of “gender” in example 4:

3. AE0 2289 Lying together. Book-domain: imaginative.
When I wrote that I would need to know more about you, I wasn't thinking in terms of your physical appearance. I am particularly interested in details about your parents. Has either of them suffered from insanity? Masochism is congenital; **that is to say**, you must have inherited it.

4. ASK 401 Treat me right. Essays on medical law.

Of his Principles of Family Law, Professor Cretney repeats the argument that the use of the words “male” and “female” in section 11(c) of the Matrimonial Causes Act 1973 (which repealed and reproduced the provisions of the Nullity Act 1971), suggests that it “may thus be possible to argue that the terms “male” and “female” refer to a person's gender (**that is to say**, the sex to which he psychically belongs)”.

Sometimes the explanatory restatement aims to explain foreign expressions, such as the ones in example 5 taken from Latin, or somewhat technical expressions that belong to specialized fields, such as the notion of “parish funerals” below in example 6, where an explanation for the hearer is provided in order to clarify the type of funerals referred to:

5. APN 409 The political economy of soil erosion in developing countries. Book-domain: world affairs

The choice of technique is a vital one in a conservation project, programme or national policy for two related reasons. First, it will determine the technical success of the project in a *ceteris paribus* sense-**that is to say**, that provided there are no social constraints upon the successful application of the technique, it will fulfil the objectives of the project or policy (typically in terms of reduced erosion, increased yields of crops, pasture or forest).

6. CD3 247 The English way of death—the common funeral since 1450. Book-domain: world affairs

Mr Sowerberry, the undertaker in Charles Dickens's *Oliver Twist*, was in the middle of the funeral hierarchy, but towards the bottom end as he only catered for parish funerals-**that is to say** those from the workhouse or those receiving outdoor relief.

At other times an adverb is explained in detail, as is the case of “sexually” in example 7 below:

7. ARH 420 Sexually transmitted diseases: the facts. Book-domain: social sciences.

The risk of catching the infection will obviously increase with the number of times intercourse takes place and will also depend on other factors, such as the sites that are infected and whether barrier contraceptives such as the condom are used. Gonorrhoea is almost exclusively acquired sexually. **That is to say**, as a result of sexual intercourse or one of the variants of sexual behaviour, such as fellatio, cunnilingus, or rectal intercourse.

In some occurrences, the explanation of the discourse segment S1 entails a much more technical recharacterization of its semantic content, to the point that the new reformulated segment explains the previous one using more technical terms, as seems to be the case in example 8, where the term “mob” is reformulated and replaced by “congregation”, more in tune with the register of the text. It should also be noted that the speaker might have deliberately intended the hearer to take the notion “mob” with all its implications as a synonym of “congregation”, and thus conferring to the latter notion all the negative associations that may be entailed in the former. Although the use of register might be different, there still holds a certain semantic resemblance between both utterance segments reformulated as intended by the speaker’s desire to present one as the explanation of the other:

8. ALL 234 Bell in the tree. Book-domain: world affairs.

This may have had something to do with the fact that the theatre, a lean-to affair of wood and canvas, was built against the ruined wall of the Bishop's Palace next to Glasgow Cathedral. Eventually, stirred up by a fire-breathing minister called Reverend George Whitefield, the mob, **that is to say**, congregation, censored the proceedings by the simple expedient of pulling the theatre to bits. There is still a legend in the Theatrical world that once you have played Glasgow on a Saturday night, you are a true professional.

However, it could also be the case that the recharacterization is an explanatory restatement in words plainer than the ones used in S1, as is the case of example 9 below, where a more technical notion, that of “honeymoon cystitis”, is explained with simpler words for a better understanding of the layman:

9. ARH 961 Sexually transmitted diseases: the facts. Book-domain: social sciences

The urethral syndrome is really outside the scope of this book, indeed whole books themselves have been devoted to it. The syndrome would be regarded by many as including honeymoon cystitis, **that is to say** urethral symptoms related to sexual intercourse, but also covers a host of other bacteria-negative causes.

All the examples above are clear cases of explanatory reformulation, where the reformulated segment is just a recharacterization of the semantic content of an utterance constituent of S1.

In some other examples, the writer uses inverted commas in order to draw our attention to more technical discourse units, which are further reformulated and explained in simpler terms. In the following examples the noun phrases “extrapolation theory”, and “mining water” are defined and made much more accessible to the hearer. Likewise, the adjectives “listable”, “sheeted” and “disparaged” are further defined and the meaning they convey in the specific extract is explained:

10. AMG 164 The Evolution of human consciousness. Book-domain: applied science
Nonetheless, an evolutionary approach to human social life permits a broad perspective in which the emergence of the social psychological domain from the biological can be traced. The understanding of human action requires a temporal perspective which only a sufficiently broad evolutionary approach can supply. This book is much concerned with what I shall call “extrapolation theory”; **that is to say** the drawing of inferences regarding the sequence of changes whereby one psychobiological state has shifted to another—from chimp-like language, say, to human speech.
11. ANX 1799 New Scientist. Periodical-domain: applied science
Some of the water in these aquifers comes from recharge in wetter areas nearby, but much of it is “fossil water”, rain that fell in the last Ice Age. In Libya, a huge pipeline is under construction to carry water from desert wells to coastal towns and farms. Schemes such as these are the equivalent of “mining water”, **that is to say** using a resource that is not replenished.
12. BOP 542 Advanced coarse fishing. Book-domain: leisure
If the strike has been timed to perfection—that split second before the bait is ejected—then the fish is usually hooked. The strike, however, can very rarely be timed to such an accurate degree. This is why, with baits that differ in size, weight, and where on the bottom they lie in regard to cleanliness, we have to use various permutations of length of bite indication, **that is to say**, the amount of free line we allow it to take before striking.

In some other examples an adjective needs to be defined in order to make clear what the speaker-writer intends. At other times, a discourse unit that the speaker views

unknown to the reader or hearer and that implies certain degree of difficulty for their understanding is defined as is the case in 13, 14 and 15 below:

13. AR9 386 The Save Britain's Heritage action guide. Book-domain: arts
Conservation area protection thus extends beyond buildings, to include streets, trees, paths and views. The designation of these special areas is a vitally important way of protecting our heritage. There are thousands of buildings that despite being interesting and attractive-and perhaps important on a local scale-are not "listable" in themselves; **that is to say**, they are not of sufficient architectural or historic interest to merit individual protection. And yet the loss of these buildings can really damage the character of a neighbourhood.
14. B0K 443 The Save Britain's Heritage action guide. Book-domain: arts
The South Hams is now known as the South Devon; the Cornish and Sheeted Somerset have vanished, and the Gloucester is now a rare breed. At about the same period Youatt remarked that most of Somerset's cattle were good red Devons but that a few in northern Somerset were particoloured Devons and some in the west of the county were yellowish rather than deep red or were sheeted (**that is to say**, with broad white belts).
15. BMV 124 Europe in the central middle ages. Book-domain: world affairs
If they were children, they could be betrothed, but the Church insisted that they retained the right of refusing their consent to the marriage when they grew up. Social custom made this proviso almost nugatory. But it strongly defended the girl from being "disparaged", **that is to say**, from being married to her social inferior.

Some other times the definition of noun-phrase takes place, as is the case of example 16, where the writer aims to explain by means of a definition what was called "drafts and transcripts", or example 17, where the notion "lapidary" is further defined:

16. A1B 1726 Studies in Erza Pound. Book-domain: arts
In that year comparisons of Eliot with Pound were stimulated, and exacerbated, by the publication of what were called the "drafts and transcripts" of The Waste Land; **that is to say**, the heterogeneous packet of typescripts and manuscripts which Eliot had dumped on Pound in Paris, out of which Pound had helped Eliot to extricate the poem that for forty years had been known under that title.
17. A1B 1974 Studies in Erza Pound. Book-domain: arts
What we are groping for, what Pound (we now see) is inciting us to grope for, what Yeats is laying claim to, is that effect in writing which an earlier criticism knew as "Lapidary": **that is to say**, the effect or the illusion of words as not written or printed on a page, but as incised on a stone block.

A2) Definition

Some other times, the explanation or clarification entails the definition of an utterance constituent that would be totally inaccessible for the audience if it were not further defined. Under this label we find expressions that belong to very specific fields of knowledge, and thus, their accessibility is limited to the reader. It is the speaker who considers that the hearer might not be familiar with it or that the discourse segment may entertain a certain degree of difficulty for its optimal comprehension, and, as a result, the notion is defined and made more accessible for the hearer.

In the following examples two foreign notions or discourse units are reformulated with the rendition of a definition in the S2. The notion “Satyagraha”, an Indian word in this case, is defined and its meaning elucidated in 18 below. Likewise, the expression “mens rea” in 19 is defined and its properties made accessible to the reader-hearer who may not be an expert in law or who may be unaware of the meaning of the Latin expression:

18. C9B 622 The Philosophy of Ghandi. Book-domain: belief and thought

As Gandhi explains concerning sad “graha: “I liked the word, but it did not fully represent the whole idea I wished it to connote. I therefore corrected it to “Satyagraha”. Truth (Satya) implies love, and firmness (agraha) engenders and therefore serves as a synonym for force. I thus began to call the Indian movement “Satyagraha”, **that is to say**, the Force which is born of Truth and Love or Non-violence...”

19. CEB 2006 A season for murder. Book-domain: imaginative

Markby tapped his fingers on the table top and hissed with exasperation. It was impossible to tell whether this youth was very shrewd or rather simple. The law recognises degrees of homicide other than murder and is observed with some nicety on the matter of recklessness or assault with intent to cause bodily harm. The element of “mens rea”-**that is to say**, what was actually in the accused's mind at the time of the assault-is of utmost importance.

Sometimes the reformulated S2 entails a definition of a foreign term, such as that of “catalogues raisonnés” in example 20, “*analogia fidei*” in example 21, “Jlulat from Tazarbu” in example 22 or “*récoltant-manipulant*” in example 23 below:

20. A04 938 Art’s criticism: a user’s guide. Book-domain: arts

The second half of the nineteenth century saw new standards achieved in art historical scholarship, both through the careful study of documents and by close scrutiny of works of art. The results of these studies were published extensively in catalogues of private and public collections, and in what in French are termed catalogues raisonnés, **that is to say** complete lists of artists' works.

21. ABV 702 I believe. Book-domain: belief and thought

The theological term for this is *analogia fidei*; **that is to say**, when we talk of eternal verities we have to resort to pictures, stories and other analogical expressions.

22. ADW 228 Libyan politics: tribe and revolution. Book-domain: social science

The most important chairman (of the municipality) was a Jlulat from Tazarbu, **that is to say** from the category of people least involved in the Kufra disputes.

23. C8M 719 Champagne. Book-domain: leisure

Some vineyards may not be mentioned because they have only recently been cultivated and, therefore, have not been in production long enough to establish any sort of reputation. The reader should note that the term Grower Champagne used throughout this chapter refers to a *récoltant-manipulant*, **that is to say** a grower who sells Champagne under his own name.

In example 24 below, there is a technical term from the field of medicine, that of “metastatic cancer”, that is defined and explained in plainer terms, that is to say, in a way which is more accessible to the layman:

24. B19 1747 Fighting cancer: a personal story. Book-domain: social science

For the transplant to succeed, the patient's immune system had to be suppressed, otherwise the “foreign” body would be rejected. Within days, the transplanted kidney began to enlarge. X-rays showed tumours in the patient's lungs. It was evident that the masses in the lungs were metastatic cancer. **That is to say**, malignant cells that had broken away from the original cancer and begun to reproduce in other parts of the body.

Likewise, in example 25, a very specific notion within the field of sociology is defined in the second reformulated discourse segment:

25. H9F 217 Political sociology. Book-domain: social sciences

At this time it was, to use Nettl's term, an "inheritor party"; **that is to say**, a party which expects to inherit power following the decline and overthrow of the existing political system and its socio-economic basis.

In example 26, a key notion for experts on breeding fish is also explained, that of "top spawners":

26. C96 1528 Breeding tanks. Book-domain: leisure

Killifish can be loosely placed into two categories: top spawners and bottom spawners. The Gold Australe is classed as a top spawner, **that is to say** the eggs are found in the top half of the tank.

Similarly, example 27 below is again a clear example of very specialized vocabulary that belongs to the field of geology in this case. The notions of "taphrogeosynclines" and "epieugeosynclines" are explained in plain words and their meaning defined:

27. H7K 1278 The nature of the stratigraphical record. Book-domain: natural sciences

Equally striking is the similarity of the structures in which these sediments are preserved. These are perhaps the best American examples of Marshall Kay's 'taphrogeosynclines', **that is to say**, geosynclines with faulted margins. It is relevant to the theme of this chapter to point out that they have also been called 'epieugeosynclines', **that is to say**, fault-bounded geosynclines developed on top of old eugeosynclines.

To sum up, the recharacterization of the previous S1 by means of the reformulator *that is to say* is of a semantic nature, that is, the recharacterization only involves the semantic content of S1 to the extent that the reformulated S2 entails a high degree of semantic resemblance with the content of S1. In addition, the scope of the reformulator is partial, and it is always the case that an adjacent utterance constituent (noun-phrase, adjectival phrase, or others) is reformulated, thus ruling out cases of global reformulation.

A3) Identification

This function deals with the identification or assignment of reference to an indefinite expression contained in the discourse segment S1, though this is not always necessarily the case. It can also be the case that there is a definite expression in the S1 but the speaker considers that it should be further identified for the better comprehension of the hearer. This pragmatic function coincides with that of the reformulators *viz.*, and *namely* from the sub-group of Identification.

When *that is to say* displays the function of reference assignment the reformulated discourse segment is normally an utterance constituent and accordingly, the scope of the reformulator is partial. This observation corroborates the fact that the two discourse segments reformulated do necessarily have to be adjacent, or successive discourse segments. This defining property rules out those cases of reformulation where the scope of the reformulator is total and concerns the whole utterance, as well as cases of InRF.

Since the pragmatic function of Identification will be explained in more detailed when I tackle the uses of the markers *viz.* and *namely* in later sections, here I merely provide some examples of the reformulator *that is to say* that illustrate how it assigns reference to a previously-stated discourse segment or S1. The assignment of reference entails the identification of personal pronouns, object pronouns, definite noun-phrases, or numerical expressions. Examples 28 and 29 below illustrate the assignment of reference to sentences containing indefinite pronouns such as “what”, in “society's expectations of what is appropriate” or “anything”, in the sentence “if your need is for anything other than that”, respectively:

28. B10 7 Discipline: a positive guide for parents. Book-domain: social science

There will be lessons about the relationships between themselves and others, about social skills and self-restraint; and there will be instructions, requests and

demonstrations concerning social requirements and rules. These so-called norms reflect society's expectations of what is appropriate, **that is to say**, normal social and moral behaviour.

29. HAC 4565 Articles from Practical PC. Book-domain: leisure

If that's the case, I wonder just how many people write labels that no-one else can read. From the PC user's point of view, neatly labelled disks can be a godsend, and utilities for producing such things did well a few years back. But if your need is for anything other than that, **that is to say** something a little more complex, then the functionality built into Designer Labels is probably powerful enough to do the trick for you.

Indefinite expressions of place such as “in the other direction” with a referring value are also identified by means of the reformulator *that is to say*, as illustrated by example 30 below:

30. A8G 119 The Guardian electronic edition of 1989-11-23: Business section. Guardian newspapers Ltd; London. Periodical-domain: commerce.

After contributing so much to the proceedings in the Finnish capital, and to the 30,000 words of the final act, Romania became one of its victims. For in one follow-up meeting after another, in Belgrade and Madrid and finally Vienna, the human rights standards laid down at Helsinki were refined and tightened, while Romanian internal policies either stood still or moved in the other direction, **that is to say** downhill.

At other times there is a specification of a time-referring expression such as the ones in examples 31, “at the same time as this was happening”, 32, “some fifty years before”, or 33, “the date for the conference was set” and 34 below, where the expression “as he ages” is assigned reference:

31. BMP 834 Way of life: dominant ideologies and local communities. Book-domain: world affairs.

This withdrawal of support for the housing policy was facilitated by the fact that the Planning Department had been “abandoned” by the Councils' topmost officials who were reluctant to share its unpopularity in any measure. At the same time as this was happening, **that is to say** between the late to mid-seventies, the Government announced its “fight against inflation” with all its consequences for local government spending.

32. C8M 128 Champagne. Book-domain: leisure.

Later, in a treatise written in the eighteenth century, *Mémoire sur la manière de cultiver la vigne et de faire le vin en Champagne* (written, it is believed, by Jean Godinot c. 1718), it is stated that the Champenois had begun to study how to produce a “grey... almost white wine” some fifty years before, **that is to say** approximately 1668.

33. AR3 981 The remains of the day. Book-domain: imaginative

Finally, having secured the agreement of a certain extremely illustrious Frenchman-I will merely call him “M. Dupont”-to attend the gathering on a very strict “off the record” basis, the date for the conference was set. **That is to say**, for that memorable March of 1923.

34. CKN 367 British Literature since 1945. Book-domain: arts

Perhaps all that makes it easier to understand why Orwell was so anxious that Waugh should read his books: anxious enough to send him copies, though to a stranger. As novelists, however, Orwell and Waugh evolve not towards each other but, technically speaking, in opposite directions. Waugh's novels grow towards realism as he ages, **that is to say**, after 1945, and Orwell's away from it.

Reference assignment to personal pronouns has also been accounted for. In example

- 35 the speaker assigns special reference to the pronoun “me” and in 36 below, the identity of “those next entitled” is revealed:

35. ABM 1126 The empiricists. Book-domain: belief and thought.

In the case of body this, as we have already seen, is extension; in the case of mind it is thought. Persons, for Descartes, are mental or immaterial thinking substances. I am, says Descartes, “a substance the whole essence or nature of which is to think.... This “me”, **that is to say**, the soul by which I am what I am, is entirely distinct from body... and even if the body were not, the soul would not cease to be what it is.”

36. ABP 1326 Introduction to English law 10th edition. Book-domain: social science.

Should a child die before attaining an absolutely vested interest, his interest passes on to those next entitled, **that is to say**, other children, a parent, brothers and sisters of the whole blood, a surviving spouse, or remoter relatives if there is no surviving spouse.

- Indefinite expressions such as “a character who...” in 37 and “another logical relation” in 38 are also identified in the newly reformulated S2:

37. ANY 534 Nice work. Book-domain: imaginative.

And there, for the time being, let us leave Vic Wilcox, while we travel back an hour or two in time, a few miles in space, to meet a very different character. A character

who, rather awkwardly for me, doesn't herself believe in the concept of character. **That is to say** (a favourite phrase of her own), Robyn Penrose, Temporary Lecturer in English Literature at the University of Rummidge, holds that "character" is a bourgeois myth, an illusion created to reinforce the ideology of capitalism.

38. CMA 1321 Evolution from molecules to men. Book-domain: natural sciences.
This argument seems to me sound so far as it goes, but it does not go very far. Implicit in this last argument is another logical relation which is more interesting for this question than that between ought and is: the relation, **that is to say**, between ought and can.

Also definite expressions are further assigned reference such as "those faculties" in

39, or "the boundaries" in 40:

39. ADA 2170 Hide and seek. Book-domain: imaginative.
Thumb in mouth. Children with thumbs in their mouths. Whores with cocks in their mouths. Rustling tree, slithering nylon. Deep Purple. God walking up and down between buckthorn and sallow and goat willow. "We should address ourselves to those faculties *in a child's mind*, which are first awakened by nature, and consequently first admit of cultivation, **that is to say**, the memory and the imagination."

40. AE9 531 The Royal forests of England. Book-domain: imaginative.
The jurors, having appeared before the king, were induced, probably by threats of amercement and imprisonment, to acknowledge their error and to modify their perambulations; they then received the king's pardon. The Gloucestershire jury, for example, in 1228 re-defined the boundaries of the Forest of Dean at their widest extent -**that is to say**, the rivers Severn and Wye, and a northern boundary running from Goodrich castle in the west through Ross and Newent to Gloucester castle in the east.

Also numerical expressions or collective nouns are identified, as in the following

example 41:

41. AR3 49 The remains of the day. Book-domain: imaginative.
The point is that it was during the course of this interview, when I raised the question of the difficulty of recruiting suitable staff in these times, that Mr Farraday, after a moment's reflection, made his request of me; that I do my best to draw up a staff plan – "some sort of servants' rota" as he put it-by which this house might be run on the present staff of four-**that is to say**, Mrs Clements, the two young girls, and myself.

A4) Illustration

Another function identified for the reformulator *that is to say*, despite not being a very common one, is that of illustrating some aspect of S1. Thus, the recharacterization effected on the semantic content of S1 or some of its constituents brings about a newly reformulated segment that illustrates or provides an example of some aspect of S1.

In example 42 below, the reformulated discourse segment S2 hosted by *that is to say* recharacterizes the previous content of S1 and provides an illustration of “one appliance that might be needed later and for which it is advisable to provide enough room”, namely, the dishwasher:

42. HGW 1024 Home design. Book-domain: arts

Unless you have ample funds to hand, it is of the utmost importance to think ahead when you are planning a kitchen. You might not be able to afford all the appliances you would like from the start, but if you think you will need them and will be able to afford them later you must leave the space and supply utilities for them. **That is to say**, if you want a dishwasher but know you won't be able to afford one for, say, three years, then make sure the plumbing is available and that there is a niche for a new fixture before you install your worktops and units. If you are planning on a family and intending to stay in your present home, then allow for much more storage space than you need now.

Similarly, in example 43 below and, after stating in S1 that Shaikhs were involved in quarrels because individual members of their group were, the author recharacterizes this S1 with a new reformulated S2 that offers an example of *when* and *how* they became involved in the quarrel, namely, if a person came to blows with another, they would negotiate to contain the dispute:

43. ADW 857 Libyan politics: tribe and revolution. Book-domain: social science

Fighting, stealing, homicide and rape were usually either individual initiatives or a group of friends on the rampage. But when the time came to compose a quarrel between people, it was the representatives of the groups to which they belonged who made the peace. Shaikhs were involved because individual members of their group were. **That is to say**, if a person came to blows with another, the shaikhs negotiated peace to contain and settle the dispute, to protect the interests of members of their lineage who were not fighting.

In example 44 below, by means of the reformulated S2 the speaker is giving an example of what would constitute “an issue relating to transracial adoption”, in order to illustrate his/her claim that these issues should be dealt with in a sensitive way. Thus, there is a recharacterization of the semantic content of S1 to the point that it is further explained by means of an illustration of it:

44. CRW 642 Childcare: concerns and conflicts. Book-domain: social science

It is of crucial importance that, while Social Services Departments, voluntary agencies, and professionals are adjusting their views and talking about issues relating to transracial adoption, the matter should be dealt with in a sensitive way. **That is to say**, when there is a shift from traditional methods in the placement of black children then careful consideration should also be given to the implications that this will have for black children, the black community and adopters. It is certainly not the intention of the black community to undermine the good work being done by current transracial adopters and foster-parents, who have opened their homes to black children.

It should be noted that all the cases of Illustration concern cases of semantic reformulation, and thus, the recharacterization is effected on the propositional content of S1 or some aspect of it. Only three examples have been documented where the reformulator takes on the nuance of illustration, which indicates that this function is not one of the most pervasive ones identified for *that is to say*. Moreover, this function could be well considered as one variant from the wider function of Explanation. In other words, the reformulator *that is to say* sometimes explains or clarifies the previous discourse segment S1 by means of an illustration of some aspect stated in it.

A5) Rectification

Another interesting function displayed by the reformulator *that is to say* is that of the rectification of the S2, that is to say, a recharacterization of the semantic content of S1 or some utterance constituent which brings about a rectifying or corrective

reformulated discourse segment S2. With the new reformulation the speaker indicates a rectification of some aspect of the previous statement that can even rule out the S1 in favor of the newly reformulated S2.

In these cases, the reformulator *that is to say* can be used in some of the environments of reformulators from the group of Rectification, specifically in the case of the marker *or rather*, which indicates a neutral or default rectification; and *(or) more precisely-accurately*, which indicate fine-tuning and improvement on the previous message in the S1¹. Notwithstanding, I will not delve into too much detail with respect to the function of Rectification that the reformulator *that is to say* displays. Suffice it to say that the lexical unit *that is to say* shows environments of rectification, where *or rather* and *(or) more precisely-(or) accurately* occur naturally.

A much more detailed analysis will be carried out when it comes to the assessment of the relationships between markers from the Explanation and the Rectification group.

Some of the occurrences identified for this reformulator concern cases of correction of the semantic content of the previous S1. Thus, the message in S1 is recharacterized and some of its constituents are retaken, recharacterized and thus rectified and fine-tuned. Notwithstanding, and despite the rectification effected, there still holds a certain semantic resemblance between the S1 and the newly-reformulated S2 since the S2 reproduces some aspects stated in S1.

This rectification of the semantic content of S1 can be aimed towards the avoidance of misunderstanding on the part of the hearer, or it can be the result of the speaker's decision to convey a much more accurate or precise piece of information. In example 51 below, the notion of "death" is redefined and made more precise in that the speaker

fine-tunes its implications; in other words, it is not the general concept of death in which s/he does not seem to believe, but in his/her own death. In this example, the reformulator *that is to say* could be replaced by *(or) more precisely-(or) more accurately*, and even by *or rather*, all of them from the rectification group:

45. ACA 993 The masks of death. Book-domain: belief and thought

As Wordsworth wrote, “Nothing was more difficult for me in childhood than to admit the notion of death as a state applicable to my own being...”. The instincts of Robert Louis Stevenson-that sanguine consumptive with the heart of a child-told him much the same: “I do not admit immortality, but I cannot believe in death: **that is to say**, in my own death...How do you expect me to conceive myself as no longer existent?” Until a certain age many children cleave to the secret conviction that they will live for ever.

Similarly in the next example 46, the first discourse segment “...and the cats perched on the back” may lead the hearer to infer that it is all the cats that were perched, whereas the second discourse segment fine-tunes the first one and indicates that it was “most of the cats” but not all of them. Thus, the reformulation renders a more accurate segment for the purpose of information transmission:

46. CCA 203 A bad spell for the worst witch. Book-domain: imaginative

“I hope you have all been practising during the holiday,” said Miss Hardbroom, as the girls all lined up with their brooms hovering next to them and the cats perched on the back-**that is to say**, most of the cats were perched on the back. Mildred's tabby was clinging desperately to the front of her cardigan, its claws hooked in and a wild, desperate look on its face.

Likewise, in example 47, the speaker recharacterizes the semantic content of S1 “and all its members utilize the empty shells of the snail”, and fine-tunes it, making it more in accordance with the truth of what s/he aims to communicate, that is to say, that “...the fry and adolescents of all the species do-but some adults are actually too large”.

¹ This distinction between the reformulators which signal neutral or default reformulation, and those which signal fine-tuning or an improvement, will be thoroughly outlined in the section devoted to the second group, namely, that of Discourse Markers of Rectification.

This activity of rectification helps rule out unintended implications from what is stated in S1, as illustrated in the example below:

47. FBN 579 Practical Fishkeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure

It may therefore come as a surprise to learn that there are some species which are not only not “rock-dependent”, but are also relatively peaceful, even when breeding. This group of species lives near rocks, but over a sandy substrate, and all its members utilise the empty shells of the snail *Lanistes nyassanus* as shelter to some extent. **That is to say**, the fry and adolescents of all the species do-but some adults are actually too large.

In all these examples the explanatory reformulator *that is to say* seems to be co-extensive with reformulators from the rectification group, such as *or rather*, and *(or) more precisely-(or) more accurately*. Let us consider the following examples that illustrate this claim:

48. BNK 1144 Nonesuch: The University of Bristol magazine. Periodical-domain: leisure

Family has adopted principles for the protection of children and dependent spouses which could apply equally to the unmarried. “Marriage” could become a purely social or religious ceremony-in which case there would be no such thing as divorce, legally speaking. The problem with this is that most people still want, at some stage in their lives, formal (**that is to say** legal) recognition of their commitment to one another.

49. A69 869 Reflections of a statesman. Book-domain: world affairs

The forms of criminal or lawless activity which have followed the civil rights movement which came and went in 1969-71 will disappear as and when there is a general conviction that there is going to be one society and one particular sort of society in Northern Ireland-**that is to say**, one state, one particular sort of state, and no other. I will not go on to examine by the same criteria the other manifestations of The Thing, such as the anti-apartheid demonstrations, in which open breach of the law was widely condoned and encouraged by the organs of public opinion.

50. HGW 1389 Home design. Book-domain: arts.

A good many of the latest models have sealed meat and vegetable drawers with adjustable temperature and humidity control to keep food fresher for longer. Obviously frost-free models which mean you never have to defrost are as useful as self-cleaning ovens, and additional luxuries include iced water and crushed ice dispensers, automatic ice makers and the kind of American model with almost instant (**that is to say** about an hour) automatic ice cream and sorbet or sherbet-makers. Separate deep freezers come in chest or upright models and are ideal for

people with large gardens and plenty of produce to store and also for stashing away bulk buys and supermarket bargains. Dishwashers

51. HGJ 2065 Darcy's Utopia. Book-domain: imaginative

They went to visit Brenda and Peter. Brenda was teaching PT in a secondary school. Peter was now a colleague of Bernard's at the poly. They had a new car, and went to the cinema and ate out. "These days it takes two people's wages to keep one household going," observed Bernard. "We'll manage on one wage," said Ellen. "**That is to say**, yours. I have no time to work, I'm far too busy". Ellen had retired from the Christabel Focus over a question of principle.

A different situation concerns the use of *that is to say* in a spoken register. In spoken registers, where speakers rectify their interventions on the fly, the use of *that is to say* seems to be ubiquitous. The rectification of the S1 may pertain to varying goals or purposes, among them the need to plan and organize discourse. This is generally the case for the following occurrences, examples 52-57, which are found within the spoken component of the corpus.

In example 52 below, found within the spoken component, the rectification clearly obeys the process of organization of what the speaker is trying to communicate. Along these lines, s/he starts the sentence by saying "...reference to the correct", and uses the reformulator, *that is to say*, as a time-filler that allows him/her to rectify and present what s/he really wants to convey. This use equates to that of the so-called *repairs* (cf. Murillo 1999, Meyer 1992). Likewise, example 53 is also taken from the occurrences in spoken register and shows, as was the case before, the speaker's decision to rectify his/her first discourse segment. Thus, the speaker recharacterizes his/her first contribution with the second discourse segment that retakes the idea but modifies it for a better and optimal conveyance of his/her communicative intentions. Let us consider the examples in question:

52. KGM 575 Leicestershire County Council. Speech recorded in educational context
[...] A: There are no speakers on this so put the the amendment.

B: Well may I, may I second it please Chair?

A: If you yes Yep. Do you wish to speak on it?

B: Yes please. I I do second it because if all aspects I actually supported, **that is to say** I support that the the first part of the of the amendment which is the motion from the policy and resources committee as well as the bit that has been er added on erm as far as the latter is concerned I support it, largely for the reason that Mr has explained. It is not a particularly satisfactory way of progressing I accept that.

In example 53 the rectification entails the personal reference, the speaker decides to reformulate in the course of discourse the pronoun “I” for “we” which is more in accordance with his/her communicative intentions:

53. EWC 1204 Watership down. Book-domain: imaginative

There was something furtive and hesitant about him and Hazel glanced at him sharply, wondering for a moment whether he could have sickness or poison on him.' Er -Hazel,' said Hawkbit, looking past him into the face of the dreary, black cliff. 'I er-**that is to say** we-er-feel that we-well, that we can't go on like this. We've had enough of it. 'He stopped. Hazel now saw that Speedwell and Acorn were behind him, listening expectantly. There was a pause.' Go on, Hawkbit,' said Speedwell,' or shall I?'

In examples 54 and 55 below, the speaker reformulates his/her first discourse segment on the fly, recharacterizes its semantic content and thus utters a new reformulation that better conveys his/her communicative intentions:

54. ANY 1659 Nice work. Book-domain: imaginative

A: “Going to work for us, too? Secretary?” “No”. “ Pity. But you're not a customer, I think?” “No.” “So... what? Are you going to make me play twenty questions?”

B: “I'm from Rummidge University. I'm, er, taking part in, **that is to say**...I'm on a kind of educational visit.”

55. JS9 164 Wiltshire County Council. Spoken register: speech recorded in public context.

-PSAJA: Can I just clarify then, how far do you imagine this being deferred, **that is to say** are you awaiting the outcome of the local government commission report

-PSAJB: No, I do believe that Mr 's report is coming to the March property er, sub-committee and then it will be the subsequent meeting of the policy and resources committee which will be at the end of March.

A6) Summary

In some other examples, it has been observed that the use of the reformulator *that is to say* effects a recharacterization of the semantic content of S1 or some of its constituents to the point that the rendition is a shorter version of S1 or a way of summarizing it.

In many of the occurrences analyzed it has been observed that the summary of a number of previous discourse segments and the introduction of a conclusion from them are nuances closely intertwined in the use of the reformulator *that is to say*, and thus are hard to separate.

The following example illustrates this claim, where the speaker is listing a number of characteristics such as “we entirely repudiate...we claimed the right to judge...we repudiated entirely customary morals...” to finally cut this list short with the reformulated discourse segment S2. It is with the newly reformulated segment where s/he sort of concludes or summarizes by making explicit an implied assumption that follows from the previous exposition of arguments, viz.: “We were in the strict sense of the term immoralists”:

56. CDW 1353 Morality and the market place. Book-domain: commerce.

Late in his life, summing up the views of his Bloomsbury friends and himself, he put it like this: We entirely repudiated a personal liability on us to obey general rules. We claimed the right to judge every individual case on its merits, and the wisdom, experience and self-control to do so successfully. We repudiated entirely customary morals, conventions and traditional wisdom. We were, **that is to say**, in the strict sense of the term immoralists... we recognised no moral obligation, no inner sanction, to confirm or obey... So far as I am concerned, it is too late to change. I remain and always will remain an immoralist.

Likewise, in the following extract below, and after an explanation of PHIL's views on how men should live their lives, HARRY recharacterizes PHIL's words with a reformulated segment that summarizes them: “That is to say, he must take care, and not

go off the rails”. By means of this reformulator the speaker offers a shorter and more condensed version of S1, which was longer and much more complex. However, it seems to me that besides summarizing the previous speaker’s views on life, the second speaker is also somehow concluding from his words. Thus, both instructions, that of summary and conclusion seem to co-exist in most of the examples analyzed:

57. ASD 2707 Now we’re thirty-something. Book-domain: imaginative

PHIL: [...] This is the argument of Epicurus the Greek, whose teachings have since been much corrupted.

HARRY: **That is to say**, he must take care, and not go off the rails.

PHIL: Indeed.

HARRY: Then what have you to say to my argument, which is that by not going off the rails, man is destined to live meanly and dully, and in that way corrupts the true purpose of his being on earth?

PHIL: Come again?

The following example is perhaps the clearest of all where the reformulator *that is to say* hosts a reformulated discourse segment S2 that, after a long list of discourse segments, clearly recharacterizes the semantic content of them all with the routcome of a new S2 that embodies and summarizes their properties. Thus, the noun-phrase of “autonomy” comprises all the before-mentioned properties and summarizes what the program of the party promised in just one word:

58. ANT 995 National Liberation. Book-domain: world affairs.

Second, Luxemburg accepted, as did the Austro-Marxists, a cultural-linguistic nationality. For Poles, the programme of her party promised “The equality of all national groups that live in Russia; assurance of their cultural development; national schools and freedom in the use of native languages; *provincial self-government*, **that is to say**, autonomy”.

B) Inferential cases of Reformulation

I have opted to give the label of *inferential* to those cases where the recharacterization of the S1 entails some inferential processing of the message in it. The reformulated segment comes in the form of an explicitation of an implied piece of

information; in other words, the reformulated segment explicitates what has not been explicitly stated in S1 but rather implied by it (cf. Casado 1991 on Spanish *o sea* for a similar insight).

This explicitation of an implied message normally takes the form of an **IMPLIED CONCLUSION-CONSEQUENCE**, although sometimes it might be an implied premise that adds to the previous contextual assumptions in S1 and thus strengthens them. That is to say, this use responds to the speaker's desire to explicitate a piece of information in the form of a conclusion-consequence that s/he expects the hearer to draw from the first discourse segment. The reasons for which the speaker decides to make it explicit may be due to the fact that s/he judges that the contextual information provided in S1 may not be sufficient for the hearer to arrive at the intended contextual effects and thus decides to save his/her interlocutor the effort by presenting the implied conclusion.

Cases of introduction of conclusions-consequences by means of the reformulator *that is to say* are different from the other functions considered so far. The uses of this reformulator are fairly similar to those of the Inferential-Implicative DMs *so/ thus* and *in conclusion* in some of the occurrences surveyed.

The reformulated discourse segment S2 introduces a conclusion-consequence on the basis of the information provided in the previous discourse segment S1. Normally, cases of concluding *that is to say* are cases of total reformulation where the scope affects the whole utterance constituent in S1. Moreover, at the syntactic level, the reformulator *that is to say* combines with the lexical form *that* which might favor a conclusory reading for this marker. With regard to the Spanish maker *o sea que*, Steel (1976: 197) indicates that "A result may be indicated by the following connecting adjuncts, which are equivalent to English *so* or *and so*: *así que, como que, conque, pues, total que, o sea*

que". Other authors who also recognize this value for Spanish *o sea que* are Casado (1991), Steel (1976), and Carnicer (1983).

In example 59 below, the speaker is somehow concluding, or making explicit an implied assumption derived from the exposition of the above information. With all the evidence presented, namely, "the housing associations approached both have better records..." the speaker explicitates the assumption that no matter how much they improved their performance, the associations have already beaten them. Thus, from the information provided above, the speaker is presenting a conclusion that might not be otherwise available to the hearer:

59. JT8 391 Local council meeting. Speech recorded in public context

Er the housing associations approached both have better records than us for rent collection and better records on void times. **That is to say** *that* no matter how much we are improving our performance, the associations have already beaten us to it and that, Mr Mayor, I would suggest is a very good case for transferring all our stock to housing associations and there is one final point I would like to make Mr Mayor. Mr Mayor, in a recent conversation with the minister of housing.

In example 60 below, the speaker is certainly concluding from the arguments presented before, "that fluorescent tubes are better but that they have to be chosen in the right colors", etc, with a reformulated S2 "choose warm white de luxe or cool white de luxe", as a concluding statement from the S1:

60. HGW 1146. Home design. Book-domain: arts.

Independent switches for each light will make it easier to create the appropriate atmosphere. Fluorescent tubes are best for under cabinet/worktop lighting. They last much longer than incandescent tubes, offer more light per watt but need to be carefully chosen in the right colours for the most accurate presentation of food. **That is to say**, choose warm white de luxe (not just warm white) or cool white de luxe (not just cool white). There is no point in dimming fluorescent light; although it is possible, it is extremely costly and unnecessary. Mount tubes as close to the front of cabinets as possible and shield them with a baffle or small valance or cornice attached to the bottom of units.

Similarly, in example 61 below the speaker introduces a global reformulation that somehow dwells on what comes before and that introduces his/her views as a conclusion extrapolated from the previous presentation of information:

61. KM1 394 Trade Union Annual Congress. Speech recorded in public context

In our various parties, organizations and institutions therefore we urgently need to recognize that most of our programmes, not least the programmes of our conferences and synods if I may leave you together in sin brothers and sisters are most of the programmes are really to do I would say with displacement activities rather than replacement activities. **That is to say** we are, we all need renewal and new ideas, but we stick to old quarrels and re-run old battles because we don't know how to face up to the real problems at the present, nor to find ways of working together for a worthwhile future. Of course, we cannot just get out of the routines and struggles and problems we are already engaged in. It's important for instance to guard safety at work.

Likewise, in example 62 below the speaker is concluding with a quotation from some other author. This quotation entails the essence of the point s/he was previously making with the S1. Thus, it can be interpreted as the explicitation of an implicated conclusion from the evidence provided before. In addition, there is a nuance of summary in that the conclusion is also a version shorter than the one which encompasses the different arguments presented in S1:

62. EV3 244 Library provision and curriculum planning. Book-domain: social science

For the teacher who favours the process model, a development like study skills or reading for leisure would hardly be seen as extra to the curriculum, and for some, even the enhancement of the physical environment cannot be divorced from those learning experiences in which education consists: **that is to say**, 'the medium is the message' (McLuhan cited in Postman and Weingarter, 1971). For others, the medium is most certainly not the message, and the curriculum is more narrowly defined as that collection of bodies of knowledge which make up the subjects on the school timetable.

Similarly in the example 63, after the presentation of the S1, the speaker decides, for whatever reason, to make the implied assumption, intended to be recovered, explicit to the hearer. In this case, a mathematical operation is explicitated and thus its relevance

underlined. This example corresponds with one of the three cognitive effects identified by Blakemore (1987) to which discourse connectives can be directly or indirectly related, in this case, the strengthening of already-existing assumptions. Notice how the speaker is citing different arguments in support of his claim, namely that ecological death is greater than the danger of a nuclear catastrophe. Thus, the segment hosted by *that is to say* merely helps strengthen the assumptions already communicated in support of a common view:

63. ABV 449 I believe. Book-domain: belief and thought

He argues that the danger of an ecological collapse of the earth-what he calls “ecological death”-is greater than the danger of a nuclear catastrophe. He cites in support of this the population explosion. In 1926, the year of his birth, 2 billion people inhabited this planet. By the year 2020 there will be 8 billion people living here. **That is to say**, within 100 years the human population will have quadrupled. The needs and waste of humanity have multiplied accordingly. Whatever we do, argues Moltmann, damage has been caused because of the irreversibility of the development of humanity.

Similarly, in example 64 the speaker decides to explicitate another contextual assumption that adds insights to the previously stated piece of information in S1 and that follows from it. This new S2 explicitly indicates the percentage that can be obtained from the figures presented in S1. In this example, the overall effect of this reformulation could be that of clarification of the figures and percentages presented, figures that are implied in the S1 but hard to access from the contextual information provided:

64. EDC 431 Living with heroin. Book-domain: social sciences

Almost four in five of these individuals were known exclusively to a single agency, with almost a quarter of all opioid users being known exclusively to the probation service. The identity codes of these 788 opioid users were then cross-referenced with those on the list of known opioid users for 1984-S, giving a relative incidence count of 356 (**that is to say**, 45 per cent of all known opioid users were new cases). This means that, over a two-year period, we had identified 1,661 heroin users known to official agencies in Wirral-6.3 per 1,000 of the adult population.

In example 65, however, the speaker is presenting an implied conclusion that s/he himself/herself is drawing on the basis of the evidence provided in S1 and that the hearer may not have easily recovered with the contextual assumptions provided since his/her knowledge might be different from that of the speaker. Therefore, the speaker decides to explicitly introduce what s/he expects his/her interlocutor to conclude from the premise offered, namely, that by saying that Baldersdale was well populated with youngsters of equivalent age, the implicature intended to be recovered is that “he was eligible for Hannah”:

65. BN6 621 Seasons of my life. Book-domain: belief and thought

Hannah never married and never had a close relationship, but she had her dreams. When she was maturing into young womanhood Baldersdale was well populated with youngsters of equivalent age-**that is to say** eligible for Hannah. Photographs indicate that she was a bonny young lass likely to stir the emotions of any number of local young men. There was also no lack of opportunity to meet up with your contemporaries in and around the dale-there was even a dance hall of a kind.

Example 66 below illustrates two speakers, where PS5SC is presenting his arguments about work and the reasons why people work. The only intervention of the second speaker PS5SE is to acknowledge agreement with PS5SC’s first intervention. The reformulator abandons the traditional initial position and is found in medial position. The reformulated S2 is still a mere variation of the topic introduced in S1 and the reformulator *that is to say* helps create the overall effect of strengthening an already-existing assumption; in this case, the first contribution deals with the argument that people judge work as something reasonably important. In his/her next contribution, the speaker strengthens this already-existing assumption, and expands on the idea that work is reasonably important because you see the point of it, and thus concludes by reformulating his/her first intervention:

66. KRG 1461 Ideas in Action Programmes (03) Radio broadcast. Speech recorded in educational context

PS5SC Presumably another effect is that when people work, assuming they enjoy what they're doing, they're doing something which they regard as being reasonably important.

PS5SE Yes.

PS5SC Good work, **that is to say**, is work that you do because you actually see the point of it and you actually get some pleasure and personal benefit by doing it.

PS5SE Yes. erm I think that's another important thing.

In example 67 below, the speaker uses the reformulated segment in order to explicitly indicate how s/he expected the hearer to understand the previous discourse segment S1. From S1 "I think probably we should treat them like mosquitoes", different implications can be derived. However, the speaker has decided to spare the hearer the effort and explicitly indicates how S1 should be interpreted. Thus, when s/he states "...treat them like mosquitoes" s/he is referring to the use of gas in order to kill them. If the speaker had not opted to explicitate what s/he meant by S1, the chances for the hearer to recover such an implication might have been scarce, especially if we consider that the association "killing mosquitoes" by using "gas" might not be immediately accessible to the hearer:

67. KRH 1821 Ideas in Action programmes. Radio broadcast. Speech recorded in educational context

More recently still, I came across a letter written in English, by the Kaiser to an American friend, dated nineteen twenty-five, in which he writes, erm "The Jews must be exterminated in a pogrom covering the whole world." That is clear in his mind, the only question for him is how this should be done, and he says, "I think probably we should treat them like mosquitoes, **that is to say**, we should, we must use gas."

In example 68 below, we have another case of a newly reformulated S2 that is an explicitation of an implied conclusion drawn on the basis of the S1:

68. AHF 1209 Daily Telegraph Electronic editions-1992-04-04. Foreign pages edition.
Periodical-domain: world affairs

The British people have in the past found them rather more powerful than the corporations which are popularly supposed to finance the Conservative party. Then there are all those schoolteachers, dons, television producers, writers on arts pages and members of the agitating classes who want a Labour win in order to impose Political Correctness. **That is to say**, they will have what the Jesuits once attached such importance to: power over young or impressionable minds.

On some other occasions the explicitation concerns not an implied conclusion that the speaker decides to convey, but introduces a contextual assumption that may be of help for the optimal comprehension of the S1. Thus, in the following example the reformulator *that is to say* explicitates a contextual assumption not provided in the S1:

69. B71 1937 New Scientist. Periodical-domain: natural sciences

Can it be true that, 6000 miles from home, he once called on a well-known American geophysicist in the middle of the night with an urgent request to have a secretary type his latest contribution to the journals? Can it be true that, master of an essentially observational science, he has only ever made one observation in his life (**that is to say** down the mines in Lancashire)?

5.1.1.1.3. Domain of use of the reformulator

That is to say has been well accounted for in the content or propositional domain, where the relations are between the semantic contents of S1 and S2, as well as in the speech-act domain, with non-declarative moods, that is to say, interrogative and imperative modes. Likewise, *that is to say* seems to work on the epistemic level. Let us consider the following prefabricated examples, where 70-2 reformulates at the content level, and are consequently semantic, 73-4 belong to the speech-act domain with interrogative and imperative modes, and 75-6 belong to the epistemic domain, since the relationship holds between the beliefs that underlie these utterances:

70. The doctor said that he was suffering from glaucoma, **that is to say**, from abnormally high intraocular fluid pressure, damaged optic disk, hardening of the eyeball, and partial to complete loss of vision.

71. AMT 1305 Does God exist? Book-domain: belief and thought
 To begin with, we must draw a distinction between God as personal and God as a person. Clearly none of the religious traditions we have examined asserts the latter. A useful example here would be Christianity. This religion concentrates upon a particular person, Jesus of Nazareth, but in its definition of God it describes the divine being as a Trinity-**that is to say** three persons.
72. Is the whole situation making you feel uneasy? **That is to say**, have you experienced loss of appetite, difficulty to sleep and concentrate recently?
73. I'm pretty tired today, **that is to say**, I'd appreciate it if you could do the washing up for me.
74. Why don't you stop fooling around? **That is to say**, pull yourself together and face facts.
75. John is coming back home really early this week. **That is to say**, Sheila must be out of town this week or they've had another fallout.
76. Mary was in a really bad mood today. **That is to say**, she must have lost the position she applied for.

5.1.1.2. IN OTHER WORDS

In this section I analyze the other DM within the Clarification group, namely *in other words*, along with a sub-group of lexical forms which constitute its semantic counterparts: *in simpler terms*, *in plain terms*, *simply speaking*, *to put it more simply*, *to put it more plainly*, *technically speaking* and *in more technical words*.

All the lexical forms presented above fulfill the same function, namely, the recharacterization of the message contained in S1, the rendition of which is an explanatory restatement in S2 that clarifies it. However, *in other words* stands out as the default DM of RF within this group, while the rest of its counterparts or variants are placed along a cline with two opposing ends depending on whether a much more complex restatement or a much simpler one is conveyed in the newly reformulated S2.

Thus, in the remaining sections I will first analyze the environments of use for *in other words* and later its counterparts, in order, finally, to assess the relationships between the different lexical units that comprise this sub-group.

5.1.1.2.1. Syntactic properties

The reformulator *in other words* is a complex lexical unit made up of the preposition “*in*” and its complement “*other words*”. It works as a prepositional phrase and presupposes the existence of a previous discourse segment as indicated by the anaphoric use of the pronominal form “*other*”. This form necessarily calls for a previous discourse segment whose message is recharacterized in a newly reformulated discourse segment or S2.

Besides displaying an adverbial use, *in other words* also has a connective function, and thus possesses indexical properties, that is to say, it has the ability to relate the discourse segment it introduces to (a) previous discourse segment(s) or S1. Its semantics indicate that when the speaker uses this reformulator s/he is restating the information contained in S1 and presenting it to the hearer “in other words”.

Traditionally, this reformulator has been included within the semantic category of Addition under the label of Exposition in Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) classification of conjunctions, also preceded by the disjunctive form *or*, and along with *to put it another way*, which could be considered as its semantic counterpart. In Quirk et al.’s (1985) approach to semantic apposition, the reformulator *in other words* is a lexical indicator of appositive relationships between noun-phrases and thus carries out the functions of Appellation, Designation, and Reformulation. It is precisely in this latter function where some of its counterparts are also included: *more simply*, *in simpler words*, *in simpler*

terms, put more simply, to put it more simply, in more difficult language, in scientific terminology, in more technical terms and technically speaking.

Likewise, *in other words* and its simpler or more technical counterparts received the status of conjuncts in Quirk et al.'s (1985) approach to conjunctions where *in other words* is simultaneously an Appositive, Inferential and Contrastive-Reformulatory conjunct (cf. chapter two for further insights). The placing of this reformulator within different sub-groups is just an indicator of its multi-functionality.

As far as its syntactic and distributional properties are concerned, *in other words* can occur in initial, medial and final position. Likewise, it can be used in cases of total and partial reformulation, and its use has also been registered in the spoken component of the BNC. As far as its syntactic patterning is concerned, *in other words* has been well documented along with the declarative, interrogative and imperative type. With regard to its sequencing with other discourse makers, *in other words* combines with *and*, *but*, *so*, and *or*, but not with *then*. *In other words* can also be found in cases of monologic and dialogic discourse. The syntactic and distributional properties are more thoroughly examined in Appendix I.

5.1.1.2.2. Pragmatic functions

Two main levels of analysis have been well documented for the reformulator *in other words* works, (i) a level of SmRF and (ii) a level of InRF, as was the case for its counterpart, the reformulator *that is to say*. By InRF I understand those uses of *in other words* where the recharacterization of the message in S1 affects the shared implications contained in S1 rather than the recharacterization of the semantic content of S1 *per se*. That is to say, in its inferential use this reformulator elaborates on the previous utterance and normally introduces a conclusion that was implied in S1, or that could be obtained

taking S1 as a premise. This use would correspond to the Inferential use identified for *in other words* in Quirk et al.'s (1985) grammar.

The existing approaches to this reformulator, although scarce, seem to acknowledge the existence of an inferential function for *in other words* along with a semantic use of the reformulator. This inferential use bears comparison with the use of Introduction of Contextual Assumptions identified by Blakemore (1987) for DCs such as *so*, and *therefore*. According to her, these DCs signal a causal-relation within her tripartite classification of the cognitive effects that these units are directly or indirectly associated with (cf. Archakis 2001 for modern Greek *in other words* and a critique of Blakemore's approach). However, Blakemore excludes *in other words* from the so-called group of DCs and identifies a different function for this lexical form, that of reformulating or elaborating on the previous utterance. In addition, *in other words*, as well as *in sum*, *that is to say* and *for example* fall within the category of what she labels DMs of apposition. Thus, she never considers a possible inferential use for *in other words* in opposition to inferential uses of DCs.

Matsui (2002) approaches the study of the Japanese *dakara* which corresponds to the English form *in other words* and considers that its fundamental function is that of reformulating or elaborating on the previous message and that "...all seemingly different interpretations of this connector follow from it " (Matsui 2002: 868). In this vein, Matsui's classification of the different functions for Japanese *dakara* lends itself well to the distinction sketched between semantic and inferential cases of reformulation.

For the time being, I will maintain that *in other words* is a DM of RF that allows the introduction and explicit presentation of implied conclusions, and thus falls within the scope of what I have labeled InRF. This reformulator amalgamates this use with the

semantic one, more concerned with the reformulation of the propositional content of S1 or some constituent of it.

A) Semantic cases of Reformulation

In this section I turn to those uses concerned with the reformulation of the semantic content of S1 where the propositional content stated in S1 or some utterance constituent is recharacterized and further explained in the reformulated segment S2. Accordingly, most of the examples identified show a certain paraphrastic nature in that the semantic contents of S1 and S2 resemble each other to a certain extent. However, this is just a by-product rather than a necessary condition brought about by the use of the reformulator.

Let us consider the following example:

77. F8B 66 Harlow Rotary Club: talk on engineering. Speech recorded in public context.

And this is where we've decided that what we really need is young engineers, **in other words** er, people who have just entered the profession itself to talk to the school children.

The utterance constituent in S1 “young engineers” is thus explained as “people who have just entered the profession itself”. The semantic resemblance is certainly high, inasmuch as the semantic properties of “young” are recharacterized in S2 and further clarified.

Cases of SmRf concern the recharacterization of utterance constituents whose semantic meaning is expressed differently or using different words in opposition to cases of InRF where the discourse segment reformulated normally entails whole utterances. The examples identified range from the most to the least paraphrastic, depending on the degree of semantic resemblance holding between the contents of S1 and S2. An exhaustive analysis of the examples obtained from the corpus yields the following main functions for *in other words*: EXPLANATION, IDENTIFICATION,

DEFINITION, RECTIFICATION and SUMMARY. Many of these functions are also shared by *that is to say*, with the outcome of certain overlapping of their environments of use.

The query for the reformulator *in other words* provides us with 332 (204) examples of which 130 have been examined in great detail for the assessment of the different functions displayed by this reformulator. I discuss them in the following sections.

A1) Explanation

Explanation is the label that ties all the lexical units within this first group of reformulators together, to the extent that the reformulation effected on the basis of the S1 yields an explanatory recharacterization or restatement in the new S2.

The explanation brought about by *in other words* marks a neutral or default reformulation. In contrast, its semantic counterparts explicitly signal a complex or simple explanatory restatement. Traditionally, this reformulator has been considered as an indicator of paraphrastic reformulation, along with *that is to say* (cf. Bach 1996, 1999, Rossari 1994, Cortés 1991, *inter alia*), and thus, its use presupposes the existence of a certain semantic proximity between the contents of both segments. However, the inferential uses of this unit would fall within the scope of non-paraphrastic reformulators in the traditional approaches reviewed in chapter two, since in these environments the reformulator does not presuppose the existence of certain semantic resemblance between the S1 and the reformulated S2.

Cases of Explanation range from examples where the semantic content of S1 and the reformulated S2 are almost 100% paraphrastic, and thus, the rewording or recharacterization of S1 brings about a very slight semantic change in the content of S2, to cases where this resemblance is less evident to assess, but is nonetheless still existent.

Examples 78, 79, 80 and 81 below illustrate cases of almost 100% paraphrastic reformulation. In these examples, the reformulator combines with the disjunctive form *or* and forces a paraphrastic reading. This would be understandable on the basis that by using *or* the speaker is constraining himself/herself to the presentation of another way of saying S1, which necessarily resembles the message in it.

Example 80 deals with the reformulation of an utterance constituent, namely, “knowledge of what has been accepted as right or wrong”, which is reformulated into “good and evil”. The semantic resemblance holding between both segments in this case is certainly high. In addition, the elaboration on S1 brings about a shorter and more semantically condensed S2:

78. The Difference Between a Healthy Conscience and a Guilt Complex. Book-domain: social affairs

For those who rear children, one of the most difficult tasks if not the most difficult, is learning the art of instilling and developing in the young mind that mysterious thing which we call the conscience. That is, how to give a child a knowledge of what has been accepted as right and what has been accepted as wrong, **or, in other words**, of good and evil; and further, how this can be so well rooted in their minds that it produces in them an inclination to act automatically in accordance with what must be designated civilised behaviour.

In example 79 below the notion of “persuading somebody” is recharacterized into “influence someone” with a noticeable degree of semantic equivalence between both verbs:

79. B2F 1127 Improve your people skills. Book-domain: commerce

All of us, whatever our walk of life, are frequently in situations where we want to persuade someone **or, in other words**, influence someone to do what we want them to do (eg a salesperson trying to persuade a buyer or a negotiator trying to persuade another negotiator).

Example 80 is a mere example of semantic explanation of what it is meant by the adjective “realistic” in S1, namely “possible to achieve” as stated in the reformulated S2:

80. B2F 986 Improve your people skills. Book-domain: commerce
Irrespective of these differences in rime, a respectable objective has certain known qualities as follows: Any objective has two parts to it: A forecast of the end result Indicators of success. Any objective should be in step with the circumstances of the situation as you know or understand them. Any objective should be realistic **or, in other words**, possible to achieve successfully within the forecasted time span.

In example 81 below the expression of “monetisation of debt” is further explained and thus its meaning clarified by means of *in other words*. Notice that the reformulated S2 involves in this case an expansion on the semantic content of S1 and the result is a much more complex and longer S2:

81. A69 523 Reflections of a statesman. Book-domain: world affairs
So far as I know, one cause of a general fall in the value of money is not open to dispute, either as theoretically possible or as practically instanced within our own experience: that is the monetisation of debt, **in other words**, the process whereby part of the expenditure of public authorities is financed by the creation of additional spending power.

Likewise, in example 82, a simple notion such as “budget discipline” is explained in the newly reformulated S2 with the outcome of a clarification of its meaning. It should be considered that both 81 above and 82 below are texts that deal with economy and the vocabulary and terms they use might pose certain difficulties for the layperson or nonprofessional in the field:

82. ABJ 196 The Economist. The Economist Newspaper. Periodical-domain: commerce
A government promise to liberalise prices next year is so far just that: a promise. Letting markets, rather than bureaucrats, set prices is the only way factories will get both the signals they need about what people really want to buy and the incentive to economise on costs. But the signals will get through only if there is budget discipline: if, **in other words**, the still massive indirect subsidies to factories-tax exemptions, soft credits, loans- are cut at the same time.

In 83 the reformulation brings about a clarification of the notion presented in inverted commas “beyond the power of Allah”, in order to make the sequence clearer, and thus equates the meaning of “beyond the power of Allah” with “omnipotent”. The whole expression is condensed in just one adjective:

83. AMT 879 Does god exist? Book-domain: belief and thought

Praise be to Allah, the Creator of heaven and and earth! There is nothing in heaven or earth beyond the power of Allah. (Both from “The Creator”, sura 35) These “god-like” qualities cannot really belong to more than one being. If nothing in heaven or earth is “beyond the power of Allah”-if Allah, **in other words**, is omnipotent-then this quality can only be attributed to Him and to no-one else.

In example 84, the recharacterization effected on the semantic content of S1 brings about a clarification and an identification of the writer’s intentions when s/he uttered “what he would get used to”-namely, “to become corrupt”:

84. C8E 1011 The Buddha of suburbia. Book-domain: imaginative

“Oh God, this whole country has gone sexually insane,” he said. “Your father should go back home for some years and take you with him. Perhaps to a remote village”. Changez's disgust at everyday things inspired me to show him South London. I wondered how long he'd take to get used to it, to become, **in other words**, corrupt. I was working on it.

Cases of semantic explanation have also been found in spoken registers. Example 85 illustrates the case of two speakers, a teacher and a student. The teacher carries out the reformulation of the notion “different structural formulae” to further explain and clarify it for the better comprehension of the class:

85. F7U 181 Lecture on Isomers. Recorded speech in educational context

A: I just said they had the same molecular formula

B: Oh right.

A: Christopher!

B: Er

A: The same molecular formula but let's put a word in for you. Different.

A: Structures.

B: Er yeah, okay. Let's, let's say different structural formulae. **In other words**, the atoms are actually arranged in a different way.

Likewise, example 86 is a clear example of explanation of the notion of “superimposable” in a spoken register. Thus the reformulated segment aims to clarify what is meant by this notion. The speaker resorts to a comparison from every-day-life in order to offer a clarification:

86. F7U 1057 Lecture on Isomers. Recorded speech in educational context

That's why it's damn tricky to do it! You draw it to show that it has a mirror image so what you find in practice is that it and its mirror image are not superimposable. **In other words** like your hands and feet etcetera they're mirror images you can't thank you they're mirror images that you can't superimpose. You can't even superimpose to that extent cos they're slightly different can't even superimpose that my fingers can't superimpose cos they're slightly different.

In this vein, example 87 below explains the utterance constituent “genetic pre-disposition” in different words. The explanation involves a longer discourse segment S2 and thus it gains in semantic complexity:

87. G3D 512 How to combat alcoholism. Book-domain: social science.

I think there's a third fact that you touched on earlier that I think it's just worth mentioning and that is that we know it's also a genetic pre-disposition to anorexia nervosa, **in other words**, we know that in certain families it is a disorder that will run from one generation to another.

Similarly in example 88, the medical term “inhalation anaesthesia” is explained in plainer terms. This example would constitute a clear case of recharacterization that signals semantic simplicity, with the outcome of the clarification of the term for the layperson:

88. FLY 582 11th year Science Lesson on chemistry of metal processing. Speech recorded in educational context

Okay. Thanks, right. Right. As I was saying. So this poor woman is er anaesthetized, intubated, which is when they put the tube down the throat and connect you up to the life-support machine, and then she's supposed to be being maintained in her unconscious state with inhalation anaesthesia, **in other words** they give her er gas and air to breathe to keep her unconscious.

89. CDR 147 Total health and Fitness. Book-domain: leisure

If (and hopefully when) you do finally quit, it may create more of a problem than if you gird your mental loins at the outset and make up your mind to do it first and foremost. Most experts advise that if you have made up your mind to stop smoking, you will probably stand a better chance of being successful if you can go “cold turkey”-**in other words**, stop smoking all at once. This may seem like an impossible demand to make on someone who has smoked 20-60 cigarettes a day, but psychologically it works better for most people than attempting the “slowly does it” campaign of a cigarette less every day.

A2) Identification

In other words also seems to fulfil the function of identifying a previously stated utterance constituent to the extent that identity or reference is assigned to it, although this use is not very common and it cannot be used in all the environments of *viz.* and *namely*.

Example 90 illustrates a case of identification where a replacement of *in other words* by *namely* or *viz.* would render the sequence grammatically correct without bringing about any change in the semantic meaning conveyed. The identification entails the assignment of reference to a definite noun-phrase that is further specified. Thus, “the terms” in which Catherine is best seen are identified in the reformulated S2:

90. H8C 527 Europe in the 18th century 1713-1783. Book-domain: world affairs

An ambitious Statute of National Education was promulgated in 1786, though lack of money and trained teachers meant that when the empress died in 1796 there were still only 62,000 pupils in all the state schools in Russia-a very small number in terms of a population of thirty million. Catherine is best seen, in the last analysis, in essentially the same terms as Frederick II. She was, **in other words**, a genuine believer in the ideals of enlightened government (perhaps a more sincere one than the king of Prussia); but her application of these ideals was limited to some extent by her personal weaknesses and far more by the demands and pressures of the situation in which history had placed her.

Similarly in example 91 the utterance constituent “the greater part of the Belgic provinces” is assigned local reference, whereas in 92 the identity of the adversaries is explicated as that of Iraq and Turkey:

91. HPT 1231 Charles the Bald. Book-domain: world affairs

At a Christmas assembly at Aachen in 837, having carefully built up aristocratic and episcopal support, and secured the agreement of Pippin (whose own ambitions in Francia now looked blighted) and Louis the German, Louis solemnly conferred on Charles' a part of the regnum', with the following boundaries: the greater part of the Belgic provinces, **in other words**, the whole of Frisia from the North Sea and Saxon frontier as far as the frontier of the Ripuarian Franks, and along the latter, the counties of Mulekewe, Ettra, Hamarlant and Maasgau; then all the territory between the Meuse and Seine as far south as Burgundy, including Verdun; and going from Burgundy, the counties of Toul, Ornois, Blois, Blaisois, Perthois, the two Bars.

In example 92 reference is assigned to the utterance constituent "their adversaries":

92. HRE 698 Oil on troubled waters-Gulf wars. Book-domain: world affairs

This common cause blossomed to embrace other anti-regime groups and by 1988 efforts were being made in Damascus to assemble an anti-Baghdad coalition under ICP leadership. During this period, the most effective co-operation concerning the Kurds was probably that between their adversaries, **in other words**, the governments of Iraq and Turkey.

Finally, in example 93 a definite noun-phrase is assigned further reference with the outcome of greater specificity in the S2:

93. HX4 571 Hotel Catering. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: commerce

The company recognises it owes its status as a major world force in fast food to the quality of its products and the quality of its franchisees. This is reflected in the guiding principles of the franchise: Respect for the franchisee's autonomy: the original meanings of the word franchise, **in other words**, independence and freedom, are particularly apt in the case of the company's franchise system in which the franchisee is the true owner of the business and therefore has control over his assets.

A3) Definition

The recharacterization effected on the semantic content of S1 can also entail the definition of some of its constituents for clarification and a better understanding of the sequence. As was the case with *that is to say*, the function of definition involves the explanation and clarification of expressions that the speaker may judge inaccessible to the reader for whatever the reason, or expressions that entail certain semantic

complexity such as the ones in example 96, viz., “Lamarckian” and “Darwinian” that are further clarified and explained in S2.

In example 94 below, both reformulators *in other words* and *that is* display the same environment of use, that of defining an utterance constituent in simpler words:

94. CMA 1214 Evolution from molecules to men. Book-domain: natural sciences
Cultural evolution is often characterized as Lamarckian in quality, **in other words**, dependent on the transmission of acquired characters, and relatively fast; while genetic evolution is Darwinian, **that is**, dependent on changes in gene frequencies across generations, and slow. But exactly how are these two processes coupled?

In example 95 the reformulator defines a technical term that is presented in inverted commas, “tailwinded”, and which might be difficult to understand for the layperson in that field of knowledge:

95. ECR 113 Aesthetic East Lindsey. Miscellanea-domain: world affairs
Apart from these three beautifully restored examples there is only the evidence of many tower shells to point to that former hard working and glorious age of cost-free power for corn-milling. Many mills met their fate in storms when they were “tailwinded”, **in other words**, the wind caught the sails from behind after suddenly changing direction before the sails could be rotated.

Similarly, in 96 the Greek notion of “miasmas” is defined in simpler words in order to facilitate comprehension:

96. AK4 492 Daily Telegraph, electronic edition of 1992-04-12. Art section. Periodical
This has the unfortunate consequence that they are much more likely to kill their patients than to cure them. Until the early 19th century, the basic principles of medicine had barely advanced beyond the theories of the ancient Greeks. Most serious diseases were thought to arise from “miasmas”, **in other words**, vapours or smells (in some theories, fine clouds of sticky atoms) which affected the balance of “humours” in the body.

In example 97 the notion of a situation of “anomie” is defined, and further explained in simpler words, although the rendition is a much longer and complex S2:

97. B17 288 Crime. Book-domain: social science

Merton suggests that criminal and rule-breaking behaviour results from “differentials in access to the success goals of society by legitimate means”. What does he mean by this? In societies where there is a strong emphasis on certain goals, but where the means for obtaining them are unavailable to most citizens, the result is a situation of anomie; a situation, **in other words**, where the rules and standards governing behaviour have lost their influence and force and are liable to be ignored, and where shared norms or rules no longer determine and direct behaviour.

Examples of definition have also been registered in the spoken component of the corpus. Example 98 below illustrates the definition of the notion “double-decker” in the following monologic exchange:

98. F81 117 Harlow Study Centre Interview. Speech recorded in leisure context

I'd put, been put in this for this to move because we had a two bedroom bungalow but the twins were getting big and I realized that we'd have to have another bedroom you know, very soon and er , this seemed an opportunity to get a house and also in Plymouth, that Plymouth was a naval town, you see, there was still those days there was still kind of a, a lower deck of sons, what they call lower deckers, **in other words** you know people in the lower deck of the navy, their sons didn't really have much, ever have much chance of getting into places like Dartmouth College or Cramwell to do as cadets, well the headmaster at Regent Street School had said to me that Keith was very keen on flying, he was aeroplane mad you see, and, he wanted to go in the Royal Air Force, well he said to me he said.

Similarly, in 99 a definition of what “cognitive normative” means is provided in the newly reformulated S2:

99. F88 417 Birmingham College of Food: lecture on tourism. Speech recorded in educational context

So you have these two extremes. In between you have elite, offbeat, unusual, mass and so on but they all lie somewhere between these extremes in terms of totally interacting and totally ignoring in many cases. The second type is the cognitive normative. **In other words**, defining tourists according to what's actually going through their heads.

Likewise, in 100 the notion of “whitewashing” is defined and clarified and what it implies explicitated, while in 101 the reformulation entails the definition of what the speaker meant when s/he uttered “the lack of reflectiveness”:

100. FYJ 287 Nottinghamshire Oral History Project. Speech recorded in leisure context
 B: Er well we'd er er distribute the leaflets, we'd er do what was known as the whitewashing, **in other words**, er er er whitewash slogans, whitewash times of meetings, whitewash the announcement of er er times of arrival, er and things of this character.
101. HH3 9821 New Internationalist. Periodical-domain: world affairs
 Needless to say, there have been certain noticeable effects on people raised on TV over the past 40 years. Psychologists Dorothy and Jerome Bruner, co-directors of the Yale University Family Television Research and Consultation Center, found that addicted TV viewers have a shortened attention span and a lack of "reflectiveness"-the ability to think, **in other words**.

A4) Rectification

The environment of Rectification subsumes occurrences where the recharacterization of the message of S1 encompasses a fine-tuning or refinement of its content. These examples normally show certain semantic resemblance between the S1 and the S2 where some repetition of the utterance constituent is effected. Thus, the rectification can be a slight one, or on the contrary, it can involve a totally different unrelated S2. This would presuppose the fact that the reformulator *in other words* shares some of its environments of use with reformulators from the fine-tuning group, namely, *or rather* and *(or) more precisely-(or) more accurately*.

Thus, in example 102 the notion of governmental is fine-tuned and a better alternative presented in S2. Likewise, in 103, the notion of "living in one's own house" is rectified and made more precise for a better understanding and thus the speaker considers that it is more appropriate to replace S1 by S2 which improves it and conveys with more accuracy what s/he intended to communicate in the first place:

102. EBM 189 An introduction to administrative law. Book-domain: social science
 But once we add this functional criterion we create a different problem: sometimes non-governmental bodies perform functions which we might

consider to be governmental (or “public”) in nature (**or, in other words**, most appropriately conducted by government).

103. CE8 1343 A right approach to economics?. Book-domain: commerce
However, even if the price of the house rises by more than the rate of inflation (ie a real capital gain has been made) capital gains tax (CGT) is not levied. Secondly, there is no tax levied on imputed income. This represents a notional calculation of the benefit gained by living in one's own house or, **in other words**, the rent which one would consider paying for the use of the house.

The rest of examples presented here also illustrate the use of *in other words* with a nuance of rectification:

104. F88 116 Birmingham College of Food: lecture on tourism. Speech recorded in educational context
We're also gonna look at where they live, remember what they're income is etcetera and the important thing is because of these increases here and because of the recession in general, it dictated to us that there were gonna be more one and two person households. Households without children **in other words**.
105. FM0 373 Defensive Driving techniques. Speech recorded in business context
Now the other way of course which your attitude can er be affected is that you're probably yourself quite a relaxed steady sort of guy, but do you respond do you react to the antics of another road user? **In other words**, someone throws down the gauntlet, do you pick it up?
106. H7B 1658 Computers in personnel. Book-domain: commerce
The first principle is that only the minimum amount of data necessary is held **or, in other words**, only data which will be put to regular constructive use.
107. HTP 800 Madness and modernity: a study in social psychoanalysis. Book-domain: applied science
Furthermore, the fact that so much violent crime is committed by the younger generation-the modern equivalent of the sons of the primal father-certainly seems to point to a fundamental failure in socialization **or, in other words**, in superego-formation.

A5) Summary

Sometimes the reformulator *in other words* hosts a discourse segment that cuts the previous S1 short and simultaneously concludes from it. Both values of summary and conclusion are certainly close and are very difficult to separate in some uses of this

marker². Let us consider example 108, where the speaker is not only cutting the previous sequence of S1s short, but also sort of concluding from it after listing all the possible reasons for feeling guilt. Finally, s/he cuts the list short and summarizes that the cause lies in not being good enough. In example 109 below, the speaker rounds up his/her exposition of the view of feminists about pornography. Likewise, in 110 after enumerating the things done in medicine, the speaker sort of concludes and summarizes his/her previous list in the reformulated S2:

108. CKS 754 Being a teacher. Book-domain: social science
Allied to this comes guilt: guilt about being such a wimp; guilt about being so secretive; guilt about having been such a bitch or a bastard; guilt about all the things not done; guilt about mistakes and errors of judgement; guilt, **in other words**, about Not Being Good Enough.
109. C9S 1586 High risk lives. Book-domain: world affairs
Other feminists, Rosalind Coward for instance, oppose such a brutal cause-and-effect view of pornography. Rather, they argue that pornography has established the conventions by which we understand sexualised images of women as images of submission, images which invite violence. This pornographic genre is not confined to porn itself, but spreads through our culture from advertising through bodice-ripping fictions to soap operas. Porn, **in other words**, plays a part in conditioning our view of sexual roles and their relative importance.
110. ASK 576 Treat me right: Essays on medical law. Book-domain: social science
We condemn the liar, blame the cheat, and excuse innocent error. In medicine, we talk in general terms of a patient's "right to know", but also of a doctor's liberty, sometimes not to tell a particular patient for good reason. We analyse both the implications of our general views and the tensions between competing views. We talk, **in other words**, the language of rights and wrongs.

Similarly, in 111, the newly reformulated segment offers a condensed version of the prototypical person who may catch flu in just one word, after the elaborate previous exposition in previous S1:

² This environment of use for the reformulator *in other words* would lie somewhere between the cases of semantic and inferential reformulation. However, I have opted to include it under the label of semantic reformulation in order to differentiate it from the proper use of introduction of conclusions.

111. A0J 236 Health promotion and Educational leaflets. Miscellanea-domain: natural sciences

Your limbs can ache and your muscles can feel weak. You may also have a dry irritating cough, a sore throat and a runny, itchy nose. Who can catch flu? Flu can spread very rapidly, so it is easy to catch and to pass on to others. Flu is most likely to affect you in the autumn and winter, e.g. from October to March. **In other words**, anyone! However some people are more at risk than others.

Likewise, 112 illustrates this use of summarizing-concluding, where the speaker is listing a few of the activities which s/he summarizes as a “hobby”; in the same light, in 113 the speaker lists what the different countries said with regard to the situation in Lebanon, to finally summarize what they all meant in S2:

112. ASD 560 Now we are thirty–something. Book-domain: imaginative
Maybe we up sticks and move to another, better part of the country to cool out. Sometimes we just look for something to do which isn't work or bringing the children up (which is of course work, but without cash payment) or sleeping or watching the TV or shopping. Something which is not necessary, but is worth doing .A hobby, **in other words**.
113. A8W 67 The Guardian, electronic edition of 1989-12-07. Periodical-domain: world affairs
In Malta, President Bush-in agreement with President Gorbachev-said there must be no more bloodshed in Lebanon. France has said that it would support the side that restarted the war. The Arab “troika” has called for restraint by all parties. **In other words**, they don't want Syria to strike. But that puts them all in a real quandary. For at the same time they still see no alternative to Tay if, and still see Aoun as the one great impediment in its way. Yet, now more than ever, force would appear to be the only way of ousting the general, and Syria alone capable of supplying it.

In examples 114 the speaker concludes from the previous utterance constituents with the implication that “the system is killing him”:

114. ABS 1926 Esquire. The National Magazine Company, Ltd. London.
Real Life the doctor is sick. He suffers from overload; he aches with frustration; he's starved of resources. **In other words**, the system is killing him. It's midnight in the back streets of the East End, hard rain is sluicing down, and I'm trying to locate the abdo pain's front door. This medical day started at 8.30 am, with forty-five patients, many with no English, in two surgeries and an antenatal clinic.

A6) Introduction of restrictions

This function of introduction of restrictions deals with those cases where the recharacterization of the semantic content of S1 renders a new S2 that is corrected and its possible realization dependent on the condition specified in S2. This environment of use is rare and not very pervasive within the corpus. Only two examples have been found. In 115 below, the restriction imposed on the realization of S1 (“to be able to give anything”) is subjected to the condition of not reducing one’s capital. Likewise, in 116, where the restriction or condition for the realization of S1 is presented in S2 by means of “provided”:

115. FMS 164 Legal advice: pre-retirement course. Speech recorded in public context
 A: Also if it's within your own normal income you can give anything, **in other words** if you don't reduce your capital. And you happen to live frugally but have a good income you can give the spare income away without subject to any tax. So there are plenty of ways of disposing of little amounts Every bit you dispose of from your capital every hundred pounds saves forty pounds in tax, if you're at that sort of level.
116. J52 1465 The blind watchmaker. Book-domain: imaginative
 The answer to Question 2 is equally clearly yes, provided only that the difference between the modern eye and its immediate predecessor X is sufficiently small. Provided, **in other words**, that they are sufficiently close to one another in the space of all possible structures. If the answer to Question 2 for any particular degree of difference is no, all we have to do is repeat the question for a smaller degree of difference. Carry on doing this until we find a degree of difference sufficiently small to give us a 'yes' answer to Question 2.

B) Inferential cases of reformulation

The inferential cases of the reformulator *in other words* seem to be extremely pervasive within the literature on this unit, and most recent approaches to this reformulator echo this use. Within the relevance-theory-approach, Blakemore (1996) questions the status that *in other words* has received as a DM, along with markers such as *that is to say*, and *in sum*, on the basis that they encode conceptual rather than

procedural meaning, and thus contribute to the truth-conditions of the utterance they introduce, or more precisely, to higher-level explicatures. The status of these DMs of RF, or apposition markers is equated, as far as their syntactic behavior is concerned, with illocutionary adverbs and parenthetical expressions (cf. chapter 1 for a detailed insight). Thus, Blakemore excludes them from her tripartite classification of DCs since they do not impose constraints on relevance.

Some studies on this DM have attempted to assess its environments of use, as is the case in Archakis (2001), who analyzes the modern Greek form—*m ala loja*—for *in other words* and identifies the environments of CLARIFICATION, DEFINITION (Ideational plane or semantic reformulation), along with CONTEXTUAL INFERENCES and CONTEXTUAL PRESUPPOSITION (on the inferential level).

Matsui (2002) identifies five main functions for the Japanese *dakara*, equivalent to *in other words*, which are listed below for the purpose of this dissertation:

- (i) Logical relation between two propositions-logical implication interpretation.
- (ii) A causal relation between two states of affairs: Cause-consequence implication interpretation.
- (iii) An epistemic-causal relation between two propositions: the premise-conclusion or epistemic-causal interpretation.
- (iv) A causal relation between a proposition expressed by an utterance and a speech-act performed by another utterance: speech-act causation interpretation.
- (v) Reformulation or repetition interpretation.

It should be noted that only (v) corresponds with what I have labeled cases of SmRF of *in other words*, while the other four main functions would fall within the scope of InRF. Although I consider her analysis of *dakara* insightful, I have opted to distinguish one main function for this reformulator, that of clarification of the previous message, which can be further divided into cases of Inferential and Semantic clarification.

Thus, the occurrence of *in other words* is always motivated by the speaker's urge to present the previous message with different words. However, this urge to clarify can affect utterance constituents, and thus reflects an appositive use where the content of S2 necessarily conforms in some way to the content of S1. Or, on the contrary, there are occasions where the clarification affects the whole utterance and thus falls within the class of inferential reformulation.

Another important feature that characterizes the inferential meaning of *in other words* is the widening of its scope. In cases of semantic reformulation the scope of *in other words* is restricted to utterance constituents and thus works on the *intrasentential level* as a case of apposition with a *partial* scope. On the contrary, in inferential uses, the reformulator normally widens its scope and thus affects the whole previous utterance, thus working at the *intersentential level*, linking larger discourse units with a *total* scope.

For the purpose of this study, I have opted to distinguish between three types of conclusion, namely, cases of introduction of a **CONCLUSION PROPER**, introduction of a **CAUSAL-EPISTEMIC-CONCLUSION** and cases of **SPEECH-ACT CONCLUSION**.

B1) Introduction of a Conclusion Proper

In this category we find examples where the reformulator hosts a discourse segment that is presented as a concluding restatement of the information provided in the previous S1, and thus the reformulation takes place in the propositional or content domain. These cases have been pervasive within the corpora. The function of the reformulator *in other words* is certainly close to the inferential or implicative marker *so* and *therefore*, and thus it appears in combination with them in many of the examples extracted from the

corpus. Similarly, these examples of inferential or concluding use of *in other words* can be found in both spoken and written registers.

In the case of spoken registers I have opted to maintain a distinction between monologic exchanges, where one and the same speaker introduces the S1 and reformulates it with the new S2; and dialogic exchanges, where the reformulated segment S2 is introduced by a different speaker from the one that uttered the S1.

Example 117 below is a clear case where after the exposition of a long and complex S1 in the form of arguments or premises, the speaker recharacterizes it with a conclusion in the S2. The previous discourse segment is thus only taken as the source discourse segment that provides the means for the drawing of a conclusion:

117. CKP 1077 Growing old in the twentieth century. Book-domain: social science
Together, these policies and policy statements reflect an overwhelming official concern in the current period of high unemployment with the position of young people in the labour market and, conversely, a lack of interest in action to improve the employment prospects of older workers. They reflect, **in other words**, an increasing tendency, directly or indirectly, to discriminate against older people in favour of younger ones, or “ageism” (Walker 1982b).

Similarly, in example 118 below, the speaker concludes that “a man was a pauper even when in full employment” from the arguments presented in the various previous discourse segments. Notice that this implied conclusion is inferable from the information presented before; however, the speaker has decided to present it explicitly to the reader/hearer:

118. CBJ 188 The Titford Family 1547-1947. Book-domain: world affairs
That sounds humane enough in theory, and no doubt it saved many hundreds of families from starvation during the years of the French wars; but it positively encouraged employers to keep wages at rock-bottom levels, while anyone who wanted to do an honest day's work for an honest day's pay was subject, instead, to the ignominy of accepting supplementary alms in order to live. A man remained a pauper, **in other words**, even when he was in full work.

In example 119 the concluding statement concerns an utterance constituent that ends from the list of adjectives in French, with a personal opinion “a very unattractive lot”. Similarly, it could be argued that the reader/hearer could have been able to infer the implied conclusion; however, it is the speaker who decides to explicitate it:

119. AE4 180 Mary Queen of Scots. Book-domain: social science.
The people were said to be lazy, their manner of living rustic. They were “assez fins, astutes et inconstans daffection”-(sufficiently subtle, astute and inconstant in affection)-a very unattractive lot, **in other words**, apart from those courtiers who had been brought up in France

Likewise, in 120 below the speaker concludes from the evidence presented in the previous discourse segments about craft people turning into farmworkers. Notice that the concluding statement could not have been easily recovered from the information provided below in that it constitutes the speaker’s view of the situation:

120. A6V 172 Finding a voice: Asian women in Britain. Book-domain: social science
Finally many people of this caste had to find other non-traditional occupations. Many low caste people who had previously been craft workers turned to farm work, and as farmworkers they had to be paid not in the old feudal terms but an amount definitely related to the work they did. Labour, **in other words**, had become a commodity and capitalist relationships had been established in Manupur.

Cases of InRF where the discourse segment hosted by *in other words* recharacterizes the message contained in S1 and introduces a concluding statement from it are even more obvious when the reformulator combines with the implicative discourse marker *so* (cf. Fraser 1999, 2002, Blakemore 1987), as shown in examples below:

Example 121 illustrates the combination of *in other words* with *so* in spoken registers, where the same speaker, after answering the question about the rights of consumers makes the implied assumption of his previous intervention in S1 explicit, namely “that you are covered no matter which type of market you buy in”:

121. FUT 285 Presentation on consumer rights. Speech recorded in public context
A: Can you tell me erm how that applies, say if you went and bought an article of clothing from a market stall
B: Yes.
A: and there were no facilities for you try it on
B: Yes.
A: and when you got it home you found it didn't fit?
B: Yes.
A: What are your rights then?
B: If you buy from a market stall that counts as b that counts in exactly the same way as buying from any other er high street retailer. **So in other words** you're covered by the, well you're covered by both the Sale of Goods Act and the Trade Descriptions Act.

A very pervasive situation found throughout the corpus refers to cases of inferential use of *in other words* with two or more speakers. In some examples one speaker recharacterizes the discourse segment of another speaker by concluding on the basis of the premises provided beforehand. Let us examine the following example, 122, where the lecturer, after one of the students has correctly hit on the name of the isomerism, introduces a discourse segment that directly follows from the type of isomerism identified. The interesting aspect here is that the lecturer is actually stating these words but attributing them to the student, since they follow directly from what he said:

122. FJU 427 Lecture on Isomers. Speech recorded in educational context
A: Once you've got the names then decide what you think what type of isomerism you think it actually is. It's really weird! And I'll give you the old name for it. Alright?
B: methoxy propropate.
A: Yeah exactly right! The first one is methoxy propate **in other words** you're saying, effectively, this group here wasn't the longest chain you can get is a propate. So you got a methoxy group so this one
B: Page six.
A: is methoxy propate. Now what about this one?
B: Mm. Ethoxy ethate, exactly right! Exactly right, well done!

In example 123 below the speaker himself concludes from his previous talk about fighting in the war:

123. FYJ 627 Nottinghamshire Oral History Project Talk (one speaker). Speech recorded in public context

And er and when you're fighting a war, you see and er and and and er and you haven't got a rifle, I mean it's a serious problem. So the political commissar has got to convince you, you see, as to who was responsible for you not having a rifle. Er **in other words in other words**, their task was one of er of holding, maintaining, you know, er a political enthusiasm, you know and er and er a political discipline, see? So when things aren't going very well, you see, the the the f these these are the chaps that's got to do, they've got to do the explaining.

In example 124, we have two speakers talking about getting a new coffee brand name in the market and about its location in the supermarket. Thus, speaker A states that this new brand, "Traidcraft", is going to be located alongside the other, from which it is implied that this new brand name will co-exist with the other coffee brand names. However, speaker B opts to explicitate this implied conclusion, in order to corroborate whether the implication he has arrived at was the one intended by the speaker A:

124. G3U 791 Justice and Peace Group Meeting. Periodical-domain: applied science
A: So, we've got one question so far. Ask supermarkets to stock fair-traded products.
B: Of course if there's some section on coffee, how are you going to get them to look at Traidcraft?
A: I think it has to be alongside the other.
B: **In other words**, you won't make a separate section. You'll mix it all up.
A: Mm. Mm.

B2) Introduction of a Causal-Epistemic Conclusion

The examples in this sub-section fall under the label of causal-epistemic (cf. Matsui 2002) and refer to those cases where the introduction of a conclusion is effected on the basis of the direct evidence presented in the previous discourse segment S1. This evidence entitles or compels the speaker to draw a conclusion in S2 (cf. Sweetser 1990). The use of verbs of epistemic modality in the S2 is a clear indication of the speaker's act of induction or deduction, rather than of stating (Sweetser 1990: 57). Accordingly,

epistemic modality binds the speaker to believe the proposition expressed on the basis of direct evidence provided.

In this light, the examples of causal-epistemic conclusion are examples where the reformulator *in other words* introduces a conclusion accompanied by a verb of epistemic modality that the speaker is committed to believe due to strong direct evidence provided in the previous discourse segment or S1. Moreover, it is the speaker's own reasoning process which constitutes the primary subject of epistemic modality. Along these lines, example 125 below illustrates a case of causal-epistemic reformulation where the S1 constitutes the cause that binds the speaker to belief the S2. The past form of the modal verb *can*, "could" is epistemically used in order to introduce the speaker's conclusion. This use is also found in 125-7 below:

125. A6U 26 Oxford Art Journal. Periodical-domain: art
But after a period of sheer copying, some themes took off. Some developed differently in the American context. Why did angels especially flourish? As I investigated further, it seemed to become clear that if this question could be answered it could only be in a complex way. These paintings, **in other words**, could only be read as the site of a complex play of forces.
126. AMT 1128 Does God exist? Book-domain: thought and belief
In a sense it is an example of the former. It denies that God has particular location. But at the same time it is surely doing more than assert what God is not. It is talking about an omnipresence of God. It could equally be phrased in a way that fits in more with the way of eminence. **In other words**, it could be taken as saying that God's presence is universal and complete, ours is partial and incomplete.
127. CAT 67 Punch, Punch Publications, Ltd. Periodical-domain: leisure
The man in question was severely mentally impaired, as Clinton knew. Yet the American public's obsession with capital punishment, particularly in a Southern state like Arkansas, means that any politician demonstrating his toughness will score over those suspected of wishy-washy liberalism. And if a few black spastics have to fry, well, too bad. Governor Clinton, **in other words**, is a man who could well be accused of wanting power so badly that he is, quite literally, prepared to kill for it.

Likewise, the epistemic use of distal forms of modals³ is another source for cause-epistemic uses of *in other words*. In 128 below the use of the distal “should” enables the writer to introduce a conditional expression of epistemic obligation. In this light, the use of “may” in example 129 is also a source for epistemic causality:

128. ABD 375 The Economist. Periodical-domain: leisure
The best parts run as separate units: the Fox network, for instance, shows only a handful of 20th Century Fox shows. News Corp may well be worth more in pieces than together. If Mr Murdoch had copied new conglomerates, like Britain's Hanson-which sells its successful turnarounds if a high bid comes along-he would be safe. **In other words**, he should have treated the media business as being just like any other.
129. BND 1587 Looking up the aisle? Book-domain: thought and belief
Then analyse each one of them for a lesson. “What were you trying to teach me in this Lord?” Because God is sovereign, this other person may well have been a tool in God's hand to try to get our attention about a particular problem we are having. **In other words**, the offence may have been, to some degree, justified. Then list the problem areas that God is dealing with in our life. This should help to put the offences from the first list in perspective. People who have difficulty forgiving are usually people who fail to recognise their own sin. Then, by an act of the will, forgive this other person or persons.

Similarly in 130 below, the author comes to a conclusion on the basis of the arguments provided in previous segments and expresses it with the distal form of the modal “may”:

130. EAY 758 Ronald Reagan and the American presidency. Book-domain: world affairs
Carter's saving grace was that he was probably one of the most honest, honourable and hard-working presidents to have graced the White House. Unfortunately, virtue alone is not enough; possibly Carter would have been more successful and might have won a second term if he had been less intense, more flexible, less immersed in the detail of government and a little more willing to dissemble occasionally. His presidency, **in other words**, might have ended less ingloriously if he had been more like his successor in the White House.

³ The notion of “distal forms of modals” is taken from Sweetser (1990) who, in turn, takes it from Langacker (1978). The basic claim is that temporal distance created by the use of a past form of modals is a metaphor for epistemic distance.

Example 131 illustrates the use of the epistemic “should”, a conditional expression of epistemic obligation:

131. CHC 1143 Nuclear weapons, the peace movement and the law. Book-domain: world affairs
He was surely right to caution that the declaration of a right by a court is perhaps best viewed as the beginning of a political process in which power relationships loom large and immediate. For, “Two decades after the Brown decision” he wrote in 1974 “we are still struggling inconclusively with school desegregation”. Rights, **in other words**, should not be seen as ends in themselves.

Likewise, 132 illustrates the distal form of “need” and the speaker introduces a belief taking the S1 as the cause that binds him to believe S2:

132. FBD 722 Ways of communicating. Book-domain: social science
The fact that he gets it by being told it, as opposed to observing it for himself, is incidental. Communication here is a means to an end (the acquisition of a true belief), not an end in itself. And Rabbit, knowing this, could in fact have answered Pooh's question without telling him anything at all. **In other words**, he needn't have told Pooh that there was honey, he could have shown him that there was-for example, by drawing his attention to the pot of honey on the sideboard.

At other times, non-modal devices, such as adjectives or adverbs related to modal verbs are also used in an epistemic sense. Let us consider example 133, where the adverb “probably” is epistemically used and thus allows the speaker to conclude on the basis of the evidence provided in S1:

133. F87 89 Church of Scotland: report on church funds. Book-domain: belief and thought
He went not to collect particulars and feed them into a computer, he went to get down on his knees and get himself covered in mud and blood. He did not qualify him for income support, he supported him on to the back of his ass, he took him to the inn. He took care of him and the Greek verb means that he literally took total charge of his case, **in other words** he probably stayed up all night nursing him, and so he made the inn into temporarily a nursing home and we're back into another area of the Board's concerns.

B3) Introduction of a Speech-act Conclusion

At other times, the InRF introduced by *in other words* holds between speech-acts, or between an utterance and a speech-act. Thus, the S1 is recharacterized and reformulated in the form of an imperative, interrogative or performative form that concludes from the S1. Those cases concern the introduction of a speech-act conclusion. The examples below illustrate this use of the InRF of *in other words* at the level of speech-act.

In example 134, the speaker is concluding from the information presented in a long S1 and thus extracting the scintillia of Thatcher's intentions in the international conference. Along the same lines, 135 below, concludes from the above-mentioned pieces of advice:

134. A1U 196 Independent, electronic edition of 1989-10-03. Focus section. Periodical-domain: leisure
It is a matter of judgement whether Canada, Australia and Japan should be able to dispose of their own PCBs. At present, none of them can. Margaret Thatcher will next month tell an international conference that the trade in wastes for incineration should be allowed where it is the best environmental option for existing wastes. **In other words:** keep a legal route open, sooner than see dumping.
135. ARJ 1422 She magazine. Periodical-domain: leisure
Don't give problems a chance to grow and fester. Enhance your partner's self-esteem. Be positive: praise your mate's good qualities, treat him or her with respect. A survey of more than 300 marriage counsellors showed that "confirmation"-treating the marriage partner's words and self as worthwhile-was considered to be the most important factor in a healthy relationship. **In other words,** make your partner feel important and special. Take a genuine interest in each other. Too many couples don't make each other a priority; work, kids, everything else comes first.

The following examples also illustrate the use of this reformulator at the speech-act level:

136. ASH 378 Today's horse. Periodical-domain: leisure
It may make me sound as if I'm in training for a Blue Peter badge, but it works. This system is only successful if you are confident that your horse will be treated as an individual and that the people helping you care enough to spot when

- something is wrong. **In other words**, pay as much attention to the owner/manager as the yard when choosing premises.
137. CDF 224 Hotel and catering case studies. Book-domain: commerce
These questions should have been foreseen, certainly, but the real personnel issues have more to do with selection, induction and training in general, and the question is whether George's relatively informal system is really suited to the new circumstances. **In other words**, don't get too bogged down discussing individual personalities (with the possible exception of the joint owner-managers, of course).
138. CK3 830 Machine Knitting Monthly. Periodical-domain: leisure
Compare your fabric with similar bought ones. Ask yourself what you would have bought this cloth for. It will no doubt suit a good top coat, or perhaps cushion covers or possibly a bed cover. However, if you are already a keen needlewoman the answer to using this type of fabric is what we call "cut and sew". **In other words**, buy a good dressmaking pattern of a suitable garment, look at the pattern layout and make a length of cloth to suit the widest section the patter.
139. CHH 1123 Outdoor action. Periodical, leisure
Good footwear is the most important item of kit for any walker. However, these days the choice of styles available is so wide that it is easy to become confused when making a purchase. Your best bet is to seek out specialist footwear which will prove safe and comfortable in use, although not overspecified for the walking you have in mind-**in other words**, don't buy a pair of heavy duty mountain boots if you only intend going for walks on country lanes!
140. CA1 412 Kites. Book-domain: leisure
Bias in the fabric allows ripstop to stretch more along the diagonals of the square patterns made by the slightly heavier threads. So it pays to arrange the squares at right angles to the leading edges or at right angles to the spine. **In other words**, do not lay the nylon at random.
141. BMG 1632 Catlore. Book-domain: applied science
All this created something of a problem, since it was also recognized that cats were useful "for the suppressing of small vermin". Topsel's compromise was to suggest to his readers that "with a wary and discreet eye we must avoid their harms, making more account of their use than of their persons". **In other words**, exploit them, but do not get too close to them or show them any affection. This restrained attitude did, at least, enable farm cats and some town cats to live a tolerable life as unloved pest-controllers, but for certain village cats life was far more unpleasant.

5.1.1.2.3. Domain of use of the reformulator

A) Content domain

142. Mary did all the housework yesterday, in other words, she ironed, washed the dishes, mowed the lawn, made the beds, and even watered the plants.

B) Speech-act domain

143. ALK 73 Richard Baxter 1615-1691. Miscellanea-domain: world affairs
This had been Baxter's privilege until, one day, Mr. Owen gave this position to his rival. Baxter was so upset by this that he felt like leaving the school altogether. However, he says that Mr. Owen, thereupon, "gravely, but very tenderly rebuked my pride, and gave me for my theme: Ne sutor ultra crepidam. (" Let the cobbler stick to his last "). In other words, "Don't think more highly of yourself than you should!"
144. ASH 377 Today's Horse. Periodical-domain: leisure
It may make me sound as if I'm in training for a Blue Peter badge, but it works. This system is only successful if you are confident that your horse will be treated as an individual and that the people helping you care enough to spot when something is wrong. In other words, pay as much attention to the owner/manager as the yard when choosing premises.
145. BMM 1113 Lindford Christie: an autobiography. Book-domain: leisure
I held him tight, cooled him down and separated them. Another woman in the street called the police. When they arrived the woman began crying, behaving as the injured party. We tried to explain the situation as we saw it to the police. They turned to us. "Listen," they said. "Shut up. We don't want to hear from you. In other words, fuck off."

C) Epistemic domain

146. Donald and Mary have left their lights on. **In other words**, they must have gone for a walk and will be back in a few minutes. So, we'd better wait for them to come back.
147. Susan has not called to ask about Peter's accident. **In other words**, she can't have heard the news on TV.
148. They told me they were going to save their money for a special occasion. **In other words**, they must be saving for the big wedding she wants to have.

5.1.1.3. From Simple to More technical words

This sub-group of DMs of RF within the Explanation group includes the following reformulators: *in simpler terms*, *in plain terms*, *simply speaking*, *to put it more simply* and *to put it more plainly*, on the one hand, and *technically speaking* and *in more technical terms*, on the other.

The recharacterization effected on the semantic content of S1 or some constituent of it, or on its shared implications, comes in the form of a new formulation that entails an explanatory restatement of S1 in simpler or in more technical terms, that is to say, the restatement is explanatory but signalling semantic and/or inferential simplicity or complexity. As I remarked previously, the reformulator “*in other words*” marks the neutral or default rewording of the S1, whereas these two sub-groups mark more complex or simpler ways of stating the message previously expressed in S1.

The occurrences of these DMs of RF found in the corpora of analysis are not very numerous, except for the reformulator *technically speaking*. As the semantics of these lexical units indicate, they aim to explain the S1 in simpler words, and thus facilitate the task of comprehension to the hearer, or, on the contrary, to provide the hearer with a more technical form, especially in specific contexts where a certain degree of technicality is required. In any case they both signal a clarification.

The low frequency of occurrence of these reformulators does not allow me to exhaustively account for their syntactic patterning in the same way as for their counterpart, *in other words*. Notwithstanding, they have been ascertained to combine with the DMs *so* and *or* and function within the content and speech-act domain, although only reformulators which signal semantic simplicity seem to work within the epistemic domain of use.

In the following, I will analyze a selection of the examples I have found in order to illustrate the functions of these reformulators. As has been stated before, we should bear in mind two main types of recharacterization for the assessment of the functions of these reformulators, namely, cases of simplicity and cases of complexity. Thus, in each of the sections, it should be noted whether the examples analyzed concern the recharacterization of the semantic content or of the shared implications of S1.

5.1.1.3.1. Explanatory Restatement signalling Simplicity

The Explanation group geared towards simplicity can be divided into two main types: first, those examples where the recharacterization concerns the semantic content of S1; and second, those cases where the recharacterization is more concerned with shared implications.

Example 149 below displays a reformulated discourse segment S2 that is a simpler way of presenting the information stated in S1. The fact that *in simpler terms* is accompanied by an inferential discourse marker (cf. Fraser 1999) *therefore*, compels the hearer or reader to infer that some recharacterization of shared implications is on the way:

149. G3K 1265 Instrument flying. Book-domain: applied science
 In the null position there is a 180° ambiguity, and with the RC this is automatically solved by a sense unit. 3. The signals received by the loop and the sense unit also drive a motor which turns the loop. Thus the loop aerial is always, in effect, kept pointing at the ground station to which the receiver is tuned. 4. **In simpler terms**, therefore, the RC needle is always pointing directly towards the station, regardless of your heading. So you will normally know whether the station is to your left or right and whether it is ahead of astern.

By presenting the reformulated S1 in simpler words, the speaker is also concluding his/her exposition about the RC needle and its position.

Similarly, with the reformulator *in plain terms*, as can be observed in example 150 below, the speaker reformulates the S1 and thus a recharacterization of S1 is carried out to the extent that the rendition is a shorter version, a much more condensed and plainer restatement of S1 that explicates an implication derivable from the previous discourse segment S1:

150. G1G 506 Power in capitalist society. Book-domain: world affairs.
From Wright Mills's position that one does not need to demonstrate directly the existence of the shared ideology and shared objectives, it might also be argued that the corollary is also unnecessary; that is, that the members' awareness of the shared ideology is not a necessary condition either. **In plain terms** this means that one may be unwittingly a member of an elite group, on Wright Mills's argument. Since this effectively precludes the existence of internal organisation as a source of elite power, this line of explanation has to find other such sources and other unifying characteristics.

Along the same lines, we find example 151, where the speaker's use of the reformulator indicates his/her desire to simplify all the reasons or statements presented above, and thus to sum up or conclude his/her exposition with the explicitation of an implied assumption, namely, "that the plaintiff never had any cause of action":

151. AS3 58 The first fifty. Book- domain: leisure
In the older cases I find no such distinction. Lord Coke lays it down broadly that the staying of an action that has been unjustly brought is no consideration for a promise to pay money. I cannot help thinking, on broad principles, that the staying proceedings in an action brought without any cause is no good consideration for a promise such as is relied on here. The plea, **in plain terms**, avers that the plaintiff never had any cause of action, and he well knew it.

With *To put it more simply*, there is a clear anaphorical element, "it", that refers to what has been previously stated. As the semantics indicate, the aim is to reformulate the S1 and present a simpler version or restatement. In the following occurrence, example 152, the simplification entails a shorter version which simplifies the verb "...should be remotely interested in..." to "should bother". Here, the recharacterization clearly affects

the semantic content of the S1 to the point that its semantic content is simplified and restated in S2. Accordingly, with a case of reformulation of content, the scope of the reformulation is partial and only concerns an utterance constituent:

152. CET 242 The great unsolved mysteries of science. Book-domain: natural sciences

It might take millions of years before the spacecraft encountered a suitable planet, and billions before the result of its efforts would produce an intelligent lifeform, if at all. Taking all this into account, we have to ask why the extraterrestrials should be remotely interested in seeding distant planets. **To put it more simply**, why should they bother? Let us return to more conventional theories.

In example 153, by using the reformulator *to put it more simply* the speaker is presenting not only a simpler restatement of S1, but also a shorter and a much more condensed version. In the S2 the speaker is also conveying more clearly what his/her intentions were after a longer exposition in S1:

153. FA6 160 Gender and subject in higher education. Book-domain: social affairs

In common with English, however, most students came to the course with humanities A levels. Interviews were the obvious method for researching the interlinked topics of gender identity and subject specialization. I was interested both in how individuals develop a sense of themselves through their subject choice, and in how a world-view of a discipline is constructed at an academic and departmental level. **To put it more simply**, I wanted to look at the reciprocal interaction between individuals and their immediate social world.

In example 154, the speaker uses *to put it more simply* in order to explain in simpler words the notion of “positively serially correlated” in S1. Notice that by *putting it more simply* there is also an intention to cut the discourse segment in S1 short and to come to the point more quickly, along with the introduction of more colloquial terminology in order to explain high and low value periods, namely, “booms and slumps”. This example illustrates a case of SmRF:

154. H9M 901 Rational expectations in macroeconomics. Book-domain: commerce.
But it is a common and easily observed fact that measures of aggregate output in any economy tend to be positively serially correlated; that is, a higher than average value for aggregate output in any period is more often than not followed by a higher than average value next period and, similarly, a low value in any period is more likely to be followed by another low one than by a high one. **To put it more simply**, all economies experience booms and slumps, many of which are quite drawn out or persistent.

5.1.1.3.2. Explanatory Restatement signaling Complexity

In the following examples the opposite operation takes place, the reformulation entails a recharacterization of the semantic content or shared implications of S1, couched in more technical language.

In example 155 below, the reader is offered the more technical definition of what “*cellulite*” is after a more humorous and laid-back definition. The semantic resemblance between both discourse segments is more than clear. Similarly, the need to reformulate and present the new restatement in more technical words might be due to the context and the aim of the book, that is to say, to provide the reader with a degree of specialization in the topic of dieting and of cellulite in particular. The reformulation is almost of a paraphrastic nature. Accordingly, the technical sophistication that the S2 brings about is semantically reflected in the use of vocabulary selected for the depiction of the notion of cellulite and its process of formation with words such as “tissue”, “stagnation of the blood in capillaries”, to name but a few.

155. BN5 928 Rosemary Conley’s hip and thigh diet. Book-domain: leisure.
A friend of mine realized how much cellulite she had when her little girl spotted her sitting on the loo, bare flesh displayed. “Why have you got holes in your leg, Mummy?” she enquired and that, I am afraid to say, is what cellulite looks like. An ugly area of fat which is very uneven and very unattractive. **In more technical terms** cellulite is a modified form of fat tissue to be found just below the surface of the skin. It all begins with the stagnation of the blood in capillaries (tiny blood vessels), and this leads to a flow of blood fluids (plasma) through the capillary walls which separate fat-storing cells known as adipose cells.

In the next example, 156, the complexity of the reformulated segment S2 is best accounted for by the use of technical terminology in order to describe the way the conditioner works. Thus, whereas in S1 we find verbs such as “work”, or “give volume”, in the reformulated chunk the technical sophistication is patent through the use of more specialized verbs such as “penetrate”, “enter the cortex”, and “strengthen”, which bring about a certain loftiness in opposition to the modest tone of the S1. The reformulation and restatement in more technical terms reflects on the professionalism of the author and it is also aimed to satisfy the expectations of a professional audience:

156. CFS 1445Adverts from Clothes. Domain-commerce

To add volume to an entire head of hair, we start with each individual strand. Because one in three women in Britain have fine flyaway hair, we've introduced new Wella Balsam Hair Restructurant. Unlike ordinary conditioners, which simply coat the outside of the hair, Hair Restructurant actually works on the inside and remains in the hair all day to give volume and body. **Technically speaking** (as the diagram shows), the unique formula penetrates the hair, enters the cortex and strengthens the hair bonds.

Finally, it should be noted that no example of InRF has been found within the examples obtained from the BNC for the DMs of RF towards complexity.

5.1.1.3.3. Domain of use of the reformulator

These units work on the content domain or semantic dimension, especially due to the heavy semantic load they possess, namely, they indicate that the recharacterization of the message in S1 is going to render a simpler or more technical reformulation. The use of these reformulators on the speech-act domain has not been accounted throughout the corpus but it is not difficult to imagine. Let us consider the following prefabricated examples:

157. [Context: on a cuisine course for beginners the teacher is just explaining how to prepare a marinade for a salad. On seeing the faces the students pull, he opts to explain what he has meant]
A: Ok, so once you have the salad, add the marinade. **In simpler terms-To put it more simply**, mix some vinegar or wine and oil with various spices and herbs, in which meat, fowl, fish, or vegetables are soaked before cooking and add it to the salad.
158. Can peptic ulcer diseases, **or in plainer terms**, duodenal and gastric ulcers, also occur in the oesophagus in association with gastroesophageal reflux, in the jejunum owing to the Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, or at the anastomotic site of a gastroenterostomy following gastric surgery?.
159. The principal complications of peptic disease are a continuous loss of blood and the inability for the gastric fluids to emerge, or in more technical terms-technically speaking, haemorrhage and gastric outflow obstruction.

An epistemic reading is somehow much more difficult to imagine for these reformulators. In spite of this, the epistemic reading is much easier for the markers which bring about a plainer restatement of S2 than for those that merely present a much more technical way of saying S2. There is thus a tendency of the markers that clarify to operate on the epistemic level that is lacking in those signalling complexity. Let us consider the following pre-fabricated examples:

160. Mikey said he was sorry for not having sent me a gift, and for not having visited me when I was at the hospital, but that he would try to drop by next time he was in town. In plainer terms, he must have thought that I'm a stupid and don't know what he's up to with this other woman.

No example of markers signalling complexity has been found to account for cases of epistemic reformulation.

5.1.2. Identification sub-group

Within the Identification group of DMs of RF three main lexical units stand out: *viz.* (from the Latin *videlicet*), *namely*, and *to wit*. The basic function of these reformulators is to identify some aspect of the message contained in S1 and assign reference to it. As a

result, there is a recharacterization of the message of S1, or some of its constituents, the rendition of which is a much more specific S2.

These units have been mainly approached in traditional studies dealing with the notion of apposition (cf. Burton-Roberts 1975, Quirk et al. 1985 and Meyer 1992 *inter alia*) as explicit lexical indicators of such a relationship. Accordingly, these reformulators link two discourse segments, normally noun phrases, which can be co-referential, although co-referentiality is not a necessary condition (cf. Meyer 1992 for an exception).

Only *namely* and *viz.* are objects of analysis in the present study. The reformulator *to wit* has been excluded on the grounds that it should be merely taken as a variant form, and thus restricted to the written register, of the much more common *viz.* and its counterpart *namely*. Table 1 in Appendix I shows that the syntactic behavior of *to wit* and *viz.*, is exactly the same: they have only been found in initial position, in written register and only in partial reformulations in the declarative mood. Medial and final positions are totally ruled out, as well as combination with the interrogative or imperative mode

Another reason for the exclusion of *to wit* results is due to its frequency of occurrence, since *to wit* is the reformulator which is less often accounted for in the BNC. In addition, its use seems to be even more restricted than that of *videlicet* to formal registers. The marker of reformulation *viz.* makes up a total of 79 (in 59 different texts) occurrences whereas *to wit* has only accounted for a total of 46 (in 36 different texts) instances. For the reasons above-mentioned I have opted to analyze the functions of *viz.* along with those of its counterpart *namely*. I shall do so below.

5.1.2.1. VIZ.

5.1.2.1.1. Syntactic properties

This reformulator has been exclusively found in cases of partial reformulation, and thus its scope is partial: *viz.* only works on the intrasentential level by reformulating one component of the utterance or discourse segment S1 and thus has an appositional use. A total of 79 out of 145 different texts have been found within the corpus.

Viz. is basically geared towards the identification of a previous utterance constituent (normally a noun-phrase) to which reference is assigned in the S2 or newly reformulated segment. *Viz.* has always been recorded in initial position, a fact that could be attributed to its anaphoric value due to its semantic make up: *videlicet* is made up of the form of the verb “*videre*” (to see) and a pronoun “*-licet*”, that calls for the presence of a previous discourse segment to which it draws attention. The overall effect of *videlicet* indicates that what follows is going to be a further identification or reference assignment of a previous discourse segment, an indefinite or definite noun phrase in this case.

The use of *viz.* rules out the possible combination with clauses other than the declarative, that is, the interrogative and imperative type. This fact indicates that *viz.* is merely concerned with the transmission of information and thus its uses are excluded from the speech-act or epistemic levels. Moreover, its use is restricted to the written register, as has been well corroborated in this analysis. And finally, the use of *viz.* does not allow combination or sequencing with other DMs such as *and*, *or*, *so then* or *but*. Its syntactic, distributional properties, scope of reformulation, sequencing and domain of use are illustrated in Appendix I.

5.1.2.1.2. Pragmatic functions

In the following I have attempted to assess the semantic-pragmatic functions displayed by *viz.* It must be noted before I proceed, that the main general function of *viz.*, a function which is coincident with that of *to wit* and *namely*, is the identification or assignment of identity to some utterance constituent in S1 with which the S2 may or may not be co-referential.

Quirk et al. (1985) use the same label in order to identify the use of *viz.* in their early grammar of the English language. For them *viz.* is considered a more formal version of *namely*, and an explicit lexical indicator of apposition. According to these authors, *viz.* is placed along a semantic scale running from equivalence (or the most appositive) to loose and unequal relationship (the least appositive) and falls under the semantic relationship of Equivalence, and more specifically, as a form of Identification, along with its counterpart *namely*. These authors provide the following definition for the label Identification that I am using here:

With **Identification**, the first appositive is typically an indefinite noun phrase and the second appositive is more specific. [...] A similar relationship obtains if the first appositive is, or contains, a pro-form co-referring to the second appositive.

(Quirk et al. 1985: 1309)

Quirk et al.'s analysis of *viz.* coincides with the observation made in this study with regard to *viz.* and its behavior in the corpus of analysis, that is to say, by means of *viz.* the writer is merely identifying or assigning identity to a preceding utterance constituent or S1. The writer aims to assign identity or reference to the utterance constituent, and thus elaborates on its semantic meaning and identifies what this constituent refers to in a new reformulated S2.

The process of identification or assignment of identity of the utterance constituent entails making its reference explicit. After a thorough examination of the corpus it can be concluded that this can be done in one of the following ways:

(i) S1 contains an indefinite noun-phrase or other utterance constituent that is assigned (i) Place, (ii) Time, (iii) Object or (iv) Personal reference.

(ii) S1 does not necessarily contain an indefinite noun-phrase, also definite expressions can be assigned further reference. The overall effect of this operation is an increase in the degree of specificity of the S2.

(iii) S1 is further identified by means of an Illustration of some aspect contained in it.

In the following a tentative classification of the different functions identified for the reformulator *viz.* is provided.

A) Identification of an indefinite S1 utterance constituent

Under this label of Identification the most common uses of *viz.* are subsumed. The identification of the utterance constituent that is effected in the reformulated S2 is normally motivated by the presence of an indefinite constituent in S1. The indefiniteness of S1 can take the form of personal, object, time and place indefiniteness, and thus, indefinite pronouns, indefinite expressions of time or place are assigned personal, time or place reference, respectively.

A1) Assigning Time reference to an indefinite time expression

In example 161 below, an indefinite expression of time, “a particular time”, is further identified in the S2 as to be “during the animal’s youth”:

161. FSS 536 Tort. Book-domain: social science
However, it may be that the norm here is "horse" not "filly" so that the frolicsomeness would be a characteristic found only at a particular time, *viz.*, during the animal's youth.

A2) Assigning Place reference to an indefinite place expression

Likewise, in 162 below, the utterance constituent "...all-purpose hybrid place of origin" is further identified in S2 as "Cumbria", as well as "in the most desired directions" are in example 163:

162. K56 513 The Scotsman: Applied Science pages. Periodical-domain: applied science
This amazing £250,000 Japanese import is apparently so sophisticated that it is beyond its capability to frank more than one all-purpose hybrid place of origin on its postmark, viz. "Cumbria" occupying the whole upper half of the disc, with "Dumfries & Galloway" (nearly three times the length) squeezed into the lower half.
163. HPP 1070 Spokes: unpublished letters. Social science
I am particularly concerned about the impact on the tourist trade, because safe facilities for cycles outside urban areas are virtually non-existent, and I would like to mention two specific examples and ask you what action the Department might take, to improve the situation. The first is Edinburgh. I am concerned about the absence of provisions for cycle tourists to get out of the city in the most desired directions, viz. westwards along the A8 (trunk road), and north-west along the A90 (also trunk road) to the Forth Bridge.

A3) Assigning Personal reference to an indefinite expression

Indefinite expressions such as "an author" is identified in the S2 as being Orwell:

164. H46 516 Bookseller. Periodical-domain: arts
Publishers grow thick skins against negative reviewing, but I remain puzzled at the volume of abuse directed at this particular book, by an author who has spent many years working on his subject, opening up new areas of research, and who has arguably contributed more in recent years (viz. Orwell: The War Broadcasts, Orwell: The War Commentaries and The Larger Evils) to the study of Orwell's work than any other scholar.

A4) Assigning reference to indefinite expressions

Under this category I include the indefinite use of phrases beginning with a pronoun such as "what" in "what we all know" in 165, or anaphoric nouns such as "this aspect"

and the pronoun “that” in “as that which” in 166. Likewise, indefinite expressions such as “other Mercat days” or “other firms” in 167 and 168 below are identified:

165. CAK 1410 New Statesman and Society. Periodical-domain: world affairs
Speaking of regulars, the comp complex has had a letter from G Douglas Vaisey pointing out what we all know, **viz.** that “the compers club is a mite exclusive”.
166. FSS 1408 Tort. Book-domain: social sciences
As a matter of strict precedent, however, this aspect of the Lonrho case must have been decided on the same factual assumption as that which governed the conspiracy claim, **viz.** that while injury to Lonrho's business was foreseeable it was not the defendants' purpose to bring it about.
167. FTT 730 An Islay notebook. Book-domain: world affairs
That if any yearn is produced at the said Mercat or at any of the Mercats of Isla, the same not being just in number & Length. That such Yearn shall be Confiscated-And the Partys havers thereof fined in such sum as the Baillie of Isla shall see Cause. It is also meant that Yearn shall or may be sold on the other Mercat days in Isla, **viz.**-Whity., Lammas, & Hallow day Mercats."
168. BPH 1136 The worst poverty. Book-domain: world affairs
Banks promoted such services by press and television advertising. And other firms with “Bank” in their title also offered to lend, **viz.:** CREDIT PLAN FLEXI START BANKLOAN was the headline of a large advertisement of such a bank.

B) Identification of a definite S1 constituent

Under this label are included those examples that contain a definite noun-phrase accompanied by a numerical expression, along with other noun phrases that, though not being indefinite, are further specified:

B1) Numerical Expressions

Sometimes we find a common noun accompanied by a cardinal number, as is the case in 169 below, where the “three firms” as identified in S2, or in 170, where the “three zones” are assigned reference:

169. AMN 727 Foxton: locks and barge life. Miscellanea-domain: world affairs
Three firms of Mechanical Engineers have been asked to tender for the machinery and steelwork under conditions embodied in a Specification of

Terms, a copy of which is hereto appended. The specifications and tenders of the three firms viz.: -Messrs. Hunter & English of Bow £12,390 Messrs. Glover and Sons of Warwick £9,942 Messrs J. & H. Gwynne of Hammersmith £14,130 allow for Exps. 500£14,630 are hereto attached

170. B02 847 Agriculture and nature conservation in conflict. Miscellanea-domain: applied science
It is suggested that the UK's existing LFA is assessed in order to define at least 3 zones of natural handicap within it, viz.: -A.A mountain zone (areas such as the Scottish Highlands, the core of the Lake District and northern Snowdonia) where HLCAs should be increased to the Directive's maximum rates (subject to the livestock numbers per farm limit recommended earlier in this chapter.

Other examples are the following:

171. HD4 470 Personal letters. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: leisure
I had an interview for a job which is a four year term at the-the job is based there but is to run the exams set up of the four major surgical colleges viz. London, Glasgow, Edinburgh and Dublin.
172. HPL 1067 Lothian Council: unpublished documents. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: social science
The Rivers Almond and Avon are the two major rivers in West Lothian which carry sewage effluent to the Forth Estuary. Of the two the Almond has the poorest water quality as it serves four sewage works directly viz. Whitburn, Blackburn, East Calder and Newbridge and two works by tributaries, Fauldhouse via the Breich Water and Winchburgh via the Niddrie Burn.

At times, the utterance constituent identified does not necessarily include a numerical expression but collective expressions. Thus, in example 173 below, the expression "a variety of..." is recharacterized and the various transport aircrafts identified in S2:

173. EWS 431 Falcon Mystere 20-Product History. Book-domain: applied science
Since obtaining its identity as No 412 (Transport) Squadron at Rockcliffe on 1 Apr 49, the principal role of the squadron has always been to provide transportation for high level military and government personnel. The squadron, which moved to Uplands in 1955, has over the years operated a variety of transport aircraft, viz. North Stars, a C-5, Comet 1As, Yukons and Cosmopolitans.

Similarly in 174 the utterance constituent in S1 points to the existence of more than one category, and thus, the reformulated S2 specifies them:

174. EWS 480 Falcon Mystere 20-product history. Book-domain: applied science
Crew will normally comprise eight members, which will include two pilots, a Surveillance Systems Operator at a fully equipped console and two observers at search window stations. The special missions will fall into one of these main categories, *viz.* search and rescue, pollution surveillance, law enforcement of U.S.A. territorial waters and the 200 miles fishery conservation zone. In addition each aircraft will be capable of carrying an oil pollution detection system.
175. J6U 906 County court practice handbook. Book-domain: social science
Such notice might also be given in an originating application under 17 of the Married Women's Property Act 1882. The purposes of a pre-trial review are twofold, *viz.*: (1) if there is no reasonable case in law to be tried (whether on the claim or defence), as far as is possible, to dispose of the case; (2) if there is a case to be tried, to give directions to see that it is properly prepared.

B2) Identification of definite noun-phrases

Sometimes the utterance constituent that is recharacterized is a definite noun-phrase or expression. However, the speaker opts to further identify it and thus increases the contextual information making it more accessible for the hearer. In example 176 below the "Islands" are identified as "Man and the Channel Islands", although the notion was not equivocal within the context provided:

176. A69 1000 Reflections of a statesman. Book-domain: world affairs
There is a further twist of the knife in the birching case. It calls into question our right to maintain the peculiar forms of connection, which exist between the United Kingdom on the one hand, and the "Islands", *viz.* Man and the Channel Islands, on the other hand.

Likewise, in 177 there is a definite expression, "the countries within the ERM", but the reformulated segment S2 provides a further level of specificity or definiteness:

177. CBX 2499 Accountancy. Periodical-domain: commerce
It is not by accident that the countries within the ERM-*viz.* Spain and Ireland-and countries shadowing the system-such as Sweden and Norway-believe that the price of higher than warranted interest rates, from their domestic point of

view, is nevertheless worth paying, in return for the longer-term stability that the ERM will provide.

In 178 “the main areas of application” are specified for a better understanding of the notion in S2:

178. BMK 1920 Chemistry in Britain. Book-domain: natural sciences
This book is particularly useful as a reminder of areas where the reader may have become rusty, and as an update of the very good ongoing R&D work in the field of corrosion inhibition. However, workers in the main fields covered, *viz.* oil field applications, heating and cooling systems, steam raising and lubrication, will find this monograph valuable.

In 179 the identity of “territory contestants” is clarified, since its understanding may be not accessible for the layman and non-professional on this topic:

179. CGH 871 Practical fishkeeping. Book-domain: leisure
If he is the cause of the trouble, then it sounds very much like territoriality, not food-seeking; a territorial cichlid will rarely attack much smaller fish, especially non-cichlids, but will go for territory contestants, *viz.* other cichlids and especially conspecifics.

In 180 below, a definite expression, “the original idea”, is assigned further reference and made explicit to the reader in S2, as is the case with “the elder architecture” in 181 and “landmark” in 182, “the good idea” in 183 and the “situation” in 184:

180. AMN 313 Foxton: locks and barge life. Miscellanea-domain: world affairs
For instance, the hauling of drums proposed by Messrs. Glover are without doubt the best system and these can be applied to the original idea which has been adapted by Messrs Gwynne, *viz.*: one free balance rope and two hauling ropes to each tank.
181. AP8 314 The old galleries of Cumbria and the early wool trade. Miscellanea-domain: world affairs
William Green came to live in Ambleside in 1800, when he retired from surveying and map making, and painted there for the rest of his life. Grasmere, too has lost its galleries but evidently they were there once as de Quincey wrote describing them in his Recollections, “A very interesting feature of the elder architecture, annually becoming more and more rare *viz.* the outside gallery, which is sometimes merely of wood, but is much more striking when provided

for in the original construction of the house and completely enfoncée in the masonry.

182. CAH 197 New Statesman and Society. Periodical-domain: world affairs
Despite his election triumph, John Major is already looking like a mug. In this matter, at least, he is following in the footsteps of his predecessor. A Wakefield-based china and crystal chain, Peter Jones China, is already manufacturing a £25 fine bone china commemorative mug to mark the “historical landmark in our political history”, *viz.*, John's recent scrape home.
183. EWA 1520 Style in fiction. Book-domain: arts
The extract concerns the birth of the book's hero, to the younger son of George Pontifex: [17] Now, therefore, that the good news [*viz.* of the birth of Theobald Pontifex's son] came it was doubly welcome and caused as much delight at Elmhurst as in Woburn Square [it caused dismay], where the John Pontifexes were now living.
184. FBK 580 The Criminal Law Review. Book-domain: social science
It is clear from their context and from the structure of criminal appeals that these judicial doubts as to the right of the appellant/respondent to raise non-certified questions before the House of Lords can only refer to the situation exemplified by Berry (No. 2)-*viz.*, where grounds of appeal have been argued before but not determined by the Court of Appeal.

B3) Identification by means of Illustration

Sometimes the identification of the utterance constituent entails a recharacterization of its semantic content that points to an illustration of it in the S2. Thus, in 185 below, the notion of “articles” is not only identified but also assigned reference by providing an example of the notion in S2, namely, “pitch and run”:

185. AMY 823 Henly Golf Club-the first 80 years. Miscellanea-domain: world affairs
The usual high-spirited Artisans' Dinner was held with Bill as usual leading the singing with “Burlington Bertie”. His golfing prowess earned him a series of length golfing tuition articles in the Standard. They read very well, *viz.*: - “PITCH AND RUN. This is a real St Andrew's stroke, played with the right hand-firm grip with the fingers of the same hand. The ball should be played nearer the right foot than in other shots.

Likewise, in 186 below, an example of the type of advertisement mentioned is provided. Notice that the illustration is very common in those cases where the utterance

constituent does not include a definite number, and thus a general illustration can take place:

186. BPH 1128 The worst poverty. Book-domain: world affairs
NEED CASH? NEED IT FAST? Decision Today! Loan Refused? Whatever your needs or circumstances give us a ring now! Even if you've been turned down elsewhere. Every day the London Evening Standard carried two or three small classified advertisements headed LOANS from lenders who only gave their telephone numbers, viz.: UNSECURED Loans £1000-£10,000, payout 4-8 days, no bad debtors 081000 0000 up to 8 pm. Written quotations on request. Licensed Credit Brokers. Some 35,000 still used one of the 140 Credit Unions operating in Britain in the 1990s as cooperative savings and loan clubs.

A similar situation is provided by example 187, where *viz.* clearly serves to introduce an example in order to illustrate the claim before mentioned about actors being cruel, as well as in example 188 below, where an example is offered for a Christian name:

187. E9U 426 The East Anglian. Periodical-domain: world affairs
The Guinness book of theatre quotes, which costs £7.99, is compiled by Michele Brown who readily agrees that actors and authors are every bit as cruel about actors as critics, viz. Richard Burton talking about his wife Liz Taylor: "She has a double chin, her legs are too short and she has a pot belly."
188. ED4 3367 Good Houskeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure
It seems general practice to address a widow by her own Christian name and not her late husband's-*viz.* Mrs Joan Smith, not Mrs Ronald Smith.

After the presentation of the main functions displayed by *viz.*, I shall analyze its counterpart, *namely*.

5.1.2.2. NAMELY

5.1.2.2.1. Syntactic properties

The syntactic patterning of this reformulator indicates that this form normally occurs in initial position, in both spoken and written registers and in cases of partial

reformulation, although its use in medial position, in both spoken and written partial reformulation has also been assessed.

Namely has been found in combination with the declarative, the interrogative and even the imperative type. Its use in final position has not been documented in the corpora of analysis. However, the preferences of use are clearly the initial position coupled with the declarative mood, and restricted to cases of partial reformulation, that is to say, cases of apposition. No other use outside the appositional ones has been identified. Its use in the spoken component of the BNC has been well accounted for with a total of 79 examples within a range of 52 different texts. *Namely*, as was the case with *viz.*, does not combine with any of the markers from the other main paradigms, *and*, *but*, *or*, *so*, and *then*. *Namely* has been deemed to work in cases of monologic discourse, and its use is excluded in cases of dialogic occurrences.

The different patterns of use encountered for *namely* are presented for an overall picture of the syntactic properties of this reformulator in Appendix I.

5.1.2.2.2. Pragmatic functions

A thorough examination of *namely* yields insightful conclusions about its pragmatic functions or environments of use. A first observation is that this reformulator shares its main function with its counterpart in the written mode, the reformulator *viz.*, the Identification of a previous utterance constituent in S1 or the assignment of its reference, which brings about a higher degree of specification in the information conveyed in S2. Thus, one difference between the uses of *namely* and *viz.* concerns their syntactic patterning or syntactic behavior. As can be observed in the Appendix I, the reformulator *namely* is a much more dynamic reformulator, inasmuch as its use allows combination with the declarative, interrogative and even the imperative type, and

occurrence in initial and medial position, even in spoken registers. On the contrary, the mobility of *viz.* is restricted to initial position, mainly in written English and in combination with the declarative type. As can be observed, the scope of both reformulators is always partial, and their use in total reformulation has not been registered within the corpora of analysis.

Moreover, whereas the global query for *viz.* renders a total of 79 forms, the global query for *namely* offered a total of 2145 occurrences within 803 different texts. Of the total only 79 (52) were registered in the spoken component of the corpus. From the rest, a thinned selection of 200 examples has been thoroughly examined, whereas the rest of the examples have also been surveyed for the assessment of its defining syntactic and semantic-pragmatic properties.

Namely normally assigns identity or reference to what the previous S1 utterance constituent refers to, namely, an indefinite noun-phrase, though this is not always the case and thus a certain linguistic contiguity is presupposed between the S1 and the S2. This fact allows for the use of *namely* in medial position, but rules out its use in final position since it is certainly anaphoric in that the segment it introduces explicitly refers back and identifies a previous discourse segment in S1.

The pragmatic functions identified for *namely* are basically the same as those identified for *viz.* above: first, the identification of an indefinite utterance constituent in S1; and secondly, the identification of a definite noun phrase.

A) Identification of an indefinite S1

A1) Assigning Time reference to an indefinite time expression

Indefinite expressions such as “a particular time”, “within a certain period of time”, “only since then” are recharacterized and further identified in the S2. Notice that their referents are co-referential in the external world:

189. ASY 1361 A common policy for education. Book-domain: social science
To know this much about a student is better than nothing. But it is not enough. One of the drawbacks of A level is that because it is an examination to be taken at a particular time, **namely** after two years of study in the sixth form (there are exceptions to this, but such is the general rule) it is taken by people who are at very different stages of development, of readiness for the examination, and, above all, of interest in the subject matter.
190. BP5 1107 Competition and business regulation in the single market. Book-domain: commerce
A takeover bid must be accepted within a certain period of time, **namely** not less than four weeks but not more than ten weeks from the date of when the offer document is made public.
191. HY9 351 Politics under the later Stuarts. Book-domain: world affairs
Traditionally Convocation had met whenever Parliament assembled, but the institution had been largely dormant after 1664, when the clergy relinquished their right to tax themselves in return for the vote in Parliamentary elections, and had met only once since then, **namely** in 1689.

A2) Assigning Place reference to an indefinite or metonymic place expression

192. B1X 3317 The killing frost. Book-domain-imaginative
He paused deliberately, slowly switching his gaze from one side of the table to the other. “But I think the time has come,” he went on, “when the same microscope should be employed in another part of Ireland, **namely** the North.
193. B2C 1244 Owls, caves and fossils. Book-domain: natural sciences
The diurnal raptors and small mammalian carnivores form a third and most extreme group (Fig. 3.10). Fig. 3.9 Proportions of proximal against distal ends of limb bones. The horizontal axis has the most frequently preserved part of the bone, **namely** the distal humerus and proximal femur.
194. B2C 1306 Owls, caves and fossils. Book-domain: natural sciences
However, small foci of tumour within an area of fibrosis may be undetectable on MRI, which means that the technique cannot be regarded as completely reliable. MRI has been much slower to develop than computed tomography, but its

impact in those areas where it clearly has a substantial advantage has been enormous, **namely** the central nervous system and the musculoskeletal system.

195. F9G 168 Beyond the inner city. Book-domain: social science
Perhaps even more interesting than the status of race as a demarcator of differentiation, is the absence of division around religion, and in particular around the ethnic-religious combination of Irish Catholicism. This is not true of places in Britain which otherwise much resemble Tyneside, **namely** Glasgow and Liverpool. I will pay attention to these things, but one aspect of the specificity of the locales I am dealing with is their relative unimportance.

A3) Assigning reference to an indefinite expression-noun phrase

In this section I have include the assignment of reference to phrases containing an indefinite pronoun such as “what”, “that” or “something”, together with indefinite expressions:

196. C8L 1747 Church planting: our future hope. Book-domain: belief and thought
The apostle Paul, while encouraging the Corinthians earnestly to desire spiritual gifts, especially that they might prophesy, has another conviction about what will build up the church, **namely**, the preaching and teaching of scripture.
197. ASK 471 Treat me right. Essays on medical law. Book-domain: natural science
You may recall that I proposed earlier a scheme to do just that-**namely**, the registration of a new entry, but accompanied by a code known to the Registrar which would alert him in any case of attempted fraud.
198. C8L 1020 Church planting: our future hope. Book-domain: belief and thought
Clergy can then “do what lies within them to bring people to know God.” One of these things is certainly to plant churches. Bishops can do what they have already promised to do, **namely** “be faithful in laying hands upon others”, namely church planters. They will take initiative for the sake of “the poor and needy strangers”, namely those outside the church who have no intention of going near the institutional church.
199. CGA 19 Electronic Publishing. Domain-applied science.
Secondary information services answer queries by returning a set of document citations. For document reuse something more particular is wanted. **Namely**, the retrieved material must be organized into a sequential, cohesive document.
200. EBA 170 Legal theory and common law. Periodical-domain: social science
A new dimension of communication education was added by Central Committee in 1989, **namely**, Media Awareness Training, also known as Media Literacy, Media Pedagogy, Critical Reading or, as it is now usually called, Media Education.

201. ECB 581 Women and social policy. domain-social science.
Housewives would have the same relationship to the state as public employees, except that the services they render would be allocated to an unchanging unit in an unchanging place-**namely**, their own families in their own homes.
202. EF8 439 Understanding children. domain-social science
They can formulate hypotheses about reference on the basis of the contexts in which they hear new words, and, with the help of Contrast, they also start out with a strong guiding principle about relations among word senses. **Namely**, wherever there is a difference in form, they should expect to find some difference in meaning.
203. APV 230 Cleaning professional kitchens. Book-domain: applied science
Only one main type of dirt is affected by oxidising agents, **namely** tannin, derived from tea, coffee, wine and certain fruits.

B) Identification of a definite S1 constituent

B1) Numerical expressions

204. K5J 3916 The Scotsman-domain: leisure pages
HAVING finished second to France, and thereby won what the footballers used to call the Home International championship, Scotland can hardly be grugged the eight players they have in the British Isles task force for the invasion of New Zealand this summer under captain Gavin Hastings. **Namely**, in addition to the aforesaid Hastings, his brother Scott, Gary Armstrong, Paul Burnell, Kenny Milne, Peter Wright, Damian Cronin and Andy Reed.
205. APV 1098 Cleaning professional kitchens. Book-domain: applied science
They consist of a cabinet or tunnel in which items are placed and where they are subjected to hot spray of detergent solution followed by rinse water. Older types and some glass washing machines use powered rotary brushes. Within this general description there are two basic types **namely** the batch and continuous loader.
206. APV 1730 Cleaning professional kitchens. Book-domain: applied science
Organising the work Cleaning without organisation is like a moving car without a driver. Like good driving, organisation is conducted in two phases **namely** planning and implementation.
207. ARD 383 Screen. Periodical-domain: arts
It was released in December 1945, to an overwhelmingly positive critical response that praised its “maturity” and “realism”, and also hailed it as the latest success from the Coward/Lean “team”, which had, during the Second World War, produced three notably successful films, **namely** In Which We Serve (1942), This Happy Breed (1944), and Blithe Spirit (1945).

208. AYJ 2332 Twenty days to manage better. Book-domain: commerce
This could in theory be rounded up to one in four or down to one in three. A percentage misguidedly based on either would give two widely different figures, **namely** 25 or 35 per cent.

B2) Identification of definite noun-phrases

209. B1D 1381 The foreign office: an architectural history. Book-domain: arts
The Saturday Review attacked Palmerston for receiving the delegation, having said that the question of style was to be left open for the next session. Some of its members, **namely** Barry, Brodrick, Ashpitel, Jones and Lamb, must have been motivated by pure self-interest, as they themselves produce buildings in what they were saying was the hated Gothic style.
210. FBD 675 Ways of communicating. books-social science domain
And since Pooh knows what bees look like, we may assume that this observation is a good one: the belief the bees give him (**namely**, that they are bees) will be true.

Examples 211, and 212 illustrate the use of *namely* in what has been traditionally referred to as a *naming relationship* or Appellation (cf. Quirk et al. 1985), that is to say, a definite noun-phrase is identified by means of a name:

211. ART 1949 The Smiths. Book-domain: arts
What's more, he obviously still elevated those early influences above and beyond their deserved stature. In the north west, it was astonishing to see this superstar, **namely** Morrissey, worshipping this formerly dreadful local TV presenter.
212. ASA How we won the open: the caddies' stories. Book-domain: leisure
Today's caddie will probably tell you that nothing much has changed since 1560! Gradually the word cadets was corrupted by the Scots to "cady", meaning an odd-job man. And it is a Scot who is credited with using the first "cady" on the golf course, **namely** the Marquis of Montrose, who played on that delightful east-coast course in the 1620s and wrote in his accounts, "payment of four shillings to the boy who carried my clubs".

B3) Identification by means of Illustration

As was the case with *viz.*, *namely* displays certain uses where the recharacterization of the semantic content of S1 is reformulated and some aspect of it illustrated in the new

discourse segment S2. Notwithstanding, and although both reformulators seem to share the same environment of Illustration, the illustration brought about by *namely* in the S2 provides a range of possible examples, and not only one, as seems to be the case of its counterpart *viz.* Thus, in the following occurrences below, the speaker illustrates the S1 or some constituent of it with more than an example.

In example 213 below, the speaker opts to assign reference to the utterance constituent in S1 "...some of those made of the government's" but opts to do so by means of the illustration of two of these "criticisms" among a certain number. In other words, reference is assigned to two of the possible criticisms mentioned:

213. CE8 1285 A right approach to economics?. Book-domain: commerce
The criticisms made are very similar to some of those made of the government's programme for privatising nationalised industries, **namely**, the government may have a clear policy on transferring firms from the public sector to the private sector, but lacks a real industrial policy. Similarly the government may have a clear policy on transferring houses from the public sector to the private sector, but it lacks a real housing policy.

Likewise, in example 214, the definite noun-phrase in S2, "curricular problems", is identified by means of the presentation of some of these problems in S2 but not all of them. Still, the illustration concerns more than just one discourse segment:

214. FAM 614 Curriculum evaluation in schools. Book-domain: social science
These conferences were then followed by a Green Paper which contained a diagnosis of curricular problems in schools, **namely**, the lack of attention to basic skills and the lack of awareness in schools of the economic needs of the country. The assumption of failure on basic skills training was subsequently shown to be incorrect when the two surveys by HM Inspectorate were published, but then, as Reid (1978) argues, the DES seemed more interested in proposing solutions than in defining problems.

Finally, example 215 below exemplifies once again the use of identification by means of illustration. As was the case above, the identity of "some capitalists"

mentioned in the utterance constituent in S1 is further identified and provided as a sample that represents that collective:

215. CMN 1146 Content of social explanation. Book-domain: belief and thought
We might ask, first of all, “Why do the particular people who are major capitalists, **namely**, John D. Rockefeller III, David Lindsay, Walter Wriston, and others, typically identify the bourgeois and national interests?”. And the answer to this may be given in terms of the individual histories of these men.

5.1.2.2.3. Domain of use of the reformulators: viz. and namely

DMs under the sub-group of Identification are exclusively used in the content domain or semantic level. *Viz.* and *namely* recharacterize the message in S1 and assign identity to an utterance constituent, and their use is ruled out from the speech-act or epistemic level (cf. Olivares 2001 for a similar insight into the French reformulator *a savoir*).

5.1.3. Relationships between Discourse Markers of Explanation

Three main sub-groups of reformulators have been differentiated within the broader category of DMs of Explanation, namely, Clarification with *that is to say*, *in other words*, *in simpler terms*, *in plain terms*, *simply speaking*, *to put it more simply* and *to put it more plainly*, *technically speaking* and *in more technical words*, Identification with *namely* and *viz.* and Illustration with *for example*, and *for instance*. After a thorough examination of these reformulators, their most outstanding properties and environments of use, I aim to analyze more deeply the relations between members of the same class and/or different classes in order to offer a tentative picture of the possible hypernyms and/or hyponyms, synonyms or lexical units with an exclusive use within the different groups. This will be carried out by means of the substitutability test that permits me to compare the reformulators under investigation and determine whether one

marker can appear in another marker's environment in which it had not originally occurred. Thus, the basic meaning of the reformulators will be derived by testing to what extent they are interchangeable when it comes to connecting the same pair of discourse segments, S1 and S2.

The results concerning the relations holding between these units are based on my judgments as a speaker of the language after observation of the occurrences found within the BNC. However, and despite the fact that the results might not be deemed conclusive, they offer a clear picture of the possible relations holding between the different groups of English Discourse Markers of Reformulation.

5.1.3.1. THAT IS TO SAY and reformulators from other groups

In this section I first aim to assess the relationship that the reformulator *that is to say* bears with the rest of the markers within the Explanation group, with special attention to *in other words*, and its semantic counterparts towards simplicity and complexity, as well as with reformulators from the group of Identification—*namely* and *viz.*—and Illustration—*for example-for instance*; then I will look into the relationships that *that is to say* holds with Discourse Markers from the other group under study, particularly with that of Rectification, paying attention to its fine-tuning and rectification-improvement environments of use.

A) THAT IS TO SAY and IN OTHER WORDS

After an exhaustive observation of the behavior of these two reformulators it can be concluded that the DM *in other words* is hyponymous to *that is to say*, which, in turn, stands in a position of hypernymy with regard to it. This assumption brings about the fact that the reformulator *that is to say* is possible in all the environments of use of *in other words*, and that, in addition, it also displays some exclusive uses where *in other*

words is unable to function. It has been ascertained that both reformulators function on the semantic and inferential levels of reformulation that I proposed to differentiate earlier in this chapter. In other words, they carry out a recharacterization of the message of S1 on the semantic or propositional level, as well as on that of shared assumptions.

Along these lines, the similar environments of use identified for both reformulators are those of Explanation, Definition, Identification, Rectification, Summary and Introduction of Restrictions, which I illustrate below with occurrences from the BNC:

-Explanation:

216. F7U 185 Lecture on Isomers. Speech recorded in educational context

A: I just said they had the same molecular formula

B: Oh right.

A: Christopher!

B: Er

A: The same molecular formula but let's put a word in for you. Different.

A: Structures.

B: Er yeah, okay. Let's, let's say different structural formulae.

In other words, √

That is to say, √

the atoms are actually arranged in a different way.

-Definition:

217. CDR 147 Total health and fitness. Book-domain: leisure

If (and hopefully when) you do finally quit, it may create more of a problem than if you gird your mental loins at the outset and make up your mind to do it first and foremost. Most experts advise that if you have made up your mind to stop smoking, you will probably stand a better chance of being successful if you can go "cold turkey"

in other words, √

that is to say, √

stop smoking all at once. This may seem like an impossible demand to make on someone who has smoked 20-60 cigarettes a day, but psychologically it works better for most people than

-Identification: The reformulator *in other words* does not normally work in environments of Identification, except for those cases where the identification of an utterance constituent in the previous S1 entails a definition of it. In examples of this sort, both *that is to say* and *in other words* share the same function and are thus interchangeable. Notwithstanding, whereas *that is to say* is possible in almost all the environments of *viz.* and *namely*, *in other words* is only possible in the environments above-mentioned. Let us consider the following examples that illustrate those environments, where *in other words* identifies or assigns reference to S1 or some utterance from it in the same way as *viz.* and *namely* do:

218. AA1 693 The Guardian electronic edition of 1989-12-13: Foreign news pages.
Periodical-domain: world affairs
He wrote immediately to the SMG, cutting off all contact: “I am not interested in agencies who politic and posture for no other reason than to promote themselves... secondly, as I am not presently able to place any trust in you, I must insist that any further matters you wish to raise are channelled through to a suitable agency,
viz. √
that is to say √
in other words √
the local council or HCRC.”
219. CGH 871 Practical fishkeeping. Book-domain: leisure
If he is the cause of the trouble, then it sounds very much like territoriality, not food-seeking; a territorial cichlid will rarely attack much smaller fish, especially non-cichlids, but will go for territory contestants,
in other words √
that is to say √
viz. √
other cichlids and especially conspecifics.

-Rectification: *In other words* can be used in environments of Neutral Rectification and in Rectification and Fine-Tuning. As is the case with its counterpart *that is to say*, it is excluded from environments of Rectification and Improvement. Notwithstanding, its use in these environments is not so pervasive as that of *that is to say*.

220. EBM 189 An introduction to administrative law. Book-domain: social science
But once we add this functional criterion we create a different problem: sometimes non-governmental bodies perform functions which we might consider to be governmental (or “public”) in nature (**or, in other words**, most appropriately conducted by government).
221. CE8 1343 A right approach to economics?. Book-domain: commerce
However, even if the price of the house rises by more than the rate of inflation (ie a real capital gain has been made) capital gains tax (CGT) is not levied. Secondly, there is no tax levied on imputed income. This represents a notional calculation of the benefit gained by living in one's own house or, **in other words**, the rent which one would consider paying for the use of the house.

-Summary /Conclusion:

222. A8W 67 The Guardian, electronic edition of 1989-12-07. Foreign news pages.
Periodical-domain: world affairs
In Malta, President Bush-in agreement with President Gorbachev-said there must be no more bloodshed in Lebanon. France has said that it would support the side that restarted the war. The Arab “troika” has called for restraint by all parties.
In other words, √
That is to say, √
Thus, √
they don't want Syria to strike. But that puts them all in a real quandary. For at the same time they still see no alternative to Tay if, and still see Aoun as the one great impediment in its way. Yet, now more than ever, force would appear to be the only way of ousting the general, and Syria alone capable of supplying it.
223. ABS 1926 Esquire. Periodical-domain: art
Real Life the doctor is sick He suffers from overload; he aches with frustration; he's starved of resources.
In other words √
In conclusion, √
That is to say, √
the system is killing him. It's midnight in the back streets of the East End, hard rain is sluicing down, and I'm trying to locate the abdo pain's front door. This medical day started at 8.30 am, with forty-five patients, many with no English, in two surgeries and an antenatal clinic.

-Introduction of restrictions: Although no example has been recorded for the reformulator *that is to say* in the so-called environments of Introduction of restrictions,

replacement of *in other words* by its hypernym *that is to say* in such environments of use seems acceptable. Let us consider the following examples, where the reformulator *that is to say* has not originally occurred but in which it seems it can function:

224. FMS 165 Legal advice: pre-retirement course. Speech recorded in public context
A: Also if it's within your own normal income you can give anything,
in other words ✓
that is to say ✓
if you don't reduce your capital. And you happen to live frugally but have a good income you can give the spare income away without subject to any tax. So there are plenty of ways of disposing of little amounts Every bit you dispose of from your capital every hundred pounds saves forty pounds in tax, if you're at that sort of level.
225. J52 1465 The blind watchmaker. Book-domain: natural sciences
The answer to Question 2 is equally clearly yes, provided only that the difference between the modern eye and its immediate predecessor X is sufficiently small. Provided,
in other words, ✓
that is to say, ✓
that they are sufficiently close to one another in the space of all possible structures. If the answer to Question 2 for any particular degree of difference is no, all we have to do is repeat the question for a smaller degree of difference. Carry on doing this until we find a degree of difference sufficiently small to give us a 'yes' answer to Question 2.

Both reformulators are, however, excluded from the environments of Rectification and Improvement proper to reformulators from the group of Rectification such as (*or*) *better yet-still*. Only *in other words* has been initially identified in the Introduction of restrictions environment, although *that is to say* is also possible in that environment; whereas only *that is to say* seems to function in environments of Illustration.

Despite the fact that *in other words* is hyponymous with *that is to say*, it should be noted that substitutability seems to be impaired in some of the occurrences, mainly due to the syntactic constraints of use imposed by *that is to say*:

- (i) In those environments of use where *in other words* combines with the disjunctive form *or*, it has been observed that its replacement by *that is to say* is not

possible, even if the environments are those of Explanation or Definition, which these reformulators supposedly share.

This observation makes sense if we consider that *that is to say* has not been recorded in combination with the disjunctive *or* in any of its occurrences throughout the corpus of analysis, and thus it does not present the S2 as an alternative to the S1 (cf. Casado 1991, Archakis 2002 for similar insights). Examples 226-7 below illustrate this claim:

226. BM2 1277 The alternative religion. Book-domain: belief and thought
 The Difference Between a Healthy Conscience and a Guilt Complex
 For those who rear children, one of the most difficult tasks if not the most difficult, is learning the art of instilling and developing in the young mind that mysterious thing which we call the conscience. That is, how to give a child a knowledge of what has been accepted as right and what has been accepted as wrong, or,
in other words, √
that is to say X
 of good and evil; and further, how this can be so well rooted in their minds that it produces in them an inclination to act automatically in accordance with what must be designated civilised behaviour.
227. B2F 1127 Improve your people skills. Book-domain: commerce
 Persuasiveness
 All of us, whatever our walk of life, are frequently in situations where we want to persuade someone or,
in other words, √
that is to say, X
 influence someone to do what we want them to do (eg a salesperson trying to persuade a buyer or a negotiator trying to persuade another negotiator).

(ii) The unacceptability of *that is to say* also concerns those examples where *in other words* occurs in utterance-medial position.

Examples 228-231 below illustrate this assumption. Notice that while *that is to say* does not seem to read well in medial position, its use in initial position seems perfectly acceptable within the same sequences in some of the examples below:

228. ABJ 196 The Economist. The Economist Newspaper. Periodical-domain: commerce
A government promise to liberalise prices next year is so far just that: a promise. Letting markets, rather than bureaucrats, set prices is the only way factories will get both the signals they need about what people really want to buy and the incentive to economise on costs. But the signals will get through only if there is budget discipline: **[that is to say]** if,
in other words, √
that is to say, X
the still massive indirect subsidies to factories-tax exemptions, soft credits, loans- are cut at the same time.
229. AMT 879 Does god exist? Book-domain: belief and thought
Praise be to Allah, the Creator of heaven and and earth! There is nothing in heaven or earth beyond the power of Allah. (Both from “The Creator”, sura 35) These “god-like” qualities cannot really belong to more than one being. If nothing in heaven or earth is “beyond the power of Allah”- **[that is to say]** if Allah,
in other words, √
that is to say X
is omnipotent-then this quality can only be attributed to Him and to no-one else.
230. C8E 1011 The Buddha of suburbia. Book-domain: imaginative
“Oh God, this whole country has gone sexually insane,” he said. “Your father should go back home for some years and take you with him. Perhaps to a remote village”. Changez's disgust at everyday things inspired me to show him South London. I wondered how long he'd take to get used to it, **[that is to say]** to become,
in other words, √
that is to say X
corrupt. I was working on it.
231. CRC 1347 The Economist, The Economist newspaper. Periodical-domain: commerce
So when UNITA arrived in Abidjan last month, fresh from victory at Huambo, it was determined to get a much better deal than the agreement in May 1991 which supposedly ended Angola's decade and a half of civil war. Throughout the talks, the leader of the UNITA delegation, Jorge Valentim, had insisted on a settlement that “corresponds to the new reality in Angola”- **[that is to say]** a settlement,
in other words, √
that is to say, X
reflecting the fact that the rebels now claim to have won control of three-quarters of the country.

A use that could be characterized as exclusive of *that is to say* is that of environments of Illustration of the previous S1 or some utterance constituent.

According to informants' judgments, *in other words* would be ruled out from these uses, especially because with *in other words* it is more difficult to capture a nuance of Illustration, even if contextual information helps. However, an exceptional use of *in other words* in environments of Identification is that in which the assignment of reference of an utterance constituent is achieved by means of its definition or explanation of it, as mentioned above, and thus both reformulators are possible.

A1) THAT IS TO SAY and reformulators signalling Simplicity

If *that is to say* stands out as the hypernym of *in other words*, its status could be thought to be thus extendable to a sub-class of reformulators signalling semantic simplicity, or units such as *in simpler terms*, *in plain terms*, *simply speaking*, *to put it more simply* and *to put it more plainly*. Thus, replacement of these reformulators by *that is to say* is possible in all their environments of use. Notwithstanding, the more neutral *that is to say* does not so explicitly convey that a simplification of the semantic content of the previous S1 or some utterance from it is being carried out, a fact that is compensated by the semantic contents of the S1 and S2. Sometimes, the semantic content of the newly reformulated S2 is clearly a simplification of the content in S1 and thus there is a clear orientation towards a simplification, even if the marker does not explicitly convey such an instruction. In the example below, replacement by *that is to say* is perfectly grammatical and the sense that a simplification of the semantic information transmitted in the previous S1 is still maintained:

232. FA6 160 Gender and subject in higher education. Book-domain: social science
 In common with English, however, most students came to the course with humanities A levels. Interviews were the obvious method for researching the interlinked topics of gender identity and subject specialization. I was interested both in how individuals develop a sense of themselves through their subject choice, and in how a world-view of a discipline is constructed at an academic and departmental level.

To put it more simply, √

That is to say, √

I wanted to look at the reciprocal interaction between individuals and their immediate social world.

Likewise, in example 233 below, the use of *that is to say* is acceptable and the newly reformulated segment clearly entails a simplification of the more technical information contained in S1, a fact that is easily perceived in the vocabulary used:

233. H9M 901 Rational expectations in macroeconomics. Book-domain: commerce.
But it is a common and easily observed fact that measures of aggregate output in any economy tend to be positively serially correlated; that is, a higher than average value for aggregate output in any period is more often than not followed by a higher than average value next period and, similarly, a low value in any period is more likely to be followed by another low one than by a high one.

To put it more simply, √

That is to say, √

all economies experience booms and slumps, many of which are quite drawn out or persistent.

A2) THAT IS TO SAY and reformulators signalling Complexity

As was the case above, substitutability of a group of markers whose semantics indicate that the information in the newly S2 is presented in more technical words by the more general DM *that is to say* is also possible. Thus, replacement of one marker by another may obscure the explicit indication that the new formulation entails a higher degree of technicality or specialization. However, as the examples below indicate, the semantic content of the S2 entails a greater degree of complexity than the S1, despite the lack of an explicit indicator such as *in more technical terms*, *technically speaking* or any other of its counterparts:

234. BN5 928 Rosemary Conley's hip and thigh diet. Book-domain: leisure.
A friend of mine realized how much cellulite she had when her little girl spotted her sitting on the loo, bare flesh displayed. "Why have you got holes in your leg, Mummy?" she enquired and that, I am afraid to say, is what cellulite looks like. An ugly area of fat which is very uneven and very unattractive.

In more technical terms, √

That is to say, √

cellulite is a modified form of fat tissue to be found just below the surface of the skin. It all begins with the stagnation of the blood in capillaries (tiny blood vessels), and this leads to a flow of blood fluids (plasma) through the capillary walls which separate fat-storing cells known as adipose cells.

235. CFS 1445 Adverts from Clothes. Domain-commerce

To add volume to an entire head of hair, we start with each individual strand. Because one in three women in Britain have fine flyaway hair, we've introduced new Wella Balsam Hair Restructurant. Unlike ordinary conditioners, which simply coat the outside of the hair, Hair Restructurant actually works on the inside and remains in the hair all day to give volume and body.

Technically speaking √**That is to say √**

(as the diagram shows), the unique formula penetrates the hair, enters the cortex and strengthens the hair bonds.

In both examples there is a clear tendency to signal a much more complex and specialized piece of information in the second formulation. Thus, this group of markers stand in a relation of hyponymy with respect to *that is to say*.

B) THAT IS TO SAY and markers of Identification and Illustration**B1) THAT IS TO SAY and NAMELY-VIZ.**

The reformulator *that is to say* has been corroborated as possible in most of the environments of use identified for *namely* and *viz*. The results have been obtained from my observation of the occurrences found in the corpus of analysis and confirmed by native informants.

Viz. and *namely* have been identified as markers whose scope is partial, and which normally reformulate an utterance constituent to the point that a much more specific one is presented in the S2. Syntactic properties dictate that the units linked should be adjacent utterance constituents, and that their position be restricted to the initial one. Furthermore, combination with other markers is ruled out for these reformulators. All

this makes the more versatile marker *that is to say* possible in almost all of their environments of use.

Results from observance of occurrences indicate that *viz.* and *namely* can be replaced by *that is to say* in those environments where there is an identification of a definite or indefinite noun phrase to which place, time, personal or object reference is assigned. Let us consider the following pre-fabricated examples that illustrate the claim that replacement of *viz.* and *namely* by *that is to say* leave the sequence virtually unaltered:

236. Mary knew that the three boys,
viz. -namely, √
that is to say √
Mike, Pete and Zach, had gone to see her sister at the theater. (specific reference that is restricted by the numerical expression)
237. May knew that the three boys,
viz.-namely √
that is to say, √
Mike, Pete and Zach, had gone to see her sister at the theater.

Some other examples that illustrate the substitutability of *namely* and *viz.* by *that is to say* are the following:

238. B02 1158 Agriculture and nature conservation in conflict. Miscellanea-domain: applied science
Proper zoning of the LFA is essential in order to relate levels of financial aid to degree of handicap experienced and MAFF (and WOAD's) refusal to differentiate a proper zonation is a fundamental shortcoming on their parts. 2. Levels of HLCA payments should be related to handicap zones and three levels are proposed,
viz., √
that is to say, √
Mountain zone-set at EEC maximum, i. e. £60 per cow; £9 per sheep.
Intermediate zone-set at 80% of existing level, i. e. £36 per cow; £5 per sheep.
Marginal zone-set at 33% of existing level, i. e. £15 per cow; £2 per sheep.

239. CBX 2499 Accountancy. Periodical-domain: commerce

It is not by accident that the countries within the ERM-

viz. √

that is to say √

Spain and Ireland-and countries shadowing the system-such as Sweden and Norway-believe that the price of higher than warranted interest rates, from their domestic point of view, is nevertheless worth paying, in return for the longer-term stability that the ERM will provide.

Notwithstanding, the reformulators *viz.*, and *namely* cannot be replaced by *that is to say* in those environments where reference is assigned by means of an Illustration. This function is shared by *viz.* and *namely* and the markers that signal an illustration proper, *for example* and *for instance*.

Thus, *that is to say* cannot be said to stand in a position of hypernymy with regard to the reformulators under the category of Identification. It is true that *viz.* and *namely* are interchangeable with *that is to say* in most of their environments of use, but it is more accurate to say that *viz.* and *namely* are thus contingently substitutable with respect to *that is to say*.

B2) THAT IS TO SAY and FOR EXAMPLE-FOR INSTANCE

The reformulator *that is to say* has been ascertained to function with a sense of Illustration in some occurrences and thus, it can be replaced by markers from the group of Illustration, such as *for example* and *for instance*, especially when a general S1 or constituent of it is presented and further identified by means of an illustration. Whereas with discourse markers from the group of Identification, the previous S1 or some utterance constituent, whose identity can be definite or indefinite, is further defined and specified, with *for example-for instance*, the reference is identified by means of an example that illustrates S1 or part of it.

Thus, let us consider the possible ambiguity that the following example can give rise to, depending on whether the interpretation of the S2 as illustrates “a particular time”, or identifies the particular time *per se* as that *during the animal’s youth*:

240. FSS 536 Tort. Book-domain: social science
However, it may be that the norm here is "horse" not "filly" so that the frolicsomeness would be a characteristic found only at a particular time,
viz., √
that is to say, √
for example, √
during the animal's youth.

Replacement of original examples where the default reformulator is *for example-for instance* by *that is to say* is hard to assess. Even if *that is to say* seems to be acceptable in some of the examples analyzed, there is a loss of the nuance of illustration that can only be compensated by contextual factors or by the fact that the content of S2 is clearly an illustration of a previous S1 or some aspect of it, due to the clear instructions conveyed by these reformulators. Moreover, only four examples have been found where the use of *that is to say* could be equated to that of *for instance-for example*. Thus, in the following examples, the explanation or clarification of the previous S1 encompasses an example or illustration and thus both reformulators can be used equally well to link the discourse segments S1 and S2:

241. HGW 1024 Home design. Book-domain: arts
Unless you have ample funds to hand, it is of the utmost importance to think ahead when you are planning a kitchen. You might not be able to afford all the appliances you would like from the start, but if you think you will need them and will be able to afford them later you must leave the space and supply utilities for them.
That is to say, √
For example, √
if you want a dishwasher but know you won't be able to afford one for, say, three years, then make sure the plumbing is available and that there is a niche for a new fixture before you install your worktops and units.

242. ADW 857 Libyan politics: tribe and revolution. Book-domain: social science
 Fighting, stealing, homicide and rape were usually either individual initiatives or a group of friends on the rampage. But when the time came to compose a quarrel between people, it was the representatives of the groups to which they belonged who made the peace. Shaikhs were involved because individual members of their group were.
That is to say, √
For example, √
 if a person came to blows with another, the shaikhs negotiated peace to contain and settle the dispute, to protect the interests of members of their lineage who were not fighting.
243. CRW 642 Childcare: concerns and conflicts. Book-domain: social sciences
 It is of crucial importance that, while Social Services Departments, voluntary agencies, and professionals are adjusting their views and talking about issues relating to transracial adoption, the matter should be dealt with in a sensitive way.
That is to say, √
For example, √
 when there is a shift from traditional methods in the placement of black children then careful consideration should also be given to the implications that this will have for black children, the black community and adopters. It is certainly not the intention of the black community to undermine the good work being done by current transracial adopters and foster-parents, who have opened their homes to black children.
244. CE8 1285 A right approach to economics?. Book-domain: commerce
 The criticisms made are very similar to some of those made of the government's programme for privatising nationalised industries,
that is to say, √
for example, √
 the government may have a clear policy on transferring firms from the public sector to the private sector, but lacks a real industrial policy. Similarly the government may have a clear policy on transferring houses from the public sector to the private sector, but it lacks a real housing policy.

Notwithstanding, and although *that is to say* seems to be used with an illustrating nuance, this use seems is not very common and replacement of *for example-for instance* by *that is to say* occurs in very restricted environments. Whenever the DMs of RF *for example-instance* combine with *say* in the variant forms *say for example-for instance*,

that is to say is ruled out, as well as when combination with markers from other paradigms, such as *so* occurs.

Likewise, it has been observed that the reformulator *that is to say* is ruled out in environments where an enumeration of a set takes place, whereas *for example-for instance* can naturally occur in these environments. Examples 245-48 illustrate this claim:

245. CGT 1028 Behaviour problems in young children. Book-domain: applied science
In many cases this will be due to illness or a chronic physical problem. A child who is not feeling well will stop eating temporarily and rapidly lose weight over a short period but this will be regained equally quickly once the child has recovered. Certain chronic physical problems will have a long-term effect on the child's appetite and weight,
for example ✓
that is to say X
renal failure, malabsorption syndromes, metabolic disorders, and immunological problems.
246. HJ1 10666 Rapid ESRC-Rapid grand abstracts. Miscellanea-domain: social science
(2) an analysis of the relationship between inputs (funding, manpower) and outputs (eg publications, citations) and of the determinants of research performance; in particular, the research will examine the extent to which successful performance depends on the resources available as opposed to other factors
(for example, ✓
(that is to say, X
institutional environment, organizational structure, etc, and how these various factors interact.
247. CLP 932 The mind at work. Book-domain: applied science
As the individual gets older, he continues to acquire new skills for two reasons. Firstly, the passage of time provides more and more experience and this is inevitably reflected in the skill repertoire. Secondly, the ageing individual suffers a steady diminution of capacities,
for example ✓
that is to say X
the decrease in adaptability to lower lighting levels and the decrease in physical stamina. Skills develop and change to compensate partially for the changing capacities.

248. AM7 617 Education management for the 1990s. Book-domain: commerce
 A practical framework for school planning
 The nature of the planning process at the various levels needs to be different. Strategic planning tasks such as the setting of aims may be seen as essentially a people/politics-rich area where sophisticated techniques are not appropriate. At the tactical level there are planning techniques and technologies which may prove valuable,
for example √
that is to say X
 the use of clash tables and computerised timetable systems.

Thus, *that is to say* cannot be said to stand in a position of hypernymy with regard to these two reformulators. At most, it can be argued that both reformulators share some environments of use, whenever the reformulation entails or affects the whole S1 and provides an illustration of the claim made in it in order to explain or clarify the previous S1. Their uses are thus contingently substitutable.

C) THAT IS TO SAY and markers of Rectification

That is to say has been reported to function in environments of Rectification and Fine-tuning of the semantic content of the previous S1 or an utterance constituent of it. However, it should be noted that the reformulators that fall within the group of Rectification convey a very specific instruction, namely, that some aspect of the previously stated S1 is being recharacterized and rectified. Thus, in these occurrences where *that is to say* can replace these reformulators, it is the context which aids the interpretation of *that is to say* as introducing a new formulation which is a rectification and improvement on the content of S1, and that is preferable to the previously-stated S1. Thus, replacement by *that is to say* is more prone to occur with the reformulators from this sub-class whose semantics are less transparent or more neutral in the instructions conveyed, that is to say, with *or rather*, which merely indicates a correction and slight preference for the second formulation. In the cases of *(or) more precisely-(or)*

more accurately, replacement by *that is to say* becomes more difficult to assess since the instructions these markers convey are strongly biased towards an improvement on the content in S1. As was pointed out above, contextual factors are crucial in order to convey the nuance of a rectification and fine-tuning of the meaning in S1.

Replacement of *(or) better still-yet* by *that is to say*, is not possible since the use of *that is to say* does not convey the nuance of a strong preference for the newly reformulated S2 as a better option than the one in S1. Their environments of use stand thus in a position of total exclusiveness. Moreover, the prohibition against replacement of these markers of rectification and improvement by *that is to say* also lies in the fact that when we use *that is to say* there is only a mere explanation or clarification of the previous S1, whereas when we use *(or) better still-yet* the speaker is going one step further in the transmission of information, s/he is providing a better alternative to the one previously offered.

Let us consider the following example, where an utterance constituent is being reformulated, rectified and replaced by a better option, and where *that is to say* is unable to function:

249. ABS 3342 Esquire. Periodical-domain: art
But for a sudden, necessary purchase, it is worth scouring the charity shops at any season. For a tenner, I snapped up a dinner-jacket for an office party, and gave it back afterwards. An everyday grey suit cost me twelve pounds. Does the thrifty buyer never slip into anything new? Certainly. He haunts street markets.
That is to say, X
Better still, √
off-street markets in open-plan warehouses, which have a roof, if not much else.

If the reformulator *that is to say* were to be used in this example, the instruction conveyed would be that when the speaker says “street markets” s/he means off-street markets. Even if *that is to say* anticipates a correction of the first formulation, under no

circumstances does this reformulator convey the nuance of preference towards the second formulation.

Likewise, in example 250 below, the use of *better still* conveys a clear preference towards the second formulation that is presented as a better alternative than the first one. The use of *that is to say* would fail to convey such a nuance or rectification and preference, despite producing a grammatically correct sentence. If *that is to say* were to be used in this sequence, the reformulation it introduces would merely explain or paraphrase what the speaker means by the S1:

250. C85 3100 The first of midnight. Book-domain: imaginative
It was the first time she had been into the city since that awful night of the cockfight back in February. She wished there was a window in front, so she could see Midnight sitting up on the driver's seat beside Hawkins.

Better still ✓

That is to say, X

have him inside. Perhaps then she'd learn how he felt. They'd exchanged one brief glance only since she'd run from the stable that morning. The glance had told her nothing except that he had retreated into himself again. She'd acted like a silly hen. All fussy and bothered! But if she'd stayed?

Thus, the environments of use of *that is to say* and (*or*) *better still-yet* stand in a position of mutual exclusiveness. The following example illustrates how the environments of (*or*) *better still-yet* are exclusive, inasmuch as replacement by *that is to say* would render a totally different interpretation of the sequence:

251. C97 374 Practical Fishkeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure
Corydoras species thrive when maintained in shoals

better still ✓

that is to say, X

in species groups-although various species can be kept together as one main shoal. Species shoals ensure males and females develop together making spawning more feasible at a future date. Some species can be extremely difficult to spawn-but keeping large species groups together until they are sexually mature can help.

Thus, two different interpretations of the sequence S1.DM of RF. S2 are obtained, depending on whether *that is to say* or *better still* are used to link the discourse segments. If *that is to say* links the S1 and S2, the hearer is to interpret that the utterance constituent “shoals” is being recharacterized and explained or defined as “species groups”. Notwithstanding, with *better still*, the speaker is indicating that better than in shoals, Corydoras thrive in species groups. When the reformulator occurs without the disjunctive *or*, the sense of a better alternative being presented to that outlined in S1 is ruled out. Cases of sequences linked by *better still-yet* sometimes indicate an explicit rejection of the first formulation and its replacement by a better second one. These cases are even more explicit when the reformulator is accompanied by “no”, which clearly points to a change in the orientation of the information being transmitted. The following example illustrates this claim, where the speaker rectifies after having second thoughts and thus rejects the first formulation of “she would invite him in” and replaces it by a better one “she would turn up in the street, having...”. In such cases, replacement by *that is to say* is clearly impossible:

252. H7F 2226 Walking on glass. Book-domain: imaginative
He pressed and pressed. He stood back in the street, the rain stinging his eyes, wetting him to the skin, getting in his mouth and eyes; warm rain, huge hard drops, slicking and sticking the clothes to his body; erotic, making his heart beat faster in a sudden, squally sexual fantasy; she would invite him in... **no,**
better yet ✓
that is to say, X
she would turn up in the street, having been out, also wet to the skin, she would look at him... they would go in... Nothing. He walked all the way to Upper Street, near the bus-stops, before he found a free phonebox.

As far as the substitutability of *or more precisely-or more accurately* by *that is to say* is concerned, there are some environments where replacement seems to be possible, whereas in others interchangeability with *that is to say* is totally ruled out. Even if

replacement is possible, *that is to say* only conveys a sense of rectification or correction of the first formulation. With *(or) more precisely-more accurately*, besides the sense of correction, a higher degree of exactitude in the information conveyed is also explicitly transmitted.

In 253, the fact that the content of S2 gains in exactitude is patently obvious and thus replacement by *that is to say* is not acceptable. The use of *(or) more accurately-precisely* conveys more explicitly a sense of fine-tuning of the message in S1:

253. AE7 530 The problems of biology. Book-domain: natural science.
This has not led us to adopt the nominalist alternative. Instead, we hold that species are real things, but that they do not have essences. This position, which would have seemed contradictory to both Buffon and Linnaeus, requires some explanation. A species is a population of interbreeding individuals;
more precisely-more accurately, ✓
that is to say, X
because we do not want to regard the blue tits on the Isle of Wight as belonging to a different species to those on the mainland, a species is a group of actually or potentially interbreeding populations.

In 254 below, the replacement by *that is to say* is possible, inasmuch as this reformulator indicates or conveys a sense of correction or rectification of what is being transmitted; however, the nuance of a higher degree of precision in the S2 is less explicit than with the use of the other two reformulators of rectification:

254. ANU 1507 The Economist Newspaper Ltd. Periodical-domain: commerce
It will also, eventually, accumulate a mass of fine detail: on how many people have flush-toilets, for instance. A new and controversial question will find out how many couples of the same sex are partners
(-or, more accurately- ✓
(-or more precisely- ✓
(-that is to say- ✓
how many are prepared to report the fact). The information will become known a bit faster than it used to be. The technology used by the bureau has improved. Bar-code-reading “wands” will check in the questionnaires as they arrive at various offices. The answers-read from microfilm by an optical scanner-can now be processed in district offices.

Likewise, in 255 the use of *that is to say* conveys a sense of rectification where the first discourse segment “too much work” is rectified and fine-tuned into “too much time spent by too many people on work”. Along the same lines, 256 also allows *that is to say*, since the newly discourse segment clearly conveys a more precise or accurate piece of information:

255. EF4 613 The third way: the promise of independent democracy. Book-domain: commerce
If so, the point for attention is not alienation at all. It is too much work:
or, more precisely-more accurately, √
that is to say, √
too much time spent by too many people on work of a kind which contributes insufficiently to their fulfilment and which may tend to diminish their capacity for fulfilling themselves, too much
256. ED6 2010 Gramophone. Book-domain: arts
C.H. MOZART. EARLY STRING QUARTETS
These 13 quartets were composed between 1770 and 1773,
or more precisely-or more accurately, √
that is to say √
in 1770 in the case of the G major Quartet which is the earliest, and between 1772-3 for the others. Mozart, then between 14 and 17, was still very much under his father's thumb and it was to be another eight years before he broke free from Salzburg, settled in Vienna and married Constanze Weber.
257. AE7 1687 The problems of biology. Book-domain: natural science
Today we are beginning to acquire an abstract knowledge of development, in terms of gradients and pre-patterns and gene-switching. But although we may be confident that a gradient exists, and influences subsequent development, we⁴ usually have no idea what it is a gradient of, and rather little idea of how genes are actually switched on and off.
More precisely/more accurately, √
That is to say, √
lots of people have ideas, but they do not all agree.

In contrast, replacement is ruled out in the following cases where the semantic contents of S1 and S2 are in opposition or where, even though S2 entails a higher

⁴ Notice this “we” is including the speaker/writer and thus belongs to the level of beliefs.

degree of exactitude, the topics are not as related. Thus, in 258-63 replacement by *that is to say* is not possible:

258. A87 134 The Guardian Electronic edition of 1989-11-11. Foreign pages.
 In this one episode we find interconnections with race, class, colonialism, and (cultural) imperialism, and in ironic, domestic, tragically intricate ways: witness Gide finally capitulating to the class, racial, and cultural prejudices of his own culture, as voiced through his mother, who in turn speaks through her servant. Discrimination descends through a hierarchy of the subordinate.
Or, more accurately-precisely ✓
That is to say X
 hierarchies, including those of class, race, and gender, and within each of which each subject is situated differently.
259. ABF 660 The Economist Newspaper Ltd. Periodical-domain: commerce
 Mitigating the causes of the crisis has to continue, of course, but the dominant issue may turn out to be crisis management within the triple-P of problems caused by poverty, pollution and population. The philosophy
or, more accurately/more precisely, ✓
that is to say, X
 the frame of thinking which will guide governments and international institutions in the 1990s and beyond is still in its formative stages.
260. ARC 504 A generation of schooling. Book-domain: social affairs
 After examining the literature on the effects of citizen participation on community work intervention, the paper puts forward an operative model for both researchers and practitioners to measure how the participation of clients can make community work more effective and productive. The underlying assumption
(or, more precisely-or more accurately ✓
(that is to say X
 hypothesis) of this paper is that client participation makes for a better social work intervention, and thus the higher the degree of client participation the more effective the intervention will be (Kurzman and Solomon, 1970; Freedberg, 1989; York, 1989). In Bernstein's words: we find that imposing, telling or giving orders do not work well.
261. CGF 859 Feminism and linguistic theory. Book-domain: art
 Feminists should question, for instance, the way Western thought has downgraded the body relative to the mind, the emotions relative to reason.(We will look at this point again in Chapter 8.) What has any of this to do with language,
more precisely-more accurately ✓
that is to say X
 with the 'grammar' of this chapter's title? On a fairly simple level, it is obvious that the masculine/feminine opposition pervades the English language and its

conceptual metaphorical structure. The experiment with word pairs demonstrates that clearly enough.

262. CRB 120 The Economist, The Economist Newspaper. Periodical-domain: commerce
The politics of the Middle East, in other words, is not like the politics of other places. The region's natural inclination, like that of a bicycle, is to be unstable. And the only way to prevent it from collapsing is to keep moving forward. At this point in this kind of argument it is customary to wonder what the West
–more precisely-more accurately– ✓
–that is to say– X
the United States-has done wrong in the Middle East, and how it could bring improvements faster. Think again: by and large, America has made remarkably few mistakes in the region since the end of the Gulf war.
263. HGX 472 Citation FLUORESCENCE. Book-domain: applied science
When a leaf is exposed to light and absorbs energy it has been observed that after a short delay (on the millisecond scale) up to 3% of the absorbed energy is re-emitted. This is the fluorescence.
More precisely/more accurately, ✓
That is to say, X
there are divers kinds of fluorescence, prompt/delayed.

In contrast, replacement of *or rather* by *that is to say* seems possible in some environments of use, and restricted in others. It seems that when the reformulation entails the whole previous S1, *or rather* can be replaced more easily by *that is to say*, among other things because the reformulation of a whole previous S1 lends itself well to paraphrasing the content of S1. Let us consider the following examples, where *or rather* seems to introduce a newly reformulated segment that paraphrases the content of S1 to some extent:

264. CS2 598 The rational foundations of ethics. Book-domain: belief and thought
Yet I am puzzled as to whether that would mean that we should leave our radios on, so long as the music coming from them is beautiful, in order that our rooms be filled with beauty even in our absence. Although he holds that value can be realized in the absence of consciousness, Moore does not believe that situations not involving consciousness can be very good.
Or rather, ✓
Or more precisely-accurately, ✓
That is to say, ✓

he holds that all the great goods of which we know involve consciousness; there may conceivably be others of which we are ignorant. Certainly personal affection and the admiring contemplation of beautiful objects involve consciousness, although it would be a mistake to think that there is no more to their value than comes simply from the kind of consciousness involved.

265. EDJ 2714 Taking it over. Book-domain: imaginative
The husband is always the first to suspect and the last to know. Whatever happens... whatever happens, I'm the one that's going to get hurt. By the way, would you like a cigarette? Gillian The other two, they each want one thing, for me to be with them. I want two things.

Or rather, ✓

Or more precisely, ✓

That is to say, ✓

I want different things at different times. God, yesterday I looked at Oliver and I had this strange thought. I want to wash your hair. Just like that. I suddenly got embarrassed. His hair wasn't dirty-it was all clean and flyaway in fact. It's wonderfully black, Oliver's hair

Notwithstanding, when the more precise rendering concerns utterance constituents, *that is to say* seems to be totally excluded from the environments of *or rather*:

Examples 266-268 below are occurrences where substitutability by *that is to say* is not acceptable. Rectification in these occurrences entails utterance constituents that are slightly rectified:

266. ASS 2431 The Wimbledon poisoner. Book-domain: imaginative
Her head, which was rotating at a different speed and a contrary motion to her brushing arm, reminded him of a duck in a shooting gallery. It had a difficult-to-hit quality about it, an almost larkish imperviousness to attempting to interfere with it. Still flexing his fingers, he started to dig them into the base of her neck

–or rather– ✓

–or more precisely-accurately– ✓

–that is to say– X

in the area where her neck might be assumed to begin. He found his hands full of dry, papery skin which, as he worked his way closer to her windpipe, came up and away like a curtain of strudel dough.

267. CKP 952 Growing old in the twentieth century. Book-domain: social science
Figure 4.1 shows the distribution of employment statuses at two points in time. If all the positions occupied in the intervening three years were included, the picture would, of course, be a great deal more complicated. The figure also shows that there were important differences in post-redundancy employment status among older workers based on age,

or rather, √
or more accurately-precisely, √
that is to say, ?
on their proximity to state-pension age.

268. FBN 579 Practical Fishkeeping. Book-domain: leisure
It may therefore come as a surprise to learn that there are some species which are not only not “rock-dependent”, but are also relatively peaceful, even when breeding. This group of species lives near rocks, but over a sandy substrate, and all its members utilise the empty shells of the snail *Lanistes nyassanus* as shelter to some extent.

More accurately, √
That is to say, X
the fry and adolescents of all the species do-but some adults are actually too large.

D) THAT IS TO SAY and markers of Conclusion

The reformulator *that is to say* has been reported to take on the nuance of conclusion-consequence in some of the occurrences found within the BNC. Thus, it could be said that it also shares some of its environments of use with some DMs from the Implicative or Inferential group (cf. Fraser 2002). Let us consider the following examples where, the reformulator *that is to say* seems to be acceptable in environments proper to the DMs, *thus* and *in conclusion-to conclude*:

269. A0W 558 Fitness with weights. Book-domain: leisure
Pectoral decks emphasise the outer part of the pecs near the insertion into the humerus (upper arm). They also relieve stress on the elbows. If women fully develop the lower pec muscles, the result is that the bust is pushed out by large underlying muscles, thus seeming larger. Thus upper pec work and cable work enhances the cleavage.

To conclude, √
That is to say, √
it has to be said that balance is the most important factor in chest development. The pecs are such a dominant muscle group visually that it is very difficult to hide faults in development.

270. B17 222 Crime. Book-domain: social science
While some genetic influence cannot be ruled out, just what is inherited remains very unclear. Psychological theories These theories share certain similarities with biological explanations. They stress the link between criminal behaviour

and specific personality traits or characteristics. Psychological theories, however, see these characteristics as a result of unusual or abnormal experiences, rather than as inherited.

Thus, √

That is to say, √

as with biological theories, crime is seen as pathological (a disease), as something to be looked at from the medical point of view.

271. A16 73 Do it Yourself Magazine. Periodical-domain: leisure
There is a taste of the difficulties ahead in the ordering of priorities in the advanced industrial countries: first place goes to economic growth and second place to environmental security. Unless there is growth, it is argued, the rich will not be able to provide the money and technological resources needed to counter climate change globally.

Thus, √

That is to say, √

the ozone layer can be saved only if there are substitutes for CFCs which enable manufacturers to continue making refrigerators. The fashionable creed of sustainable development panders to that sort of thinking. It tells electorates that there can be continual growth and no one need worry that the cost of environmental security will hit spending power or reduce standards of living.

272. AL8 219 Adult education and social purpose. Book-domain: world affairs
Further, whatever subjects were chosen, it was the tutor who was the critically important factor in success or failure. For successful work in rural areas, the tutor had to be sensitive to, and well-informed about, both the locality and its people so that a genuine rapport emerged as a basis for mutual confidence and support.

Thus, √

That is to say, √

for Shearman, the tutor had pastoral as well as pedagogic responsibilities in villages. The conference was a successful occasion for the WEA and particularly so for Shearman and for the continuation of his work in Bedfordshire. In 1930, a conference in Bedford reviewed the progress of the District's rural scheme.

5.1.3.2. IN OTHER WORDS and reformulators from other groups

In this section I will first examine the relationship between the lexical form *in other words* and a sub-set of its semantic counterparts signaling semantic simplicity and complexity; and second, the relationship between in other words and markers from different sub-groups, such as those of Rectification, Identification, Illustration, Summary and Conclusion/Consequence.

A) IN OTHER WORDS and IN PLAIN-IN MORE TECHNICAL TERMS

In other words stands out as the hypernym of a sub-class of semantic counterparts that can be replaced by this default reformulator. The reformulators *in plain terms*, *in simpler words*, *to put it more simply*, and *in more technical terms* and *technically speaking* are thus the hyponyms of this form, which implies that they can be replaced by it in each and all of their environments of use. The relationship holding between the reformulators *in plain terms*, *in simpler words*, *to put it more simply*, on the one hand, and *in more technical terms* and *technically speaking*, on the other hand, is that of mutual exclusiveness, since they cannot be replaced by one another in that their semantics go in opposing directions, towards the simplification of the message in the case of the first sub-class, and towards complexity of the message in the rest of the forms. Replacement of these markers by *in other words* is perfectly possible, as was the case with *that is to say*, provided that the semantic content of the S1 and S2 signal the reformulation towards semantic simplicity or complexity. The following examples, presented above, are repeated again to corroborate this claim:

273. BN5 928 Rosemary Conley's hip and thigh diet. Book-domain: leisure.
A friend of mine realized how much cellulite she had when her little girl spotted her sitting on the loo, bare flesh displayed. "Why have you got holes in your leg, Mummy?" she enquired and that, I am afraid to say, is what cellulite looks like. An ugly area of fat which is very uneven and very unattractive.
In more technical terms ✓
In simpler terms X
In other words, ✓
cellulite is a modified form of fat tissue to be found just below the surface of the skin. It all begins with the stagnation of the blood in capillaries (tiny blood vessels), and this leads to a flow of blood fluids (plasma) through the capillary walls which separate fat-storing cells known as adipose cells.
274. H9M 901 Rational expectations in macroeconomics. Book-domain: commerce.
But it is a common and easily observed fact that measures of aggregate output in any economy tend to be positively serially correlated; that is, a higher than

average value for aggregate output in any period is more often than not followed by a higher than average value next period and, similarly, a low value in any period is more likely to be followed by another low one than by a high one.

To put it more simply, ✓

In more technical terms, X

In other words, ✓

B) IN OTHER WORDS and markers of Rectification

In other words is totally excluded from the environments of rectification and improvement proper to DMs such as *(or) better said and (or) better yet-still*, as was the case for its counterpart *that is to say*. Likewise, its use has been excluded from environments of rectification and fine-tuning of the previous S1 or some utterance constituent of it.

C) IN OTHER WORDS and markers of Identification and Illustration

The results obtained from observing the occurrences of *in other words* clearly indicate that it can only be used in very specific environments of Identification, contrary to what happens with its counterpart, *that is to say*. *In other words* is ruled out from environments of Identification when the reformulation entails an utterance constituent of S1 that is an indefinite or definite noun phrase, or a definite one that combines with a numerical expression. The following examples below help corroborate this claim. As can be observed, in these examples either *viz.* or *namely* are the default reformulators and can be substituted by *that is to say*, whereas *in other words* is hard to assess in these environments. The use of *in other words* would make the hearer or reader expect “different words” from the previous S1, whereas in these environments reference is assigned to them:

275. K56 513 The Scotsman: Applied Science pages
This amazing £250,000 Japanese import is apparently so sophisticated that it is beyond its capability to frank more than one all-purpose hybrid place of origin on its postmark,
viz. √
that is to say √
in other words, ?
“Cumbria” occupying the whole upper half of the disc, with “Dumfries & Galloway” (nearly three times the length) squeezed into the lower half.
276. H46 516 Bookseller. Periodical-domain: Arts
Publishers grow thick skins against negative reviewing, but I remain puzzled at the volume of abuse directed at this particular book, by an author who has spent many years working on his subject, opening up new areas of research, and who has arguably contributed more in recent years (
viz. √
that is to say √
in other words X
Orwell: The War Broadcasts , Orwell: The War Commentaries and The Larger Evils) to the study of Orwell's work than any other scholar.
277. AA1 693 The Guardian electronic edition 1989-12-13: foreign news pages. Periodical-domain: world affairs
He wrote immediately to the SMG, cutting off all contact: “I am not interested in agencies who politic and posture for no other reason than to promote themselves... secondly, as I am not presently able to place any trust in you, I must insist that any further matters you wish to raise are channelled through to a suitable agency,
viz. √
that is to say √
in other words X
the local council or HCRC.”
278. AMN 727 Foxton: locks and barge life. Miscellanea-domain: world affairs
The total lift or rise from the Lower to the Upper Pond is 75 feet 2 inches. Three firms of Mechanical Engineers have been asked to tender for the machinery and steelwork under conditions embodied in a Specification of Terms, a copy of which is hereto appended. The specifications and tenders of the three firms
viz.: √
that is to say: √
in other words: X
-Messrs. Hunter & English of Bow £12,390 Messrs. Glover and Sons of Warwick £9,942 Messrs J. & H. Gwynne of Hammersmith £14,130 allow for Exps. 500£14,630are hereto attached.

279. CBX 2499 Accountancy. Periodical-domain: commerce
It is not by accident that the countries within the ERM-
viz. √
that is to say √
in other words, X
Spain and Ireland-and countries shadowing the system-such as Sweden and Norway-believe that the price of higher than warranted interest rates, from their domestic point of view, is nevertheless worth paying, in return for the longer-term stability that the ERM will provide.
280. FCA 161 The weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain: social science
On the same page of the report Parker L.J. is quoted as saying: "Firstly, on the basis of the passage from Lord Bridge's speech in *Cocks v. Thanet District Council*, with which the other four members of the Judicial Committee agreed, it is clearly the case that, having made their decision on 24 June 1983
[viz. √
[that is to say √
[in other words X
that she was homeless, in priority need, and not intentionally homeless] the council came under a statutory duty to secure that accommodation became available.

Likewise, *in other words* is ruled out from environments where the reference assignment is a personal one and thus the function is that of appellation, as in the example below:

281. ART 1947 The Smiths. Book-domain: arts.
This is interesting because Morrissey was referring back to his days spent in hopeless fandom when he practically worshipped everything that moved within the media. What's more, he obviously still elevated those early influences above and beyond their deserved stature. In the north west, it was astonishing to see this superstar,
namely √
viz. √
that is to say √
in other words X
Morrissey, worshipping this formerly dreadful local TV presenter.

The reformulator *in other words* is totally excluded from environments of Illustration where its counterpart *that is to say* is possible, a fact that helps corroborate its status of hypernymy with regards to *in other words*.

D) IN OTHER WORDS and markers of Conclusion

In the first part of the analysis I have illustrated the use of *in other words* in environments of introduction of conclusions-consequences. The examples below show that *in other words* can replace other markers such as *in conclusion* and is thus used with a conclusory sense. Although the use of *in other words* does not explicitly convey that a conclusion is to be drawn, contextual information may compensate for it and thus render the sequence grammatically correct:

282. ACL 786 Through the devil's gateway. Book-domain: belief and thought
As sisters and daughters women are treated with respect and often indulgence but also as temporary guests. A wife, although an integral member of her husband's family, is often treated badly and with suspicion, especially while she is young. A mother is, on the other hand, held in great esteem, and even in awe.
In other words, √
In conclusion, √
one may say that in the ritual life of the traditional Hindu woman one can see the ambivalence of the traditional attitude of Hindu society towards its women and their sexuality.
283. AS6 656 Tackling the inner cities. Book-domain: social sciences
Furthermore, the BCS points out (ibid.) that the gap between the trend in recorded burglaries and victimization is much lower in recent years: there has been an appreciable increase in burglary victimization between 1981 and 1983 of 9 per cent, while recorded burglaries increased by 24 per cent. If this gap continues to narrow then the recorded trend of burglaries may be more confidently interpreted as showing the direction of crime.
In conclusion, √
In other words, √
it seems that we cannot accept without question the dramatic increase in recorded crime as corresponding to a real increase in victimization of the same proportions. But it would be wishful thinking to explain away all, or even most, of the increase as an artefact of recording changes.

284. ASH 974 Today's Horse. Periodical-domain: leisure
 It is not known why this occurs in a few animals after strangles infection. It may be an allergic reaction or residual bacteria remaining in the body and affecting the circulation. Purpura haemorrhagica is difficult to treat, and prolonged antibiotics and cortisone therapy is used.
In conclusion, √
In other words, √
 always treat any horse which develops a sudden temperature rise and respiratory signs as potentially infectious and always isolate any cases. Spread of the disease can already have occurred by the time the characteristic abscesses develop. Immediately contact your own veterinary surgeon and follow his/her advice carefully.
285. CHF 1620 The use of orthographic and lexical information for handwriting recognition. Miscellanea-domain: applied science
 Again this needs further evaluation, but a useful lexical database structure has been established. A truly interactive system (after Rumelhart and McClelland's parallel distributed processing model of word perception) could use higher level information to reject unsuitable candidate words. Other candidates could also be suggested which may be better than those found simply from the pattern recognition and lexical check.
In conclusion, √
In other words, √
 it seems that it is in fact possible to get higher levels of analysis to contribute to recognition. They can help to identify errors, and to solve some of these errors with additional help from extra physical information from pattern level.

5.1.3.3. Reformulators of Identification

After the analysis of the pragmatic functions of the two reformulators of Identification under scrutiny, *namely* and *viz.*, it should be noted that there is at least one environment of use where replacement between them is not feasible.

Despite the fact that *namely* has also been deemed to bring about an identification of some utterance constituent of S1 by means of an illustration, observance of the way they behave in naturally occurring language, along with corroboration by native informants, has led me to conclude that the type of illustration they effect is slightly different, and thus, these two reformulator cannot be considered synonymous *per se*.

The reformulator *viz.* displays the exclusive function of drawing the hearer's

attention to the upcoming reformulated S2, when this S2 is presented as an illustration of some aspect of S1. Thus, the use of *viz.* prompts the hearer or listener to draw his/her attention to “look at” the following discourse segment, in which there is a single illustration of the claim stated in S1. In the examples presented in B3 above and repeated here as 286-7, *viz.*, is used with a sense of illustration, and is interchangeable with *for example*. Notwithstanding, its replacement by *namely* does not seem to be possible, since the S2 presents a single instance from a wide possible range of instances in order to assign reference:

286. AMY 823 Henly Golf Club-the first 80 years. Miscellanea-domain: world affairs
The usual high-spirited Artisans' Dinner was held with Bill as usual leading the singing with “Burlington Bertie”. His golfing prowess earned him a series of lengthy golfing tuition articles in the Standard. They read very well,
viz. √
namely: X
for example: √
–“PITCH AND RUN. This is a real St Andrew's stroke, played with the right hand-firm grip with the fingers of the same hand. The ball should be played nearer the right foot than in other shots.
287. E9U 426 The East Anglian. Periodical-domain: world affairs
The Guinness book of theatre quotes, which costs £7.99, is compiled by Michele Brown who readily agrees that actors and authors are every bit as cruel about actors as critics,
viz. √
namely X
for example √
Richard Burton talking about his wife Liz Taylor: “She has a double chin, her legs are too short and she has a pot belly.”

In contrast, *namely*, when used with a sense of Illustration, normally illustrates or assigns reference to the previous S1 with more than one example, as observed in the examples presented in section B3 above for the analysis of the pragmatic functions of *namely*. Thus, *viz.* and *namely* are almost synonymous in most of their uses, but have an exclusive use when it comes to the identification by means of an Illustration. It seems

that *namely* clearly indicates that more than one aspect is going to be illustrated in order to assign reference to the S1. However, *viz.* seems to be possible in these environments of use, which would make this reformulator stand in a position of hypernymy with regard to *namely*, as illustrate example 288 below:

288. CMN 1146 Content of social explanation. Book-domain: belief and thought
 We might ask, first of all, “Why do the particular people who are major capitalists,
namely, √
viz. √
for example √
 John D. Rockefeller III, David Lindsay, Walter Wriston, and others, typically identify the bourgeois and national interests?”. And the answer to this may be given in terms of the individual histories of these men.

5.1.3.4. Reformulators of Identification and Illustration

In this section I ascertain the relations between markers from the sub-groups of Illustration and Identification. The functions of the reformulators from each group stand in a relation of mutual exclusiveness in most of their environments, although their use seems to converge when it comes to the function of Illustration.

In the case of reformulators from the group of Identification, *namely* and *viz.*, the recharacterization effected on the message of S1 brings about a newly reformulated S2 and one that is much more specific than the previous S1. Thus, their use brings about a higher degree of specificity in that reference or identity is assigned to some utterance constituent of S1.

On the contrary, in the case of *for example-instance*, an aspect of the message in S1 is simply further illustrated. Thus, the newly reformulated S2 does not necessarily gain in specificity. Let us consider the following sentences:

289. Pete wanted to go out with several girls in his class, **for example**, Mary, Joanna and Rita.

290. Pete wanted to go out with two girls in his class, **namely** Mary and Joanna.

A priori no relationship were thought to exist between the DMs from each group. However, the analysis of the corpus provides me with a few examples where the assignment of reference or identity is carried out through the use of an illustration or example. Let us consider the following examples, whose default reformulator is either *viz.* or *namely*, but where *for example* is also possible due to the fact that the identification of the S1 can generally be arrived at by means of an illustration:

291. E9U 426 The East Anglian. Periodical-domain: world affairs
The Guinness book of theatre quotes, which costs £7.99, is compiled by Michele Brown who readily agrees that actors and authors are every bit as cruel about actors as critics,
viz. √
for example √
Richard Burton talking about his wife Liz Taylor: “She has a double chin, her legs are too short and she has a pot belly.”
292. ED4 3367 Good Houskeeping. Book-domain: social affairs
It seems general practice to address a widow by her own Christian name and not her late husband's-
viz. √
for example √
Mrs Joan Smith, not Mrs Ronald Smith.
293. CMN 1146 Content of social explanation. Book-domain: belief and thought
We might ask, first of all, “Why do the particular people who are major capitalists,
namely. √
for example, √
John D. Rockefeller III, David Lindsay, Walter Wriston, and others, typically identify the bourgeois and national interests?”. And the answer to this may be given in terms of the individual histories of these men.

Thus, in 291 a very general claim is presented “that actors and authors are every bit as cruel about actors as critics” is illustrated with the S2. The default reformulator here is *viz.*; however, informants have agreed on the suitability of both *for example* and *viz.*

Likewise in 292, the general claim is that “it seems general practice to address a widow by her own Christian name and not her late husband’s” and this claim is assigned a reference, among a wide range of possible ones, by means of an illustration. The same occurs in 293, where the use of *namely* presents a list of several people that qualify as capitalists and, where replacement by *for example* seems to be acceptable.

The co-occurrence of both reformulators in the examples mentioned above can be explained if we consider that *viz.* and *namely* cannot only assign reference to some constituent of S1, but can also serve as an indication that directs the reader or listener’s attention to an S2 that illustrates the claim presented in the previous S1 with one, or more than one example. This other environment of use would justify the existence of an area where both reformulators are possible, namely, in environments where the identification is not specific, but can refer to one or more among a wide range of existing possibilities.

Despite these cases, other uses of *namely* and *viz.*, on the one hand, and *for example-instance* on the other hand, normally stand in a relation of mutual exclusiveness as can be corroborated in the following examples where replacement is not possible. It should also be noted that *viz.*, and *namely* are excluded when *for example-instance* combine with imperative forms, or with the Inferential marker *so*, as in example 287 and 288 below:

294. A01 156 ACET AIDS leaflets. Miscellanea-domain: social science
 For example, if the soldier cells are weakened, the chest can be infected. It gets harder to breathe-and you may die. Your gut can get infected, so you can't absorb the goodness in your food. You lose weight, you feel very weak, and pass motions up to 10 times a day. This person with the HIV infection has developed a sore mouth. Cancers may grow.

For example, √

Viz., X

Namely, X

there is a skin cancer called Kaposi's sarcoma. If you have AIDS, a germ can destroy your eyesight. You can also find it hard to remember things, because germs are multiplying in your brain. People with AIDS are often well for long periods between times of illness.

295. A04 1001 Art criticism: a user's guide. Book-domain: arts
The corollary is that some catalogue information has only a limited life, since it may in its turn be overtaken by new research. In the introduction or other essays there may be some writing which will not date, such as art criticism which documents the personal experience of the writer. Take,
for example, ✓
namely, X
viz., X
this record of a personal response to Picasso's sculpture *The Man with a Sheep* by the critic Tim Hilton in the catalogue for Picasso's *Picassos*, in 1981: *The Man with a Sheep* is said to be humanitarian; that is far from one's experience in front of it, and the assertion is not much supported by the iconographical evidence. Is this a king who is the shepherd of his people?
296. A0C 716 Caterer. Hotel Keeper. Periodical-domain: social science
As Brown moves round the larders, the Psion Organiser presents him with a series of ingredient names, in a preset order. Each ingredient has to be counted and a quantity entered. This can be done by purchase unit, standard unit or a combination of the two.
So, for example ✓
So, namely X
So, viz., X
if wine is being checked, it can be counted by the case or by the bottle.

5.2. Rectification group

The lexical units that fall under this sub-class of EDMs of RF have been given the label of Discourse Markers of Rectification for the purpose of this dissertation. Their core meaning indicates that a recharacterization is carried out on the message of a previous S1, the rendition of which is a newly reformulated discourse segment that rectifies it. The rectification effected in the new S2 can take the form of:

- (i) a Neutral rectification
- (ii) a Rectification and Fine-tuning; or
- (iii) a Rectification and Improvement
on the previous message of the S1.

Thus, I have decided to distinguish three main sub-groups of reformulators under the general label of Rectification that correspond to the distinction sketched above. In this light, the reformulator *or rather* illustrates what I describe as neutral cases of rectification, whereas the reformulators *(or) more precisely*, *(or) more accurately*, *(or) more specifically*, and *(or) more exactly*, (*inter alia*) signal a rectification alongside a fine-tuning of the message of the S1. Finally, *(or) better still-yet* and *(or) better said* bring about a rectification and improvement on the message of S1. Therefore, the lexical units that form the group of Discourse Markers of Rectification can be placed along a continuum with varying degrees of intensity in the rectification effected on the S1, namely, from mere neutral rectification, rectification and fine-tuning, to rectification and improvement of the previous message. I will explain them in order in the ensuing sections.

5.2.1. Neutral Rectification: OR RATHER

5.2.1.1. Syntactic properties

Quirk et al. (1985) include the lexical form *or rather* under the group of Contrastive markers, since they maintain that a contrast holds between the words contained in S1 and S2. In this line, Portolés and Zorraquino (1999) also point out that reformulators such as “más bien”, a possible Spanish equivalent for the English *or rather*, is close to the contrastive group of DMs. However, as shown below, I have opted to distinguish between the use of *or rather* as a reformulator and that of *rather* as a contrastive DM.

The reformulator *or rather* is made up of the disjunctive form *or* along with the adverbial form *rather*. The disjunctive form *or* is an integral part of the reformulator, in opposition to its counterparts *(or) better still*, *(or) more precisely-accurately*, where its presence or absence is optional. The presence of the disjunctive *or* helps differentiate its

use as a reformulator from its use as a contrastive DM (cf. Fraser 2002) that signals that the S2 is affirmed in contrast with the S1, which is rejected as inapplicable. The S1 is often a negative or a conditional sentence, although this is not an absolute requirement. It is thus the presence of the form *or* which necessarily forces a reformulative reading for the discourse segment hosted by this lexical unit. Let us compare the following two pre-fabricated examples that illustrate this claim:

297. John didn't pick up the letter. **Rather**, he left it lying on the table.
298. I would love to spend a weekend with you all. **Or rather**, the whole summer.

In example 297, the contents of both discourse segments contrast and the reformulator *rather* could be replaced by *instead* or *on the contrary*. In contrast, example 298 illustrates a case of reformulation in which the idea of "spending a weekend" is recharacterized and further rectified to the extent that a new formulation is presented as a preferable alternative and more in accordance with the speaker's communicative intentions.

The presence of the adverbial form *rather* along with the disjunctive *or* presupposes the existence of a previous adjacent discourse segment S1, and, more specifically, it signals that a comparison is being carried out where the S2 is presented as a more preferable option than the one in S1. The comparison would take the form of "S2 rather than S1". The degree of preference towards one formulation or the other is made more explicit with the use of some reformulators from the group of rectification than with others. Thus, with the use of *(or) better still*, *(or) better yet*, or simply *better*, the speaker explicitly states a preference for the second formulation that is presented as a better alternative. With *or rather*, the degree of preference is veiled and although the S2 rectifies and improves the message in S1, it is merely presented as an alternative to it.

As far as its syntactic patterning is concerned, *or rather* does not combine with the paradigm markers from other groups, such as *and*, *but*, *so* or *then*. However, it has been deemed to combine with other markers from the same class of rectification, such as *(or) more accurately*, *to be precise*, as a variant form of *(or) more precisely*, and *on second thought*. It has been registered in initial position and, as was the case with *(or) better still*, it is excluded from medial and final positions.

As far as its syntactic patterning is concerned, *or rather* has been deemed to function in the declarative, and less pervasively in the interrogative and imperative mood, which indicates a preference of use in the content or propositional domain of use, while its use is more restricted in the speech-act and epistemic domains. *Or rather* has also been found in cases of monologic discourse although it might also be used in dialogic exchanges.

5.2.1.2. Pragmatic functions

With the reformulator *or rather*, a recharacterization of the message in S1 is carried out, the outcome being a newly reformulated S2 that rectifies the first formulation and presents an improved alternative to it. The improvement carried out normally concerns the semantic or propositional content of the whole previous message or some of its constituents.

After a filtering, a selection of 200 occurrences out of 784 (518)⁵, it has been corroborated that the rectification effected by *or rather* on the message of S1 can be carried out in one of the following ways:

- (i) Cases where the rectification entails a minimal change in the message contained in S1 to the point that both the messages of S1 and S2 resemble each other to a

⁵ The figure in parentheses indicates the number of texts from which the occurrences have been obtained.

great extent. Occurrences of this sort might entail minimal changes in the syntax of the S1, or in its semantic content.

(ii) Cases where the rectification brings about a greater degree of elaboration in the information transmitted and presents a much more precise and preferable way of stating S1.

(iii) Cases where the newly reformulated S2 is presented as an alternative to the S1 but its message contrasts or is totally irrelevant to that of S1. Sometimes, it is not the message in S1 but its presuppositions that are rectified by the S2.

Thus, examples 299-303 below illustrate cases of minimal rectification of the message of S1. Moreover, the rectification involves utterance constituents and is thus partial. In this light, in 299 an utterance constituent, “it is astonishing”, is rectified by “it would be astonishing”, with a slight change in the verb tense; in 300 below, “I was in luck” is made more precise “I was partly in luck”; while in 301 “another emotion” is replaced by “a set of emotions”, all of them presented as preferable alternatives. Likewise, 302 merely entails the rectification of the number of the utterance constituent, from “kidney” to its plural form “kidneys”, which indicates a minimal modification of the message, while in 303 the notion of “cooking” is replaced by a more adequate and technical term, “cuisine”. In all these cases, it should be noted that the reformulation is partial since it only affects an utterance constituent and not the whole S1.

Although an improvement has been effected on the message of S1, the semantic contents of S1 and S2 resemble one another greatly in these cases since the modifications have been slight. Thus, the S1 and S2 could be said to stand in a relation of paraphrastic reformulation with a slight nuance of rectification conveyed by the use of *or rather*:

299. CKR 196 Saint Anselm. Book-domain: belief and thought
This problem, however, did not arise: knowing nothing about the decree, he continued throughout Rufus's reign to consecrate bishops who had received investiture from the king. Of course, on any theory, the ceremony by which he

had been invested conformed to no canonical rules of election or investiture, and it is astonishing-**or rather**, it would be astonishing in anyone with even a rudimentary knowledge of Canon Law-that among all his other objections, Anselm never mentioned the defective procedure as a reason for refusing the office.

300. CDS 1061 On my way to the club. Book-domain: world affairs
I had had to wait seven years for Evans's pardon and another seven years for Meehan's, and, knowing the reluctance of the Home Office even to consider whether a mistake has been made, far less admit it, I had little hopes of any quick remedial action. But this time, and quite fortuitously, I was in luck-**or rather**, as will be seen, partly in luck.
301. CA5 2315- Living magically. Book-domain: belief and thought
Grief is another emotion-**or rather**, set of emotions-which often creates problems. Whenever we suffer a major loss in our lives-such as the death of a loved one, divorce, redundancy, miscarriage, children leaving home, or the end of a love affair-we need to go through a period of mourning.
302. B19 92 Fighting cancer: a personal story. Book-domain: belief and thought
"You've got something in that there stomach of mine". I hoped the radiologist would respond. Thankfully, he did. "There's something there..." "In my liver? My doctor thought it might be my liver". "Your kidney". "My kidney!" I had never before consciously thought about my kidney-**or rather** my kidneys-hardly realising that I had any.
303. APS 242 Postmodernims and contemporary fiction. Book-domain: imaginative
Though there is no real reason not to talk of "the new novel", the term nouveau roman has always been retained, perhaps for a certain alluring foreign frisson. Similarly, English has never chosen to find an equivalent term for avant-garde. There may in this adoption of French terms be some covert assumption that postmodernist writing, like cooking-**or rather** cuisine-is something best left to the French.

On some other occasions, the reformulator *or rather* has been ascertained to present a mere variation of the semantic content with regard to the previous S1; that is to say, the use of *or rather* paraphrases the content of S1 and presents it in other words. Thus, the speaker is paraphrasing the S1 and presenting an alternative that resembles the first one to a great extent. This is the case of example 304, where the utterance constituent "...into the base of her neck" is paraphrased or expressed in other words such as "in the area where her neck might be assumed to begin". Likewise, in 305, the notion of

“puberty” is defined or paraphrased in the second formulation as “the onset of menstruation”:

304. ASS 2431 The Wimbledon poisoner. Book-domain: imaginative
Her head, which was rotating at a different speed and a contrary motion to her brushing arm, reminded him of a duck in a shooting gallery. It had a difficult-to-hit quality about it, an almost larky imperviousness to attempting to interfere with it. Still flexing his fingers, he started to dig them into the base of her neck, **or rather**, in the area where her neck might be assumed to begin. He found his hands full of dry, papery skin which, as he worked his way closer to her windpipe, came up and away like a curtain of strudel dough.
305. CEE 390 The art of starvation. Book-domain: social science
And I therefore had some control-just enough to keep me going-over myself. For those first two years I was able to enjoy behaving childishly-a pleasure which I felt had been denied to me-and being relatively free from responsibility. In short, I could enjoy, rather belatedly, being a silly little girl. But puberty, **or rather** the onset of menstruation, changed all that.

In other examples, the rectification of the message of S1 involves a greater deal of modification of its content; the outcome being an improved, newly formulated S2. Accordingly, in 306 below, the utterance constituent of “age” is reformulated and made more precise: “their proximity to state pension age”. Notice that by presenting a much more precise S2, the speaker is also ruling out unintended assumptions derivable from S1:

306. CKP 952 Growing old in the twentieth century. Book-domain: social science
Figure 4.1 shows the distribution of employment statuses at two points in time. If all the positions occupied in the intervening three years were included, the picture would, of course, be a great deal more complicated. The figure also shows that there were important differences in post-redundancy employment status among older workers based on age, **or rather**, on their proximity to state-pension age.

Likewise, in 307, the speaker rectifies the utterance constituent “all you are trying to do”, where the active subject is “you” by a more impersonal one, “the company you are representing”, but preferable as more accurate in the information conveyed:

307. BNH 712 The complete guide to food allergy and intolerance. Book-domain: social science

I have to say that while I am quite sure that “Summer's Eve” is a perfectly suitable wash for people with sensitive skins and that a no-talcum powder has a lot going for it, I can't possibly support the selling of this product as necessary for “intimate” care. No woman needs this sort of product; plain water is more than enough and all you are trying to do-**or rather** the company you are representing-is create a market where none exists.

In 308, the speaker is correcting the utterance constituent “the academics” and the presupposition that “all of them” have caught up with the real world, and replacing it by “the best of them”, a reformulation which cancels such a presupposition:

308. B72 1706 New Scientist. Periodical-domain: applied science

The public inquiry into the expansion of the Windscale nuclear reprocessing factory gave the anti-nuclear movement the impetus it needed not only to challenge the official estimates of risks, but also to question repeatedly the idea that the simplistic estimation of the numerical size of a risk should govern its regulation. Now, the academics (**or rather** the best of them) have caught up with the real world.

Example 309 below clearly illustrates a case of reformulation where the second discourse segment, an utterance constituent in this case, gains in precision. Thus, the first S1 “walking” is recharacterized and its content made more precise with the reformulated segment “limping”, which qualifies as one of the possible ways of “walking”:

309. ASU 36 Wainwright in the limestone dales. Book-domain: imaginative

Despite its classification as an A road, it is relatively quiet and only an occasional car will disturb a walker's appreciation of the scenery. I once walked, **or rather** limped, the thirteen miles of tarmac, plagued by a protruding nail in the sole of my shoe which was digging a small crater in my heel, and during the whole journey not a single vehicle passed me.

In 310 below, the notion of “profiles” is corrected and replaced by an alternative segment, that of “faces”, which more exactly conveys the speaker's communicative

intentions. The alternative presented is a more precise and specific one, while the notion of profile was too general:

310. CB0 803 Rich. Book-domain: imaginative

W. H. Auden once said that he learned to read by taking down the Encyclopaedia Britannica from his father's densely stocked shelves. My childhood was less literary. When I was six, my father taught me how to draw profiles. **Or rather**, faces. It was just that they were all in profile and virtually identical. For the next two or three years, I made elaborate paintings in which figures struck wooden postures and confronted each other in profile.

In example 311 below, the reformulation affects the whole previous S1 and offers a preferable alternative that expands on the propositional content of S1 as to what the notion “economical” entails:

311. EVX 1452 Mind and brain. Book-domain: belief and thought

It is fairly common to speak of these various things as events, states, and processes of consciousness, but we do not have a single wholly general term for them. I shall continue to speak in these and the more ordinary ways of the things in question, but it will be at least economical to have a single wholly general term for all of them. **Or rather**, it will be economical to use one of these terms in a yet more general way, to cover all of these things and also things that do not fall naturally into any of the mentioned ordinary or semi-technical categories or ones like them. This will be the term 'mental event'. It will cover anything whatever that occurs within consciousness.

The fact that *or rather* has a nuance of slight rectification and fine-tuning of the meaning of S1 or some utterance constituent of it becomes even clearer when the reformulator combines with DMs from its same group, especially, from the sub-group I have given the name of rectification and fine-tuning, such as *(or) more accurately* and *(or) more precisely*, or *to be precise*, as the instances below illustrate:

312. CBW 11 Accountancy. Periodical-domain: commerce

On this occasion, devising a pretext for attacking the auditors has called for some ingenuity. Usually, if a company collapses after receiving a clean audit report, one simply leaps to the assumption that the auditors got it wrong. This time, the audit report was heavily qualified, **or rather, to be precise**, the auditors were unable to express an opinion. It was perfectly obvious from the accounts that the company was in deep trouble. A Labour Party spokesman,

however, has got round this little difficulty by asking the company's current auditors and their predecessors what they did to draw the public's attention to the problem.

313. AB3 1118 Blissed out. Book-domain: imaginative

Nick Cave is afflicted and empowered by a certain, crucial deficiency of humanity. **Or rather, more accurately**, he's estranged, wilfully, from the confining notion of "full" humanity that's been installed by the positive Aid popular culture-extroversion, civic engagement, the benign totalitarianism of caring/sharing/ opening up, the cult of health and efficiency.

The possible combination of *or rather* with counterparts from the group of rectification is a possible indication of its more general meaning within the category of rectification. Fraser has pointed out, with regard to the combination of DMs, that when two DMs combine, the first normally signals the major relation (Contrast, Elaboration, Inference) while the second signals a more specific relation, within the first relation's domain, though not necessarily. Thus, the fact that *or rather* combines with *to be more precise*, and *or more accurately*, by occurring in the first position, would indicate or confirm its more neutral function within the group of rectification, while the more specific (*or*) *more precisely-accurately* would be signalling the more concrete relation of fine-tuning of the message in S1.

At other times, the rectification of the S1 brings about a newly reformulated S2 whose message stands in opposition to that of S1, and thus it negates the semantic content of S1, or the presuppositions obtainable from it. At other times, the new S2 is presented as a more desirable alternative, although its semantic content is totally unrelated to that of S1.

Thus, in 314 below, the notion of "naming" is corrected and a more precise notion is presented, that of "misnaming", whose semantics contradict those of the first one:

314. CKU 7 The Art Newspaper. Periodical-domain: arts
“AMERICA Invention”, he calls it, and its consists of the names of the indigenous peoples of the Americas, from Alaska to the Tropic of Cancer, painted in the same colours as body paints on the parapet of the spiral. It is a work about oppression through naming, **or rather**, misnaming: as any schoolchild knows, American Indians weren't really Indians; we just wished they were, so we imposed that name on them. Baumgarten is not opportunistic with this installation. He has been working in this vein since the late Sixties, when only hippies, greens and cranks thought it was important.

In 315 below, the contrast lies in the speaker's change of mind who, on the fly, rectifies his/her affirmative answer “yes”, and replaces it by a “no”. Likewise in 316, the “nearby beach”, is rectified and replaced by a notion that contradicts it: “not so nearby beach”.

315. CD3 194 Guilty parties. Book-domain: imaginative
“Oh, Edna's brood. I've just had a letter from her. Her youngest daughter seems to be going in for nannying. Just passed her exams”. “You don't mean to tell me you hadn't thought of interviewing her?” “Well, yes. **Or rather** no. I mean, we want someone with more experience”. “Do we?” She looked at him standing there, half turned towards her, the photograph still in his hand, alert, enthusiastic and incredibly good-looking.
316. CCN 614 The circle of nine. Book-domain: belief and thought
To my delight, dotted here and there on the leafy verge were gleams of light, a pale luminous shining in the warm darkness. They were glow-worms, the first I had ever seen. Later in the week, some of us went for an evening swim at a nearby beach-**or rather** not so nearby, as it entailed a few miles of driving and then a long walk down a deserted track. By the time we arrived at the sea, those of us who did not know that stretch of coastline were completely removed from any sense of place or direction.

Likewise, in example 317 the speaker corrects his/her first intervention, “you surprise me”, and completely negates it with “you don't”. The rectification of the first segment by a more precise one rules it out completely since the semantic contents are opposite:

317. G1M 3654 Lucifer rising. Book-domain: imaginative
“No,” the Doctor sighed. “Ace is just confused. Legion's agent is someone else.”
“Who?” Bishop asked calmly. “...I can't say”. The Doctor's gaze momentarily

flickered across the room, but too fast for Bernice to tell who he was looking at. “Really? You surprise me. **Or rather**, you don't. A transparent attempt to protect your former friend”. “Permission to speak, Legion,” Ace said. “Permission granted, Staff Sergeant”. “The Doctor is lying”. A murmur ran around the unwilling audience

As has been pointed out before, there are examples where *or rather* hosts a discourse segment that brings about a rectification of S1 by contradicting the presuppositions obtainable from the previous S1. Let us consider the following example 318, where the S1 “it would make a pleasant change from having sex with you” gives rise to the presupposition that the speaker is having sex with Elinor. However, the segment introduced by *or rather* clashes with that presupposition, since it explicitly denies that the speaker was having any sex with Elinor:

318. ASS 2484 The Wimbledon poisoner. Book-domain: imaginative
 “Don't be silly, Henry!” she said, in a slightly querulous tone. Then she started reading a recipe. “I often think”, he went on, “about having sex with men”. Elinor looked at him over the rim of her magazine. “Well” said Henry, “it would make a pleasant change from having sex with you. **Or rather**, from not having sex with you”. Elinor snorted “You are just being silly”, she said, “and offensive!”

Similarly, in example 319 the utterance constituent “her true feelings for Arnie” leads us to expect that she had in fact some feelings for the person in question. This is what S1 presupposes. However, this presupposition is cancelled with the reformulated S2 that contradicts S1 by stating that she had no feelings for him:

319. JXT 4119 Conspiracy of love. Book-domain: imaginative
 You have to speak to Arnie, she told herself firmly. You have to speak to Arnie and tell him everything. Not about Guido. He needn't know about Guido. Guido had nothing to do with what she had to tell him. For Guido, she realised, had only been the catalyst that had finally forced her to confront her true feelings for Arnie. **Or rather**, her lack of feelings, she admitted shamefully. Guido hadn't stolen her affections from Arnie. There hadn't been much in the way of affection to steal. No, that wasn't quite true, she corrected herself, frowning. She had been fond of Arnie. In a way, she still was.

Examples 320-322 proceed along the same lines, where the speaker rectifies his/her first formulation as inappropriate and replaces it by a more adequate one that somehow contradicts the first one or the assumptions obtainable from it. Thus in 320 the presupposition that all watched, Lucy included, is fine-tuned. Similarly, in 321, the presupposition that they danced is replaced by a fine-tuned segment, namely, that they cling to one another rather than dance. Finally, in 322 the notion of unpredictable is made more precise with the presentation of what can be predicted:

320. GW0 694 Rain. Book-domain: imaginative
Lucy's eyes widened, but she tried not to betray her surprise. "Can you tell?" "You look just like her". Something in Lucy's heart warmed. "Did you know her well?" Jeanette shrugged. "You know how it is. She had a life outside. We all have". They watched for a while longer. **Or rather**, Lucy pretended to watch as her mind raced. She was seeking the next angle, the next approach, knowing that she'd have at the most a couple of minutes to make her pitch.
321. ACP 2157 The Face. Periodical-domain: art
(The scampi is dodgy; later I will throw up in the smelly boat toilet.) An all-Polish ensemble, dressed in loud pantsuits of yellow and orange and red, performs "Girl from Ipanema" and other Latin favourites on an electric piano and Day-Glo drum set, before the electric butterfly. One old Irish couple slow-dances alone. They dance for hours. **Or rather**, they do not so much dance as cling to one another, rocking drunkenly with the tide. The woman has bleached orange hair and a shapeless tweed skirt; the man wears a rust-coloured suit and a bawdy fifties style tie, and a top hat. We are their only audience. We watch in silence.
322. G2J 686 Marxism Today. Periodical-domain: world affairs
And this is unlikely to happen unless there is a European political union and unless Europe and Japan play a more autonomous international role. It will necessitate a fundamental self-questioning and transformation of the dominant parties of the Left and a rearrangement of the domestic political spectrum. For the next few years at least, the real messy world is likely to be unpredictable. **Or rather**, the most that one can predict is that the 1990s will be a period of yet more bumps and twists, swerves and U-turns, and unexpected developments.

The type of reformulation effected by *or rather* can be partial or global. It should be noted that observance from the corpus corroborates the fact that partial cases of reformulation are the most pervasive and concern rectifications on the content or

propositional level; in contrast, cases of global reformulation are scarcer and normally concern the use of reformulators on the speech-act level, although this is not necessarily the case. The examples below illustrate cases of global reformulation where the whole previous S1 is recharacterized and presented as a preferable alternative. Thus, in 323 the whole S1 is improved and further explained so the reader or audience can better comprehend the meaning. Likewise, in 324, the speaker recharacterizes the first formulation “I want two things” by a preferable alternative that is more in accordance with what s/he wants to communicate, namely, that is not two different things that s/he wants but different things at different times:

323. CS2 599 The rational foundations of ethics. Book-domain: belief and thought
Yet I am puzzled as to whether that would mean that we should leave our radios on, so long as the music coming from them is beautiful, in order that our rooms be filled with beauty even in our absence. Although he holds that value can be realized in the absence of consciousness, Moore does not believe that situations not involving consciousness can be very good. **Or rather**, he holds that all the great goods of which we know involve consciousness; there may conceivably be others of which we are ignorant. Certainly personal affection and the admiring contemplation of beautiful objects involve consciousness, although it would be a mistake to think that there is no more to their value than comes simply from the kind of consciousness involved.
324. EDJ 2714 Taking it over. Book-domain: imaginative
The husband is always the first to suspect and the last to know. Whatever happens... whatever happens, I'm the one that's going to get hurt. By the way, would you like a cigarette? Gillian The other two, they each want one thing, for me to be with them. I want two things. **Or rather**, I want different things at different times. God, yesterday I looked at Oliver and I had this strange thought. I want to wash your hair. Just like that. I suddenly got embarrassed. His hair wasn't dirty-it was all clean and flyaway in fact. It's wonderfully black, Oliver's hair.

In 325 the newly formulated S2 entails a longer and more complex discourse segment that improves on the previous one by specifying and fine-tuning the type of relationship that would have told the author more about the life of the working class:

325. EGO 1901 Wigan Pier revisited. Book-domain: social science
Let us look at their respective relationship to work and home. Orwell used the miners as the classic case of the working class; through them he revealed its suffering and its stamina. But the relationships within which women laboured in the coal communities would have told him even more about class struggle than did his breathtaking chronicle of labour down there in the dark. **Or rather**, the men and women's relationship to each other-unlike the work of hewing coal which is not typical of work in capitalist economies-that relationship, even in its extremities, was typical of something that shaped class struggle in Britain. It helps to explain the conservatism of our class struggle, and its failure to mature into socialist struggle.

5.2.1.3. Domain of use of the reformulator

The reformulator *or rather* has been mainly documented in the content domain of use where the reformulation takes place between the semantic content of the S1 and S2 or some of their utterance constituents. This reformulator has also been ascertained to function in the speech-act domain of use, that is to say, the domain where the relationship holds between the illocutionary forces of the S1 and S2. Particularly, this reformulator has been found in combination with the imperative and interrogative types, although its use is not very pervasive within this domain. *Or rather* is totally excluded from the epistemic domain.

Notwithstanding, its use on the speech-act level is restricted to cases where the illocutionary force of an imperative is negated. That is to say, the newly reformulated S2 does not replace the imperative form in S1 by a different one in S2, except for one example below, but rather negates its force.

The following examples illustrate such a use, where 319 entails a reformulation or rectification holding between the illocutionary forces of the speech-act promise, namely a promise to answer that is immediately rectified and canceled by the speaker's decision not to answer anything and not to reveal his grounds:

326. GUD 532 A clubbable woman. Book-domain: imaginative
 Evans let out a long whistle. The others merely looked stunned. Then Noolan and Sid Hope both spoke at once. “What grounds have you...?” “What did it say...?” They both tailed off. “Your ball, I think, Willie,” said Hope. “I’ll answer you both. **Or rather**, I won’t,” interjected Connon. “I won’t reveal my grounds. Nor will I tell you what the letter said. The writer already knows. It concerns no one else”.

Likewise in 327 below, the speech-act of “give my regards” is negated in S2 as a rectification of the speaker’s communicative intentions. The reformulator *or rather* combines with *on second thoughts*, another DM that more explicitly signals a change of orientation in the communicative exchange:

327. HTG 2890 Clubbed to death. Book-domain: imaginative
 He stood up. “I don’t envy you your job, Mr Milton, but I hope you’re having some fun out of featherstonehaugh’s. At least we’re more interesting than the Athenaeum”. “Thank you, Mr Fishbane. You’ve been most helpful”. “Any time”, said Fishbane. “Oh, by the way, Sergeant Pooley, give my regards to his Lordship. **Or rather, on second thoughts**, perhaps you shouldn’t. It might remind him of a few school episodes he will have made sure to forget.

In example 328 the teacher is rectifying on the fly and thus modifies her initial formulation “follow from where I’ve left” and replaces it by a more precise one “include that, do that first, etc”. These rectifications are the result of the planning of discourse in spoken registers:

328. JJR 418 Bacons College. Speech recorded in educational context.
 A: No. You know where it says now try this, I’d like you to do that exercise, putting in all the punctuation. Punctuating the speech.
 B: What, re-write the passage that one?
 A: Ye-es. Yes, it’s this one. I’ve done the first bit for you. You, you carry on from where I’ve left off. **Or, rather**, include that, do that first, an’ then finish it yourselves. You don’t need to talk to do this.

All the examples above concern cases of global reformulation within the speech-act domain of use. Examples 329-331 are cases of uses of *or rather* in the speech-act level, more specifically in the interrogative mood, both with global and partial scope of the

reformulator. In 329 the question in S1 is rectified and made much more precise, from “what do you know?” to “what do you think you know?”. In 330 the reformulation involves the introduction of a new S2 that is unrelated to the S1, which has been replaced by a more precise one. Finally, 331 involves the reformulation of an utterance constituent, namely, “what language”, that is replaced by “whose language”:

329. HA7 1643 A warning of magic. Book-domain: imaginative
He seemed to tower over Merrill. “First you make a mystery out of a fairly ordinary-although for you-tragic-event, and, believe me, I do sympathise with you over that... And then you seem to suggest-what? Just what are you getting at? Merrill, “he went on gravely, “what do you know? **Or, rather**, what do you think you know?” Merrill stood up quickly. Suddenly Luke's office seemed claustrophobic and stifling. And he hadn't even mentioned the painting which hung in his house! It was screamingly obvious that he was being less than honest about his relationship with Elise. “Perhaps I should leave you to answer that question,” she whispered.
330. A0U 129 So very English. Book-domain: imaginative
Of course today, England is a part of Europe, but when Neela was growing up, England never saw itself as a part of Europe. If it ever did, it was always as a part which was apart, separate, a “precious stone set in the silver sea. A sceptered Isle!” Neela was aware of this difference. But what did this difference mean to Neela? **Or rather** how did it feel? Europe appeared to accept her difference and individuality, whereas England demanded that she should somehow conform, assimilate, and yet at the same time, there was no way in which it was possible to really “assimilate”. In fact it wasn't even allowed. In any case, assimilation never meant any real acceptance or belonging.
331. A0U 1745 So very English. Book-domain: imaginative
The phrase has always interested me. It means something has been said or something has happened that has put the subject of the remark in an uncomfortable place. Is “Englishness” a comfortable place? If as Marx said, the working class have no country, what does it mean to have a place in a culture anyway? And what language do we use to name that place, **or rather** whose language?

5.2.2. Rectification and Fine-tuning: (or) more precisely, (or) more accurately

I analyze the syntactic and pragmatic properties of *(or) more precisely* and *(or) more accurately* as reformulators that bring about an improvement and fine-tuning of the message in S1. Although their uses may look similar at first sight, a detailed analysis

of their pragmatic functions will reveal that these lexical units are not strictly synonymous in all their environments of use.

5.2.2.1. Syntactic properties

The reformulators which are the object of analysis in this section, *(or) more precisely* and *(or) more accurately*, have been traditionally included under the category of Contrastive conjuncts in Quirk et al.'s classification, and more specifically, under the label of Reformulatory alongside reformulators such as *(or) better*. Fraser (2002), on his part, includes these lexical forms within his Elaborative DMs.

These reformulators are made up of the comparative form *more* and the adverbs *precisely* and *accurately*, respectively, formed with the adjectives *precise* and *accurate*. Both reformulators are normally found in combination with the disjunctive conjunction *or* that explicitly signals that the newly rectified and fine-tuned formulation should be taken as an alternative to the previous one, but one that is more precise or accurate in what is being conveyed. Both reformulators have been deemed to function with *declarative* and interrogative sentence types, although the latter use is less pervasive within the corpus. Neither *(or) more precisely*, nor *(or) more accurately* have been found in combination with imperatives, that is to say, they are not used in the *imperative* mood. This fact is at least generally true for *(or) more accurately*, more concerned with the reformulation of factual statements and with conforming to the truth or falsity of the content of S1.

In contrast, even though no examples have been recorded for *(or) more precisely* in the imperative mood, it has been observed by means of pre-fabricated examples, that this reformulator can be used in the speech-act domain, with speech-acts such as indirect suggestions, or orders, among others; as well as in the epistemic domain of use.

The scope of these reformulators can be partial or global, although there is a clear tendency to appositional uses for both *(or) more accurately* and *(or) more precisely* where the reformulation occurs in the content domain; whereas reformulation in the epistemic and speech-act domains normally involve cases of total reformulation, where whole utterances are recharacterized and newly reformulated in the S2.

Both reformulators are preferably used in monologic exchanges, although they have also been deemed to work in dialogic exchanges.

As far as the combination with markers from the other paradigms identified by Fraser (2002) is concerned, this author indicates that some of his Elaborative DMs allow combination with the most representative markers, *and*, *or*, *but* and *so*, from the four main classes that he identifies. In particular, he points out that *and*, *but* and *so* combine with *to be more precise*, which I take to be a variant form of *or more precisely*. In the remainder of this section, I shall attempt to assess the sequencing of some of these DMs with the reformulators under scrutiny.

First of all, *so* has not been recorded in combination with *or more precisely*, whereas combinations with *and* and *but* have been found. However, when in combination with these DMs, these lexical units do not always seem to be functioning as reformulators and their status as such is more difficult to assess. Let us consider the following examples below:

332. CLN 950 The culture of English antislavery 1780-1860. Book-domain: social science

A number of the earliest abolitionists, however, experienced a difficult and anxious passage before they recognised the particular role providentially required of them. In the case of the elder James Stephen's commitment to antislavery, it came after the experience of working in the West Indies as a lawyer, **but more precisely**, that experience helped direct into antislavery the expression of his gratitude "for the infinite mercy of God" in extricating him from the depths of sin brought on by sexual passion and setting him on the path of prosperity and happiness.

In 332 above, the first discourse segment, “it came after the experience of working”, is apparently reformulated and fine-tuned in S2: the experience helped him “direct into anti-slavery the expression of his gratitude”. However, the sense of reformulation is not so clear since the main relationship is a contrastive one, as signaled by the DM *but* that hosts the newly reformulated S2.

Combination with the coordinate *and* has not proved to be less controversial. Some examples are clearly reformulative, whereas in others, the role of reformulation is more difficult to assess. Thus, example 333 below is ambiguous between the consideration of *and* as adding a further reason to justify that the third statement fails to follow from the first two; and that of *and* introducing a more precise explanation of the previous reason in S1:

333. EVX 452 Mind and brain. Book-domain: belief and thought (Lewis, 1973, p. 33; Stalnaker, 1975, p. 173) It is said that this proves the failure of transitivity-the three statements are Unexceptionable and the third does not follow from the first two. There is the objection, however, whatever else is to be said, that the third statement fails to follow from the first two only because of an ambiguity-**and more precisely** because the consequent of the first conditional is in fact not identical with the antecedent of the second. We do not actually have in this supposed counter-example to transitivity what we must have, statements of the forms if P then Q, If Q then R, and If P then R. (Mackie, 1980) Certainly, whatever is to be said of transitivity elsewhere, dependent nomic conditionals are transitive.

The function of rectification seems to be clearer in the following example, where *more precisely* seems to help fine-tune and rectify the content of S1:

334. HOK 1659 Allien wisdom: the limits of Hellenization. Book-domain: world affairs
We are therefore left with only two certain pieces of contemporary evidence for the religious situation of the persecution period-as I have said, the Book of Daniel and the petition of the Samaritans of Shechem who wanted to dedicate their temple to Zeus, **and more precisely** to Zeus He] lenios (Jos.Ant.Jud. 12.258 ff.).

5.2.2.2. Pragmatic functions: (OR) MORE ACCURATELY, (OR) MORE PRECISELY

In order to account for the pragmatic functions of these two reformulators, I first proceeded to thoroughly analyze some 100 occurrences of each DM in order to determine the relationships between both lexical forms. To do so, I resorted to another tool of analysis, that of the domain of use of the reformulators, in order to discriminate between the uses of these reformulators and to account for the environments of use they share.

Thus, it was observed that both DMs share the same basic function of carrying out a rectification and fine-tuning of the message of a discourse segment S1, and thus present a much more adequate sequence in the S2. However, although these reformulators seem to share some environments of use in which they are interchangeable, they also have specific uses where replacement or substitutability by the other marker is not possible.

After an exhaustive observation of the way both reformulators work, it can be concluded that they can work in the content or propositional level when the reformulation involves the rectification and fine-tuning of the semantic information conveyed. That is to say, when the rectification is effected in order to adjust the truth or falsity of the message of S1, both DMs of RF can be used indistinctly. In addition, it has been observed that *(or) more accurately* is preferable in those cases where the semantic content of S1 deals with the reformulation of quantities, figures or numbers, or what could be labeled **COUNTERFACTUAL STATEMENTS**, that is to say, occurrences where there is some constituent of S1 that is explicitly negated and fine-tuned in the S2. Cases of counterfactual statements seem to be a restricted environment of use for *(or) more accurately*. Finally, *(or) more precisely* has been ascertained to have a preference of use in the speech-act and epistemic domains of use, where its counterpart *(or) more*

accurately does not seem to function. Thus, the ensuing sections will proceed along the following lines: first, I will assess the environments of use shared by both reformulators and then I will proceed to the discrimination of the exclusive environments of use outlined above.

A) Environments of use shared by (OR) MORE ACCURATELY-(OR) MORE PRECISELY

These two reformulators are interchangeable in those environments of use where a rectification and fine-tuning is effected on the semantic or propositional content of the whole S1 or one of its constituents. The reformulation functions in a semantic level and can be partial or global. The fine-tuning effected on the message of S1 can be measured along a continuum ranging from minimal to maximal fine-tuning. When the S1 has been minimally rectified and fine-tuned, the outcome is a newly reformulated S2 that semantically resembles the previous S1. These cases are normally associated with appositional uses of this reformulator where utterance constituents are being reformulated and restated in the S2, so there is a continuation of the message initiated in S1. These uses of *(or) more precisely-accurately* would fall within the traditional cases of paraphrastic reformulation.

In contrast, cases where the rectification and fine-tuning is maximal entail occurrences where the messages of S1 and S2 clash with each other, that is to say, their contents or the presuppositions obtainable from them are in opposition. There are even cases where the contents of S1 and S2 are totally unrelated, that is to say, the message in S1 is rectified and replaced by a much more adequate one with which no apparent relation can be established. Between examples of minimal and maximal rectification and fine-tuning, we find examples where the second formulation is thus rectified and recharacterized and clearly gains in exactitude, in the information transmitted.

Thus, in example 335 below, the fine-tuning of an utterance constituent “self-sacrifice” renders a more accurate segment, “apparent self-sacrifice”, which is more in accordance with the truth of the information transmitted. Notice that *or more precisely* is perfectly acceptable in this example, where the reformulation effected is minimal and where the default reformulator was *or more accurately*:

335. HRM 488 Urban sociology book-domain social science
That is, an individual's selfish genes are envisaged by sociobiology as leading to a number of self-preserving strategies which are essentially collective in nature. Inclusive fitness is the key concept here; with altruism, more than individual selfishness, being a form of behaviour most likely to guarantee reproductive success. Altruism here refers to the various forms of self-sacrifice,
or, more accurately ✓
or more precisely, ✓
apparent self-sacrifice, in which animals and human beings engage.

Likewise, 336 below illustrates a case of rectification and fine-tuning of the message in S1 that involves a minimal modification of the utterance constituent in S1, inasmuch as they are almost identical in structure, the only rectification involved is that of the verb tense from “was up to” to “had been up to”. Again, both reformulators are possible options:

336. HJD 711 Unpublished creative writing. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: imaginative
Their purpose would be to seek out and capture any such sect patrol. Springfield, however, had surprised Grant by replying that this would not be necessary as “it had been taken care of”. As the big sheriff had volunteered no further explanation, Grant decided to wait and see exactly what Springfield was up to
or more accurately ✓
or more precisely ✓
had been up to. The plan of campaign was to be kept simple and direct.
337. A87 134 The Guardian Electronic edition of 1989-11-11.
In this one episode we find interconnections with race, class, colonialism, and (cultural) imperialism, and in ironic, domestic, tragically intricate ways: witness Gide finally capitulating to the class, racial, and cultural prejudices of his own culture, as voiced through his mother, who in turn speaks through her servant. Discrimination descends through a hierarchy of the subordinate.

Or, more accurately, √

Or, more precisely, √

hierarchies, including those of class, race, and gender, and within each of which each subject is situated differently.

At other times, the fine-tuning effected on the S1 encompasses a greater rectification of the message it conveys, and thus, the message is restated and made more accurate or precise for the purpose of communication. Thus, in 338 below the notion of *philosophy* is fine-tuned and the speaker replaces it with a more precise or accurate one, although related to it, that of *frame of thinking*: Likewise, the utterance constituent *assumptions*, is rectified by that of *hypotheses* in 339 below. There is a rectification and fine-tuning of the notion, but still both notions are related and belong to the same field of knowledge:

338. ABF 660 Defending the world. Book-domain: world affairs
 Mitigating the causes of the crisis has to continue, of course, but the dominant issue may turn out to be crisis management within the triple-P of problems caused by poverty, pollution and population. The philosophy
or, perhaps more accurately, √
or, perhaps more precisely, √
 the frame of thinking which will guide governments and international institutions in the 1990s and beyond is still in its formative stages.
339. ARC 504 A generation of schooling. Book-domain: world affairs
 After examining the literature on the effects of citizen participation on community work intervention, the paper puts forward an operative model for both researchers and practitioners to measure how the participation of clients can make community work more effective and productive. The underlying assumption
(or, more precisely √
or more accurately √
 hypothesis) of this paper is that client participation makes for a better social work intervention, and thus the higher the degree of client participation the more effective the intervention will be (Kurzman and Solomon, 1970; Freedberg, 1989; York, 1989). In Bernstein's words: we find that imposing, telling or giving orders do not work well.

Example 340 is a clear example where the recharacterization of S1 renders a much more exact piece of information as far as the definition of “species” is concerned. Thus, the content of S1 is recaptured and fine-tuned:

340. AE7 530 The problems of biology. Book-domain: natural sciences
This has not led us to adopt the nominalist alternative. Instead, we hold that species are real things, but that they do not have essences. This position, which would have seemed contradictory to both Buffon and Linnaeus, requires some explanation. A species is a population of interbreeding individuals;
more precisely, √
more accurately, √
because we do not want to regard the blue tits on the Isle of Wight as belonging to a different species to those on the mainland, a species is a group of actually or potentially interbreeding populations. (either 2,1)

Examples 341 and 342 below entail a greater degree of rectification and fine-tuning. Thus, in 341 below the utterance constituent “how many couples of the same sex are partners” is fine-tuned by “how many are prepared to report the fact”. Still, the newly reformulated S2 recaptures some elements from S1 and fine-tunes them.

341. ABF 664 The Economist. Periodical-domain: commerce
It will also, eventually, accumulate a mass of fine detail: on how many people have flush-toilets, for instance. A new and controversial question will find out how many couples of the same sex are partners
(or, more accurately, √
or more precisely, √
how many are prepared to report the fact). The information will become known a bit faster than it used to be. The technology used by the bureau has improved. Bar-code-reading “wands” will check in the questionnaires as they arrive at various offices. The answers-read from microfilm by an optical scanner-can now be processed in district offices.

Likewise, in 342 the utterance constituent of “too much work” is fine-tuned and the information gains in precision: it is not “too much work” but “too much time spent by too many people on work”. Thus, the reformulation encompasses a longer and much more complex discourse segment:

342. EF4 613 The third way: the promise of independent democracy. Book-domain: commerce
If so, the point for attention is not alienation at all. It is too much work:
or, more precisely, √
or, more accurately, √
too much time spent by too many people on work of a kind which contributes insufficiently to their fulfilment and which may tend to diminish their capacity for fulfilling themselves, too much soul-destroying toil or boredom.

Along the same lines, example 343 rectifies and improves on the utterance constituent by expanding the notion of “snow” into that of “avalanches”, viewed as more adequate by the speaker or writer:

343. CJ3 1772 The survival factor. Book-domain: natural sciences
The eagle still had its talons in the goat, and the goat had its horns embedded in the eagle. While bears, wolves and the like undoubtedly eat mountain goats, they probably do so through scavenging for carcasses rather than through direct predation. The most serious enemy of the mountain goat is snow,
or more precisely √
or more accurately √
avalanches. In late winter, avalanches are common and many goats are swept away. Predators like bears, coyotes and Lynx regularly patrol the bottom of avalanches looking for carcasses. Snow kills goats in other ways too. Foraging for food in the depths of winter often means travelling through deep snow, and this takes its toll of the goat population.

Sometimes the rectification presents a newly formulated segment that fine-tunes its content and achieves a greater degree of precision or accuracy. Such is the case of example 344 below, where the S1 is too vague, and the reformulated one gains in precision as far as the dates of composition of the quartets are concerned:

344. ED6 2010 Gramophone. Periodical-domain: arts
C.H. MOZART. EARLY STRING QUARTETS These 13 quartets were composed between 1770 and 1773,
or more precisely √
or more accurately √
in 1770 in the case of the G major Quartet which is the earliest, and between 1772-3 for the others. Mozart, then between 14 and 17, was still very much under his father's thumb and it was to be another eight years before he broke free from Salzburg, settled in Vienna and married Constanze Weber.

It can also be the case that the fine-tuning encompasses a discourse segment whose content contradicts that of the message in S1, as illustrated by the examples below. Thus, in 345 the utterance constituent “go out of control” is rectified and adjusted in the S2 with a segment that reformulates such piece of information into “fail to come into control”:

345. B10 961 Discipline a positive guide for parents. Book-domain: applied science
To put it bluntly, the child goes through a stage of sheer “bloody mindedness”. This pattern often begins at about eighteen months and reaches a peak between three and six years, after which it rapidly declines. Boys tend to have a resurgence of negativism between ten and eleven years of age. The reasons why some children and teenagers go “out of control”
or more accurately √
or more precisely √
fail to come “into control” are complex and many.
346. CER 518 Too hot to handle. Book-domain: natural sciences
He decided it should be ten metres high with four-metre thick reinforced concrete walls but the workmen were sloppy and the concrete cracked. This first reactor was demolished and a second one begun, even larger than the first, and built in a hole in the ground-the same scale of construction as a U-boat shelter. Before the reactor had a chance to work
(or more precisely, √
or more accurately, √
fail) Peron fell from power.
347. JOU 332 Involuntary unemployment. Book-domain: social science
In these circumstances the levels of output and employment are entirely demand determined. The behaviour of relative prices, and in particular the reaction of the real wage rate to excess supply in the labour market, gains no mention at all since the principal focus of attention is the response
(or more precisely √
or more accurately √
the lack of response) of absolute prices to changes in the level of aggregate demand.
348. ANY 548 Nice work-book-domain: imaginative
The second, Samuel Richardson, was a printer. The novel was the first mass-produced cultural artefact. (At this point Robyn, with elbows tucked into her sides, would spread her hands outwards from the wrist, as if to imply that there

is no need to say more. But of course she always has much more to say.)

According to Robyn

(or, more precisely, √

or more accurately, √

according to the writers who have influenced her thinking on these matters), there is no such thing as the “self” on which capitalism and the classic novel are founded—that is to say, a finite, unique soul or essence that constitutes a person's identity; there is only a subject position in an infinite web of discourses—the discourses of power, sex, family, science, religion, poetry.

B) Exclusive environments of use: (OR) MORE ACCURATELY

After a thorough examination of the occurrences of *(or) more accurately* within the corpus of analysis or BNC, I set out to ascertain the differences between the uses of *(or) more precisely* and *(or) more accurately* in a principled way, a task that has proved to be very complex. Sometimes, the environments of use of *(or) more accurately* and *(or) more precisely* overlap and there is no clear-cut way of differentiating or discriminating between them, as has been shown above. In this section, I report some uses that seem to be limited to *(or) more accurately*.

The exclusive uses of the reformulator *(or) more accurately* seem to be restricted to cases of reformulation of the semantic content of the whole S1, or an utterance constituent, as is normally the case. Two main uses have been identified where its counterpart *(or) more precisely* is apparently excluded:

(i) Those cases where the information conveyed deals with **numbers or figures** that are rectified and fine-tuned, the rendition of which is a much more accurate discourse segment.

(ii) Those utterances that concern cases of **counterfactual statements**, where the S1 is explicitly negated and a much more accurate segment is provided in S2.

In order to corroborate these two main uses, I have resorted to a set of pre-fabricated examples that include examples of counterfactual uses of *(or) more accurately*, along with occurrences where the reformulation of numbers or figures is involved. A possible

explanation for the preference of (*or*) *more accurately* in these examples could lie in the fact that with figures, a greater degree of accuracy can be achieved, that is to say, that speakers can conform to the truth or falsity of the information they transmit with much more exactitude. In the case of counterfactual statements, it seems that a negation forces the use of *or more accurately*, after a statement that was not conforming to fact according to the speaker. The following examples have been delivered to native speakers of English in order to assess their judgments with regard to the use of these reformulators, and thus corroborate my conclusions after analysis from the corpus:

349. It is not Tuesday.
a. **More precisely ?**
b. **More accurately, √**
it's Thursday.
350. It is not 5 o'clock.
a. **More precisely, ?**
b. **More accurately, √**
it is 6.30
351. This isn't 3% fat-free.
a. **More accurately, √**
b. **More precisely, ?**
it is 5% fat-free.
352. This bag weighs 5 pounds.
a. **More accurately, √**
b. **More precisely, ?**
it weighs 5.6. pounds
353. We are not in Maine.
a. **More precisely, ?**
b. **More accurately, √**
we are somewhere in Massachussetts.
354. It is Tuesday.
a. **More precisely, ?**
b. **More accurately √**
it is not Thursday.

Native informants to whom these examples have been delivered show their preferences for the use of *or more accurately*, although some are less sure about its possible replacement by *(or) more precisely*.

As its semantics indicate, *(or) more accurately* carries out a recharacterization of a whole previous message in the S1 or some of its constituents, and fine-tunes it by bringing about a more accurate segment in the newly S2. The higher degree of accuracy present in the S2 concerns accuracy with regard to the truth or falsity of the information transmitted, that is to say, of the semantic content of the whole S1 or some of its constituents. Thus, the speaker indicates that the newly reformulated discourse segment has been fine-tuned and thus entails a higher degree of accuracy in the information it conveys to the reader or audience. Thus, in order to convey a higher degree of accuracy, the S1 has to be recharacterized to some extent. This recharacterization can be minimal, or, on the contrary, it may entail greater alterations in the content of S1.

C) Exclusive environments of use: (OR) MORE PRECISELY

The exclusive environments of *(or) more precisely* concern its use in the speech-act and epistemic domains of use, where the reformulation involves the illocutionary forces of the discourse segments, and their beliefs, respectively. Accordingly, in order to corroborate this claim, a set of pre-fabricated examples has been devised and delivered to native speakers in order to assess their judgments with regard to the suitability of these markers in the environments proposed, along with my own observations of these markers in naturally occurring environments gathered from the corpus.

(Or) more precisely is preferable to *(or) more accurately* when the reformulation involves the illocutionary forces of the segments reformulated, that is to say, when the S1 or S2 entails a speech-act, let it be an imperative, a suggestion, or a piece of advice.

In particular, *(or) more precisely* is preferred when the speaker is voicing his/her own opinions or beliefs, and thus there is a higher degree of involvement on his/her part in what is being transmitted.

Thus, the more involved the speaker is with regard to the truth or falsity of the information conveyed, the higher the chances for the use of *(or) more precisely*. Thus, *(or) more precisely* is used in cases of indirect suggestions, or pieces of advice, or in cases of orders, all speech-acts where the involvement is clear and where speakers are more prone to take positions and state their opinions or beliefs.

Similarly, in those cases where the reformulation occurs within the epistemic domain of use and, accordingly, concerns the speaker's beliefs, *(or) more precisely* seems to be preferable. In these cases, the speaker may have sound evidence to present some discourse S1 that is further rectified and fine-tuned. Sometimes, the reformulation may explicitly state the reasons or the evidence that has compelled the speaker to state S1. Examples 355-58 illustrate the use of *(or) more precisely* with speech-acts, while the rest concern cases of speaker's involvement with regard to the piece of information being conveyed, either by means of epistemic verbs, or verbs of modality, that express the speaker's degree of commitment to the truth or falsity of what is being transmitted:

355. Why don't you call me tomorrow first thing in the morning?

Or more precisely ✓

Or more accurately, X

why don't you leave a message on my machine for me?

356. Context: the leader of a crime organization who has just kidnapped a group of people says to his men: "Kill them all and throw the bodies down the canal"

Or more precisely ✓

Or more accurately X

"Kill the men and keep the women as hostages. We may get some money out of them".

357. Context: at a supermarket A is paying with a 50-dollar note a bill of 30 dollars.
he wants some change and says to the cashier:
Give me a twenty, please.
Or more precisely, √
Or more accurately, X
Could you break a twenty into 2 tens?
358. I want you to get out of here right now.
more precisely, √
more accurately X
I want you to stay right where you are until we find the diamond.
359. This woman is crazy. She expects me to love her.
More precisely, √
More accurately. X
she expects me to marry her.
360. I think you should call her immediately.
More precisely. √
More accurately, X
you'd better stop by and talk to her
361. I'm totally convinced that she's wrong in what she's doing
more precisely, √
more accurately, X
I know it for sure.
362. I think that they should put an end to the whole situation before it gets out of
hand.
More precisely, √
More accurately, X
I think that they should stop seeing each other for a while till things get back to
normalcy.
363. A: I think I saw Sheila last week at the cattle fair in Garfield.
B: Sheila? She can't have been in town last week.
B:
more accurately, X
more precisely, √
She couldn't have been at the fair because she was spending the week in NY.
364. I believe that Julie will pass the exam.
more accurately, X
more precisely, √
I'm firmly convinced that she'll ace the exam, after all she's studied.
365. She's certain that Mike will forgive her for some of the things she did.
more precisely, √

more accurately, X

she firmly believes that he'll forgive her about not telling him the truth.

Thus, the main differences between *(or) more precisely* and *(or) more accurately* as outlined above can be best summarized in the following chart, where 10 defining properties have been identified and which help differentiate between their uses:

CHART OF DEFINING PROPERTIES-(OR) MORE ACCURATELY-(OR) MORE PRECISELY

DEFINING PROPERTIES	(OR) MORE PRECISELY	(OR) MORE ACCURATELY
1. USE WITHIN THE CONTENT DOMAIN OF USE	YES	YES
2. USE WITHIN THE SPEECH-ACT DOMAIN OF USE	YES	NO
3. USE WITHIN THE EPISTEMIC DOMAIN OF USE	YES	NO
4. REFORMULATION OF COUNTERFACTUAL STATEMENTS	NO	YES
5. REFORMULATION OF NUMBERS OR FIGURES	NO	YES
6. DEGREE OF CALCULATION	NO	YES
7. APPROXIMATION TO ERRORLESS INFORMATION	NO	YES
8. SPEAKER'S INVOLVEMENT	YES	NO
9. REPETITION OF TOPIC IN S2	YES	YES
10. SHIFT IN UTTERANCE ORIENTATION	YES	YES

5.2.2.3. Domain of use of the reformulator

(Or) *more accurately* is restricted to the content domain, and although examples have not been recorded within the speech-act domain, it can be used in that domain. This reformulator is excluded from the epistemic domain of use, while its counterpart (or) *more precisely* is possible in all three domains.

A) Content domain

366. EF4 587 The Third way: the promise of independent democracy
It was as millenarian because there was no tension in the mainspring of the mechanism, in the idea of the alienation of labour. Let us look at the idea. In present everyday usage the phrase could be understood to mean quite simply that capital, or more precisely-or more accurately, the people disposing of it, treats labour, **or more precisely**, the people employed, so badly as to create resentment. The word in Marx's German text is die Entfremdung .A literal translation would be estrangement.

B) Speech-act domain

Both (or) *more accurately*, and (or) *more precisely* can combine with interrogative type sentences, but only the latter combines with the *imperative mood*.

367. Is Geometry the branch of mathematics, **or more precisely**, the root?
368. Is John Martin, **or more precisely**, his wife, going to sue the company for negligence or have they forgotten about that issue?

C) Epistemic domain

Only (or) *more precisely* can function at the epistemic domain of use:

369. I'm totally convinced that she's wrong in what she's doing, **more precisely**, I know it for sure.

5.2.3. Rectification and Improvement: (OR) BETTER STILL, (OR) BETTER YET

5.2.3.1. Syntactic properties

The reformulators *(or) better still*, *(or) better yet* along with *(or) better said* have been included under the sub-category of rectification and improvement due to the fact that the recharacterization effected on the message of S1 comes in the form of a newly reformulated and rectified statement S2 that brings about an improvement or melioration on the S1.

These two reformulators, *(or) better still* and *(or) better yet* are taken as synonymous for the purpose of this study. Both forms are normally found in combination with the disjunctive conjunction *or* and the comparative form of the adjective *good/ well* along with the temporal adverbs *still* and *yet*, whose indistinct use does not bring about any difference in the meaning of the reformulator. For that reason, I have opted to analyze only one of them, namely, *(or) better still* and extrapolate the results obtained in the analysis to its counterpart *(or) better yet*. The reasons for such a choice respond to the pervasiveness of one of them over another. That is, *(or) better still* is a much more common reformulator than its counterpart *(or) better yet*, which has been only recorded in 17 (16) examples without the disjunctive form *or*, and in only one example in combination with it. On the contrary, a total of 186 occurrences within a range of 164 different texts have been recorded for the reformulator *(or) better still*.

As far as the reformulator *(or) better said* is concerned, it also combines with the disjunctive *or*, and the comparative form *better*, along with the past participle form of the verb “to say”. Its use seems very restricted and only two examples have been found within the corpus of analysis. This fact, as well as the judgments of native speakers that this form is neither very pervasive, nor very much used in naturally occurring language,

has led me not to consider its analysis for the purpose of this dissertation. Suffice it to say that, as its semantics indicate, this reformulator is restricted to operating on the semantic or propositional level, where the rectification involves the semantic content of the message in S1. Thus, the newly reformulated S2 encompasses a “better way of saying what was explicitly stated in the previous S1”. The explicit form of the past participle form of the verb “to say” restricts its use to the level of content. Let us consider the following examples to illustrate this claim, where the speaker is explicitly signaling that S2 is a better way of restating what was said in S1:

370. B7L 2454 New Scientist. Book-domain: applied science
The same feeling broke in when I read an answer that the President of Venezuela gave at a press I conference. He had been asked a question on the influence of campaign promises and its effect on the election of particular candidates. What did he think? He replied, “On that matter, what I have always thought. **Better said**, what I think is what I have thought, or that is to say, that I continue thinking the same”. That is one kind of fog. Here is another and it is an interesting and rewarding exercise to translate this into language with plain meaning It comes from a Japanese journal, clearly influenced by trans-Pacific pomposity.
371. CRV 343 Returning to Shakespeare. Book-domain: arts
We can distinguish, then, between those Shakespeare sonnets addressing the recipient directly, in which writer and addressee form the couple defining a relationship, and poems addressing a recipient who is engaged in a triadic - **or** perhaps, **better said**, two dyadic relationships. The effect of this intense focus on modes of address is that personal pronouns become unusually prominent. I had often noted this characteristic in reading, but until I once calculated the extent to which the Sonnets depend on pronouns I had no idea of its magnitude.

The semantics of these three forms indicate that the speaker is presenting a new formulation in the S2 that should be taken as a *better option* than the one provided in the first discourse segment S1. The presence of the comparative form *better* forces the existence of a previous adjacent discourse segment that is recharacterized, the rendition of which is a rectification along with an improvement on the message presented in S1. In other words, the reformulators (*or*) *better still* and (*or*) *better yet*, explicitly signal

that an improvement on the message contained in the S1 is carried out and these reformulators are thus anaphoric. This nuance of rectification plus improvement helps differentiate the environments of use of these reformulators from those of their counterparts within the same group of Rectification, especially with regard to the reformulators *or rather*, and *(or) more precisely-accurately*.

As far as its syntactic patterning is concerned, *(or) better still* combines with the disjunctive *or*, and no occurrence has been recorded for the discursive *better still* in combination with *and*, *so*, *then*, or *but*. This reformulator has been exclusively found in initial position, so medial and final positions of this form are ruled out. As far as its scope is concerned, both utterance constituents and whole utterances (normally adjacent discourse units) are recharacterized by means of *(or) better still*. Its scope is thus both *partial* and *total*. *(Or) better still* has been documented in the *spoken* component of the BNC corpus of analysis, as well as in its *written* component. Its use in spoken registers is understandable if we consider that by using *(or) better still* the speaker has the chance to correct and rectify his/her first formulation “on the fly” and present the hearer with a better formulation, much more in accordance with what s/he really had in mind.

These reformulators can also be used in monologic and dialogic discourse, where either the speaker of S1 carries out the rectification of the message, or a different speaker elaborates on the message in S1 and rectifies it by producing a new formulation or reformulation which is a better alternative to the previous one.

Quirk et al.’s (1985) classification of conjuncts places these reformulators, along with their counterparts *(or) more precisely*, *(or) more accurately*, under the group of Contrastive conjuncts, and more specifically, in the sub-group of Reformulative conjuncts. Conjuncts within the Contrastive group present either contrastive words or

contrastive matters in relation to what has preceded and replace what has been said by a different formulation. To my knowledge there has not been any other systematic approach to these reformulators within English linguistics; only Archakis' analysis looks into the modern Greek DM of RF *i malon*—whose English equivalent is *or rather*—for which she envisages an environment of correction. In the ensuing section I shall attempt to provide the semantic-pragmatic functions of these DMs within the group of Rectification.

It has been observed that most of the cases of rectification within the content domain of use concern utterance constituents rather than whole utterances, although this is not always the case. For that reason, a distinction can be made between the uses of *(or) better still* where the recharacterization involves an utterance constituent and thus the scope of the reformulator is partial, and the uses of the reformulator where the scope is total.

The former cases would correspond to the appositional uses identified by Quirk et al. (1985). The recharacterization is effected on the propositional information contained in S1. However, it can be the case that, on the contrary, the rendition is a newly reformulated discourse segment whose message stands in opposition to that of S1. When *(or) better still* recharacterizes a whole utterance, and its scope is thus a global one, its uses are merely concerned with the speech-act domain. Thus, a clear distinction can be made between appositional-partial scope-content domain uses of *better still*, and non-appositional-global scope-speech-act uses of the reformulator.

5.3.3.2. Pragmatic functions

For the analysis of *(or) better still* it is of prime importance to maintain a distinction between the content, speech-act and epistemic domains of use (cf. Sweetser 1990) since the tripartite distinction lends itself well to the analysis of its functions.

After an exhaustive analysis of a selection of *better still* and its variant form *or better still*, where the discursive and adverbial uses have been differentiated, it has been observed that the reformulator displays one main function, namely, a rectification and an improvement of the message contained in S1 basically on two levels, (i) on the content and (ii) on the speech-act level; while its use is ruled out for the epistemic domain. The nuance of improvement is conveyed by means of the comparative form of the adjective/adverb “good/well”, that illustrates the speaker’s preference for the second formulation as better than the previous one.

Within the content domain or semantic level (cf. Knott 1994, 1996) the rectification is effected on the semantic content of the message of the previous S1. However, the domain of use that is of most interest is that of speech-acts, where the use of *(or) better still* is most pervasive. The speech-acts can be in the form of imperatives, indirect requests, suggestions, or some piece of advice that the speaker is giving to the hearer or audience; thus, the recharacterization concerns the illocutionary forces of both discourse segments. By using *(or) better still* at the speech-act level, the speaker is not only recharacterizing the message in S1 and presenting a new rectified formulation, but also portraying his/her involvement with the message conveyed in the new formulation or S2. This use would justify its occurrence on the speech-act level and, more specifically, in examples where a piece of advice or recommendation seems to be issued by the speaker to the audience. This higher degree of involvement contrasts with the neutrality

conveyed by *or rather*, where the speaker is merely conveying another possible and perhaps, preferable alternative to that already provided in S1.

For the purpose of this dissertation, I will divide the functions of this reformulator into three main categories that illustrate the degree of rectification involved in the process of recharacterization of the message of S1, as was the case for its counterpart *or rather*. I shall make a distinction between:

(i) Slight rectification and Improvement: cases where the rectification is minor and there still holds a certain semantic resemblance between the messages of S1 and the rectified S2.

(ii) Total rectification and Improvement: cases where the rectification is corrective, in the sense that the messages conveyed by both discourse segments stand in opposition, and thus any semantic resemblance is ruled out.

(iii) Other cases of Rectification and Improvement: cases where the criterion of semantic resemblance does not apply. The message initiated in S1 does not relate to that of S2 in any way.

In this light, the degree of rectification carried out on the message of S1 can be placed along a semantic cline with two opposing ends for those cases in (i) and (ii). On the one end, we find those cases where the rectification and improvement of S1 is slightly minimal and thus some aspect of the message in S1 is normally restated, and minimally rectified and improved. Likewise, a certain semantic resemblance can be still presupposed between S1 and S2, and thus the use of the reformulator would fall within the traditional cases of paraphrastic reformulation with varying degrees of intensity. Let us consider the following example, where the contents of S1 and S2 are almost identical, since the newly reformulated constituent resembles the source S1 to a great extent. Cases where the semantic resemblance between S1 and S2 is high have been ascertained when the scope of the reformulator is normally partial and entails the rectification of an utterance constituent, both at the content and speech-act domains:

372. ASS 34 The Wilbledon poisoner Book-domain: imaginative
Television documentary-makers asked them, respectfully, about exactly how they felt when they hacked their aged mothers to death or disembowelled a neighbour's child. This was the age of the murderer. And wasn't Edgar Lustgarten dead? He wouldn't, anyway, be known as the Wimbledon Strangler, but as Henry Farr, cold-blooded psychopath. **Or, better still**, just Farr, cold-blooded psychopath. Henry liked the idea of being a cold-blooded psychopath.
373. B3G 1430 What every woman should know about retirement Book-domain: social science
Loads should be divided equally before carrying them, so that there is no one-sided strain-and remember not to twist your back as you dump shopping on to a car seat. Sleep on a firm mattress—**or, better still**, a plank under the mattress. It may be that osteopathy or chiropractic could help; and both osteopaths and chiropractors have had a long training which includes medical education and qualifies them to give valuable help with backache.

On the opposite end of the continuum lie those cases that entail a greater deal of rectification and improvement on the S1, and thus the newly reformulated S2 does not resemble the previous S1. In other words, the new reformulation may convey a message that stands in opposition to the previous S1 or that is no longer related to the S1 in any way. Those cases would fall within the traditional non-paraphrastic activity of reformulation. Example 374 below illustrates an instance of rectification where the message in S2 rules out the relevance of the first formulation. Thus, the reader is faced with two confronting pieces of advice: “reduce your intake of meat”, which still presupposes the consumption of meat, versus “cut down your intake of any type of meat”, which presupposes that no meat is then consumed. Thus, the speaker goes from suggesting a reduction in the consumption of meat, to the elimination of meat from our diets. The newly reformulated S2 is presented as a better alternative and thus more advisable:

374. A7G 915 Charity leaflets and letters. Miscellanea-domain: social science
YOU can do something about the situation, YOU can take personal responsibility for conserving the worlds finite resources, by not consuming meat and animal products. Cut down your meat consumption, **better still** cut out meat and slaughterhouse products altogether.

Between both ends of the cline fall other cases where the speaker merely recharacterizes the message in S1, rectifying it and presenting a newly improved discourse segment S2 which is viewed as more in accordance with his/her communicative intentions. The improvement does not necessarily have to be reflected in the semantics of the S1. Sometimes, the newly improved segment does not seem to relate to the previous one in any way.

A) Minor Rectification and Improvement

As was stated before, the uses of (*or*) *better still* range from those cases where the newly presented S2 entails a minor rectification and an improvement of the message in S1, to those cases where the rectification and improvement are so strong that what the newly formulated S2 conveys is in contrast with the message in S1 or is totally unrelated.

I have found cases of minor rectification and improvement both on the content and speech-act level and concern those cases where the better option offered in the newly reformulated S2 can take the form of a rectified and improved segment that still resembles the S1, since it has just undergone a slight rectification. The improvement of S2 with regard to S1 is announced by the form “better” and can take the form of a specification of the content of S1, or an expansion of it, or some aspect of it.

Sometimes, the rectification is minimal and thus the S1 and the new S2 share maximal semantic resemblance, as is the case of example 375 below, where a mere

paraphrase seems to take place. Thus, a slight rectification and improvement are carried out in the semantic content of S1 to the point that the S2 almost totally resembles the S1, although it is presented as much more desirable than the previous one:

375. ASS 34 The Wimbledon poisoner. Book-domain: imaginative
Television documentary-makers asked them, respectfully, about exactly how they felt when they hacked their aged mothers to death or disembowelled a neighbour's child. This was the age of the murderer. And wasn't Edgar Lustgarten dead? He wouldn't, anyway, be known as the Wimbledon Strangler, but as Henry Farr, cold-blooded psychopath. **Or, better still**, just Farr, cold-blooded psychopath.

A similar case is illustrated by example 376 below, where a minimal rectification is effected on an utterance constituent of S1. The suggestion to sleep on a firm mattress is corrected and improved by presenting a better alternative to that proposed in S1, that is that in S2, "a plank under the mattress":

376. B3G 1430 What every woman should know about retirement. Book-domain: social science
Loads should be divided equally before carrying them, so that there is no one-sided strain-and remember not to twist your back as you dump shopping on to a car seat. Sleep on a firm mattress-**or, better still**, a plank under the mattress.

Likewise, in 377 the notion of "bitter-sweet" presented in S1 is rectified and the improvement effected on it encompasses the presentation of a new discourse segment in French, viewed as a better alternative by the speaker. It should be noted that both segments stand in a paraphrastic relation, with the only difference from the second being a preferred option:

377. FB8 137 Cinema secrets: special effects. Book-domain: arts
Fast motion can be used to express erotic tension and desire, if the purpose is comic rather than romantic-if we had laughed at the romantic yearnings of Cecile or even Frankie, the film would be failing, even though the treatment of these themes is throughout as much comic as tragic-"bitter-sweet" seems to be the compound word, **or better still** the mot juste is "douce-amère".

Likewise, in 378, the minimal rectification involves a change in the number of the utterance constituent that goes from “a real drummer” to “a number of different drummers”. The semantic resemblance between the S1 and S2 is thus maximal:

378. C9K 2858 Guitarist. Periodical-domain: arts
It's a great melodic motif that moves through a I-VI-II-V progression-a serious R&B ballad. A good way of practising would be to take all these examples through all the keys. Along with all these grooves I've written some accompanying drum machine patterns, but do try to get together with a real drummer **or, better still**, a number of different drummers. It'll do wonders for your sense of cooperation and teamwork!

In other cases the rectification and improvement carried out on the S1 is motivated solely for reasons of style, as can be observed in example 379 below, where the verb “as you enter the square” is rectified and an improvement effected with “as you emerge into it”, whose connotations are more grandiose:

379. ANB 8329 Piazza del Duomo. Book-domain: leisure
It would be barely conceivable to start a journey of exploration through Milan other than in the Piazza del Duomo. As with all big cities, to the first-time visitor Milan is too big, too noisy, too fast, its people too busy, in too much of a hurry. But whether you are here for the first or merely the latest time, as you enter the square-**better still**, as you emerge into it, blinking away the bright Milanese light as you climb up out of the Metro-there can be no doubting its magical ability to conjure a timeless moment of calm from out of the bustle.

Example 380 below illustrates one use of (*or*) *better still* where an utterance constituent is being rectified to make the meaning clearer. The text is providing some advice for cyclists and when it comes to the type of garment they are advised to wear the speaker corrects his/her first formulation, “Wear light-coloured clothing”, and provides a much more specific option, “Wear a reflective jacket”, that constitutes an improvement on the message in S1. Notice that the topic initiated in S1, that is to say, that of the sort of garments adequate for cyclists, is maintained in S2 and that the second formulation is presented as a better alternative than the one previously stated:

380. A0J 30 Health promotion and educational leaflets. Miscellanea-domain: natural science

Always make sure you can be seen easily at night. Keep your front and rear lights in good working order and don't forget to switch them on. Wear light-coloured clothing **or, better still**, a reflective jacket.

At times, the speaker provides a better alternative after a list of previous S1s and finishes off his/her list of proposals with what s/he considers to be the best alternative. In 381 below, the speaker ends up his/her list of conditions with the indication that all three previous aspects mentioned would constitute a better alternative if one wanted to be noticed:

381. A6A 293 The rock life. Book-domain: arts

That leaves only the third, and even then any serious nagging offensive requires careful planning and execution to stand a chance of success. First, select your target publications. The national dailies can be dismissed quickly, especially the tabloids. Unless you can promote yourself as a bit-part player in some concocted yarn involving Madonna, outlandish sexual indiscretions, wilful substance abuse **or, better still**, all three, they aren't going to be interested.

In some other examples the improvement on the S1 entails an expansion of the S1 or some of its constituents. Example 382 illustrates a case where the speaker's aim to provide a better alternative to the one in S1 and consequently expands on the notion of having the neck and shoulders rubbed to a broader concept, that of "a full body massage":

382. CKS 1198 Being a teacher. Book-domain: social science

If there remains an insistent voice that keeps telling you there is something "wrong" with sleeping twelve hours a day, or reminding you of how much there is to do, turning into a vegetable may not be an effective technique, and something more explosive or cathartic may be required. Any kind of physical stroking can aid relaxation. Having your neck and shoulders rubbed, **or better still** a full body massage, is a good investment.

Example 383 below is another case where the utterance constituent in S2, "around the block", is a better alternative which expands the notion in S1, "around the building".

Notice that the idea of walking is maintained, although the physical space for this activity is somewhat rectified and expanded:

383. EX5 800 Study for survival and success. Book-domain: social science
Your chair needs to support your spine, cushion your bottom and be at a convenient height for writing-but it does not need to be upholstered or to swivel or to have a head/footrest or whatever. Find a chair that suits your needs and stick to it. Once more, the familiar is comfortable and supportive, but don't neglect to get up and walk around the building-**or better still**, around the block-from time to time, to stimulate the supply of oxygen to the brain. Or try working in a standing position.

Likewise in 384 the utterance constituent, “the streets”, is improved and the alternative is an expansion of it, “the sky”:

384. HTU 3263 The suburban book of the dead. Book-domain: imaginative
I cried. “I'm driving already.” The cab thrashed along the alleyway, mashing dumpsters and scattering bums from central casting. Big sparks sprayed off the brick walls and tyres screamed on the wet pavements. The big black car loomed overhead, its big guns spitting big big bullets. “Hit the streets,” cried Rex. “**Or better still** hit the sky.” “Woodbine ain't licked yet.”

In other examples, the rectification and improvement effected on the S1 or an utterance constituent of it is aimed towards the presentation of a newly and more specifically corrected discourse segment with regard to the information it conveys. Thus, examples 385-7 are cases where, besides the rectification, there is a sense of being more specific in the information transmitted in the S2, hence the improvement. In 385, Hezzy does not merely want to be a “leader” but more specifically “a Prime Minister”. Likewise in 386, the somewhat broad notion of “shed light into the matter” is made more specific by correcting it with “on the origins of the letter”. Finally, in 387, the global notion of “ordinary cleansing” is improved and a more specific alternative, “after an aromatic or facial steam”, is presented:

385. CAT 359 Punch. Periodical-domain: leisure
But most worrying of all is Tarzan. Michael Heseltine, The Man Who Brought Down Mrs Thatcher, and last week the man who brought down the house in a dazzling Commons performance. The man with the most to make from Major's election defeat. What is Hezzy's game? IT is quite simple. He still wants to be leader- **or, better still**, prime minister-and he knows that he is still in with a chance.
386. EA4 1090 Community care. Periodical-domain: social science
No wonder they were in a tizz in Brighton. At the end of the letter is someone to contact if your codings haven't arrived by implementation date. I haven't managed to find out whether anyone from East Sussex actually rang up in a panic. If anyone in the SSD can shed any light on the matter, **or better still** on the origins of the letter, she or he will immediately be nominated reader of the week, be the envy of all and sundry, and receive a special prize.
387. BO6 1073 Aromatherapy massage with essential oils. Book-domain: leisure
If used sensibly though, once a week perhaps, your skin will certainly benefit. It will begin to look and feel revitalised and dewy. Face-Packs A weekly face-pack, or mask as they are often called, can be applied to the face and neck after ordinary cleansing, **or better still**, after an aromatic bath or facial steam while the skin is still moist and warm and therefore, more receptive to whatever you put on it. Face packs are designed to balance skin secretions, to stimulate the circulation and to moisturise and tighten the skin.

B) Total rectification and Improvement

As was mentioned above, at the other end of the continuum stand those uses of (*or*) *better still* where the recharacterization of S1 yields a rectified and improved discourse segment whose message stands in opposition to the one entertained in S1. Thus, the newly reformulated segment bears no resemblance to the S1. This nuance of opposition is even clearer when *better still* is used without the disjunctive *or*, since the sense that an alternative is being offered is less clear, thus increasing the idea that the speaker excludes the first formulation and only views the second one as relevant and as the best choice for the continuation of discourse. It could be said that in these uses of the reformulator there is a drastic turn in the orientation of the piece of advice or recommendation provided in S1 with regard to that of the recommendation in the newly reformulated S2.

In example 388 below, the speaker is suggesting that loose clothing is the best way of avoiding vagina infections. However, after the suggestion of wearing underwear made from natural fibres, s/he presents a better option, not to wear any underwear at all. Thus, both pieces of advice are mutually exclusive, or in other words, if we opt to follow one of them, the other seems to be excluded:

388. B3G 1430 How to use homeopathy. Book-domain: applied science
Therefore wear clothing that is loose and airy. Jeans, trousers and tights are much loved by Candida. Preferably wear a skirt or culottes with loose underwear made from natural fibres **or better still** no underwear at all.

Most of the examples identified for this function deal with the reformulation of speech-acts in the form of imperatives whose actions stand in opposition, such as the case below in 389 where the speaker rectifies “on the fly” during a conversation in spoken register, and thus rectifies his/her first formulation “leave your merit paper where it is”, with “bring it out here”. Likewise, in example 390 the speaker changes his/her mind on the spot and thus rectifies his/her first formulation, namely, the promise to “catch with the person later” with his/her decision to stay. It should be noted that in both examples the reformulator is preceded by the negation “no”, which is a clear indication of the speaker’s change of mind and thus his/her predisposition to carry out a rectification of his/her initial formulation:

389. KNY 728 9 conversations recorded by “Alex” with 7 interlocutors. Speech recorded in leisure context
Then then you get the choice of either doing a special or a foundation. It's up to you. And this is the way we work it. The specials are here. Foundations are here next to one another. Marked special and foundation. And what will happen is that when you finish with your merit paper and you're happy just leave it where it is. **No better still** you bring it out here put it down with your name on it and er take whichever you want.
390. A0F 1819 Part of the furniture. book-domain: imaginative
“I'm not sure what you'd like. How does ham and egg sound?” “Fine, really I...”
“Tea or coffee?” “Coffee, please. Thank you.” She came back with what I'd

asked for. “Right. I’ll catch up with you again in a few minutes. No, **better still**, I’ll stay here to stop you running away.” She fetched herself a packet of sandwiches from the counter and then came back to where she had been sitting.

The same function is illustrated in examples 391-2, below, where the actions of “staying” and “going out” clash with each other, as well as those of “head for a bar”, and “slink to your seat”:

391. CAO 1185 Polo. Book-domain: imaginative
“I’m quite OK,” said Ricky, slotting the gun back in its case, “and I would like to come to supper.” “You would?” Daisy’s jaw dropped. All they had in the house was six eggs for scrambling and the remains of Ethel’s heart. As if reading her thoughts, Ricky said, “**Better still**, we’ll go out.” “Oh, no,” said Daisy, appalled. “I didn’t mean that. I wouldn’t dream of foisting myself on you. And the children...” “Are quite capable of looking after themselves. I got my licence back last week, so it’s a treat to drive someone.” “I’m not dressed.”
392. FAS 472 The other country. Book-domain: imaginative
At the end of the pier, an open-air theatre, a crowd who have paid to come in, wooden slats, the sea slopping out like beer in a cracked plastic cup, one scrunched cloud like a boarding-house towel, grey. ou’re a contestant. Take my advice, leave now. Head for the Gaiety Bar or the rifle-range. **Better still**, slink to a seat, knot your handkerchief over your head and watch.

In some other examples, concerning cases of total reformulation, the rectification is carried out on the basis of the inferences obtainable from the S1. That is to say, in example 393 below, it is inferable from the S1 that it is the audience who is going to do work in the house, whereas the reformulated segment is based on the contrary belief, that is to say, it is rectified and presents the alternative of hiring someone to do the job, as a better and much desirable one:

393. HSK 137 Small gardens. Periodical-domain: leisure
Work systematically through the plan, leaving those which require cutting to fit the remaining gaps till last. Use boards to work from to avoid disturbing newly laid blocks and only lay sufficient sand to deal with a comfortable number of blocks at any one time. Blocks can be cut quite easily with a hammer and cold chisel. **Better still**, hire a block splitter, which severs blocks cleanly and quickly particularly if you have much cutting to do.

Likewise in 394 the speaker states in S1 “Keep any valuables out of sight” which implies leaving them in the caravan; whereas the reformulated segment rectifies and presents a new formulation that opposes the previous one, namely “take them with you” which implies not leaving them inside the caravan:

394. ARA 517 Health promotion and educational leaflets. Miscellanea-domain:
natural science
Theft from Caravans
Breaking into and stealing from a caravan is usually the work of casual thieves. You can easily reduce the risk by taking a few simple precautions. Always close and lock all doors and windows when you leave your caravan-even if it's only for a few minutes. Keep any valuables out of sight, **or better still**, take them with you.

In this vein, example 395 below clearly exemplifies a case of rectification where the acceptance of the second alternative would rule out the first one, in that the author suggests the replacement of the chip pan for a more sophisticated and safer one, the thermostatically-controlled deep fryer:

395. CLG 1334 Health promotion and educational leaflets. Miscellanea-domain:
natural science
Kitchen Hazards.
Never leave a chip pan unattended; **better still**, replace it with a thermostatically-controlled deep fryer.

C) Other cases of Rectification and Improvement

Finally, in some other examples, the criterion of semantic resemblance cannot be applied; in other words, the newly reformulated segment S2 does not necessarily share some semantic resemblance with the message of S1, or contrasts with it, but merely introduces or gives the option of an alternative that is judged by the speaker as a better option than the one entertained in S1:

396. AB3 623 The Economist. Periodical-domain-commerce.
By the rigid conventions of its time, as one habituée recalls, it was “a den of iniquity”, with a clientele “fascinated, intrigued and slightly terrified” by the

radical sound of bebop. In stuffy Sydney, modern jazz made you feel liberated, **or better still**, “hip”-possessing, as the film says, “esoteric knowledge not shared by the mainstream.”

397. CAG 1078 *New Statesman* and society. Periodical-domain: world affairs
Hardest unimportant question to get out of my mind: that Nalgo ad about the poll tax-how come she's got a staircase in her kitchen? Brightest spot: the final, disgraceful death of the opinion poll industry, which I have been campaigning for since 1983. Every single psephologist, political pundit and pollster must now resign, be sacked, **or better still**, commit suicide.
398. CDR 997 *Total health and fitness*. Book-domain: leisure
Consommés of beef, chicken, pheasant or game, and thin soups such as cock-a-leekie. Fresh vegetable soups also feature on some menus-but delicious as they are you should try to limit those made with cream (such as lettuce and asparagus). First courses such as asparagus (choose vinaigrette rather than butter, **or better yet**, fresh lemon to be squeezed over); oysters (almost no calories, but watch out for the buttered brown bread!); soused and smoked fish (the soused fish-usually herring-is lower in calories than the smoked, but both are fairly light); fish and vegetable terrines (though usually made with cream, you get very little in a slice); quails' eggs (without mayonnaise).

5.3.3.3. Domain of use of the reformulator

This reformulator has been accounted to work on the semantic and speech-act domain of use. It is excluded from the epistemic domain.

A) Content domain

399. HT3 1653 *Edinburgh undergraduate prospectus*. Miscellanea-domain: social science
The Faculty of Music offers courses in History of Music to students from other faculties who, while they have no professional musical ambitions, would welcome the opportunity to become more informed about the subject. No preliminary academic qualification in Music is necessary, though it is an advantage to have some practical experience of the subject at however modest a level. Some interest in listening to music on record, **or better still** in the concert hall, is pre-supposed. Within the course, certain more advanced options are available for those who have a good “H” or “A” pass in Music. History of Music 1: a general introduction to the subject, covering the social and religious functions of music in Western civilisation and the history of musical instruments.

B) Speech-act domain

400. JXW 1748 A dangerous diagnosis. Book-domain: imaginative
“I didn't think.” The French plait she wore was fine for everyday, but she hadn't given a thought to the more social occasions. “I'd better go and put my head under the shower and make use of some conditioner. I hadn't realised the effect the sea air could have on your hair”. “Why don't you just ring through to the hairdresser now? **Or better still**, pop down there?” suggested Kay.

5.2.4. Relationships between Discourse markers of Rectification

In the ensuing sections I will attempt to assess the relationships between the different DMs of RF that form the group of Rectification in order to come up with a tentative picture of the possible hypernyms, hyponyms, synonyms or exclusive reformulators of Rectification, along with the relations they hold with members from other groups.

An analysis of their pragmatic functions illustrates that all the markers in this group bring about a rectification of the previous message and present a new formulation that can convey a preferable alternative in the case of *or rather*, a more precise or accurate version of the previous S1 in the case of *(or) more accurately* and *(or) more precisely*, or a better alternative to it, in the case of *(or) better still-yet* and *(or) better said*. In other words, with *or rather*, the reformulation carries out a rectification and offers a preferable alternative, whereas with *or better still-yet* the alternative is not only preferable but marked by the speaker as being *better* than the previous one. With *(or) more precisely* and *(or) more accurately* the preferability of the S2 obtains due to the higher degree of precision or accuracy in the information being conveyed, which also makes the S2 also a better option than the S1. However, only *or rather* and *(or) better still-yet* can be placed along a continuum of preference, standing at the two opposing ends of the continuum with varying degrees of preferability. The instructions conveyed

by *(or) more accurately* and *(or) more precisely* can also point to a preferable S2 on the grounds that it is more precise or accurate. However, greater accuracy or precision cannot be strictly taken as a source for preference.

Below, I will set out to ascertain the possible relationships between the different reformulators that make up this sub-group of Rectification.

5.2.4.1. OR RATHER and (OR) BETTER STILL-YET

Or rather is the most neutral of the markers of rectification, inasmuch as the rectification simply brings about a preferable alternative to the previous discourse segment S1. From here, the rest of the DMs take on different nuances alongside that of rectification, namely rectification and fine-tuning for *(or) more accurately*, and *(or) more precisely*, and rectification and improvement for *(or) better yet-still*. Thus, each of these reformulators takes on a new nuance besides that of mere rectification that will determine the orientation of the new formulation.

For this reason, the environments of use of *(or) better still-yet* stand at one end of the continuum and convey a strong instruction in that they make explicit the preference for the second S2, which is presented as an improvement on the S1 and thus a better choice. Their instructions contrast heavily with those of *or rather* which merely presents an alternative formulation to the one in S1. Along these lines, their environments of use have been ascertained to stand in a position of mutual exclusiveness; that is to say, the interchangeability of *(or) better still-yet* by *or rather* might render the sequence grammatically acceptable, but the intended conveyance of improvement with regard to the information in S1 is lost. Likewise, replacement of *or rather* by *(or) better yet-still* will add a new nuance of preference that the speaker had not initially intended to convey. In those cases where *(or) better still-yet* do not combine with the disjunctive *or*,

the sense of an alternative improvement being provided is lost, and thus, interchangeability by *or rather* is even tougher to assess.

It is in those examples where the reformulation occurs at the content level when replacement of *(or) better still-yet* by *or rather* seems plausible. Still, the strong nuance of the speaker's preference for the second formulation is not conveyed if *or rather* is used, or at least it is not conveyed so strongly. This has led me to discard a possible interchangeability of these two DMs. Similarly, when *(or) better still-yet* is working at the speech-act level, replacement by *or rather* might be possible in some sequences but the orientation of the sequence would be rather different from the one intended by the speaker in its original use of *(or) better still-yet*. Let us consider the following examples that illustrate these claims:

401. C85 3101 The first of midnight. Book-domain: imaginative
It was the first time she had been into the city since that awful night of the cockfight back in February. She wished there was a window in front, so she could see Midnight sitting up on the driver's seat beside Hawkins.
Better still ✓
Or rather, X
More precisely, X
have him inside. Perhaps then she'd learn how he felt. They'd exchanged one brief glance only since she'd run from the stable that morning. The glance had told her nothing except that he had retreated into himself again. She'd acted like a silly hen. All fussy and bothered! But if she'd stayed?

In 401 above, the speaker rectifies the first formulation “so she could see Midnight sitting up on the driver's seat beside Hawkins” and presents a better one in S1 “have him inside”. Thus, there is a progression that goes, in this case, from merely sitting beside someone, to having someone inside. The preference for the second formulation is conveyed by means of the reformulator *better still*, which does not combine with *or* and thus does not present the S1 as a better alternative. In this context, *or rather* is excluded, along with *more precisely*, on the grounds that replacement by *or rather* would leave

the second formulation as a preferable alternative to the first one, which is not the case, since in this example the first formulation is rejected in favor of the second. Likewise, in 384 below, with the newly reformulated S2, the speaker is improving his/her first formulation and replacing the first one, “to agree on your story”, with “agree to tell the truth”. The counterparts of *better still*, namely, *or rather*, and *(or) more precisely* are ruled out in this context, where *or rather* would present the new formulation as a preferable alternative to the first formulation, and where *more precisely* would merely fine-tune the content of S1 but would not convey the nuance of improvement:

402. CJF 1625 A taste for death. Book-domain: imaginative
 He got up and began slowly pacing in front of her. He said: “I suppose I ought to have thought of that. I would have thought of it given time. Paul's death has been such an appalling shock. I don't think my mind is working properly yet.” “Then I suggest that it begins working. You and Barbara have to agree on your story.
Better still, √
Or rather, X
More precisely, X
 agree to tell the truth. I take it that Barbara was your mistress when you first introduced her to Hugo and that she remained your mistress after Hugo was killed and she married Paul.” He stopped and turned to her. “Believe me, Lady Ursula, it wasn't intended, it wasn't like that.”
403. FVW 1831 Time's arrow. Book-domain: imaginative
 I guarantee it... You could imagine him guaranteeing a lot of things, or at least saying he anteed things a lot. John said, “I do want to go on helping people.” “Make a clean break and resume elsewhere. It's another plus you have no family.”
“Better yet,” √
“Or rather, X
“More precisely,” X
 he said, “just leave New York.

Example 403 above entails a reformulation at the speech-act level, where the use of *better yet* brings about a new formulation, “just leave New York”, that is to be taken as an improvement on the first one, “make a clean break and resume elsewhere”. Replacement of *better yet* by *or rather* would render the sequence grammatically correct

but would not convey such a sense of improvement, or of one action being better than the other, thus presenting the S2 as a mere alternative to the S1. The use of *more precisely* is not adequate at the speech act level and would render the sequence ungrammatical.

Thus, it could be said that the uses of these reformulators are totally exclusive due to their specific instructions or the meaning they bring about in the reformulated segment. Although they can be placed along a cline of preferableness, the stronger degree of preference conveyed by *(or) better still-yet* cannot be effectively transmitted by that of *or rather*.

5.2.4.2. OR RATHER and (OR) MORE PRECISELY-(OR) MORE ACCURATELY

Interchangeability of *or rather* and *(or) more precisely-(or) more accurately* is also very difficult to assess. Again, the very specific instructions conveyed by these reformulators makes it almost impossible for them to share any of their environments of use. *Or rather* is unable to function in those environments of use exclusive of *(or) more precisely*, that is to say, when used within the epistemic domain, and in those environments of exclusive use of *(or) more accurately*, namely, in environments of counterfactual statements. A glance at some of the examples provided in 5.2.2.2. (sections B) and C)) accounts for the impossibility of use of *or rather* in these environments. Some examples are repeated here to illustrate these claims. Thus, examples 404-6 illustrate the unacceptability of *or rather* in cases of counterfactual statements, where its counterpart *(or) more precisely* seems to be excluded as well. The rest, examples 407-410, illustrate the use of *(or) more precisely* on the epistemic domain and also account for the unacceptability of *or rather*:

404. It is not 5 o'clock.
a. More accurately, √
b. Or rather, X
 it is 6.30
405. This isn't 3% fat-free.
a. More accurately, √
b. Or rather, X
 it is 5% fat-free.
406. This bag weighs 5 pounds.
a. More precisely, √
b. Or rather, X
 it weighs 5.6. pounds
407. I'm totally convinced that she's wrong in what she's doing
a. more precisely, √
b. or rather,
 I know it for sure.
408. I think that they should put an end to the whole situation before it gets out of hand.
a. More precisely, √
b. Or rather, ?
 I think that they should stop seeing each other for a while till things get back to normalcy.
409. A: I think I saw Sheila last week at the cattle fair in Garfield.
 B: Sheila? She can't have been in town last week.
 B:
a more precisely, √
b. or rather, X
 She couldn't have been at the fair because she was spending the week in NY.
410. I believe that Julie will pass the exam.
a. more precisely, √
b. or rather, ?
 I'm firmly convinced that she'll ace the exam, after all she's studied.

Now, it remains to be assessed whether interchangeability of these reformulators is possible in those environments of use shared by (*or*) *more accurately* and (*or*) *more precisely*, namely, when a recharacterization of the previous S1 is effected, the rendition of which is a *more precise* or *accurate* piece of information. Thus, the speaker, rather

than aiming to present a better or much more preferable formulation, is interested in being more exact in what s/he says. After a careful observation of examples obtained from the corpus, it can be concluded that *or rather* stands in a position of exclusiveness with regard to the shared environments of *(or) more precisely* and *(or) more accurately*. Most of the examples surveyed indicate that replacement of *(or) more precisely-accurately* by *or rather*, although rendering the sequence grammatically correct does not explicitly convey that a fine-tuning is being carried out on the previous S1. Let us consider the following examples that help illustrate these claims. Example 411 is a clear indication of the unacceptability of *or rather* in environments where the second formulation is explicitly more precise or accurate in the information transmitted. In this example the information that the wines were American is fine-tuned and specified into Californian. Likewise, examples 412-418 show that replacement by *or rather* would not capture the nuance of fine-tuning:

411. BM2 355 The alternative religion. Book-domain: belief and thought
The other night I was asked to a wine tasting. It is hard to know how to comport yourself on such an occasion, the choice appearing to be between solemnity and frivolousness, with nothing in between. The wines under examination were American,
or more accurately-more precisely, ✓
or rather, X
Californian.
412. ARD 174 Screen. Periodical-domain: arts
As a starting point for thinking about the novelistic of television, I would propose a chronotope which, while retaining the centrality of character, frees space and time to a much greater extent from the strict service of narrative logic.
More precisely-more accurately, ✓
Or rather, X
I would propose a chronotope, definitive for the development of a specific televisual novelistic, for which the foundational element is an interruptable time
413. BNV 874 Pilot. Periodical-domain: leisure
Landing configuration and associated speed (80 kt) must be stabilized at 500 ft height at the latest. Right after that you'll learn that once the bird is stabilised in

the dive it's all too easy to be a bit late recovering and end up pulling g. Again, that's a neat example of what flying the TBM 700 is all about: speed control,
or more precisely-more accurately, √
or rather, X
controlling the airspeed at which events happen.

414. C8V 105 Doubt. Book-domain: belief and thought
The 'Square One Principle' Jesus challenged the Jews of his day with a searching question: 'How can you have faith so long as you receive honour from one another, and care nothing for the honour that comes from him who alone is God?' Ostensibly their faith was solely in God, but that faith was only nominal. In reality their faith was in each other.
More precisely/more accurately, √
Or rather, X
their nominal faith in God was supported and accredited by a closed system of mutual human honouring which made the need for any honour from God superfluous. We should ask similar questions of ourselves, particularly those of us who are western Christians. What sort of faith do we have?
415. ANU 1507 Pity the nation: Lebanon at war. Book-domain: world affairs
The Maronites would later insist that the Palestinians had helped to destroy Lebanon's democratic freedom. But as Arafat and his colleagues knew full well, the Lebanese state was not beholden to anything so exotic as parliamentary democracy. For Lebanon was run by the zaim
(or, more accurately/more precisely, √
(or rather, X
zuama), the "leaders", the powerful feudal chieftains whom the Lebanese would describe as "honoured families" but whom the average Westerner would quickly identify as mafiosi.
416. GVR 232 Offences against public order. Book-domain: social sciences.
The Divisional Court concluded that nothing in that statement of facts constituted a threat, and the conviction was quashed. It would appear from the report of Hudson that the defendant had simply overbalanced in his excitement. But suppose he had deliberately pushed those in front of him. Can the actual use of deliberate force constitute a threat,
or more accurately-or more precisely √
or rather X
"threatening behaviour?". The question will assume practical significance because of the potential overlap with the offence of violent disorder, to which section 4 constitutes an alternative offence.
417. A1A 727 Exploding English. Book-domain: Arts
Unlike Leave's, Winter's deconstruction of tradition proved too extreme to have even a temporary lodgement in the academy, though his readings of sixteenth-century poetry have had some influence, and a theorist such as Gerald Graff

acknowledges a debt to Winters, who was his teacher. It remains to show why genuine criticism is not at home in the academy;

or, more precisely-more accurately, ✓

or rather, X

why it is irreconcilable with pedagogic practice. Criticism, I take it, is an activity that occurs between equals, whatever its object. The critic is an unusually acute and well-informed reader, but there should be equality of esteem between the critic and other readers.

418. A5X 354 Independent, electronic edition 1989-10-14: Travel pages. Periodical-domain: leisure

From The Good Skiing Guide reports I estimate that for those with a taste for Cabernet-Sauvignon, a budget of \$30 a day would not be extravagant, adding another \$400. Lift pass \$200. Total, excluding tuition and equipment, \$1,600. For that I could have three separate weeks in Alpine chalets. So, where does this leave us or,

more precisely-more accurately, ✓

or rather, X

me? Back where I started, with concerns about snow.

5.2.4.3. (OR) MORE PRECISELY-(OR) MORE ACCURATELY and (OR) BETTER STILL-YET

Interchangeability of the reformulators (*or*) *more precisely-accurately* and (*or*) *better still-yet* is not plausible due to the specific instructions that these DMs convey. Reformulators from the rectification and improvement, and rectification and fine-tuning sub-groups have exclusive uses, and although they all carry out a recharacterization and rectification of the previous S1 or some of its constituents, the newly reformulated S2 is presented as a fine-tuning of S1 in the former and as an improvement in the latter. Thus, the speaker's preference for a particular new formulation is made more explicit in the case of markers from the group of rectification and improvement, inasmuch as their use explicitly conveys the preferability for the second formulation as a better option. Moreover, reformulators such as (*or*) *better-still*, (*or*) *better yet* and (*or*) *better said*, are pervasive in the speech-act domain, especially with the reformulation of imperatives, whereas their counterparts for the fine-tuning group are more difficult to find in these

environments. Likewise, *(or) better yet-still* have not been seen to work at the epistemic level.

5.2.4.4. OR RATHER and THAT IS TO SAY-IN OTHER WORDS

The relationship between these reformulators has been assessed in the section dealing with the relations between markers of explanation and other groups.

6. CONCLUSIONS

6. CONCLUSIONS

In this dissertation I have attempted to provide a definition of the notion of reformulation in English in order to first elaborate a reasoned taxonomy of a group of English Discourse Markers of Reformulation and its main sub-classes; and second, to describe the lexical units that make up two of its sub-groups, the reformulators of Explanation and the reformulators of Rectification. It was my aim to compensate for the existing dearth of studies on the notion of reformulation and the lexical units that display such a function in English, and consequently, to contribute to the existing research on the wider field of Discourse Markers.

After a revision of the pertinent literature on DMs and on reformulators in languages such as English, French and Spanish, I have defined English Discourse Markers of Reformulation as a pragmatic class, that is to say, lexical expressions drawn from the syntactic classes of conjunctions, adverbs and prepositional phrases that signal a sequential relationship between the interpretations of the discourse segment they are embedded in, namely the S2, and the previous segment, S1. Reformulators conceptually signal where the discourse is heading and have a meaning that does not affect the truth-conditions of the sentence they host. In this light, I have characterized Discourse Markers of Reformulation as a naturally occurring sub-group of Elaborative DMs drawing on Fraser's (2002) classification of these units. Reformulators effect a recharacterization of the message conveyed by the whole previous discourse segment S1, or one of its constituents. The recharacterization of the message in S1 gives rise to the different sub-groups of Discourse Markers of Reformulation, namely:

1. Explanation,
2. Rectification,
3. Conclusion
4. Summary of the S1.

A detailed analysis of two groups of reformulators, namely the Explanation and Rectification groups, has allowed me to illustrate the main pragmatic functions or environments of use of the units in each sub-class under scrutiny, alongside a description of their syntactic and distributional properties. Likewise, the analysis of occurrences obtained through the analysis of the corpus has allowed me to delve into the relationships holding between these reformulators, as well as to organize these lexical units into a taxonomy of hypernyms, hyponyms, synonyms, and account for their exclusive environments of use by means of the application of the substitutability test (cf. Knott and Dale 1998 and Rossari 1994 for a similar approach). In the remaining sections I present the most relevant results with regard to the way reformulators of Explanation and Rectification are distributed within the reformulative space, and with regard to their environments of use and the way they relate with members from the same and different groups.

6.1. The Explanation Group

Within the general label of reformulators of Explanation, I have distinguished between markers of Clarification: *that is to say, in other words, technically speaking, in technical terms, in plain/simpler terms, to put it more simply/plainly*; markers of Identification with *viz.*, and *namely*; and reformulators of Illustration with *for example* and *for instance*. The latter sub-class has not been subjected to an in-depth analysis due to the fact that the pragmatic functions displayed by *for example* and *for instance* were clear and did not need further revision for the purpose of this dissertation. All these

reformulators recharacterize the previous discourse segment(s), S1, and bring about a newly reformulated S2 that explains it or some constituent of it, by means of a Clarification, an Identification or an Illustration.

After a detailed analysis of the markers that make up the Explanation group and the application of the substitutability test, the following conclusions have been drawn from the observation of occurrences within the BNC:

The analysis of the different functions of the reformulator *that is to say* has been carried out attending to whether its use concerns (i) the recharacterization of the semantic content of the S1 or some of its constituents, or (ii) the recharacterization of implied assumptions. A clear correlation has been observed between its use on the semantic intrasentential level, in so-called appositional uses, and its uses on the inferential intrasentential level, including whole utterances as the scope of the reformulation. In cases of semantic reformulation *that is to say* presents a host of functions realized in various discursive situations, namely, those of Explanation, Definition, Identification, Illustration, Rectification and Summarizing. In contrast, inferential uses of *that is to say* encompass the introduction of Conclusions-Consequences from the S1. As for its syntactic and distributional properties, *that is to say* has been seen to work in monologic and dialogic exchanges and in the three domains of use (Sweetser 1990) as outlined above.

The reformulator *that is to say* stands out as the hypernym of its counterparts, *in other words*, and of a sub-set of Discourse Markers that signal semantic simplicity and complexity within the sub-class of Clarification, *in simpler terms*, *in plain terms*, *simply speaking*, *to put it more simply* and *to put it more plainly*, on the one hand, and

technically speaking and in more technical terms, on the other. Thus, *that is to say* can occur in all their environments of use and can replace any of them.

With regard to the other sub-classes, *that is to say* shares environments of use with the category of Identification, whose most representative reformulators are *viz.* and *namely*. *That is to say* can replace *viz.* and *namely* in almost all their environments of use but replacement of *viz.*, or *namely*, by *that is to say* is not possible in those environments in which reference is assigned by means of an Illustration presented in the S2. Thus, *that is to say* seems to be restricted in this environment, where *viz.* and *namely* occur naturally. In conclusion, the uses of *that is to say* and *viz.-namely* are contingently substitutable.

As far as the group of markers of Illustration is concerned, *that is to say* shares some environments of use with *for example-for instance*, although their main uses stand in a position of total exclusiveness. Replacement of *for example-for instance* by *that is to say* is certainly difficult to assess due to the more general instructions conveyed by the former. It still remains to be elucidated whether the use of *that is to say* with a sense of Illustration is pervasive in the language, since only a total of four examples have been recorded, where *that is to say* is used to illustrate the S1 or some aspect of the S1. Thus, these markers could be said to be contingently substitutable, and thus their uses overlap in certain environments, as was the case for *that is to say* and reformulators from the Identification group.

As for the reformulator *in other words*, it has been shown to function on two main levels of analysis, (i) on the semantic and (ii) on the inferential level. Similarly, there is a clear correlation between its use on the semantic level within the intrasentential domain, in so-called appositional uses, and on the inferential level within the

intrasentential domain, including whole utterances as the scope of the reformulation. Likewise, in cases of semantic reformulation *in other words* manifests a host of functions realized in various discursive situations, namely, those of Explanation, Definition, Identification, Rectification, Summary and Introduction of restrictions, all of which are circumscribed to the content or propositional domain of use of the reformulator. *In other words* is excluded from environments of Illustration in which *that is to say* can occur naturally.

On the contrary, on the inferential level, the main function is that of introduction of a Conclusion from shared assumptions in the S1. The conclusion can be a proper conclusion, an epistemic conclusion or a speech-act conclusion. As far as the domain of use is concerned, the reformulator *in other words* has been ascertained to operate on the three levels identified by Sweetser (1990). Moreover, *in other words* can also function in monologic and dialogic exchanges.

The reformulator *in other words* stands out as the hypernym of the sub-class of markers of Clarification signaling semantic simplicity and complexity, namely, *in simpler terms*, *in plain terms*, *simply speaking*, *to put it more simply* and *to put it more plainly*, and *technically speaking* and *in more technical terms*, respectively.

The relationship holding between the different units on the two ends of the cline complexity-simplicity is one of exclusiveness, since it is impossible to replace one by the other, and substitutability is not even an issue. In contrast, the hypernym *in other words* is possible in both environments, that is, when either simplicity or complexity is signaled. Suffice it to say that the replacement of any of the above-mentioned reformulators by *in other words* renders the sequence grammatically correct, and thus the basic function of Explanation is maintained.

In other words shares some environments of use with the markers of Identification *viz.*, and *namely*. Although it is not normally one of its most common functions, *in other words* is sometimes used to assign reference to some indefinite S1 but it is totally unacceptable in environments of Illustration.

As for the reformulators of Identification, *namely* and *viz.*, it can be concluded, after analyzing how they function in naturally occurring language, that both reformulators share almost the same environments of use, namely, assignment of Time, Place and Personal reference to an indefinite S1, as well as that of Identification of a definite S1. The only feature that distinguishes them is the possible use of the former in spoken registers and in mid sentence and the fact that the latter is restricted to the written register and initial position. The overall effect the use of both reformulators brings about is a higher degree of specificity in the S2, a fact that rules out their use in those cases where the S2 is more indefinite or ambiguous than the S1. Notwithstanding, in these environments of use *that is to say* can occur naturally, since its use does not necessarily have to introduce a more specific discourse segment than the previous S1.

Despite sharing most of their environments of use, it has been observed that these reformulators are different in the way they assign reference to the S1 by means of an Illustration. Whereas with the use of *viz.*, the Illustration presented can involve just one example or more than one to illustrate some aspect presented in the S1, the use of *namely* seems to be found only in those cases where more than one example is introduced. Thus, *viz.*, and *namely* cannot be said to be synonymous *per se*, and it is thus more accurate to state that *viz.* stands in a relation of hypernymy with regards to its hyponym *namely*, since it subsumes all the uses of the latter.

The reformulators of Identification and Illustration normally display mutually exclusive uses. Results from the analysis, however, point out that on some occasions these markers share specific environments of use. These cases are restricted to examples where the identification of S1 or some aspect of it is general or broad and it is codified by means of an illustration or example.

However, I consider that these cases are exceptions that confirm the rule and that they should be viewed with caution and studied further if data runs counter to mine. The instructions conveyed by both reformulators of Identification and Illustration are different, with markers of Identification signaling a greater degree of specificity and reference assignment, and those of Illustration signaling the mere illustration of a claim from a wider range of possible examples.

As for the relationships of markers of Explanation with reformulators from other sub-classes of Explanation, it should be noted that *that is to say* shares some environments of use with markers from the Conclusion group. In fact, it has been assessed that this reformulator can be replaced by *thus*, *so* or *in conclusion* in certain environments of use, namely, when introducing a conclusion, along with its counterpart *in other words*. This use of *that is to say* is not a new one, as has been stated in the review of the literature. In fact, Spanish authors such as Casado (1991) equate the use of Spanish *o sea* to that of Inferential or Implicative markers.

However, to say that *that is to say* and *in other words* can replace all the uses of markers of Conclusion is too strong a claim. Thus, in my opinion, they merely share some environments of use. Further research into the groups of Conclusion and Summary, alongside a more detailed analysis of the reformulators that make up these two groups might help corroborate more exhaustively how markers from both groups

relate with markers of Explanation, especially with *that is to say* and *in other words*. Thus, *that is to say*, as well as *in other words* are contingently substitutable with markers from the Conclusion group.

Similarly, *that is to say* also occurs in some environments of use which are similar to the ones in which we find the sub-classes of Neutral Rectification: *or rather*, and the markers from the Rectification and Fine-tuning group, such as *(or) more accurately* and *(or) more precisely*, especially when they operate on the semantic or propositional level. Thus, *that is to say* can be replaced by *or rather* in those environments where the reformulation is minimal and entails a slight change in the semantic content of the first S1. The same is true of *(or) more accurately* and *(or) more precisely*. The environments of used shared by these reformulators involve cases of slight reformulation where a certain semantic resemblance between the contents of S1 and S2 still holds, and they are thus contingently substitutable.

Replacement by members from the sub-class of Rectification and Improvement is not possible with *that is to say*, since the recharacterization they bring about is very different. The replacement of one by the other might leave us with a grammatically correct sequence, but the recharacterization conveyed by the use of one or the other is lost, especially, in the cases of *(or) better still-yet*, where the reformulation explicitly signals a rectification and improvement on the previous S1 or some aspect of it.

In other words is, however, excluded from environments of Rectification and Improvement, and thus replacement does not take place between these markers. It has been observed that it can be used with a nuance of Rectification or Rectification and Fine-tuning in some of the occurrences analyzed.

The rest of the reformulators from the groups of Identification and Illustration stand in a position of mutual exclusiveness with regard to the markers of Rectification.

The following diagrams illustrate the relationships sketched above between reformulators from the group of Explanation.

Diagrams 1-6 illustrate the relationships between the reformulator *that is to say* and its counterparts from the groups of Explanation, as well as with reformulators from the groups of Identification, Illustration and Rectification.

Diagram 1 presents a general layout of the functions displayed by *that is to say* and *in other words*, and illustrates how some of the functions are shared by both markers, and how some others are exclusive of one or the other.

Diagram 2 focuses on the relationships between *that is to say* and a sub-group of reformulators that signal semantic simplicity or complexity and which stand in a position of hyponyms with regard to both *in other words* and *that is to say*.

Diagram 3 shows the relationships between *that is to say* and markers of Illustration, *for example-instance*, and markers of Identification, *viz.-namely*, respectively.

Diagram 4 explores the relationships between *that is to say* and markers of Rectification, with *or rather*, *(or) more precisely-(or) more accurately* and *(or) better still-yet*.

Diagram 5 examines the relationship between *that is to say* and markers of Summary and Conclusion.

Diagrams 6-9 examine the relationships between *in other words* and markers of Identification, Illustration, Rectification, Conclusion and Summary.

DIAGRAM 1. DISCOURSE MARKERS OF EXPLANATION

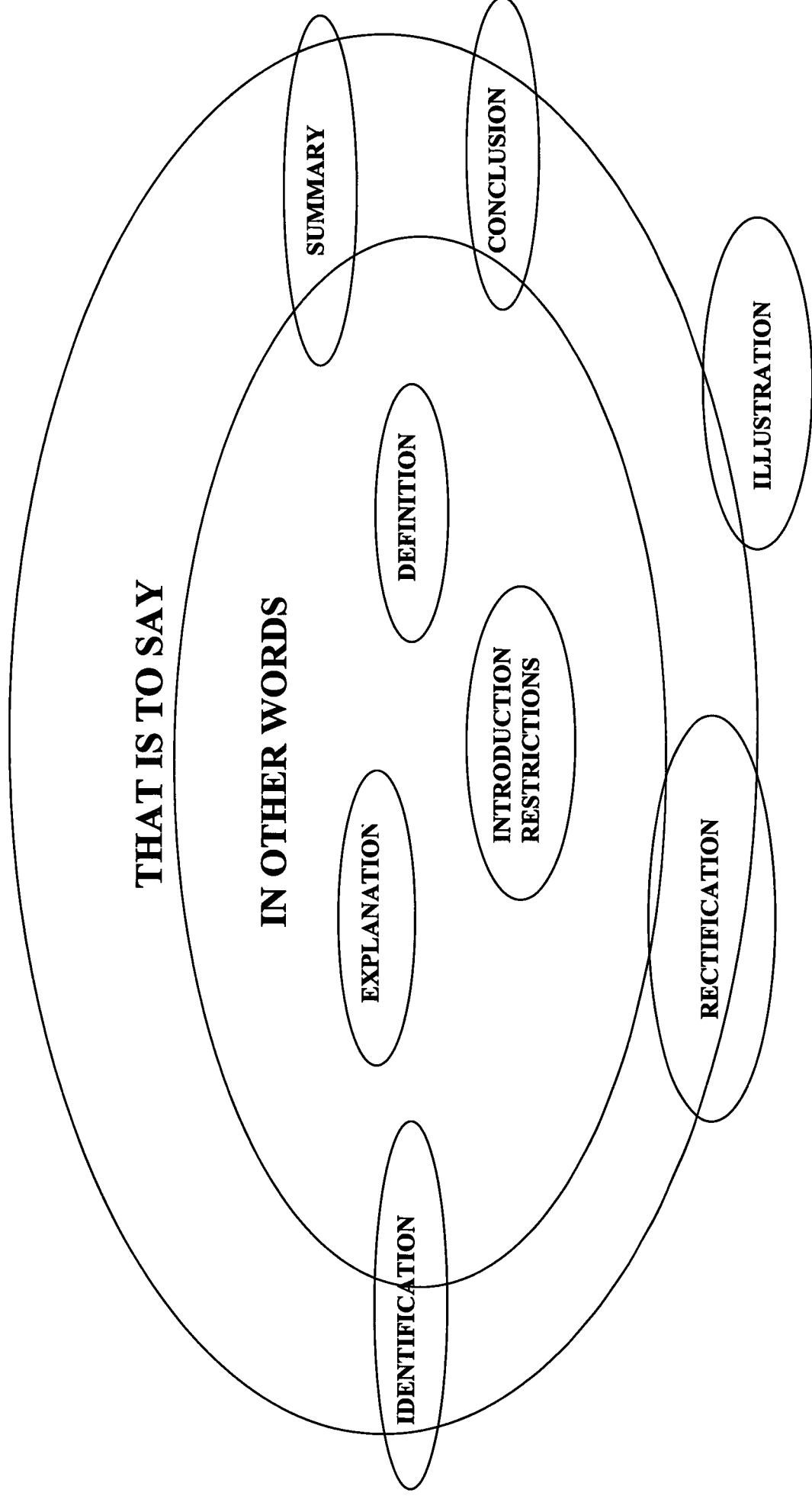


DIAGRAM 2. *THAT IS TO SAY* AND MARKERS THAT SIGNAL *COMPLEXITY* AND *SIMPLICITY*

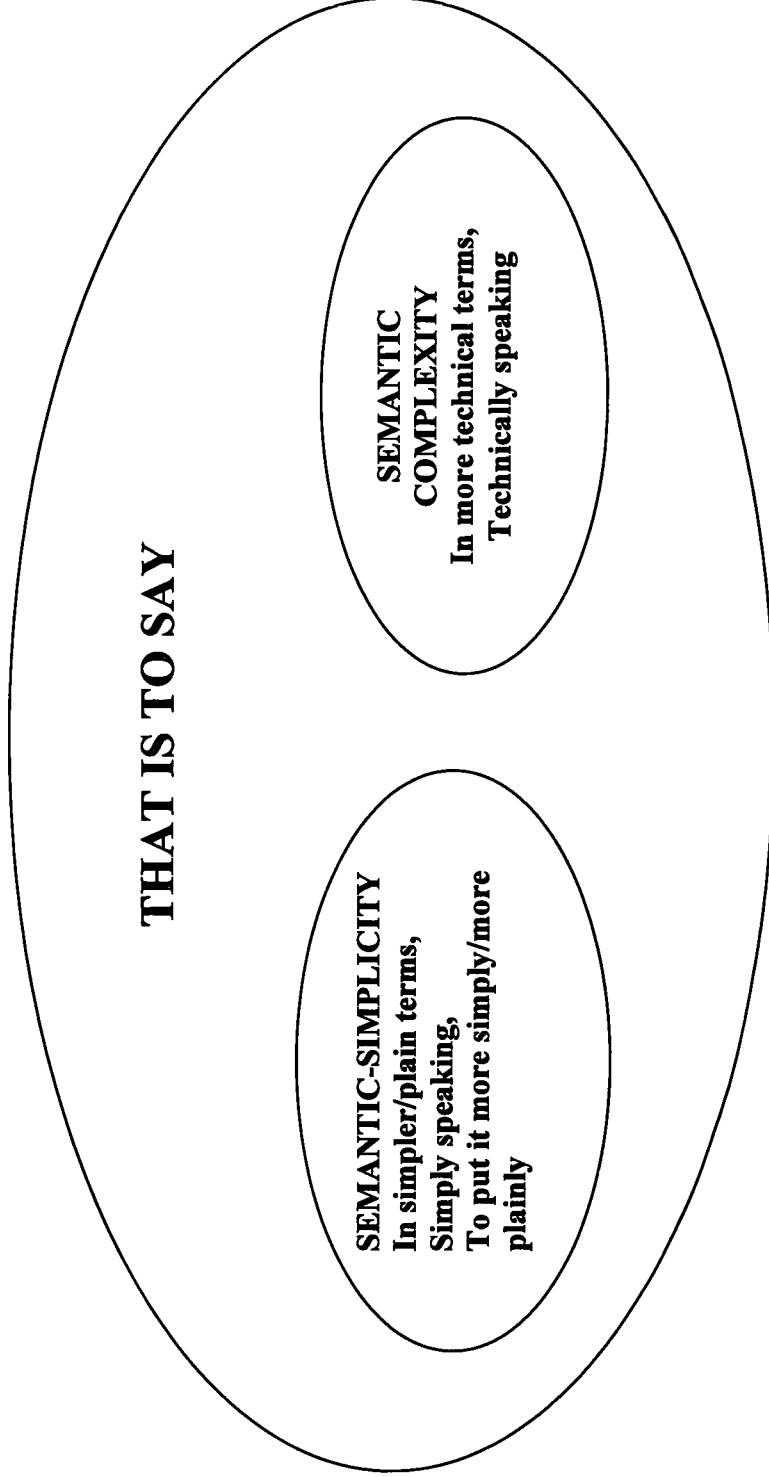


DIAGRAM 3. THAT IS TO SAY AND MARKERS OF IDENTIFICATION AND ILLUSTRATION

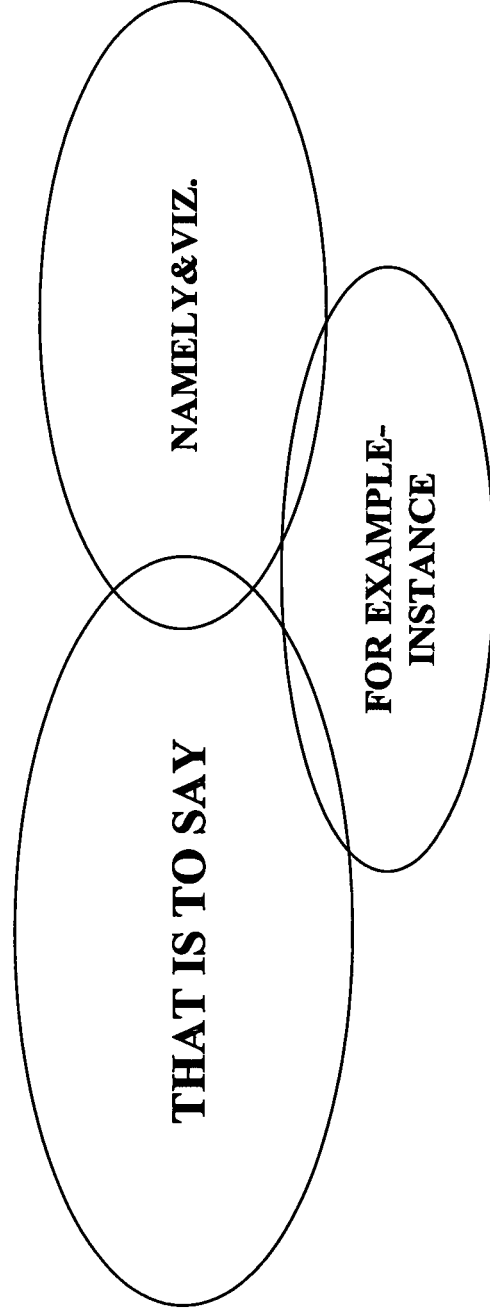


DIAGRAM 4. THAT IS TO SAY AND MARKERS OF RECTIFICATION

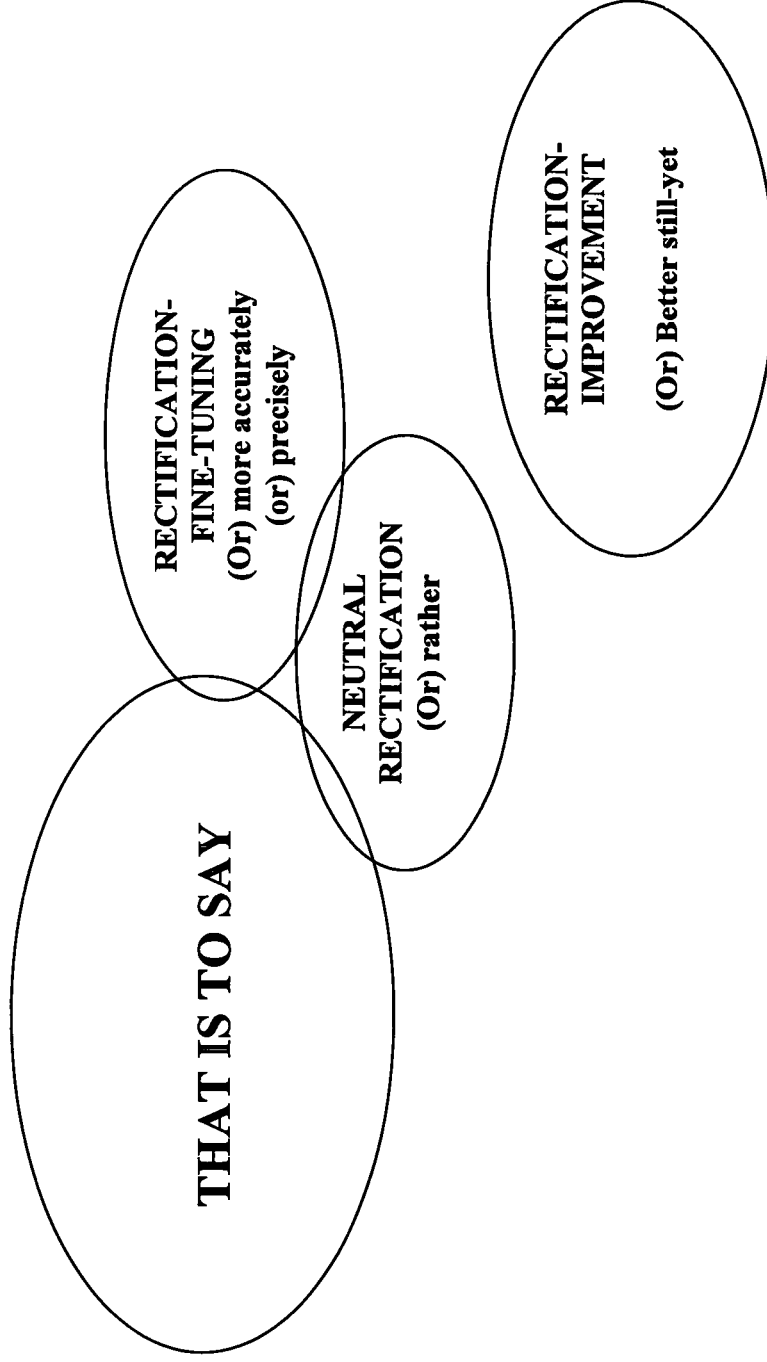


DIAGRAM 5. THAT IS TO SAY AND MARKERS OF SUMMARY AND CONCLUSION

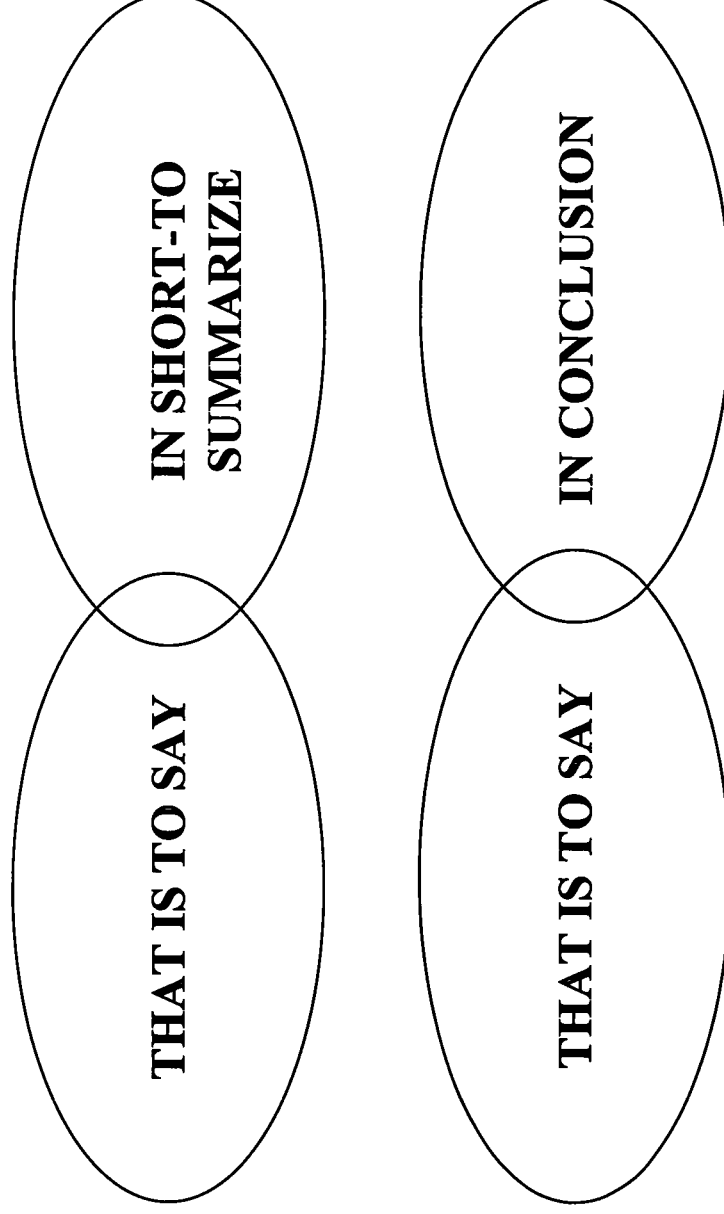


DIAGRAM 6. *IN OTHER WORDS* AND ITS SEMANTIC COUNTERPARTS

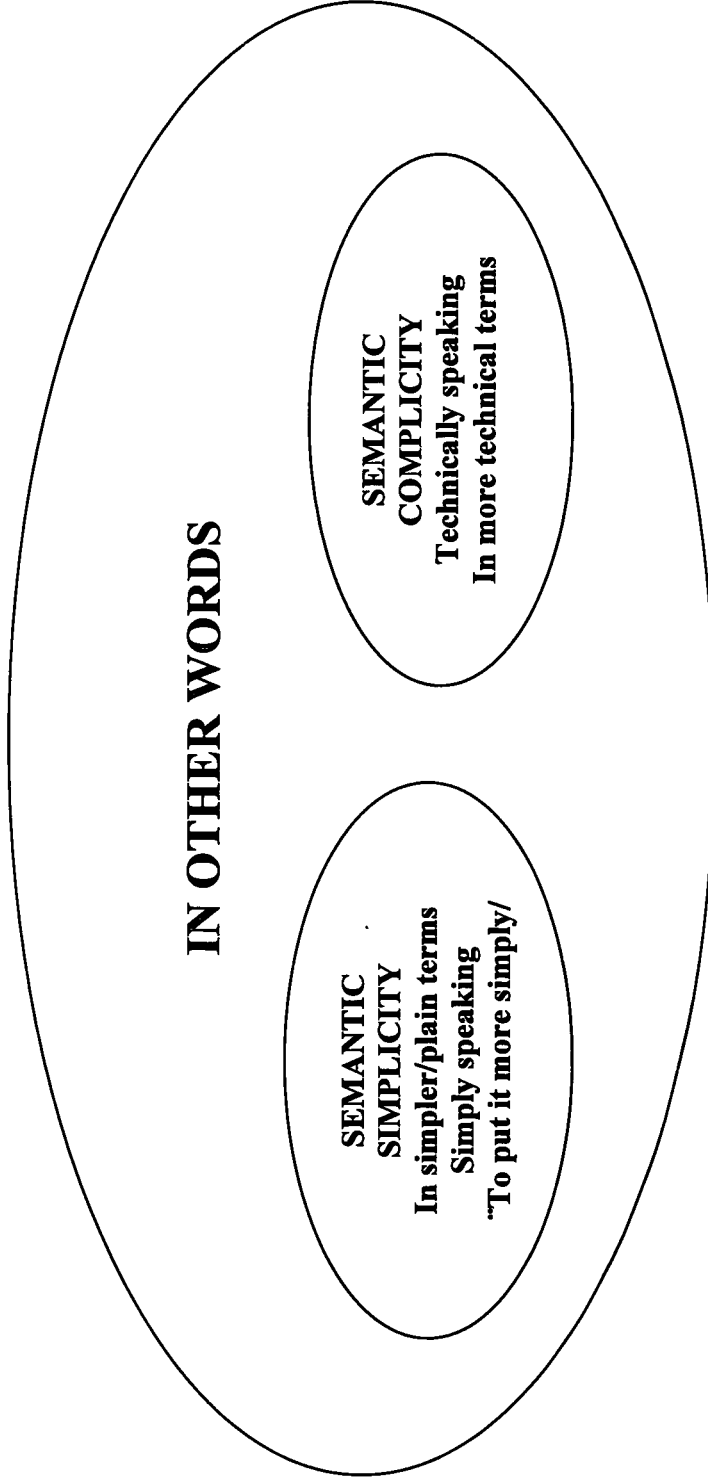


DIAGRAM 7. IN OTHER WORDS AND MARKERS OF IDENTIFICATION-ILLUSTRATION

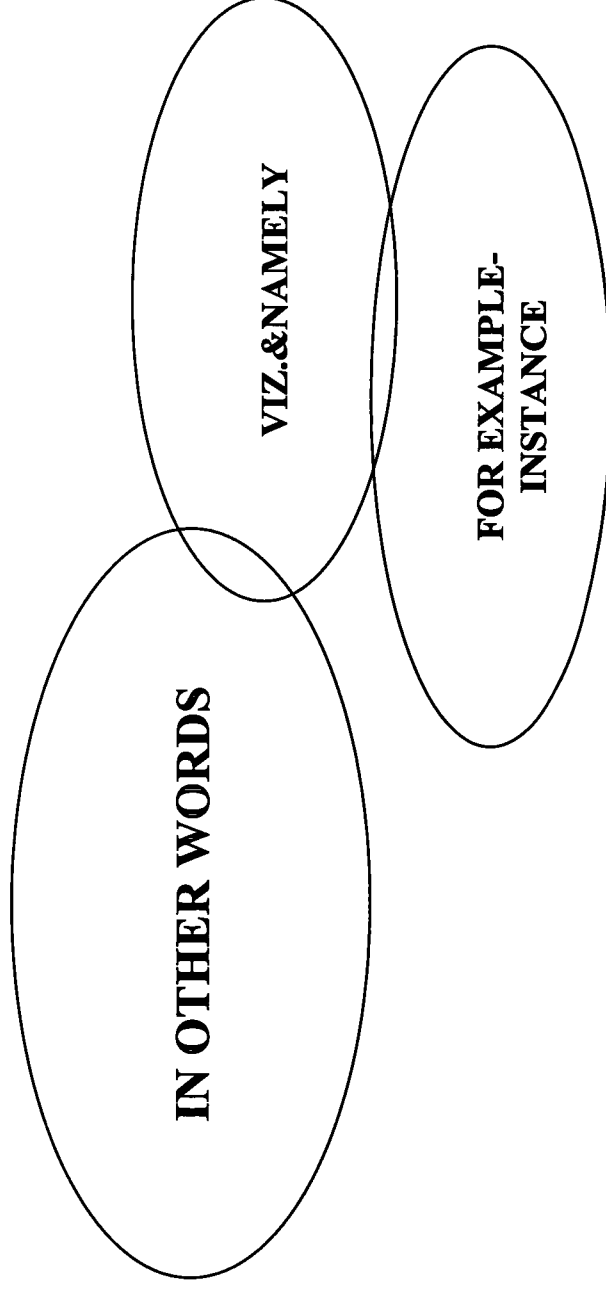


DIAGRAM 8. IN OTHER WORDS AND MARKERS OF RECTIFICATION

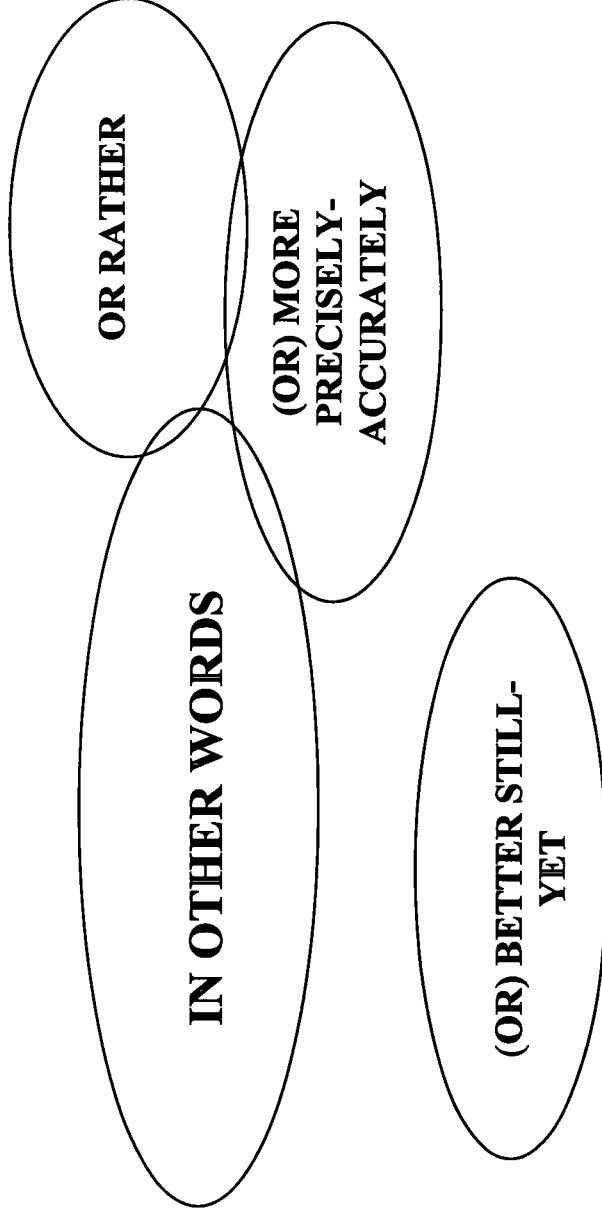
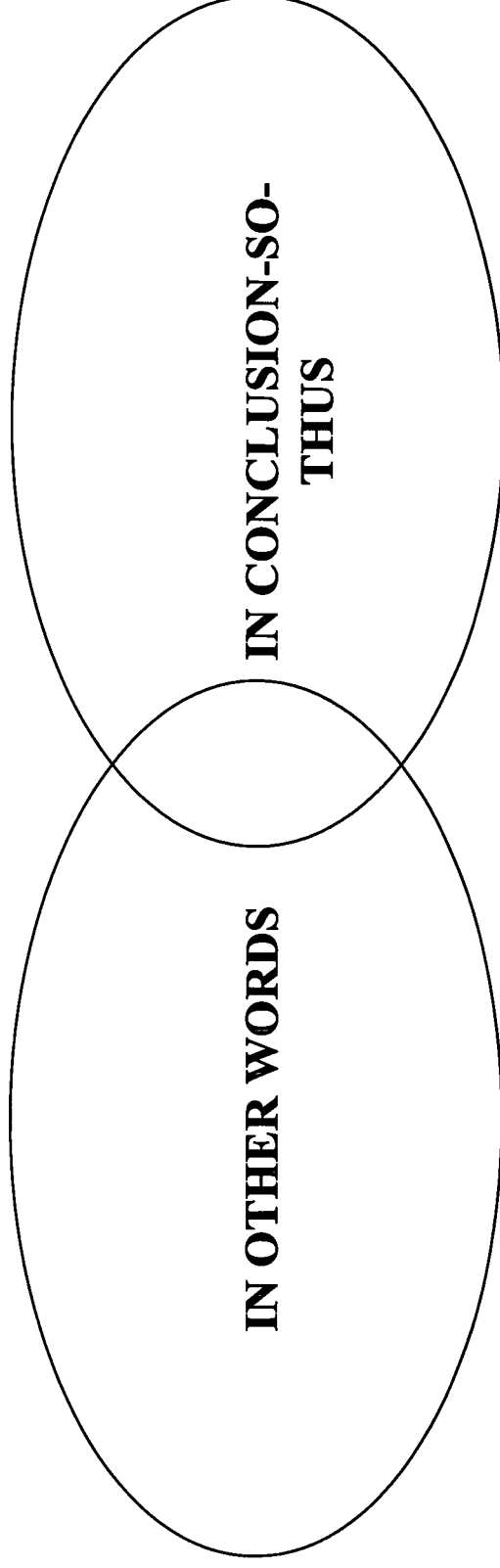


DIAGRAM 9. IN OTHER WORDS AND MARKERS OF CONCLUSION-CONSEQUENCE



6.2. The Rectification group

Within the general category of Rectification, I have distinguished three main sub-groups of reformulators, namely, markers of Neutral Rectification with *or rather*, markers of Rectification and Fine-Tuning, *(or) more precisely*, *(or) more accurately*, and markers of Rectification and Improvement with the lexical units *(or) better still-yet*. Thus, the recharacterization carried out in the S1 can result in a newly reformulated S2 whose message is rectified, rectified and fine-tuned, or rectified and improved with respect to that of S1. As was the case with markers of Explanation, markers of Rectification also show appositional uses, where the rectification normally entails utterance constituents, and cases where the rectification entails the whole discourse segment. As far as the markers of Rectification are concerned, it should be noted that the main tool of analysis employed to differentiate markers from different sub-classes has been that of domains of usage.

Thus, a marker such as *or rather* has been found to work within the speech-act domain, and within the content domain, and it is less clearly used within the epistemic domain. *Or rather* is the neutral or default reformulator within the Rectification group. The rectification it carries out normally ranges from presenting a mere alternative to the S1, to cases where the newly reformulated S2 is presented as an alternative to the S1 but its message contrasts or is totally irrelevant to that of S1. *Or rather* is normally found in appositional uses, where the reformulation concerns utterance constituents and is normally a mere rectification of the previous S1. When *or rather* is used in the speech-act domain, the reformulation concerns the whole utterance or previous S1. With *or rather*, the speaker is merely signaling a default rectification of the S1 or some aspect of it, but no preference for the second formulation is explicitly conveyed, hence the label of Neutral or Default Rectification that I have chosen for this marker.

With the reformulators of Rectification and Fine-tuning, *(or) more precisely* and *(or) more accurately*, the speaker signals that a more fine-tuned piece of information is being presented in the newly reformulated S2.

They are both used within the content domain of use, whereas only the former occurs within the epistemic and speech-act domain of use.

(Or) more accurately seems thus restricted to introducing a reformulation at the semantic level. *(Or) more precisely* and *(or) more accurately* share some environments of use, especially, when the rectification brings about a fine-tuning of the semantic content of S1. In these uses, the reformulation carried out normally concerns utterance constituents and is thus partial. When the fine-tuning concerns cases of counterfactual statements and figures, a preference has been observed for the use of *(or) more accurately* over that of *(or) more precisely*.

Moreover, only *(or) more precisely* has been found in epistemic and speech-act domains of use, where the reformulation is total and involves whole utterances. In the speech-act domain, *(or) more precisely* seems to combine with imperatives or indirect speech-acts; and in the epistemic domain of use, it normally occurs with verbs of epistemic modality.

As for *(or) better still-yet*, these two markers have been accounted for in many cases of speech-act domains of use and content domain, and are completely excluded from the epistemic domain. The rectification they bring about is accompanied by an improvement in the S2, and thus, their use clearly indicates the speaker's desire to improve the content of S1, and his/her preference for the second reformulation. It has been observed that *(or) better still* is very common when the speaker is expressing his/her opinions or providing the hearer with some piece of advice, where his/her

involvement in what is being stated is greater than it would be with the use of its counterparts from the group of Rectification.

Or better still-yet is used in the content domain, where the rectification and improvement normally involves utterance constituents, whereas uses in the speech-act domain are the most common and normally involve whole utterances.

Thus, substitutability is pretty much reduced to the markers *or rather* and *(or) more accurately* and *(or) more precisely* when they are used in the content domain, and more specifically when the reformulation slightly modifies or affects the semantic content of S1 or some of its constituents. Replacement or substitutability of the other markers is impossible due to the specific and exclusive environments of use that they display.

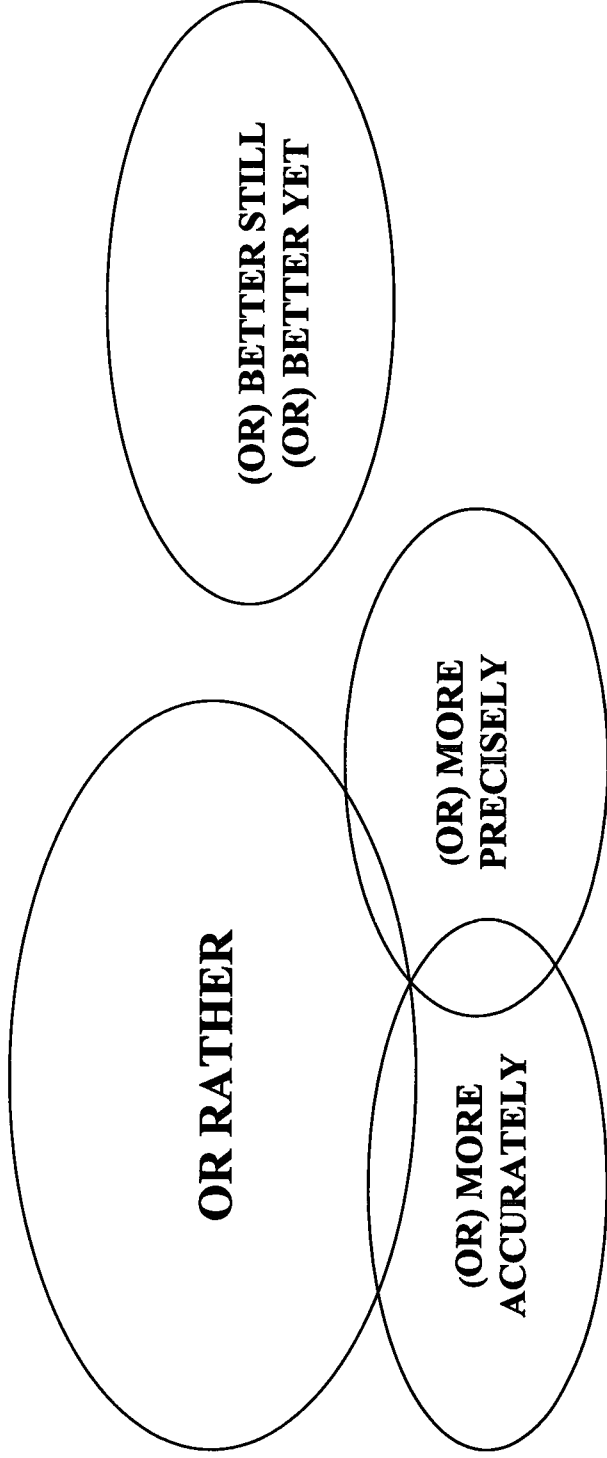
As for the relations between *(or) more precisely* and *(or) more accurately*, both reformulators share some of their pragmatic functions, especially when the reformulation affects the semantic content of the S1 or some aspect of it. However, they also display exclusive environments of use. These environments concern cases of reformulation of counterfactual statements, and the reformulation of a discourse segment that involves numbers or figures, in the case of *(or) more accurately*. Moreover, this reformulator can only operate on the propositional or content domain of use. With respect to *(or) more precisely*, this reformulator has been seen to function in the propositional, speech-act and epistemic domains of use. Thus, *(or) more accurately* and *(or) more precisely* are contingently substitutable in these environments of use, and synonymous when it comes to the rectification and fine-tuning of utterance constituents or whole discourse segments in the content domain of use, with the exceptions above mentioned.

As far as *(or) better still-yet* is concerned, this reformulator displays exclusive environments of use with regard to its counterparts within the same group, due to the

fact that the rectification it brings about clearly constitutes an improvement on the previous S1, and thus cannot be substituted by the more neutral *or rather* or the markers of fine-tuning, *(or) more accurately* and *(or) more precisely*. Although replacement by these markers might render the sequence grammatically correct, the nuance of improvement would be lost with the use of its counterparts of Rectification.

Diagram10 illustrates the relationships between markers of Rectification with regard to the environments of use they share.

DIAGRAM 10. DISCOURSE MARKERS OF RECTIFICATION



The results presented may require some revision if additional data run counter to those gathered here. But at the moment I believe the analysis carried out in the present dissertation and the conclusions gleaned from the observance of the use of a set of reformulators in naturally occurring language represents a thorough description of the way the class of English Discourse Markers of Reformulation divide up according to their meaning and the type of reformulation effected.

Considering the manner in which English Discourse Markers of Reformulation divide up the reformulative space, it would be worthwhile looking at other languages, both closely related and removed from English, to find out if the partitioning is similar, and if not, where the differences lie. This would be especially interesting for languages such as French and Spanish, where the study of reformulation and the units that help codify it constitute a long-standing issue in the study of Discourse Markers. Similarly, it would be interesting to compare the results obtained in the present work, arising from the observation of British English, with the use that speakers of American English make of the same groups of reformulators. Likewise, a thorough analysis of the other two groups of reformulators identified is needed in order to complete the picture of how English Discourse Markers of Reformulation behave, and thus contribute to our broadening of the knowledge about these lexical units.

7. REFERENCES

REFERENCES

- Abraham, W. (ed.) 1991. *Discourse particles: Descriptive and theoretical investigations on the logical, syntactic and pragmatic properties of discourse particles in German*. Amsterdam: Benjamin.
- Adam, J.M. & F. Revaz. 1989. "Aspects de la structuration du texte descriptif: les marqueurs d'énumération et de reformulation". *Langue française* 81, *Structurations de textes: connecteurs et de marcatons graphiques*, 59-98.
- Alcina, F. J. & J.M. Blecua. 1975. *Gramática española*. Barcelona, Ariel.
- Anscombe, J-C. 1983. "Pour a utant, p ourtant (et c omment): à p etites c auses, g rands effets", *Cahiers de Linguistique Française* 5, 37-84.
- Anscombe, J-C & O. Ducrot. 1983. *L' argumentation dans la langue*. Spanish version by Sevilla, J. & Tordesillas, M. 1994. *La argumentación en la lengua*. Madrid, Gredos.
- Antos, G. 1982. *Grundlagen einer Theorie des Formulierens*. Tübingen, Max Niemeyer.
- Archakis, A. 2001. "On discourse markers: Evidence from Greek". *Journal of Pragmatics* 33, 1235-1261.
- Auchlin, A. 1981. "Réflexions sur les marqueurs de structuration de la conversation". *Études de Linguistique Appliquée: L'analyse de conversations authentiques* 44, 88-103.
- Austin, J. 1962. *How to do things with words*. Oxford: Clarendon.
- Austin, J. L. 1978. *How to do things with words*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Bach, C. 1996. "Reformular: ¿Una operación argumentativa aséptica? Estudio del conector de reformulación prafrástica ès a dir". *Sendebarr* 7, 255-271.

- Bach, C. 1999. "Mecanismos de reformulación parafrástica del catalán". *Panorama Actual de la Lingüística Aplicada: Conocimiento, Procesamiento y uso del Lenguaje*.
- Bach, C. 2001. *Els connectors reformulatius catalans: anàlisi i proposta d'aplicació lexicogràfica*. Barcelona: IULA, Universitat Pompeu Fabra. Tesis Doctoral.
- Bazzanella, C. 1985. "L'uso dei conettivi nel parlato: alcune proposte". *Tai del Xvi congresso della SLI*.
- Bazzanella, C. 1986. "I conettivi di dorrezione nel parlato: usi metatestuali e fatici". *Parallela 2*, 35-45.
- Bazzanella, C. 1990. "Phatic connectives as interactional cues in contemporary spoken Italian". *Journal of Pragmatics* 14, 629-647.
- Bell, D. 1998. "Cancellative Discourse Markers: a Core/Periphery Approach". *Pragmatics* 8 (4), 515-541.
- Birner, K. 1994. "Konnektoren und Diskurskohärenz eine empirische Studie zum Erwerb adversativen Konnektors aber". In P.P. König & H. Wieggers. *Satz, Text, Diskurs. Akten des 27 linguistischen Kolloquiums* (Münster, 1992). Tübingen, Niemeyer, 303-310.
- Blakemore, D. 1987. *Semantic constraints on Relevance*. London, Basil-Blackwell.
- Blakemore, D. 1988. "So as a constraint on relevance". In R.M. Kempson (ed.). *Mental Representations. The interface between language and reality*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 183-196.
- Blakemore, D. 1989a. "Linguistic form and pragmatic interpretation: the explicit and the implicit". In L. Hickey (ed.). *The Pragmatics of Style*. London: Routledge, 28-51.

- Blakemore, D. 1989b. "Denial and contrast: a relevance analysis of *but*". *Linguistics and Philosophy* 12, 12-37.
- Blakemore, D. 1992. *Understanding Utterances*. London. Blackwell.
- Blakemore, D. 1993. "The relevance of reformulations". *Language and Literature* 2 (2), 101-20.
- Blakemore, D. 1994. "Relevance, poetic effects and social goals: a reply to Culpeper". *Language and Literature* 3 (1), 49-59.
- Blakemore, D. 1995. "On so-called discourse connectives". Unpublished lecture.
- Blakemore, D. 1996. "Are apposition markers discourse markers?", *Journal of Linguistics* 32, 325-347.
- Blakemore, D. 1997. "Restatement and exemplification: a relevance theoretic reassessment of elaboration". *Pragmatics and Cognition* 5, 1-19.
- Blass, R. 1990. *Relevance relations in discourse*. Cambridge, CUP.
- Brinton, Laurel J. 1996. *Pragmatic markers in English: Grammaticalization and discourse functions*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Briz Gómez, A. 1993a. "Los conectores pragmáticos en español coloquial (I): su papel argumentativo". *Contextos* XI, 21/22, 145-188.
- Briz Gómez, A. 1993b. "Los conectores pragmáticos en español coloquial (II): su papel metadiscursivo". *Español Actual* 59, 39-56.
- Briz Gómez, A. 1995. "Comentario argumentativo de un texto coloquial. La incidencia de los conectores pragmáticos". *Review of Applied Linguistics* 107-108, 113-142.
- Briz Gómez, A. 1996. *El español coloquial: Situación y uso*. Madrid. Arco.

- Briz Gómez, A. & A. Hidalgo. 1998. "Conectores pragmáticos y estructura de la conversación". In M. A. Martín Zorraquino & E. Montolío, (eds.). *Marcadores discursivos: Teoría y Práctica*. Madrid: Arco, 122-142.
- Briz Gómez, A. 2000. *Cómo se comenta un texto coloquial*. Barcelona, Ariel.
- Brockway, D. 1982. "Connecteurs pragmatiques et principe de pertinence". *Languages* 67, 7-22.
- Bühler, K. 1967: 1934. *Teoría del lenguaje*. Madrid, Revista de Occidente.
- Burton-Roberts, N. 1975. "Nominal apposition", *Foundations of Language* 13, 391-419.
- Burton-Roberts, N. 1994. "Apposition". In R.E. Asher & J.M.Y. Simpson (eds.). *The Encyclopaedia of Language and Linguistics*. Pergamon Press and Aberdeen University Press, 184-187.
- Carlson, L. 1984. *'Well' in dialogue games: A discourse analysis of the interjection 'well' in idealized conversation*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Carnicer, R. 1983. *Desidia y otras lacras en el lenguaje de hoy*. Planeta, Barcelona, 15-16.
- Carston, R. 1995. "Conjunction, explanation and relevance". *Lingua* 90, 27-48.
- Carston, R. 1997. *Pragmatics and the Explicit-Implicit Distinction*. PhD Thesis, University College London.
- Carter, R. A., & M. J. McCarthy. 1997. *Exploring Spoken English*. Cambridge: CUP.
- Casado Velarde, M. 1991. "Los operadores discursivos *es decir, esto es, o sea y a saber*: valores de lengua y funciones textuales". *Lingüística Española Actual* 13, 87-116.
- Casado Velarde, M. 1993. *Introducción a la gramática del texto en español*. Madrid, Arco.

- Chafe Wallace, J. 1982. "Integration and involvement in speaking, writing and oral literature". In D. Tannen (ed.). *Spoken and written language*. Norwood, NJ: Ablex, 35-53.
- Charolles, M. & D. Coltier. 1986. "Le contrôle de la compréhension dans une activité rédactionnelle: Éléments pour l'analyse des reformulations paraphrastiques", *Pratiques* 49, 51-66.
- Cohen, R. 1984. "A computational theory of the function of clue words in argument understanding". In Proceedings of the *10th International Conference on Computational Linguistics*, 251-258.
- Cortés Rodríguez, L. 1991. *Sobre conectores, expletivos y muletillas en el español hablado*. Málaga, Ágora.
- Cortés Rodríguez, L. 1995. "Bibliografía: marcadores del discurso (I)", *EAC* 63, 63-82.
- Cortés Rodríguez, L. 1995. "Bibliografía: marcadores del discurso (II)", *EAC* 64, 75-94.
- Cuenca, M.J. 1991. *Les oracions adversatives*. Institut Universitari de Filologia Valenciana.
- Cuenca, M.J. 1990. "Els matisadors: connectors oracionals i textuals". *Caplletra* 13, 149-167.
- Culpeper, J. 1994. "Why relevance theory does not explain 'the relevance of reformulations'". *Language and Literature* 3, 43-48.
- De Beaugrade, R. & W. Dressler. 1981. *Introduction to Text Linguistics*. London: Longman.
- De Fina, A. 1997. "An analysis of Spanish *bien* as a marker of classroom management in student-teacher interaction". *Journal of Pragmatics* 28, 337-354.

- Domínguez García, M. N. 2001. *La organización del discurso argumentativo: los conectores*. Salamanca: Ediciones Universidad de Salamanca.
- Downing, A. & P. Locke. 1992. *A University Course in English Grammar*. New York. Prentice Hall.
- Downing, A, Moya Guijarro, J & J.A. Albentosa Hernández. 1998. *Patterns in Discourse and Text*. Cuenca: Ediciones de la Universidad de Castilla-La Mancha.
- Downing, A, Moya Guijarro, J & J.A. Albentosa Hernández. 2000. *Talk and Text. Studies on Spoken and Written Discourse*. Cuenca: Ediciones de la Universidad de Castilla-La Mancha.
- Ducrot, O. et al. 1980. *Les mots du discours*. Paris.
- Ducrot, O. 1983. “Opérateurs argumentatifs et visée argumentative”. *Cahiers de Linguistique Française 5: Connecteurs pragmatiques et structure du discours (actes du wème Colloque de Pragmatique de Genève)*. Genève, 7-36.
- Ducrot, O. 1986/1984. *El decir y lo dicho*. Barcelona, Piados.
- Ducrot, O. 1994. “Topoi y formas tópicas”. In J.C. Anscombe & O. Ducrot. *La argumentación en la lengua*. Madrid: Gredos, 216-233.
- Escandell Vidal, M.V. 1993. *Introducción a la pragmática*. Barcelona, Anthropos.
- Esgueva, M. & M. Cantarero. 1981. *El habla de la ciudad de Madrid: Materiales para su estudio*. Madrid. C.S.I.C.
- Espinal, Theresa. 1991. “The representation of disjunct constituents”. *Language* 67, 726-762.

- Erman, B. 1987. *Pragmatic Expressions in English: A study of you know, you see and I mean in Face-to-face Conversation*. (Stockholm Studies in English 69). Stockholm: Almqvist&Wiksell.
- Erman, B. 2001. "Pragmatic markers revisited with a focus on *you know* in adult and adolescent talk". *Journal of Pragmatics* 33, 1337-1359.
- Faerch, C. & G. Kasper. 1982. "Phatic, metalingual and metacommunicative functions in discourse: Gambits and repairs". In N.E. Enkvist (ed). *Impromptu speech: A symposium*. Abo, Abo Akademi, 71-103.
- Faerch, C. & G. Kasper. 1984. *Ja und? -og hva' sa? -a contrastive discourse analysis of gambits in German and Danish*". In J. Fisiak (ed). *Contrastive linguistics*. The Hague: Mouton, 69-105.
- Fernández Fernández, F. 1980. "Los conectores de frase en inglés y en castellano". *Filología Moderna* 68-70, 157-221.
- Fischer, K. 1998. "Validating semantic analysis of discourse particles". *Journal of Pragmatics* 29, 111-127.
- Fløttum. 1994. "À propos de *c'est-à-dire* et ses correspondants norvégiens". *Cahiers de Linguistique Française* 15, 109-130.
- Franck, D. 1980. *Grammatik und Konversation*. Königstein/Ts. (scriptor).
- Fraser, B. & W. Nolen. 1981. "The association of deference with linguistic form". *International Language of Social Language* 27, 93:109.
- Fraser, B. 1990. "An approach to discourse markers", *Journal of Pragmatics* 14, 383-395.
- Fraser, B. 1995. "Types of English discourse markers". *Acta Linguistica Hungarica* 38, (1-4), 19-33.

- Fraser, B. 1996a. "Pragmatic markers". *Pragmatics* 6 (2), 167-190.
- Fraser, B & M. Malamud-Makowski. 1996b. "English and Spanish contrastive discourse markers" *Language Sciences* 8 (3-4) 863-881. Also in K. Jaszczolt & K. Turner (eds.). *Contrastive Semantics and Pragmatics*. Vol. II: Discourse Strategies. Oxford: Elsevier Science Ltd., 363-881.
- Fraser, B. 1998. "Contrastive discourse markers in English". In Y. Ziv & A. Jucker (eds.). *Pragmatics and beyond: Discourse markers*. Amsterdam: Benjamins, 301-326.
- Fraser, B. 1999. "What are discourse markers?". *Journal of Pragmatics* 31, 931-952.
- Fraser, B. 2001. "The case of the empty S1". *Journal of pragmatics* 33, 1625-1630.
- Fraser, B. 2002a. "The Sequencing of Discourse Markers in English". (draft) Communication presented in Boston University.
- Fraser, B. 2002b. "A Theory of Discourse Markers". Unpublished manuscript.
- Fox Tree, J.E., & J.C. Schrock. 1999. "Discourse markers in spontaneous speech: Oh what a difference an "oh" makes". *Journal of Memory and Language* 40, 280-295.
- Fuentes Rodríguez, C. 1987. *Enlaces extraoracionales*. Sevilla, Alfar.
- Fuentes Rodríguez, C. 1990. "Procedimientos intradiscursivos: decir y los explicativos". *Sociolingüística andaluza* 5. Sevilla: Universidad de Sevilla, 103-123.
- Fuentes Rodríguez, C. 1993. "Conclusivos y reformulativos". *Verba* 20, 171-196.
- Fuchs, C. 1994. *Paraphrase et énonciation*. Paris: Orphys.
- Gaulmyn, M.M. 1987. "Reformulation et planification metadiscursives". In J. Cosnier & C. Orechioni. (eds.). *Decrire la Conversation*, 168-198.

- Giora, R. 1995. "A text-based analysis of non-narrative texts". *Theoretical linguistics* 12, 115-35.
- Giora, R. 1997. "Discourse coherence and theory of relevance. Stumbling blocks in search of a unified theory". *Journal of Pragmatics* 27, 17-34.
- Giora, R. 1998. "Discourse coherence is an independent notion: A reply to Deirdre Wilson". *Journal of Pragmatics* 29, 75-86.
- Greenbaum, S. 1969. *Studies in English Adverbial Usage*. London: Longman.
- Gregori Signes, C. 1996. "'Bueno, hasta luego': El uso de bueno en conversaciones". *Miscelánea: A Journal of English and American Studies* 17, 157-170.
- Gregori Signes, C. 2000. *A genre based approach to daytime talk on television*. SELL Monographas 1: València. Universitat de València.
- Grice, H. Paul. 1975/1989. "Logic and Conversation" in Peter Cole & J. Morgan (eds.). *Syntax and Semantics 3: Speech-Acts*. New York: Academic Press, 41-58. Reprinted in H. Paul Grice. *Studies in the Way of Words*. Cambridge, Mass: Harvard University Press (1989)
- Grosz, B.J. & C.L. Sidner 1986. "Attention, intentions, and the structure of discourse". *Computational Linguistics* 12, 175-204.
- Gülich, E. 1970. *Makrosyntax der Gliederungssignale im gesprochenen Französisch*. München, Wilhelm Fink.
- Gülich, E. & Th. Kotschi. 1983. "Les marqueurs de la reformulation paraphrastique. Connecteurs pragmatiques et structure du discours (Actes du 2^{ème} Colloque de Pragmatique de Genève)". Genève, *Cahiers de linguistique française* 5, 305-351.
- Gumperz, J.J. 1982. *Discourse strategies*. Cambridge: CUP.

- Gumperz, J.J. 1984. "Communicative competence revisited". In D. Schiffrin (ed.), *Meaning, form, and use in context: Linguistic applications* (Georgetown University Round Table on Languages and Linguistics 1984). Washington DC: Georgetown University Press, 278-89.
- Halliday, M.A.K. 1970. "Language structure and language function". In J. Lyons (ed.). *New Horizons in Linguistics*. Penguin, 140-165.
- Halliday, M.A.K & R. Hasan. 1976. *Cohesion in English*. London, Longman.
- Halliday, M.A.K. 1985. *An Introduction to Functional Grammar*. London, Edward Arnold.
- Halliday, M.A.K. 1990. *Functional Grammar*. London, Edward Arnold.
- Hansen, Maj-Britt. 1997. "'Alors' and 'donc' in spoken French: a reanalysis". *Journal of Pragmatics* 28 (2), 153-187.
- Hansen, Maj-Britt. M. 1998a. "The semantic status of discourse markers". *Lingua* 104, 235-260.
- Hansen, Maj-Britt. M. 1998b. *The Function of Discourse Particles*. John Benjamins.
- Heritage, J. 1984. "A change of state token and aspects of its sequential placement". In J.M. Atkinson & J. Heritage (eds.). *Structures of social action*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 299-345.
- Hidalgo, A. 1997. *La entonación coloquial. Función demarcativa y unidades de habla*. Cuadernos de Filología. Valencia, Cuadernos de Filología.
- Hobbs, J.R. 1978. "Resolving pronoun references". *Lingua* 44, 311-338.
- Hobbs, J.R. 1979. "Coherence and coreference". *Cognitive Science* 3, 67-90.
- Hobbs, J.R. 1983. "Why is discourse coherent?". In F. Neubauer (ed.). *Coherence in natural-language texts*. Hamburg: Helmut Buske, 29-70.

- Hobbs, J.R. 1985. "On the coherence and structure of discourse". *Technical Report CSLI-85-37. Center for the Study of Language and Information*. Stanford University.
- Hölker, K. 1996. *Zur Analyse von Markern. Korrektur- und Schlußmarker des Französischen*. (Zeitschrift für französische Sprache und Literatur) Beiheft 15. Stuttgart: Steiner.
- Hovy, Eduard. H. 1994. "The Multifunctionality of Discourse Markers". *Presented at a Workshop on Discourse Markers*. Egmond-aan-zee, Holland.
- Infantidou-Trouky, E. 1993. "Sentential adverbs and relevance". *Lingua* 90 1/2, 69-90.
- Iten, C. 2000. "The relevance of Argumentation Theory". *Lingua* 110, 665-699.
- James, A. 1983. "Compromisers in English: A cross-disciplinary approach to their interpersonal significance". *Journal of Pragmatics* 3, 219-38.
- Jayez, J. 1983. "Quand bien même pourtant, pourtant quand même", *Cahiers de Linguistique Française* 4, 189-217.
- Javez, J. & C. Rossari. 2001. "The discourse level sensitivity of consequence discourse markers in French". *Cognitive Linguistics* 12 (3), 275-90.
- Jucker, A. H. 1993. "The discourse marker *well*: A relevance theoretic account". *Journal of Pragmatics* 19, 435-452.
- Jucker, A. H. & Y. Ziv, 1998. "Discourse markers: Introduction". In A. H. Jucker & Y. Ziv. (eds.). *Discourse markers: Description and theory*. Amsterdam: Benjamins, 1-12.
- Knott, A. 1993. "Using Cue Phrases to Determine a Set of Rhetorical Relations". In O. Rambow (ed). *Intentionality and Structure in Discourse Relations*. Proceedings of the ACL SIGGEN Workshop, 1-4.

- Knott, A. & R. Dale. 1994. "Using linguistic phenomena to motivate a set of coherence relations". *Discourse Processes* 18 (1), 35-62. Also available as *Technical Report RP-34-Human Communication Research Centre*, University of Edinburgh.
- Knott, A. 1996. *A Data-Driven Methodology for Motivating a Set of Coherence Relations*. Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Artificial Intelligence, University of Edinburgh.
- Knott, A. & C. Mellish. 1996. "A Feature-Based account of the relations signalled by Sentence and Clause Connectives". *Journal of Language and Speech* 39 (2-3), 143-183.
- Knott, A. & T. Sanders. 1998. "The classification of coherence relations and their linguistic markers. An exploration of two languages". *Journal of Pragmatics* 39, 135-175.
- Knott, A. 2001. "Semantic and Pragmatic relations and their intended effects". In T. Sanders, J. Schildperoord & W. Spooren (eds.). *Text Representation: linguistic and psycholinguistic aspects*. Benjamins, 181-196.
- Kohler-Chesny, J. 1981. "Aspects explicatifs de l'activité discursive de paraphrasage", *Revue Europeenne des Sciences Sociales* XIX 56, 95-114.
- Kotschi, T. 1997. "Review of Rossari, C. (1994): Les operations de reformulation". *Journal of Pragmatics* 27, 699-703.
- Kroon, C. 1995. *Discourse Particles in Latin. A study of nam, enim, autem, vero and at*. (Amsterdam Studies in Classical Philology 4). Amsterdam: Bieben.
- Kuppevelt, J. van. 1991. *Topic en comment: expliciete en impliciete vraagstelling in discourse*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Nijmegen.

- Kuppevelt, J. van. 1995a. "Topic structure, topicality and questioning", *Journal of Linguistics* 31, 109-147.
- Kuppevelt, J. van. 1995b. "Main structure and side structure in discourse". *Linguistics* 33, 809-833.
- Labarta Postigo, M. & J. Ortega Olivares. 2001. "La reiteración". In *Guía didáctica del discurso académico oral*. Edinumen. Madrid, 57-83.
- Lakoff, W. 1973. "Questionable answers and answerable questions". In B. B. Kachru, R. B. Lees, Y. Malkiel, A. Pietrangeli & S. Saporta (eds.). *Issues in Linguistics. Papers in Honor of Henry and Renée Kahane*. Urbana: University of Illinois Press, 453-467.
- Lamiroy, B. & P. Swiggers. 1991. "The status of imperatives as discourse signals". In S. Fleischman & L. R. Waugh (eds.). *Discourse pragmatics and the verb: The evidence from Romance*. London: Routledge, 120-146.
- Langacker. R. 1978. *Foundations of Cognitive Grammar: Theoretical prerequisites*. Stanford CA: Stanford University Press.
- Lavob, W. & D. Fanshel. 1977. *Therapeutic discourse: Psychotherapy as conversation*. New York: Academic Press.
- Lee, H-K. 2002. "Towards a new typology of connectives with special reference to conjunction in English and Korean". *Journal of Pragmatics* 34, 851-866.
- Lenk, U. 1998. "Discourse markers and global coherence in conversation". *Journal of pragmatics* 30, 245-257.
- Levinson. S.C. 1983. *Pragmatics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- López Alonso, C. 1990. "El discurso y el conector reformulativo: 'es decir'. *Filología Románica* 7, 87-97.

- López Folgado, V. 2000. "Los conectores del discurso: Comparación de dos modelos de análisis" In J. Bustos (ed). *Actas del I Congreso de Análisis del Discurso*. Universidad Complutense de Madrid.
- Mann, W.C. & S.A. Thompson. 1987. "Relational propositions in discourse". *Discourse Processes* 9, 57-90.
- Mann, W.C. & S.A. Thompson. 1988. "Rhetorical structure theory: A theory of text organization". *Text* 8 (3), 243-281.
- Martín Zorraquino, M.A. 1991. "Elementos de cohesión en el habla de Zaragoza". *I Curso de Geografía Lingüística de Aragón*. Zaragoza, Institución Fernando el Católico, 253-286.
- Martín Zorraquino, M.A. 1994. "Gramática del discurso. Los llamados marcadores del discurso". *Actas del Congreso de la Lengua Española*. Madrid, Instituto Cervantes, 709-720.
- Martín Zorraquino, M.A. & E. Montolío. 1998. *Los marcadores del discurso. Teoría y Análisis*. Madrid. Arco-Libros.
- Martín Zorraquino, M.A. & J. Portolés. 1999. "Los marcadores del discurso". En I. Bosque & V. Demonte (eds.). *Gramática descriptiva de la lengua española*, 4051-4213.
- Martin, J. 1992. *English Text: System and Structure*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Maschler, Y. 1994. "Metalanguaging and discourse markers in bilingual conversation". *Language in Society* 23, 325-366.
- Matsui, Tomoko. 2002. "Semantics and pragmatics of a Japanese discourse marker *dakara* (so/in other words): a unitary account". *Journal of Pragmatics* 34, 867-891.

- McCarthy, M.J. 1991a. "Conversation and Literature: Tense and Aspect". In J. Payne & J. Wheatley (eds.) *Linguistic Approaches to Literature*. Birmingham: Birmingham ELR.
- McCarthy, M.J. 1991b. *Discourse Analysis for Language Teachers*. Cambridge: CUP.
- McCarthy, M.J. 1993a. "Grammar, Discourse and the Fanzine". In Ikegami, Y. & M. Toyota (eds.). *Aspects of English as a World Language*. Tokyo: Maruzen Co., Ltd, 147-161.
- McCarthy, M. J. 1993b. "Spoken Discourse Markers in Written Text". In Fox, G., Hoey, M., & J. Sinclair (eds.). *Techniques of Description*. London: Routledge, 170-182.
- McCarthy, M. J. 1998. *Spoken Language and Applied Linguistics*. Cambridge: C. U. P.
- McCarthy, M.J., 2001. *Issues in Applied Linguistics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press
- Mederos Martín, H. 1988. *Procedimientos de cohesión en el español actual. Santa Cruz de Tenerife*. Publicaciones del Cabildo Insular de Tenerife.
- Mey, J.L. 1993. *Pragmatics. An introduction*. London, Blackwell.
- Meyer, Charles F. 1992. *Apposition in Contemporary English*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Moeschler, J. 1985. *Argumentation et conversation*. Paris: Hatier-Crédif.
- Moeschler, J. 1989. *Modalisation du Dialogue: Représentation e l'Inférence Argumentative*. Paris: Hermès.
- Moeschler, J., Luscher J.M. & A. Reboul (eds.). 1994. *Langage et pertinence: Référence temporelle, anaphore, connecteurs et métaphore*. Nancy: Presses Universitaires de Nancy.

- Moliner, M. 1983-1966. *Diccionario del uso del español*. Madrid. Gredos.
- Montolío Durán, E. 2001. *Conectores de la lengua escrita: Contraargumentativos, consecutivos, aditivos y organizadores de la información*. Ariel Practicum.
- Mortureux, M.F. 1982. "Paraphrase et métalangue dans le dialogue de vulgarization". *Language Française* 1, 54-78.
- Murat, M. & B. Cartier Breson. 1987. "C' est-a-dire ou la reprise interpretative", *Langue française* 73, *La reformulation du sens dans le discours*, 5-15.
- Murillo, S. 1999. "Some notes on the Informative Meaning of English Reformulatory Discourse Markers". *Proceedings of the XXII International Conference of AEDEAN*, 197-292.
- Murillo, S. 2000. "Polyphonic Aspects of English Explicatory Reformulative Discourse Markers". *Studium: Revista de Humanidades* 6, 207-219.
- Nicolle, S. 1998. "A relevance theory perspective on gramaticalización". *Cognitive Linguistics* 9 (1), 1-35.
- Noren, C. 1999. *Reformulation et conversation. De la sémantique du topos aux fonctions interactionnelles*. Uppsala, Uppsala University Press.
- Olivares Pardo, M. A. 2001. "Marcadores de Reformulación en francés y construcción de sentido". *Quaderns de Filologia. Estudis Lingüístics* VI, 219-243.
- Olivares Pardo, M.A. 2000. "Une approche du discours scientifique: reformulation des notions clés". In Gaston & J. Cascon (eds.). *Análisis del Discurso, monográfica*. Universidad de Granada, 171-190.
- Östman, J.-O. 1981. *You know: A discourse-functional approach*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.

- Östman, J.-O. 1995. "Pragmatic particles after twenty years". In B. Wärvik, S.-K. Tanskanen & R. Hiltunen (eds.). *Organization in discourse: Proceedings from the Turku Conference*. Turku: University of Turku, 95-108.
- Owen, M. 1981. "Conversational units and the use of web". In P. Werth (ed.). *Conversation and Discourse*. London, Croom Helm, 99-116.
- Paula, M.N. de. 1983. "Contribución al estudio de la aposición en español actual". *Verba*, Annex 20, Universidad de Santiago de Compostela.
- Pennock Speck, B. 1994. "The rhetoric of coherence, reformulation, repetition and augmentation of given information in newspaper texts". *Actas del Primer Encuentro Interdisciplinar sobre Retórica, Texto y Comunicación*. Cádiz, 227-230.
- Pennock Speck, B. 2001. *A Genre Approach to Re-entry patterns in Editorials*. València. Universitat de València.
- Polany, L. & R.J.H., Scha. 1983. "The syntax of discourse". *Text* 3, 261-70.
- Pons Bordería, S. 1998a. "Reformulación y reformuladores: A propósito de Les opérations de reformulation". *Oralia* 1, 183-198.
- Pons Bordería, S. 1998b. *Conexión y Conectores: el estudio de su relación en el registro informal de la lengua*. Cuadernos de Filología, Anejo XXVII. Facultat de Filologia. Universitat de Valencia.
- Pons Bordería, S. 2000. "Los conectores". In A. Briz & Grupo Val.Es.Co (eds.). *Cómo se comenta un texto coloquial*. Barcelona, Ariel, 193-220.
- Pons Bordería, S. 2001. "Connective/Discourse Markers. An Overview". *Quaderns de Filologia. Estudis Lingüistics* VI, 219-243.

- Portolés Lázaro, J. 1994. "La distinción entre los conectores y otros marcadores del discurso en español". *Verba* 29, 141-170.
- Portolés Lázaro, J. 1995a. "Diferencias gramaticales y pragmáticas entre los conectores discursivos *pero, sin embargo y no obstante*". *BRAE*, LXXV, Mayo-Agosto, 231-269.
- Portolés Lázaro, J. 1995b. "Del discurso oral a la gramática. La sistematización de los marcadores discursivos". In C. Rodríguez (ed). *I Simposio sobre el español coloquial (Aspectos del discurso oral)*. Almería, Universidad de Almería, 55-96.
- Portolés, J. 1998. *Marcadores del discurso*. Barcelona, Ariel.
- Quirk, R., Greenbaum, S., Leech, G. & J. Svartvik. 1972. *A Grammar of contemporary English*. London, Longman.
- Quirk, R. & S. Greenbaum. 1973. *A University Grammar of English*. London: Longman.
- Quirk, R., Greenbaum, S., Leech, G. & J. Svartvik. 1985. *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*. London: Longman.
- Rastier, F. 1987. *Sémantique interprétative*. Paris, Presses Universitaires Françaises.
- Rath, R. 1979. *Kommunikationspraxis. Analysen zur Textbildung und Textgliederung im gesprochenen Deutsch*. Göttingen (Vandenhoeck & Rupprecht).
- Redeker, G. 1990. "Ideational and pragmatic markers of discourse structure". *Journal of Pragmatics* 14, 367-381.
- Redeker, G. 1991. "Linguistic markers of discourse structure". *Linguistics* 29, 1139-1172.
- Rossari, C. 1990. "Projet pour une typologie des opérations de reformulation". *Cahiers de Linguistique Française* 14, 151-171.

- Rossari, C. 1994. *Les opérations de reformulation. Analyse du processus et des marques dans une perspective contrastive français contemporain*. Bern Lang.
- Rouchota, V. 1990. "But: Contradiction and relevance". *UCL Working papers in linguistics* 2, 65-81.
- Rouchota, V. 1995. "Discourse connectives: what do they link?". In. J. Harris & P. Backley (eds.). *UCL Working Papers in Linguistics* 7, 199-212.
- Rouchota, V. 1998. "Procedural Meaning and Parenthetical Discourse Markers". In A.H Jucker & Y. Ziv (eds.). *Discourse markers: Description and theory*, 97-126.
- Roulet, E. 1980. "Interactional markers in dialogue". *Applied Linguistics* Vol 1 (3), 224-233.
- Roulet, E. 1981. "Échanges, interventions et actes de langage dans la structure de la conversation". *Études de linguistique Appliquée* 44, 7-39.
- Roulet, E. et al. 1985. *L'articulation du discours en français contemporain*. Berna. Peter Lang.
- Roulet, E. 1986. "Complétude interactive et mouvements discursifs". *Cahiers de Linguistique Française* 7, 189-206.
- Roulet, E. 1987. "Complétude interactive et connecteurs réformatifs". *Cahiers de linguistique française* 8, 111-140.
- Roulet, E. 1991. "Vers une approche modulaire de l'analyse du discours". *Cahiers de Linguistique Française* 12, 53-81.
- Sanchez Macarro, A. & R. Carter (eds.). 1988. *Linguistic Choice across Genres*. John Benjamins Publishing Company, Amsterdam/Philadelphia.
- Sanders, T.J.M., Spooren, W. P. M., & L.G.M. Noordman. 1992. "Towards a taxonomy of coherence relations". *Discourse Processes* 15, 1-35.

- Sanders, T.J.M, Spooren, W.P.M., & L.G. M. Noordman. 1993. "Coherence relations in a cognitive theory of discourse of discourse representation". *Cognitive Linguistics* 4-2, 93-133.
- Schelling, M. 1982. "Quelques modalités de clôture: les conclusifs finalement, en somme, au fond, de toute façon", *Cahiers de Linguistique Française* 4, 63-106.
- Schiffirin, D. 1980. "Meta-talk: Organizational and evaluative brackets in discourse". In D. Zimmerman & C. West (eds.). *Language and social interaction. Special edition of Sociological inquiry* 50, 199-236.
- Schiffirin, D. 1987. *Discourse markers*. Cambridge University Press.
- Schourup, L. 1985. *Common discourse particles in English conversation: like, well, y' know*. New York: Garland.
- Schourup, L. 1999. "Discourse markers: an overview". *Lingua* 107, 227-265.
- Schwenter, S. 1996. "Some reflections on *o sea*: A discourse marker in Spanish". *Journal of Pragmatics* 25, 855-874.
- Shloush, Shelley. 1998. "A unified account of Hebrew *bekicur* in short: Relevance theory and discourse structure considerations". In A. H. Jucker & Y. Ziv (eds.). *Discourse markers: Description and theory*. Amsterdam: Benjamins, 61-82.
- Sinclair, J. McH., & R. M. Coulthard. 1975. *Towards an Analysis of Discourse*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Slakta, D. 1975. "L'ordre du text". *Études de linguistique appliquée* 19, 30-42.
- Spengler, N. 1980. "Première approche des marqueurs d'interactivité". *Cahiers de Linguistique Française* 1, 128-148.
- Sperber, D & D. Wilson. 1986/1985. *Relevance: Communication and Cognition*, Oxford. Basil Blackwell.

- Stati, S. 1987. "Connettivi interfrasali e coerenza pragmatica". *Parallela* 2, 309-316.
- Stati, S. 1990. *Le transphrastique*. Paris, Presses Universitaires de France.
- Steel, B. 1976. *A Manual of Colloquial Spanish*. SGEL. Madrid.
- Stubbs, M. 1983. *Discourse analysis: The sociolinguistic analysis of natural language*. Chicago. University of Chicago Press.
- Svartvik, J. 1980. "Well in conversation". In S. Greenbaum, G. Leech & J. Svartvik (eds.). *Studies in English Linguistics for Randolph Quirk*. London: Longman, 167-177.
- Svartvik, J. et al. 1989. *Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*.
- Swan, M. 1985. *Practical English Usage*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Sweetser, Eve. 1990. *From etymology to pragmatics: Metaphorical and cultural aspects of semantic structure*. Cambridge: CUP.
- Tanaka, Hiroaki. 1997. "In other words and conversational implicature". *Pragmatics* 7 (3), 367-387.
- Thomas, J. 1984. "Cross-cultural discourse as 'unequal encounter': towards a pragmatic analysis", *Applied Linguistics* 5 (3), 226-35.
- Ungeheuer, G. 1969. "Paraphrase und syntaktische Tiefenstruktur". *Folia Linguistica* 3, 178-227.
- Unger, C. 1996. "The scope of discourse connectives: Implications for discourse organization". *Journal of Linguistics* 32, 403-438.
- van Dijk, T.A. 1977a. *Text and context*. London: Longman.
- van Dijk, T.A. 1977b. "Connectives in text grammar and text logic". In T. van Dijk & J. Petofi (eds.). *Grammars and descriptions*. New York: De Gruyter Press, 11-63.
- van Dijk, T.A. 1979. "Pragmatic connectives". *Journal of Pragmatics* 3, 447-456.

- van Dijk, T. A. 1980. *Texto y contexto*. Madrid. Cátedra.
- Veiga, N. 1994-5. "Una aproximación a algunos marcadores con función textual de 'resumen', 'conclusión' y 'cierre'". *ELUA* 10, 349-390.
- Vigara Tauste, A. 1992. *Morfosintaxis del español coloquial*. Madrid. Gredos.
- Wahmhoff, S. 1981. "Die Funktion der Paraphrase in gesprächspsychotherapeutischen Beratungen". *Deutsche Sprache* 9, 97-118.
- Warner, R. 1985. *Discourse connectives in English*. New York: Garland.
- Watts, R. J. 1986. "Relevance in conversational moves: a reappraisal of *well*". *Studia Anglica Posnaniensia* 19, 37-59.
- Watts, R.J. 1989. "Taking the pitcher to the 'well': Native Speakers' Perception of Their Use of Discourse Markers in Conversation". *Journal of pragmatics* 13, 203-237.
- Wenzel, A. 1981. "Funktionen kommunikativer Paraphrasen. Am Beispiel von Gesprächen zwischen Bürgern und Beamten im Sozialamt". In P. Schröder & H. Steger (ed.). *Dialogforschung. Jahrbuch 1980 des Instituts für deutsche Sprache*. Düsseldorf, 385-401.
- Wierzbicka, A. 1986. "Introduction [to special issue on 'Particles']". *Journal of Pragmatics* 10, 519-534.
- Wilson, D. & D, Sperber, D. 1993. "Linguistic form and Relevance". *Lingua* 90, 1/2, 1-25.
- Zwicky, Arnold. M. 1985. "Clitics and particles". *Language* 61 (2), 283-305.

8. APPENDICES

8. APPENDICES

8.1. Appendix I

In Appendix 1 I illustrate the following properties for each of the English DM of RF under investigation in the present doctoral thesis:

- (i) **Distributional properties** of English DMs of RF: their occurrence in initial, medial or final utterance position.
- (ii) **Sentence types**: the occurrence of each DM of RF with declarative, interrogative or imperative types and combination of different types.
- (iii) **Scope** of the reformulator: partial and/or global reformulation.
- (iv) Use of the DM of RF in spoken or written registers.
- (v) **Sequencing or combination** of the DMs of RF under analysis with DMs from other paradigms, especially with *and*, *or*, *so*, *but* and *then*.
- (vi) **Domains of use** of the English DMs of RF: content, epistemic or speech-act level.
- (vii) The use of reformulators in **monologic** and/or **dialogic** exchanges.

Properties (i)-(iv) are illustrated in the first table, whereas the rest of properties are illustrated in individual tables for each marker from the two groups under investigation, namely reformulators of Explanation and reformulators of Rectification. In a later step, I provide an example of each of the properties illustrated in the tables of analysis.

REFORMULATORS OF EXPLANATION

Table 1: SYNTACTIC, DISTRIBUTIONAL PROPERTIES and SCOPE OF THE REFORMULATOR

	INITIAL POSITION						MEDIAL POSITION						FINAL POSITION						
	WRITTEN			SPOKEN			WRITTEN			SPOKEN			WRITTEN			SPOKEN			
	Partial	Total	D I I	Partial	Total	D I I	Partial	Total	D I I	Partial	Total	D I I	Partial	Total	D I I	Partial	Total	D I I	
THAT IS TO SAY	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
IN OTHER WD	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
NAMELY	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
VIZ.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

REFORMULATORS OF EXPLANATION

Table 2: SEQUENCING OF THE REFORMULATORS

	AND	BUT	OR	SO	THEN
That is	X	X	X	X	X
That is to say	X	X	X	X	X
Namely	X	X	X	X	X
Viz.	X	X	X	X	X
In other words	X	X	✓	✓	X
Technically sp.	X	X	✓	✓	X
In plain terms	X	X	✓	✓	X

REFORMULATORS OF EXPLANATION: DOMAIN OF USE

Table 3: DOMAINS OF USE and NUMBER OF SPEAKERS

REFORMULATORS OF EXPLANATION	CONTENT	SPEECH-ACT	EPISTEMIC	MONO-DIALOGIC
THAT IS TO SAY	OK	OK	OK	BOTH
VIZ	OK	X	X	Monologic
NAMELY	OK	X	X	Monologic
IN OTHER WORDS	OK	OK	OK	BOTH
IN PLAIN TERMS IN MORE TECHNICAL TERMS	OK	OK	X	BOTH

8.1.1. Discourse Markers of Explanation

8.1.1.1. THAT IS TO SAY

8.1.1.1.1. Syntactic, distributional properties and scope of the reformulator

I, WR, P, D

A04 938 Art criticism-a user's guide. Book-domain: arts.

The second half of the nineteenth century saw new standards achieved in art historical scholarship, both through the careful study of documents and by close scrutiny of works of art. The results of these studies were published extensively in catalogues of private and public collections, and in what in French are termed *catalogues raisonnés*, **that is to say** complete lists of artists' works. Such catalogues were important to scholarship and also to the art market.

J52 871 The blind matchmaker. Book-domain: natural science

There is a much published photograph, taken by the pilot of a small aeroplane, of what looks a bit like the face of Jesus, staring out of the sky. We have all seen clouds that reminded us of something-a sea horse, say, or a smiling face. These resemblances come about by single-step selection, **that is to say** by a single coincidence.

HXX 1357 Cnut. Book-domain: imaginative

Indeed, several tenth-century royal consorts are shadowy figures of doubtful legitimacy, and it is possible that Æthelred's first, who like Ælfgifu of Northampton never witnesses charters, was not a fully-married wife. Even so, churchmen must have disagreed with Cnut's behaviour, although perhaps many did so diplomatically, **that is to say**, silently. However much Cnut may have played the Christian king, he was, like other rulers, willing to turn a blind eye to church teaching when it suited him.

I, WR, P, IN

No examples have been found in the corpora of analysis. However, this occurrence is not difficult to imagine. Let us consider the following pre-fabricated example:

Are we dealing here with a case of orchietomy, **that is to say**, the removal of a testicle, or is it a simple case of inguinal hernia?

I, WR, P-T, IM

No examples were found but this sequence is not difficult to imagine:

Stay calm when he asks you. **That is to say**, do not raise your voice and maintain eye contact.

Bring us a bottle of white wine, **that is to say**, don't you bring us a Rioja. (as a reminder because she normally brings the wrong one)

Pick me up at 9, **that is to say**, after dinner.

Why don't you stop fooling around? **That is to say**, pull yourself together and face facts.

I, WR, T, D,

A0T 445 The pursuit of mind. Book-domain: belief and thought
Obviously enough, action is not all that is required for thought. We need input systems. In other words, the representations which exist before cognitive "representations" (in the "representational theory of mind" sense) are of the input system variety. **That is to say**, the infant must convert stimulation from light rays, sound waves, from the speech stream into the appropriate representational grist if it is to get the kind of information that it requires from the world; but this gleaning of information does not constitute thought.

I, WR, T, IN,

HJ1 17459 Rapid---ESRC grant abstracts. Miscellanea-domain: social science
These new data (it is hoped to test a total of approximately 2,500 to 3,000 children, of whom approximately 40-50% will be from one of these ethnic minorities) should provide answers to several questions: What is the relative standing of different ethnic groups on various tests? Does their performance vary with age, **that is to say**, do they catch up with or fall progressively further behind white children as they grow older?

I, WR, T, IM

HGW 1146 Home design. Book-domain: arts.
Independent switches for each light will make it easier to create the appropriate atmosphere. Fluorescent tubes are best for under cabinet/worktop lighting. They last much longer than incandescent tubes, offer more light per watt but need to be carefully chosen in the right colours for the most accurate presentation of food. **That is to say**, choose warm white de luxe (not just warm white) or cool white de luxe (not just cool white). There is no point in dimming fluorescent light; although it is possible, it is extremely costly and unnecessary. Mount tubes as close to the front of cabinets as possible and shield them with a baffle or small valance or cornice attached to the bottom of units.

I, SP, P, D

KRT 3132 Fox FM News: radio programme. Speech recorded in educational context.

The way forward, if it's the desire of the community to find more low cost houses for people to live in, in villages, I think the way is to give some incentive

to farmers and landowners to give er or to make land available. And as there isn't the money available to do it at full commercial price, in my view we should go for what they call cross-subsidy, **that is to say** that they give erm planning permission on a plot for some commercial housing on which the landowner can make some money, and in, a condition of that would be that part of that plot would be made available for low cost housing.

KRH 1305 Ideas in Action Programmes. Radio broadcast educational context. Moving inland a little bit, are there any significant problems which are caused by weathering or erosion? The major problem inland probably that affects general public is mass movement, that is to say where erm slopes en masse erm fail, **that is to say** sections of slope simply slip or move en bloc down erm the hillsides, and there are a, a number of occurrences where roads in particular have been cut or damaged erm in this way.

I, SP, P-T, IN

This occurrence was not found but it probably does occur. Consider the following fabricated examples:

When is Mike, **that is to say**, your boyfriend coming back from Italy?

Have you ever been in “dire straits”, **that is to say**, in great danger?

Is this situation, **that is to say**, being left alone the whole summer, affecting you negatively, or, on the contrary, are you happier than before?

I, SP, P, IM

No instance has been found within the corpus. However, this occurrence does occur:

Do it yourself, **that is to say**, cut it into pieces and then glue it together.

I, SP, T, D,

KRH 4461 Ideas in Action Programmes. Radio broadcast, educational context. Now I think this is a brilliant speech, but I have to admit that it is a speech which, in showing the egoism, the confusion and the self-deception of Eve, assumes a valid order which is being destroyed. **That is to say**, it assumes the hierarchical erm conception of God's world and the ethic of obedience, which, as we saw from that prose passage, underlies the conception of the fall as the central sin. And this point is even more clear-cut with Adam.

I, SP, T, IN,

JS9 164 Witshire Council: committee meeting. Speech recorded in public context

A: Can I just clarify then, how far do you imagine this being deferred, **that is to say** are you awaiting the outcome of the local government commission report.

B: No, I do believe that Mr 's report is coming to the March property er, sub-committee and then it will be the subsequent meeting of the policy and resources committee which will be at the end of March.

J86 159 Language and Literature Volume 2. Periodical-domain: arts

This confusion is the very essence of the concept of an 'allegory of reading'. De Man asks whether Proust's novel is 'the allegorical narrative of its own deconstruction'. **That is to say**, is it a coded account of its own contradictions that come out in reading? A gross tautology is at work here. If he answers his own question in the affirmative (which he clearly does) de Man will have read the text in a certain way and therefore construed it as an object, the discovery of which will then be used to validate the way in which the text has been read.

I, SP, T, IM

Although no example has been recorded, this occurrence is not difficult to imagine:

Do the chores before midnight. **That is to say**, wash the dishes, clean the fridge, water the plants and tidy the room.

M, WR, P, D

HGS 2749 Frankenstein unbound. Book-domain: imaginative

But organized science had allied itself with Big Business and Government; it had no interest in the individual-its meat was statistics! It was death to the spirit. As science had gradually eroded the freedom of time, so it had eroded the freedom of belief. Anything which could not be proven in a laboratory by scientific method-anything, **that is to say**, which was bigger than science-was ruled out of court.

M, WR, T, D

H9F 156 Political Sociology. Domain: social sciences

But although such classifications may sometimes be useful in guiding empirical research they do not seem to me to take up directly the most important questions, which are those concerning the significance of social movements in the process of reproduction and transformation of total social systems. They do not, **that is to say**, make a very large contribution to a theory of social movements. In order to understand how such a theory might be constructed we should begin by recognizing that social movements are essentially a phenomenon of modern societies.

F, WR, P, D

HRC 772 King hereafter. Book-domain: imaginative

“Except, of course, in any direction to do with fortifications or the requirements of war.” “The devotion that’s in it!” said Bishop Jon abstractedly. “Like Paul the hermit, alone like a bird on his rock, naked except for his hairs. Although I did hear he had a lad or two with him. Malduin, **that is to say.**”

8.1.1.1.2. Sequencing with DMs from other paradigms

That is to say does not combine with any of the markers from the rest of paradigms of DMs.

8.1.1.1.3. One or two speakers**-ONE SPEAKER:**

I think Sheila should have thought her decision over, **that is to say**, she should have taken more time to think about it.

-TWO SPEAKERS:

A: You look terrible! Did you sleep well last night?

B: Well, Paul and the kids were still home by midnight, and Sheila just came up with the great idea of organizing a karaoke party when I was already in bed....

A: **That is to say**, you didn’t get a wink.

8.1.1.2. IN OTHER WORDS**8.1.1.2.1. Syntactic, distributional properties and scope of the reformulator****I, W, P, D**

A6D 456 Sexual Dissidence. Book-domain: arts

The idea is that the person turns homosexual as a way of avoiding competition, conflict, or tension with a significant other. Freud cites one young man in relation to his father and another in relation to his twin, as well as the main case, a young woman in relation to her mother: “It, then, the girl became homosexual and left men to her mother (**in other words** “retired in favour of” her mother), she would hitherto remove something which had hitherto been partly responsible for her mother’s dislike’ (ix.385; cf. Tripp, *Homosexual Matrix*, 78-9, cited above, Chapter 1 2).

I, W, P, IN

A12 648 A ballet-maker's handbook. Book-domain: arts

Can certain individuals be directed in such a way that they stand out from the mass because they are the tellers of the story, the chief exponents in the drama or theme? Or do they play only a minor role which nevertheless gives a vital clue to the unfolding of the plot? Or must they remain part of the "mass", **in other words** the corps de ballet, because they are needed to create the proper atmosphere, state the location, suggest the mood and very often respond to whatever is taking place?

I, W, P, IM

FA0 189 Restructuring Britain: the economy in question. Book-domain: commerce

One important concern should be cleared up before proceeding. The powerful notion of the UK as the workshop of the world was always accompanied by the exhortation "export or die" **or, in other words**, "export manufactured goods or be unable to afford to buy imported food".

I, W, T, D

EFT 407 The Lion concise Bible Handbook. Book-domain: belief and thought

The biggest miracle in the Bible is the resurrection of Jesus from the dead. Some would say that the universe is such that a resurrection could not take place, and they would base this assertion on 'science'. But in view of the historical evidence for the resurrection, it would be more scientific to ask what light is thrown on the nature of the universe by the occurrence of such a resurrection. **In other words**, science does not disprove the resurrection: the resurrection is one of the facts which science must take into account.

I, W, T, IN

A0P 1289 Leonard Cohen: prophet of the heart. Book-domain: arts

(It was Lawrence who "blew my cover," he said, on finding that Leonard was failing to attend Law School lectures, which was all the more concerning as he had no scholarship to go there, only his family's financial backing.) It is this which suggests the secondary level. Was the pain, in fact, actually his father's as well as his own? **In other words**, was there not a feeling that, first through illness and then through his premature demise, he had been supplanted in his rights (through "natural" causation, we emphasise), much as Jacob supplanted Esau's rights so many centuries ago (through devious schemes).

I, W, T, IM

C8N 349 The Chocolate teapot. Book-domain: belief and thought

Now Jesus knew that Herod had killed John and that therefore this might be no empty threat. But this is how Jesus responds: "Go and tell that fox: I am driving

out demons and performing cures today and tomorrow, and on the third day I shall finish my work!" (Luke 13:32). **In other words:** "Go chase yourself, Herod. I'm going to keep doing what is right and no threats from you are going to stop me!".

I, SP, P, D

F7V 203 Personal Services: meeting of councillors. Recorded in public context
An and what about the disabled parking? Well there are a number of spaces that are in positions which could be used by disabled, **in other words**, they are not sort of, sandwich tight against other spaces and what's happened in the past is that erm when a need has arisen an and when perhaps there's been er generally a bungalow that has been er, occupied by somebody who's disabled then the housing department have erm modified that space I mean, wha what we've actually done is we've er, t

I, S, P, IN- IM (not found)

Although these two patterns have not been found within the corpus, combination with the imperative type is not difficult to imagine:

Have you ever got to know her well, **in other words**, her fears, her hobbies, her passions and interests?
ds,

I, S, T, D

F8B 67 Harlow Rotary Club: talk on engineering. Speech recorded in leisure context

But when we look at the positive side, and that's where we've got a plan a cunning plan if you watch Black Adder at all! A cunning plan, to do something about organising the careers' conventions. And this is where we've decided that what we really need is young engineers, in other words er, people who have just entered the profession itself to talk to the school children. **In other words**, I mean I'm retired and I mean the point is that my erm experience goes back into the er into the dark ages I can almost say because in these days, you probably realise, I mean if anybody buys a video you don't ask you don't look for the book of instructions you ask about a five year old kiddy how to programme it!

I, S, T, IN

H48 102 British Rail quality assurance seminar. Recorded in business context
The good points, the points you disagree with completely, but most importantly of, of all, would you have been able to have worked from that particular quality plan as presented to you? **In other words**, was the quality plan sufficiently well completed for you to be able to utilize it? In earnest? So if you could just spend five or six minutes doing that and could we come back at twenty five pasttwo please. Okay?

I, S, T, IM

G5K 24 Bible Study group meeting. Speech recorded in public context
Right? Whoever loves his brother lives in the light, and there is nothing in him to make him stumble. That's wonderful isn't it? If you're living in the light you won't stumble. If you're wor In other words if you're working with Christ, keep your eyes on him, you'll not go wrong. Mm. But whoever hates his brother, and this is talking about another Christian, you know? But whoever hates his brother, that's another fellow believer, is in darkness. Now that's a hard word isn't it?

M, W, P, D

FAF 182 Losing out: The emergence of a UK underclass. Book-domain: social science
Redistribution. The poll tax will bring about a significant redistribution of income between different households and individuals within those households. In presenting who gains and loses, the Government has been careful to cite figures based on the number of households. It claims that whereas 7.9 million households will be losers under the poll tax, there will be 11.1 million households who gain **in other words**, pay less in poll tax than they do currently in rates.

M, W, P, IN, IM (not found)

M, W, T, D

FA0 762 Restructuring Britain: the economy in question. Book-domain: commerce
Here there is not such a clear break-point in the trend, though it is perhaps important to note that until the mid-1960s there were fairly regular fluctuations up and down, but since then no downward fluctuation has ever dipped significantly below the peak of preceding cycles. Since the mid-'60s, **in other words**, the overall trend has been upwards. In both employment and unemployment there is evidence of an exacerbation of the trends in the late 1970s.

M, W, T, IN,

FBD 604 Ways of communicating. Book-domain: social science
See Figure 1. That's my first truism about truth. The second truism is one I shall need to answer the question: why should we want to be told the truth? Or more generally, why should we want to find it out, whether by being told it or otherwise? Why, **in other words**, should we want to get true beliefs rather than false ones? The reason is not a moral one.

M, W, T, IM

EW4 272 Proportional representation: Which system? Book-domain: world affairs

Suppose on the other hand that as a thoroughly loyal supporter of the Fruity Party I give all of my first three preferences to all of its three candidates-to Cherry as well as to Apple and Banana. Suppose I stop there, even though I could express as many preferences as there are candidates. Suppose, **in other words**, that I 'plump'. Will that be to the Fruity Party's advantage?' Yes', say some voices,' No', say others.

-Behave when he comes in; be, **in other words**, a good girl and do not bring up the subject of his divorce.

The following patterns have not been ascertained and are difficult to occur, **M, SP, P, D, M, SP, P, IN**, and **M, SP, P, IM**

M, SP, T, IN

FTR 47 Mark Hall School: religious studies lesson for eleven year olds. Recorded in an educational context

Everybody else then, number, section one Can you collect information for use in a class Now we've got several ways of doing this, first of all, were you able to collect information for the class survey, whoever's fiddling with a pen please don't, it's driving me nuts. Could you collect information for the class survey? Were you able **in other words** to go round and talk to people to get their answers and record your answers on their grid, if you think yes you did do that, sign your name now, in section one, where it says survey. If you don't think you can do it, then I'd leave it blank if I were you, cos otherwise you're telling fibs aren't you?

M, SP, T, IM

This pattern has not been accounted for but it is not difficult to imagine

Stay where you are and don't move till I tell you what to do. In other words, don't you dare to run away the moment I turn back to get your food.

F, W, P, D

A08 1715 The big glass. Book-domain: imaginative

I began to see the dangers of overcrowding, over-invention. The most important thing in fact the clear glass. Never to forget that. But many of the elements still not relating. No proper tension between them. Better from the back. Thought again about possibility of having it viewable equally from front and back. No front and back, **in other words**.

B2Y 912 Sound recordings. Book-domain: leisure

And when the senses of sight and sound are combined, it is usually necessary for the sound engineer to go through all sorts of contortions to make his recordings without upsetting the picture-recording process. Most films are “flat”-two-dimensional **in other words**.

F, W, T, D

CHB 2264 New Musical Express. Periodical-domain: art

Sometimes-on “Love”-they're like the Pixies on a dump-truck full of downers. All of the time they're introverted without ever alienating, able to craft an elegiac atmosphere that's pretty all-enveloping, subtly freaked rather than self-consciously freaked out. A victory on the quiet, **in other words**.

FP6 1433 Complicity. Book-domain: imaginative

I think they were surprised when I threw up; I hope they were, I hope they were surprised and very interested and thought, 'Ullo 'ullo 'ullo it wasn't 'im then after all; he ain't the villain, he's been fitted up so help me...Oh God, I hope my belly spoke for me better than my fucking brain, **in other words**.

F, SP, P, D

G3V 35 Music lesson. Grade V: Music theory. Speech recorded in educational context

A. And so on. The mediant is the third degree of the scale Yeah. and it's called mediant because it lies exactly half way between the first note and the fifth note which is also a very important note in the scale, which we'll come to in a minute. So mediant is the third and it lies between, it's in the middle **in other words**.

F, SP, P, IN

JP4 116 Tutorial Lesson. Recorded in educational context

Yeah.Erm, but we're having a big party tomorrow night, and we're having a hundred people in,right now how many pizzas are we going to need so they get a quarter, how many makes a quarter? How many hund how many hundredths makes a quarter, **in other words**?

F, SP, T, D,

KS6 650 Telephone system training course. Speech recorded in educational context

Group pick up you'll need to ask me about, group pick up with call forwarding. Anything else? If you want to get through to the operator, or directory enquiries, is it necessary to go through the operator? No, directory enquiries is actually on hash 6, it's hash 6 192. Operator is slightly different, can't do it **in other words**. You can get international directory enquiries on hash 6 as well, that's in the book, and I think you can get the international operator. No you can't, because

otherwise you'd be able to call through the operator. It's just Directory Enquiries, both national and international.

8.1.1.2.2. Sequencing with DMs from other paradigms

A) OR IN OTHER WORDS

FPN 1042 Tell them I'm on my way. Book-domain: world affairs.

The idea of an activity solely related to trying to raise money was at that stage an unpalatable one. I had spent, and indeed continued to spend, many hours trying to persuade the blind to see, **or in other words** to convince rich men of the virtue of causes close to my own heart, especially those relating to the arts.

H78 1534 A Brief History of Time. Book-domain: natural sciences

A good example of this was Einstein, who called the cosmological constant, which he introduced when he was trying to make a static model of the universe, the biggest mistake of his life. To return to the arrow of time, there remains the question: Why do we observe that the thermodynamic and cosmological arrows point in the same direction? **Or in other words**, why does disorder increase in the same direction of time as that in which the universe expands?

B) SO IN OTHER WORDS

G5K 879 Bible Study Group Meeting. Speech recorded in public context

Because I know that I will soon put it aside, as our Lord Jesus has made clear to me. So he must have been in Yeah, Aye. And I will make every effort to see that after my departure you will always be able to remember these things. **So in other words** I'll I'll raise up somebody to fill my shoes I suppose. Yeah yeah. Marvellous isn't it? Yeah. I think it's thrilling, I Any more comments? What verse are we up to now? Have we done twenty one yet? Yes we have Yes.

8.1.1.2.3. One or two speakers

In other words allows for more than one speaker. Let us consider the following examples that involve two different speakers, where one reformulates the other's previous utterance:

A: I don't think I'm doing the exam tomorrow. I think I may get a better chance of passing it in September.

B: **In other words**, you haven't prepared it at all.

A: Mike should be more cautious with what he says in front of his future father-in-law.

B: **In other words**, you're saying that he shouldn't have mentioned the incident in Spain, right.

A: Yeah, especially because he didn't know they had been to Spain on their own. He does not approve of things like that till they will be married.

8.1.1.3. IN PLAINER-MORE TECHNICAL WORDS

8.1.1.3.1. Syntactic, distributional properties and scope of the reformulator

The following combinations have been found throughout the corpus for the DMs of RF *technically speaking, in more technical terms, simply speaking, to put it more simply, to put it more plainly, in plainer terms, in simpler terms*:

I, W, T, IN

C97 272 Practical Fishkeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure
Rift Valley Cichlids and Marines live in huge areas of water which are very stable and not easily influenced by external changes. Other fish live in small water bodies, which are influenced by heavy rainfall and drought, which considerably affect the water's characteristics and they are more tolerant. What is pH? **Simply speaking**, water is classified as being either acid, neutral or alkaline. pH is measured on a scale from 0-14, 7 being neutral, 7-14 being progressively more alkaline and 7-1 being progressively more acid.

I, W, P, IN

CET 242 The great unsolved mysteries of science. Book-domain: natural science
It might take millions of years before the spacecraft encountered a suitable planet, and billions before the result of its efforts would produce an intelligent lifeform, if at all. Taking all this into account, we have to ask why the extraterrestrials should be remotely interested in seeding distant planets. **To put it more simply**, why should they bother? Let us return to more conventional theories.

M, W, T, D,

AS3 58 The First Fifty. Book-domain: leisure
The next danger for me was the Arête. Carn Mor Dearg's cairn provides a perfect view of the remaining route, with the Arête sweeping elegantly off to the south-west. To those of us with vertigo, it fortunately reveals that the southern side of the ridge is not nearly as precipitous as the northern. This, **in plain terms**, means that apart from one small section of scrambling, you can chicken out and walk along the Arête with your head bobbing safely below the crest.

8.1.1.3.2. Sequencing with DMs from other paradigms

These DMs of RF have been only found in combination with the disjunctive form *or* as was the case with their counterpart and default expression *in other words*. Combination with the implicative DM *so* has not been recorded but it is not difficult to imagine. Let us consider the following examples:

A) OR IN PLAINER-MORE TECHNICAL TERMS

A2G 90 Independent electronic edition of 1989-10-05: arts section. Periodical-domain: arts

Rushes By SHEILA JOHNSTON COMING soon, maybe: a triumph for the gods of chaos, lunacy and bad taste - **or, to put it more plainly**, a film version of John Kennedy Toole's wonderfully funny cult novel, *A Confederacy of Dunces*. As followers of these pages will know, this project was at one time to have been directed by a America's leading connoisseur of chaos, lunacy and bad taste, John Waters (who made *Pink Flamingos* and *Hairspray*).

B) SO IN PLAINER-IN MORE TECHNICAL TERMS

Paul hasn't invited Mary to the party, **so, in simpler terms**, he's still going out with Marlene.

[Context: A and B are talking about Brian, a friend who is an expert in getting away with the hospital meetings]

A: Brian said that it will be impossible for him to attend the meeting. He has adduced that he has been requested at the hospital first time in the morning, and that he has to operate on a few patients before midday.

B: **So, in plainer terms**, he has bugged out on us again at the first sign of a meeting.

8.1.1.4. NAMELY AND VIZ

8.1.1.4.1. Syntactic, distributional properties and scope of the reformulators

I, WR, P, D

HXM 14 (Article from) *European Economic Integration*. Book-domain world affairs

The inadequacy of resources is highlighted by a recurrent tendency for expenditure to run ahead of revenue. By far the largest item of expenditure, **namely** the EAGGF (Guarantee Section), grew by 75 per cent between 1983 and 1988, and in each of the years actual expenditure exceeded the estimates.

I, WR, P, IN

EX2 557 Regulation of the firm and natural monopoly. Book-domain: commerce
Because this does not fit with preconceived notions of, say, electricity distribution or the postal service, we will have to qualify the result in various ways, in order to realize the extent of its truth. The most fundamental question is, do the two sets, **namely** natural monopolies and perfectly contestable industries, in fact intersect?

I, WR, P, IM

ADO 1730 Get slim and stay slim. Book-domain: natural science
The principles for establishing lists of goals for fat reduction are similar to those for sugar reduction, **namely**, do the things that are easiest first; use lots of small, easy steps; spend about a week trying to behave according to that week's goal (and with all preceding ones being maintained) before going on to add the next goal to your repertoire.

I, SP, P, D

HUL 196 Spoken. London School of Economics: lecture on psychoanalytical study of society. (words recorded from an educational context)
So it seems to me that the existence of death, the fact that organisms don't live forever, and they certainly are not perfected in terms of personal fitness or survivability, because they get diseases and they die suggests to me that our modern insight into evolution acting on individual genes is, is correct. **Namely**, that organisms evolved to be the biodegradable packaging of those genes.

I, SP, P, IN

K6Y 811 Friends. Provident Insurance: training session. Speech recorded in business context
Fine, that's no problem because at least you've got a fortnight in which to make contact with him and put your intentions up. Yeah. Well I, I'll wait till you bring back your, your er illustrations and then I'll talk to him. Right. Er are you happy with the way we've addressed your particular need today er **namely** the pension? Er yeah I mean a pension's a pension isn't it? So Yes. I don't need to worry about that.

I, SP, P, IM

No record has been found, but its use is not difficult to imagine.

Then you add three different ice-cream flavours, **namely**, mint, strawberry and chocolate.

M, WR, P, D

A69 1445 Reflections of a statesman. Book-domain: world affairs

From the mid-nineteenth century onwards it turned out that not the whole population of Ireland was willing to be represented at Westminster *but only a portion*, the portion **namely** in which sixteen out of seventeen constituencies still choose to send Members to Westminster today.

ABB 172 Delicatessen: a celebration and cook-book Book-domain: leisure

The best Mortadella also includes pistachio nuts, the texture and flavour of which relieve an otherwise bland but pleasant meat. Within this category of sausages are several harder and spicier varieties which are excellent when added to cassoulet-type dishes or bean stews. These are, **namely**, chorizos and kabanos. Chorizos are always peppery, flavoured with paprika and although they sound Spanish, are often made in Germany.

M, SP, P, D,

J9S 147 EIP meeting at Strensall Village Hall. Day 5. Speech recorded in public context

I believe that in the evaluation of sectors that we're now engaged in, it is possible as a strategic exercise to exclude entirely number six, the A sixty four north eastern corridor, on coalescence questions. But I would first start with a slightly wider issue. Er **namely** the density of settlements.

The rest of syntactic patterns have not been illustrated because they have not been registered within the corpus. Moreover, it is my intuition that they do not need to be further checked because they do not occur.

As far as *viz.* is concerned it has only been accounted in partial cases of reformulation, in the declarative mood and in initial position, as shown above.

8.1.1.4.2. Sequencing with DMs from other paradigms

Neither *namely*, nor its counterpart *viz.*, combine with DMs such as *and*, *or*, *so*, *but* and *then*.

8.1.1.4.3. One or two speakers

Likewise, these two reformulators are exclusively found in cases of one speaker who produces the first discourse segment S1 and who also recharacterizes and reformulates it in the S2.

The use of these reformulators with two speakers could be possible imagined in cases of cooperation between interlocutors when one of them would produce a first utterance where a second one would identify one utterance constituent from it.

[Context: two barristers A and B adducing evidence for the innocence of the accused say]

A: Your honor, our client had two main reasons not to kill her husband.

B: # **Namely**, that she would lose her house and the custody of her children in case she were found guilty of the crime.

DISCOURSE MARKERS OF RECTIFICATION

Table 1: SYNTACTIC, DISTRIBUTIONAL PROPERTIES and SCOPE OF THE REFORMULATOR.

	INITIAL POSITION						MEDIAL POSITION						FINAL POSITION					
	WRITTEN		SPOKEN		WRITTEN		SPOKEN		WRITTEN		SPOKEN		WRITTEN		SPOKEN			
	Partial	Total	Partial	Total	Partial	Total	Partial	Total	Partial	Total	Partial	Total	Partial	Total	Partial	Total		
(OR) BETTER STILL	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√		
OR RATHER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√		
(OR) MORE PRECISELY	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√		
(OR) MORE ACCURATELY	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√		

DISCOURSE MARKERS OF RECTIFICATION

Table 2: SEQUENCING OF THE REFORMULATORS

	AND	BUT	OR	SO	THEN
(Or) better still	X	X	✓	X	X
(Or) more precisely	✓	✓	✓	X	X
(Or) more accurately	✓	✓	✓	X	X
Or rather	X	X	X	X	X

DISCOURSE MARKERS OF RECTIFICATION

Table 3: DOMAINS OF USE and NUMBER OF SPEAKERS

REFORMULATORS OF RECTIFICATION	CONTENT	SPEECH-ACT	EPISTEMIC	MONO-DIALOGIC
OR RATHER	OK	X	X	BOTH
(OR) BETTER YET-STILL	OK	OK	X	BOTH
(OR) MORE PRECISELY	OK	OK	OK	BOTH
(OR) MORE ACCURATELY	OK	X	X	BOTH
ON SECOND THOUGHT	OK	OK	X	BOTH

8.1.2. Discourse Markers of Rectification

8.1.2.1. OR RATHER

8.1.2.1.1. Syntactic, distributional properties and scope of the reformulator

I, W, P, D

AOG 1736 Gardener's World. Book-domain: leisure

I leave the weed in the pool untouched until the frogs have departed. Then I pull some of it out to clear a bit of space. The difficulty is that every handful of weed that's pulled out is likely to contain its fair share of aquatic creatures too. However insignificant, they still don't deserve to be thrown out with the bathwater, **or rather** the pond water. So, I pull handfuls of weed and leave it near the water's edge, giving at least some of the creatures the chance to nip back into the water again. The next day I swish the weed around in a bucket of pondwater, throw the water back in and the weed away.

I, W, P, IN

A0U 1747 So very English. Book-domain: imaginative

The phrase has always interested me. It means something has been said or something has happened that has put the subject of the remark in an uncomfortable place. Is "Englishness" a comfortable place? If as Marx said, the working class have no country, what does it mean to have a place in a culture anyway? And what language do we use to name that place, **or rather** whose language? What if your place has been described for you as being a so-called "minority", or an "emerging voice"?

A69 1152 Reflections of a statesman. Book-domain: world affairs

Watching the spectacle, one has the weird sensation that the actors really knew all the time that their professions were illusory, and that there was a kind of gigantic tacit conspiracy to pretend. Otherwise, one wonders, how could there constantly be those "asides", which seem to reveal that the participants were actually aware the game was up **or rather** perhaps had never started? One of the lessons to be drawn from the study of early-twentieth-century imperialism is the extraordinary durability of policies and programmes which lack all possibility of being realised.

FPH 1146 The diamond waterfall. Book-domain: imaginative

My mind raced but I could not speak. After a few moments: "We stop now," she said. Then, paying the cab, pushing my money away: "There's a teashop here. We must talk, at once. We are rowing the same boat, I think-". Inside, she asked: "What are you going-**or rather** what are we going-to do now?"

I, W, P, IM

CEB 2086 A season for murder. Book-domain: imaginative

The youthful population ebbed and surged like a floodtide in and out of public houses and discos. Invariably some of them were drunk, others high on some weed, some too randy to notice anything but the opposite sex, and the remainder were too self-absorbed to notice anything. "All right, let's go back to the events in the Market Square. **Or rather**, let's go back to the Friday before that. Last Friday .You were in Bamford, collecting signatures for a petition."

GXA 389 News-Line Royal Bank of Scotland. Periodical-domain: social science
For far too long we have given free publicity for such tourist spots as Edinburgh Castle. Glamis and Balmoral. Are there, we ask knowingly, plans to sell advertising on the backs of our bank-notes for a limited range of tasteful products such as fine textiles, whiskies, golf clubs and top people's hotels? Watch this space-**or rather** the space on the backs of those notes. Those Lines on the Lada were taken by some as less than kind to the Bank Car Scheme.

H8X 2793 Legacy of love. Book-domain: imaginative

"No.You are no nearer her. That-that trivial account, those little domestic doings, they simply demean her, belittle her. Your aunt had not the soul to discern the matchless spirit that was my mother's." Alexandra sprang up. "Keep her to yourself, then! **Or rather**, keep the image you have! Aunt Emily may have been spoiled but she was irresistibly spoilable because she was so generous, so imaginative, she did not try to destroy people's pictures of themselves as you do, but helped them to build them up!

I, W, T, D,

A6D 195 Sexual dissidence. Book-domain: arts

But the latter still involves psychic repression: the identity of the normal is inseparable from, rooted in, what it is not, what is socially excluded.In principle, of course, whether the repressed constituent of identity is outside or inside the subject makes a difference.But in practice how exactly might that difference be discerned?In both cases the repressed/ excluded remains subjectively/socially central.Or rather, the distinctions between the repressed and the excluded, the subjective and the social, break down, especially when we recall that the other is often constructed via, or in terms of, the proximate.

HGS 77 Frankenstein unbound. Book-domain: imaginative

I remembered reading the old nursery classic, Herbert Wells's The Time Machine, but Wells's time-traveller had gone ahead in time. How much nicer to go back. The past was safe! I was back in history! Something had come over me. Rising from the bed, I felt curiously unlike myself. **Or rather**, I could feel the old cautious Bodenland inside, but it seemed as if a new man, fitted for decision and adventure, had taken control of me.

I, W, T, IN.

A0U 132 So very English. Book-domain: imaginative

Of course today, England is a part of Europe, but when Neela was growing up, England never saw itself as a part of Europe. If it ever did, it was always as a part which was apart, separate, a “precious stone set in the silver sea. A sceptered Isle!” Neela was aware of this difference. But what did this difference mean to Neela? **Or rather** how did it feel? Europe appeared to accept her difference and individuality, whereas England demanded that she should somehow conform, assimilate, and yet at the same time, there was no way in which it was possible to really “assimilate”.

CB8 2170 She. Periodical-domain: leisure

Whether it's a boilersuit or a power suit, what you wear speaks volumes about you Do you speak the language of clothes? **Or rather**, do your clothes speak for you? Are your cuffs, at this moment, making a clear statement about your nature and intentions? Are you threatening the world with your collar, or bamboozling it with your black tights? If so, congratulations Me, I don't speak clothes language at all and am beginning to wish that I did.

I, W, T, IM

(Not found within the corpus but it is not difficult to imagine)

Leave me a message on my answering machine. *Or rather*, beep me if you are in real danger and he comes back drunk.

I, SP, P, D,

HEG 61 Orkney Sound Archive Tape. Speech recorded in leisure context

Have the rules changed over the years, for example have the age groups or allowing girls to take part or anything like that? Well the age group was always just school age which was up to fourteen. now of course it's up to sixteen **or rather** under sixteen. That is includes fifteen. they tend to drift away when they get to the last year anyway, you know?

HUW 376 On the record: Television broadcast. Speech recorded in leisure context

The best bet is that the Chancellor will confine higher allowances against tax to the lowest grade, thus asking the better off to pay a bit more. On the spending side, with the total fixed, the game this year is robbing Peter to pay Paul, **or rather**, to pay Malcolm. Defence Secretary Rifkind is reported to be grateful for support from the fourteen military minded Conservatives whose confidential letter to the Prime Minister was somehow left lying on a copying machine for a Labour researcher to find, but he is irritated by the leak, an insider murmurs that Malcolm's notching up black marks for the future.

I, SP, P, IN,

Not found within the BNC but it is not difficult to imagine

Why don't you call her, **or rather**, visit her at the hospital? She will be very happy to see you.

I, SP, P, IM

(Not found within the BNC but it is not difficult to imagine)

Wait for me till 7, **or rather**, till 7.30 at the entrance hall.

I, SP, T, D

G3X 246 Flower arranging demonstration. Speech recorded in leisure context
So we have a go. Which? So you you're not supposed to get it, you know, it's er we'll take the leaves off. We've put in for the club entry and we're just waiting to hear, you know, if we've been lucky or not. **Or rather**, Well we've been on to and they don't seem to do an awful lot. You know, I was, rather surprised .I'm going to recess these a little bit. In the middl in the centre. We haven't had a lately have we?

I, SP, T, IN

KRH 1852 Ideas in action programmes: Radio broadcast. Speech recorded in leisure context

I simply experienced, in its most elementary form, the sense of existing. This distinction, between, as it were, having an existence, and possessing an identity, erm is a major preoccupation in the novel, just as finding answers to the questions "Where am I?" **or rather** more importantly "Who am I?" is one of its central objectives.

I, SP, T, IM

Not found but not difficult to occur

Call me around 5 tomorrow evening, **or rather**, drop by any time before 10 and we can discuss your situation.

8.1.2.1.2. Sequencing with DMs from other paradigms

The reformulator *or rather* does not combine with DMs from other paradigms, except for the disjunctive *or* which is part of the DM itself.

8.1.2.1.3. One or two speakers

This reformulator normally occurs in monologic exchanges, although it could also be used in dialogic exchanges where a different speaker reformulates some other's contribution. Let us consider the following example that illustrates its possible use in dialogic exchanges:

[Context: Sheila's explaining to Candy that her boyfriend, who repeatedly fails to keep his promises to visit her, will be unable to visit her again. Candy, however, is aware that he is seeing his old girlfriend again, something that she knows that Sheila also knows for sure but pretends not to know]

Candy: Is Mike dropping by tonight?

Sheila: Well, actually he called to tell me that something has come up....

Candy: **Or rather**, that SOMEONE has come up.

Candy: **Or more precisely**, that SOMEONE has come up.

8.1.2.2. (OR) MORE PRECISELY-(OR) MORE ACCURATELY

8.1.2.2.1. Syntactic, distributional properties and scope of the reformulator

First of all, it should be noticed that the syntactic patterning of these reformulators only differs when it comes to the combination with imperative type sentences. The other possible patters are similar, as can be observed in Table 1:

I, W, P, D,

A2G 247 Independent electronic edition 1989-10-05: art pages. Periodical-domain: arts

All that it demonstrates, through a three-hours-seeming 75 minutes, is that counter-stereotypes tend to harden into stereotypes in their turn. Certainly, after a brief period of novelty, the hapless, aggrieved house-husband threatens to become as rigid and unexamined a comic invention as the grotesquely intrusive mother-in-law once was. At first, you are led to think that Marrakech means to start where *A Doll's House* (**or more precisely** here *A Guy's House*) ends.

J1A 368 Early Music. Periodical-domain: arts

The groupings of performers seen in the livrets suggest that wind ensembles functioned to provide blocks of sound that is, that they played as consorts of like instruments. Such ensembles were not merely gathered together for the occasional ballet; there were, in fact, three standing oboe bands at court, **or, more accurately**, three ensembles whose members played the oboe much of the time.

I, W, P, IN

A5X 354 Independent electronic edition of 1989-10-14: Travel pages. Periodical-domain: leisure

From The Good Skiing Guide reports I estimate that for those with a taste for Cabernet-Sauvignon, a budget of \$30 a day would not be extravagant, adding another \$400. Lift pass \$200. Total, excluding tuition and equipment, \$1,600. For that I could have three separate weeks in Alpine chalets. So, where does this leave us **or, more precisely/more accurately**, me? Back where I started, with concerns about snow.

I, W, P, IM

(Not found within the corpus but it is not difficult to imagine)

[Context: a surgeon talking to a nurse]

Pass me the scalp, **or more precisely** the scalp that's lying next to the sewing cord.

I, W, T, D

H0D 826 Death in the city. Book-domain: imaginative

It's abandoned now, and might have been a huge new town if politics and economics had gone differently." On the whole I'm glad it's not. I don't know what progress is, but I don't think that would really have been progress,' I said.' Maybe not. To be practical rather than philosophical, this is the place that's upset the Ingard empire. **More accurately**, it's made things worse, for it was pretty seriously upset anyway. Being government land, it was sold by tender. Ingard, guessing wrong about the airport, put in an enormous tender to be sure of getting the land. Even the Treasury thought he was paying a ridiculous price, but that was up to him. Now he can do nothing with it.

I, W, T, IN

A1A 727 Exploding English. Book-domain: arts

Unlike Leave's, Winter's deconstruction of tradition proved too extreme to have even a temporary lodgement in the academy, though his readings of sixteenth-century poetry have had some influence, and a theorist such as Gerald Graff acknowledges a debt to Winters, who was his teacher. It remains to show why genuine criticism is not at home in the academy; **or, more precisely/more accurately**, why it is irreconcilable with pedagogic practice. Criticism, I take it, is an activity that occurs between equals, whatever its object. The critic is an unusually acute and well-informed reader, but there should be equality of esteem between the critic and other readers. What he or she has to say is always open to comment, questioning, refutation.

FCD 46 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Volume 3. Periodical-domain: social science

Patrick Eccles Q.C. for the respondent. 15 April. -MUMMERY J. read the following judgment. This application poses a difficult question of general importance on the scope of the provisions in the Insolvency Act 1986 concerned with administrative receivers. Do those provisions apply in the case of a foreign company? **More precisely/more accurately**, do they apply to a receiver of the whole, or substantially the whole, of the property of a foreign company appointed by or on behalf of the holders of debentures of the company secured by a charge which, as created, was a floating charge? The question has arisen in the following way. The respondent company, International Bulk Commodities Ltd.

I, W, T, IM

(Not found within the corpus but it is not difficult to imagine)

Can you bring me a couple of envelopes on your way to the store? **Or more precisely**, bring me a whole box of them and I'll pay you later.

The use of (*or*) *more accurately* with the imperative mood is however impossible.

8.1.2.2.2. Sequencing with DMs from other paradigms

The reformulators (*or*) *more precisely*-(*or*) *more accurately* have been ascertained to combine with DMs from other paradigms such as *or*, *and* and *but*. However, they have not been recorded in combination with *so* or *then*. In spite of this, the combination of these reformulators with DMs from other paradigms is sometimes controversial inasmuch as it does not always renders a reformulative move.

8.1.2.2.3. One or two speakers

Both reformulators are often used in monologic exchanges, although they can be also used in dialogic exchanges as has been shown in chapter 3. The example provided in this chapter is repeated here:

[Context: Sheila's explaining to Candy that her boyfriend, who repeatedly fails to keep his promises to visit her, will be unable to visit her again. Candy, however, is aware that he is seeing his old girlfriend again, something that she knows that Sheila also knows for sure but pretends not to know]

Candy: Is Mike dropping by tonight?

Sheila: Well, actually he called to tell me that something has come up....

8.1.2.3. (OR) BETTER STILL-YET

8.1.2.3.1. Syntactic, distributional properties and scope of the reformulator

I, W, P, D

ABD 1070 The Economist Newspaper Ltd. Periodical-domain: commerce

This week the Community had second thoughts. Jacques Poos, the foreign minister of Luxembourg (which has just taken over the Community's rotating presidency), expressed the hope that he would be authorised to visit Baghdad on its behalf. It is hard to imagine the countdown to war continuing without an intensification of diplomacy. Yet getting talks started-whether between the Europeans and Iraq **or, better still**, the Americans and Iraq-is not the same thing as avoiding war.

I, W, P, IN

CKB 692 The raven on the water. Book-domain: imaginative

At sixteen, Coleby left school with two "O" levels, while Peter went on to the sixth form. Puzzled, Peter said: "I didn't realize you knew my mother." "Oh yes." Coleby smiled. "Look, will you be in Plumford over the weekend?" Peter nodded. "Well, why don't we meet for a drink? **Or better still** for lunch? What about tomorrow?" Peter said yes because it was easier than saying no.

I, W, P, IM

A0J 30 Health promotion and educational leaflets. Miscellanea-domain: natural sciences

If your bike is second-hand, or hasn't been used for a while, then it's important to check that it's safe to ride.

SAFETY FIRST

Always make sure you can be seen easily at night. Keep your front and rear lights in good working order and don't forget to switch them on. Wear light-coloured clothing **or, better still**, a reflective jacket.

I, W, T, D

AOF 1819 Part of the furniture. Book-domain: imaginative

"I'm not sure what you'd like. How does ham and egg sound?" "Fine, really I..." "Tea or coffee?" "Coffee, please. Thank you." She came back with what I'd asked for. "Right. I'll catch up with you again in a few minutes. No, **better still**, I'll stay here to stop you running away." She fetched herself a packet of sandwiches from the counter and then came back to where she had been sitting.

“Feed the fever, starve the cold and stuff the diet, that's what I say.” I laughed. “I've actually lost quite a bit of weight recently,” I said.

I, W, T, IN

HA6 1025 The waters of Eden. Book-domain: imaginative

“I'll do my best,” she agreed, and he smiled his relief. “You're a wonderful girl. What would I do without you? I'm in the middle of things right now, but we should be able to snatch a word in half an hour if that's OK with you? **Better still**, why don't you come along to a party we're throwing tomorrow evening?”

H7W 784 Bay of rainbows. Book-domain: imaginative

His eyes had acquired a thoughtful gleam that made Polly's heart lurch erratically. She waited for him to continue speaking, but he simply studied her with a detached speculation that did nothing to soothe her ragged nerves. Unable to bear this silent examination a moment longer, she said the first thing that came into her head. “Surely it wouldn't be difficult to find another skipper? **Better still**, why not simply fly to Athens from here and charter another boat from the Kalamaki marina?”

I, W, T, IM

H82 985 The chymical wedding. Book-domain: imaginative

Henry Agnew saw that time coming. Look here.” He showed me the page of the book-the passage had been furiously scored with a pen nib. “Well, it's here now-and it's time that silence was broken.” Edward looked up again and stared into my frown. “Stay with it. Eventually things will come clearer. **Or better still**-ignore the words for the moment.

I, SP, T, IM

F8D 165 British Red Cross first aid course. Recorded in an educational context

Check with your casualty that it's comfortable, yes? and does it feel quite firm for you? Not too tight though? No And those bits again, either tuck them in out of the way **or better still** fold them over and put a big plaster over the top to get them right out the way so no ends are left dangling, remember for most people you're doing this for they'll probably be returning to their place of work, okay, so they need to be safe to return to work, everybody okay on that lot?

8.1.2.3.2. Sequencing with DMs from other paradigms

This reformulator has not been found in combination with other reformulators, except for the disjunctive form *or*.

8.1.2.3.3. One or two speakers

(Or) *better still-yet* can function on both monologic and dialogic exchanges, although its use is clearly more pervasive in monologic discourse:

[Context: It is 9 am on a lovely Sunday morning. Julie, Anne and Ken are planning to go to the beach. However, at the last minute Ken gets an e-mail informing him that his boss is going to call around midday from his office in New York. It seems important and he decides to wait for the call. Anne and July are in sort of a rush because they promised their boyfriends they'd be at the beach before midday. However, if they leave, Ken won't be able to go to the beach since he has no car and there is no bus after 10.30. They are considering the possible solutions]

Julie: Don't worry we'll wait for you till you get your call, and then we can go together. I don't think the guys will be too mad at us for being late again.

(i) Anne: **Or better still** why don't we take the bus and he can take my car and join us later?

(ii) Kenn: **Or better yet**, why don't I divert all my calls to one of your cell phones so that I can go with you before midday?

8.2. Appendix II

In Appendix II the different occurrences surveyed within the corpus of analysis are offered.

THAT IS TO SAY

A04 219 Arts criticism: a user's guide.

But, seeing that a fine picture is nature reflected by an artist, the criticism which I approve will be that picture reflected by an intelligent and sensitive mind. Thus the best account of a picture may well be a sonnet or an elegy... as for criticism properly so-called.... To be just, **that is to say**, to justify its existence, criticism should be partial, passionate and political, **that is to say**, written from an exclusive point of view that opens up the widest horizons.

A0T 323 The pursuit of mind. Book-domain: belief and thought

I would say that there are two major problems with the mental-sentence thesis which both lead-one ultimately, the other directly-to the kind of developmental questions I shall be raising shortly. The first problem arises once we admit that in order for a "system" (I shall use this neutral term) to think, its thoughts must have reference: **that is to say**, they must refer to things regarded by the system as existing and enduring independently of itself.

A1B 540 Studies in Erza Pound. Book-domain: art

Hewlett, author of *The Queen's Quai*, brings to mind another writer who had similarly concerned himself with Mary Queen of Scots ("La Stuarda")-**that is to say**, Swinburne in his *Mary Stuart*. Swinburne is alluded to, here as elsewhere, by the place-name "Le Portel", where-so Pound seems to have believed (wrongly, for the name is "Yport")-Swinburne on a famous occasion was saved from drowning by French fishermen.

A1E 196 Independent Electronic Edition of 1989-10-02: Business section

But its limits are exposed by asking a simple question: why, then, should Mr Lawson not be quite happy to see the deficit get even larger? Why should a "good" deficit not get even "better"? The first reason the Chancellor gives is that there is some "bad" froth on the "good" deficit: **that is to say**, evidence of excessive domestic demand. This argument starts from a different point on the balance of payments circle, with the excess of imports over exports. Even here, something can be found to say for the deficit, as a safety valve for inflationary pressures. But it still has, willy-nilly, to be financed by attracting capital inflows.

A6U 679 Oxford Art Journal. Periodical-domain: arts.

I have mentioned Walter Benjamin here. Callinicos concludes his book by invoking the memory of Benjamin to the effect that socialist revolution in the form of an irruption into history is the secular vehicle of a redemption hitherto conceivable only in mystic terms. For Callinicos it is a belief in this possibility, and that alone, which remanders melancholy and irony-**that is to say**, Modernism-as an adequate response to modern life. It is the consequence-presumably unintended-of his argument, however, that it demonstrates so irrevocably how much this is a matter of commitment and as such beyond the reach of proof.

A7C 491 CS Lewis: a biography. Book-domain: arts.

He knew that as yet the appropriate style eluded him. He knew neither what to write nor how to write it. In Tolkien, by huge contrast, he met a man whose style had been with him from the beginning. Lewis responded so warmly to Tolkien's imagined world because, as he wrote to Arthur Greeves, "he is, in one part of him, what we were." **That is to say**, Tolkien's stories could be said to be an embodiment of that Northernness with which Lewis and Greeves had been in love since early adolescence. Lewis was subtle enough to see that this was at best

a half-truth, and perhaps he was beginning to sense that what Tolkien's friendship had to offer him was something rather more important than a regress to me nursery.

A8G 119 The Guardian. Electronic Edition of 1989-11-23. Business section. Domain-periodical.

After contributing so much to the proceedings in the Finnish capital, and to the 30,000 words of the final act, Romania became one of its victims. For in one follow-up meeting after another, in Belgrade and Madrid and finally Vienna, the human rights standards laid down at Helsinki were refined and tightened, while Romanian internal policies either stood still or moved in the other direction, **that is to say** downhill. This year, by refusing to negotiate with Bucharest on a new agreement, the European Community has shown that "differentiation" can be applied negatively, too. Does it count for nothing that Romania, according to her own claims, has repaid her entire hard currency debt and made future borrowing from the West illegal? Evidently not.

ABM 1126 The Empiricists. Book-domain-belief and thought.

In the case of body this, as we have already seen, is extension; in the case of mind it is thought. Persons, for Descartes, are mental or immaterial thinking substances. I am, says Descartes, "a substance the whole essence or nature of which is to think.... This "me", **that is to say**, the soul by which I am what I am, is entirely distinct from body... and even if the body were not, the soul would not cease to be what it is." Just as he disagreed with him about the essential or principal properties of body, Locke disagreed with Descartes about the mind.

ABP 1065 Introduction to English law 10th edition. Book-domain: social science.

The transaction is regarded as a change of investment. The policy was continued, with a number of amendments, in the 1925 legislation. Thus all land, however tied up it may be by complex entails and other

interests, has since 1882 been alienable by the tenant for life under his statutory powers. Much the same result could be achieved by creating a trust for sale of the land; **that is to say**, by conveying the land to trustees upon trust to sell, and to hold the income of the land until sale, and the proceeds of sale, upon trust for beneficiaries in any desired order. Here the over-reaching principle is clear. The beneficial interests are attached to the proceeds of sale.

AC2 197 Man at the sharp end. Book-domain: imaginative

The European zone, for example, was growing twice as fast as the United States' zone, and now employed a quarter of a million people. This situation went against the grain, as the top brass always needed to be on top of every situation and on top of every executive if they were to do their jobs to their own satisfaction; not necessarily in the best interests of the Corporation, **that is to say**, but in their own best interests. Mueller's proposals appeared to be more in tune with their own thoughts at that particular time.

AC9 1400 Science and the past. Book-domain: applied science

The outline of such an axe can be measured very precisely and processed by various techniques of coordinate geometry (including, incidentally, one originally invented by marine engineers to measure the shape of ship hulls) to give a final mathematical "fingerprint" of the axe's shape. These fingerprints are in such a form that they can be easily compared one with another; **that is to say** the computer can calculate a measure of "shape difference" between any two axes. This shape difference measure is the fundamental building block by which we can create large databases of outline shapes that can be searched efficiently. Trees return once more to help us in this endeavour. Figure 9.2 shows what a very small part of a large database of axe shapes might look like.

ADA 2170 Hide and seek. Book-domain: imaginative
 Thumb in mouth. Children with thumbs in their mouths. Whores with
 cocks in their mouths. Rustling tree, slithering nylon. Deep Purple. God
 walking up and down between buckthorn and sallow and goat willow.
 "We should address ourselves to those faculties in a child's mind, which
 are first awakened by nature, and consequently first admit of
 cultivation, **that is to say**, the memory and the imagination."

ADW 190 Libyan politics: tribe and revolution. Book-domain: social
 science
 About this time Zuwaya shaikhs and cadres attempted a reconciliation
 among Zuwaya sections: they held an assembly of shaikhs in Ajdabya,
 including Zuwaya from Sebha and Tripolitania. A Zuwayi poet printed
 a poem celebrating Zuwaya unity and solidarity. The Awlad Amira
 administration paid the travel costs of all the Kufra delegates, including
 Mannaia shaikhs. About this time, **too-that is to say**, between 1976 and
 1978-it was established on impeccable authority to everyone's
 satisfaction that the Tibbu were Jews.

ADW 193 Libyan politics: tribe and revolution. Book-domain: social
 science.
 I am very sorry you feel no desire to overcome this condition. I shall
 not abandon the effort to persuade you otherwise. When I wrote that I
 would need to know more about you, I wasn't thinking in terms of your
 physical appearance. I am particularly interested in details about your
 parents. Has either of them suffered from insanity? Masochism is
 congenial; **that is to say**, you must have inherited it. Not infrequently
 the father of a masochist can be shown to have had some abnormal
 development of the brain. I cannot agree that women are the inferior of
 men. However, in terms of social arrangements, you are not too far off
 the track.

AE7 473 The problems of Biology. Book-domain: social science
 This chapter is concerned with the kinds of organisms we observe-the
 "pattern of nature"-and the relation of this pattern to the evolutionary
 process. It is now generally agreed that the natural way of classifying
 organisms is hierarchical: that is, in a series of nested sets. **That is to**
say, we first classify organisms into species, and then group the species
 into genera, the genera into families, the families into orders, and so on.

AE9 531 The Royal Forests of England. Book-domain: world affairs
 The jurors, having appeared before the king, were induced, probably by
 threats of amercement and imprisonment, to acknowledge their error
 and to modify their perambulations; they then received the king's
 pardon. The Gloucestershire jury, for example, in 1228 re-defined the
 boundaries of the Forest of Dean at their widest extent -**that is to say**,
 the rivers Severn and Wye, and a northern boundary running from
 Goodrich castle in the west through Ross and Newent to Gloucester
 castle in the east. They swore that the forest had existed by these
 bounds from ancient times.

AHF 1209 Daily Telegraph Electronic Edition of 1992-04-04. Foreign
 news pages. Periodical-domain: world affairs.
 The British people have in the past found them rather more powerful
 than the corporations which are popularly supposed to finance the
 Conservative party. Then there are all those schoolteachers, dons,
 television producers, writers on arts pages and members of the agitating
 classes who want a Labour win in order to impose Political Correctness.
That is to say, they will have what the Jesuits once attached such
 importance to: power over young or impressionable minds. As the week
 went by, Major rejected common opinion about two other large
 subjects: proportional representation and Scottish devolution.

ALL 234 Bell in the tree. Book-domain: world affairs.

This may have had something to do with the fact that the theatre, a lean-to affair of wood and canvas, was built against the ruined wall of the Bishop's Palace next to Glasgow Cathedral. Eventually, stirred up by a fire-breathing minister called Reverend George Whitefield, the mob, **that is to say**, congregation, censored the proceedings by the simple expedient of pulling the theatre to bits. There is still a legend in the Theatrical world that once you have played Glasgow on a Saturday night, you are a true professional.

AM7 57 Education management for the 50ths. Book-domain: commerce

Education does reflect social, economic and political needs or pressures, but in doing so it also subtly refracts the image and modifies the pressures—the balance within the relationship is not constant. Moreover, on some occasions (and the present scenario could well be one) the economic and social pressures may be pushing in the same direction as educational forces. **That is to say**, what educators are promoting primarily as "a good thing anyway" is, on this occasion, likely to receive considerable reinforcement because it coincides with what the economic-technical revolution requires.

AMG 164 The Evolution of Human consciousness. Book-domain: applied science

Nonetheless an evolutionary approach to human social life permits a broad perspective in which the emergence of the social psychological domain from the biological can be traced. The understanding of human action requires a temporal perspective which only a sufficiently broad evolutionary approach can supply. This book is much concerned with what I shall call "extrapolation theory"; **that is to say** the drawing of inferences regarding the sequence of changes whereby one psychobiological state has shifted to another—from chimp-like language, say, to human speech.

AMN 637 Foxton: locks and barge life. Book-domain: world affairs

The system does not necessarily include a balance lift **that is to say** duplicate tanks working up and down duplicate inclines in reverse direction. It is equally applicable to a single tank and a single incline.3.

AMT 19 Does God exist? Book-domain: belief and thought

This group would answer the question: "Does God exist?" by saying: "I don't know what you're talking about". I will label them "no meaning" atheists. Secondly, there are those with a clear idea of what "God" means. I will label them "meaning" atheists. **That is to say**, they know what it would be like for God to exist, but as a matter of fact they don't think that one does. "No meaning" atheists tend to talk rather as A.J. Ayer talks in *Language, Truth and Logic*, as if there is no possibility of a Deity existing because there is no possibility of making sense of the word "God".

AN3 1022 Latin American Society. Book-domain: world affairs.

Although the terms marginal and marginality have frequently been used to address the situation of squatters, they have also been strongly criticised. The notion of marginality carries with it the sense of dualism, since it implies being on the boundaries of urban and rural society, but not integrated into either. Marginality can be criticised on the same grounds, **that is to say** a separation of rural and urban is not useful since many of the problems of rural areas stem from the integration of the two. Marginal implies that squatters are outside the system, rather than a part of it and, therefore, that they are outside the class structure.

ANR 542 Napoleon III. Book-domain: world affairs

For such people any contact with the Court would have been the ultimate in defilement—though it should be noted that some of the husbands showed less scruple in accepting governmental places, even to the extent of standing for elections and taking the oath of loyalty to

the Emperor and the Constitution. By the middle of the reign, **that is to say** by 1860, 25 members of the Senate, a body nominated by the Emperor, were all members of the Old Nobility and included three dukes. There were fewer in Court circles, though even here some took up appointments on the grounds that they were serving France and not the dynasty.

ANT 995 National liberation. Book-domain: world affairs

Second, Luxembourg accepted, as did the Austro-Marxists, a cultural-linguistic nationality. For Poles, the programme of her party promised "The equality of all national groups that live in Russia; assurance of their cultural development; national schools and freedom in the use of native languages; provincial self-government, **that is to say**, autonomy". It was on this ground, among others, that she opposed the creation of a centralized Social Democratic party for the empire (and so collided with Lenin and the Bolsheviks). She held out for a federal party in the negotiations with the Russians (1902) to the point where the talks broke down.

ANX 1799 New Scientist. Book-domain: applied science

Some of the water in these aquifers comes from recharge in wetter areas nearby, but much of it is "fossil water", rain that fell in the last Ice Age. In Libya, a huge pipeline is under construction to carry water from desert wells to coastal towns and farms. Schemes such as these are the equivalent of "mining water", **that is to say** using a resource that is not replenished. Some of the water in very deep aquifers may not have entered them as rain. It may have been trapped in the pores of rocks that were formed beneath the sea; it is saline, and not good for drinking. Another theory is that some is juvenile water, released from molten rock deep within the Earth's crust, often during volcanic eruptions.

A2G 144 Independent Electronic Edition of 1989-10-05. Arts pages. Periodical-domain: arts

And there, for the time being, let us leave Vic Wilcox, while we travel back an hour or two in time, a few miles in space, to meet a very different character. A character who, rather awkwardly for me, doesn't herself believe in the concept of character. **That is to say** (a favourite phrase of her own), Robyn Penrose, Temporary Lecturer in English Literature at the University of Rummidge, holds that characters a bourgeois myth, an illusion created to reinforce the ideology of capitalism.

ANY 534 Nice work. Book-domain: imaginative

A technique refers to the mechanical or agronomic method applied, and in any one conservation project there may a considerable variety. The choice of technique is a vital one in a conservation project, programme or national policy for two related reasons. First, it will determine the technical success of the project in a *ceteris paribus* sense-**that is to say**, that provided there are no social constraints upon the successful application of the technique, it will fulfil the objectives of the project or policy (typically in terms of reduced erosion, increased yields of crops, pasture or forest).

AR9 386 The Save Britain's heritage action guide. Book-domain: arts

Conservation area protection thus extends beyond buildings, to include streets, trees, paths and views. The designation of these special areas is a vitally important way of protecting our heritage. There are thousands of buildings that despite being interesting and attractive-and perhaps important on a local scale-are not "listable" in themselves; **that is to say**, they are not of sufficient architectural or historic interest to merit individual protection.

ARH 420 Sexually transmitted diseases: the facts. Book-domain: social sciences

The risk of catching the infection will obviously increase with the number of times intercourse takes place and will also depend on other factors, such as the sites that are infected and whether barrier contraceptives such as the condom are used. Gonorrhoea is almost exclusively acquired sexually. **That is to say**, as a result of sexual intercourse or one of the variants of sexual behaviour, such as fellatio, cunnilingus, or rectal intercourse. Can it be caught from a lavatory seat? Well, the answer is that it can, but that, like other sexually transmitted diseases, this is an extremely rare method of transmission.

ARR 827 The selfish gene. Book-domain: social science

Both sides apparently believed in the policy of "live-and-let-live". The theory of games and the Prisoner's Dilemma had not been invented in those days but, with hindsight, we can see pretty clearly what was going on, and Axelrod provides a fascinating analysis. In the entrenched warfare of those times, the shadow of the future for each platoon was long. **That is to say**, each dug-in group of British soldiers could expect to be facing the same dug-in group of Germans for many months. Moreover, the ordinary soldiers never knew when, if ever, they were going to be moved; army orders are notoriously arbitrary, capricious and incomprehensible to those receiving them.

ASB 802 Freedom under Thatcher. Book-domain: social science

So there was no question but that section 2 of the 1911 Act applied to make it unlawful for any person to communicate information without authorization. Since 1969 many changes have taken place. The telephone network is now under the control and direction of British Telecom which has become a privatized monopoly. Nevertheless, by the Telecommunications Act 1984, section 2 was extended to BT employees (**that is to say**, private sector employees) and it is now an offence under the Official Secrets Act 1989 for Crown servants (which could be extended to cover BT employees engaged in this work) to disclose various types of information relating to telephone-tapping.

ASK 401 Treat me right: essays on medical law. Book-domain: social science

Professor Cretney repeats the argument that the use of the words "male" and "female" in section 11(c) of the Matrimonial Causes Act 1973 (which repealed and reproduced the provisions of the Nullity Act 1971), suggests that it may thus be possible to argue that the terms male and female refer to a person's gender (**that is to say**, the sex to which he psychologically belongs).

ASR 986 Volcanoes. Book-domain: natural sciences

Basalts are examples of basic volcanic rocks, while andesites are intermediate between basic and acid. To these should be added a third group, which are not so abundant in terms of volume, but which are equally important. These are the rhyolites, which are right at the other end of the spectrum from basalts; **that is to say** they are acid, contain a lot of silica and have the same composition as granite. They are lighter in colour and lower in density than basalts or andesites, and contain fewer dark minerals. Obsidian is a special kind of rhyolite; it is a natural glass, whereas ordinary rhyolites are not. The important properties of these three principal volcanic rock groups can be summarized in simple tables.

B01 340 Age. Book-domain: social science

Negative attitudes to ageing may, in part, be the result of the time lag between social change and a change in people's attitudes. Attitudes are a way of making sense of the world, of organising what we see and what we experience. Clearly linked to language and concepts which we can put into words, attitudes are usually held collectively. **That is to say** that our attitudes are strongly influenced by others: people we mix with, television and radio, papers, magazines and books.

B04 1051 Animal welfare and the environment. Book-domain: world affairs

This is a perfectly honourable aim but it does not escape the issue. It does not protect the animal from consumption and death. It merely adjusts the methods. The second thing we cannot escape is that man has dominion over the animals, whether we like it or not. I think it was Bertrand Russell who said that "all species have inclinations towards totalitarianism". **That is to say**, all species have tried to convert the whole world in to themselves if they possibly can. The fact is that we are rather more successful at it than other species. Wherever the earth will support life for man, it is man who decides the nature, the extent and the policy of the habitat and life for other species.

B0K 443 Cattle. Book-domain: applied science

The South Hams is now known as the South Devon; the Cornish and Sheeted Somerset have vanished, and the Gloucester is now a rare breed. At about the same period Youatt remarked that most of Somerset's cattle were good red Devons but that a few in northern Somerset were particoloured Devons and some in the west of the county were yellowish rather than deep red or were sheeted (**that is to say**, with broad white belts). A few years earlier the reddish-yellow Sheeted Somerset, which probably became extinct before 1890, had been described as a mainly polled breed remarkable for nothing except its coat pattern: the belted pattern became popular among those who liked decorative livestock in their parks.

B0P 542 Advanced coarse fishing. Book-domain: leisure

If the strike has been timed to perfection-that split second before the bait is ejected-then the fish is usually hooked. The strike, however, can very rarely be timed to such an accurate degree. This is why, with baits that differ in size, weight, and where on the bottom they lie in regard to cleanliness, we have to use various permutations of length of bite indication, **that is to say**, the amount of free line we allow it to take

before striking. Two or three maggots on a small hook lying on clean sand may only require an indication of an inch or two before the strike can be made.

B0S 590 The councillor. Book-domain: world affairs

It must be made perfectly clear that the member of the council was engaged on "approved duty" which is defined in section 177(2) of the Local Government Act 1972 as follows: -(2) In sections 173, 174 and 176 above, the expression "approved duty", in relation to a member of a body, means any of the following duties, **that is to say**-(a) attendance at a meeting of the body, or of any of its committees or sub-committees; (b) the doing of any other thing approved by the body, or anything of a class so approved, for the purpose of, or in connection with, the discharge of the functions of the body, or of any of its committees or sub-committees; (c) where, in pursuance of a duty imposed

B10 7 Discipline: a positive guide for parents. Book-domain: social sciences

There will be lessons about the relationships between themselves and others, about social skills and self-restraint; and there will be instructions, requests and demonstrations concerning social requirements and rules. These so-called norms reflect society's expectations of what is appropriate, **that is to say**, normal social and moral behaviour.

B19 825 Fighting cancer: a personal story. Book-domain: belief and thought

A form of hospital where the predominant smell was dettol? Or, as at least two people suggested, a place where one learned to die? With my form filled in, I phoned: "I want to come for a fortnight, but the problem is, I have a book to finish. Can I come and do some of the work there. **That is to say**, will there be a table in my room on which to put a typewriter, and can I bring an anglepoise?" .

B1P 1077 A companion to local history research. Book-domain: world affairs

The importance of the great national repositories of original documents was stressed in Chapter 5, and subsequent chapters have indicated many ways in which their resources may be used by local researchers. Attention has also been paid to the importance of collections maintained in museums, reference libraries, universities, and by corporations. These collections, in addition to having work of a distinctly "local", **that is to say** geographical, concentration have, in many cases, manuscripts and printed works of much wider significance in the fields of social development, religious beliefs, technological innovation, the functioning of particular industries, and so on.

B25 12 Methods of social investigation. Book-domain: social science

But prediction is not synonymous with theory. Theory in fact is the building which is made from the hard-won bricks of research studies. It is sometimes useful to think of the findings of science, **that is to say** the meaningful observations made and their linking together, as being contributions to a kitty which is the theory of the subject. Looked at in this way one sees empirical observations, facts, research studies, and so on, as contributions to this kitty and the bigger the kitty, the greater the development of the subject itself.

B28 898 Managing the national curriculum. Book-domain: social sciences

The possibility of removing the 16+ as a series of examinations to be taken after a one/two year course for 14-16 year olds at the age of sixteen would remove a constraint which has a distorting effect on the pattern of the curriculum of schools. **That is to say** it would remove the overemphasis on a simultaneous and over-rich diet of information gathering and testing. 3. So the aim should be to create an Oxford Certificate/Portfolio/Diploma for all students, moving into the world of

work or higher education. It would be taken with them at any age and would contain:(i)

B75 1396 New Scientist. Periodical-domain: applied science

But all this does not help with amorphous (non-crystalline) materials such as oxide glasses. Although glasses in general do have a definite local structure their overall structure is disordered. As a result they diffract X-rays diffusely. **That is to say**, in place of the regular "Weidosepe" pattern of spots that the regular planes of atoms in a single crystal generate, the diffraction pattern of a glass consists of haloes of uniform intensity (Figure 1).

B7G 1300 New Scientist. Book-domain: applied science

Does the second goal really matter? There are several reasons for believing that the answer is a resounding Yes. First of all, we can note that there is nowadays an increasing emphasis on the idea of "life-long education"-**that is to say** education that continues through the whole of adulthood. One way in which adults can test their interest in some novel subject matter is to watch television programmes, or read books.

B7M 1457 New Scientists. Periodical-domain: social science

If we look at an array of words as a self-referential order, we may abstract certain regularities, such as rules of grammar, sentence construction, statistics on the relative frequencies of various letters, words, etc. But this would leave out of account the main factor that was involved in determining the order of words, which is the meaning of the whole communication. **That is to say**, the order of a language is determined in some domain that transcends the language, rather than within the language itself, which has only a symbolic relationship with the domain in question.

BME 165 Construction refurbishment. Book-domain: applied science

The relationship that the building surveyor is able to develop directly with the client is unusual in its closeness, and has a special significance in that it enables him to be identified as the expert in the area of work under inquiry. **That is to say**, he stands between the client and the outcome of his instruction and is therefore identified as the one most responsible for a project's success or failure. Within future curricula, this aspect of the building surveyor's career may need greater emphasis, to ensure he holds the ground he has already gained.

BMV 124 Europe in the central middle ages. Book-domain: world affairs

If they were children, they could be betrothed, but the Church insisted that they retained the right of refusing their consent to the marriage when they grew up. Social custom made this proviso almost nugatory. But it strongly defended the girl from being "disparaged", **that is to say**, from being married to her social inferior. It was the complaint of the Empress Matilda that her father had married her, an empress, to a count. This was disparagement indeed.

BNK 1144 Nonesuch the university of Bristol magazine. Periodical-domain: leisure

Family has adopted principles for the protection of children and dependent spouses which could apply equally to the unmarried. "Marriage" could become a purely social or religious ceremony-in which case there would be no such thing as divorce, legally speaking. The problem with this is that most people still want, at some stage in their lives, formal (**that is to say legal**) recognition of their commitment to one another. But they also, if circumstances change, want to be able to escape from that commitment should it prove intolerable. We concluded that decisions about divorce should be left to the parties (or just one party, if only one wants it).

BNL 496 One's company. Book-domain: belief and thought

However, if you are in the position of selling a larger property, which is paid for, and buying a smaller one, then you will not have to raise finance. It used to be the case that one had to find a property that one wanted to buy first and then apply for a mortgage, but some organisations will now provide a mortgage guarantee document, **that is to say** an assurance of the amount of money they will lend you, before you start looking for a property. Either way, the amount of money you can borrow will be based, if you are at work, upon a multiple of your earnings-usually two-and-a-half to three times the value of your gross earnings per year.

BP5 5 Competition and business regulation in the single market. Book-domain: commerce

Thus, for example, customs duties, discriminatory internal taxation and quotas have been abolished. Companies have the right to sell their goods and services across national frontiers, and to set up agencies and branches in other member states. To facilitate this, many aspects of national company law have been "harmonized", **that is to say** made uniform, by Community rules.

BP5 7 Competition and single regulation in the single market. Book-domain: commerce

No one was ill, no one was drunk, no one was fighting. Things, George said eventually, were going so smoothly that one should expect disaster any time now, eh? We came at last to his office which was basically a roomette like my own: **that is to say**, it was a seven-by-four-foot space on one side of a central corridor, containing a washbasin, a folding table and two seats, one of which concealed what the timetable coyly called "facilities".

C8L 339 Church planting: our future hope. Book-domain: belief and thought

Similarly, if you are in covenant relationship with others in a church, then when such a need arises it is quite reasonable to do it because it needs doing. So there are a multitude of different reasons for someone to join a church planting team. Having said this, each one must come by faith. **That is to say**, he or she must believe that it is God's will for him or her at that time. A person should not join the team out of duty or obligation or persuasion from leadership, or solely because of the location of their home, unless they have faith that it is from God. We read that whatever does not proceed from faith is sin.

C8M 128 Champagne. Book-domain: leisure

Later, in a treatise written in the eighteenth century, *Mémoire sur la manière de cultiver la vigne et de faire le vin en Champagne* (written, it is believed, by Jean Godinot c. 1718), it is stated that the Champenois had begun to study how to produce a "grey" almost white wine some fifty years before, **that is to say** approximately 1668.

C8R 1204 An Introduction to constitutional law. Book-domain: social science

Matters of privilege are raised more rarely there than in the Commons. The Supremacy of Parliament Parliament is clearly a very important institution. More than this, few dissent from the proposition that it is legislatively supreme, **that is to say**, that it is competent to make or unmake any law whatever, and that no other body can impede its will so to do. It is not an inherent characteristic of a legislature that it is "sovereign", as the above quality is commonly described.

C8V 668 Doubt. Book-domain: belief and thought

What is left, it is claimed, will be self-evident truths which can be accepted as such by all open minds. René Descartes, who attempted to discover truth by doubting everything he could manage to doubt,

described the first principle of his method like this in *A Discourse on Method*, "The first rule was never to accept anything for true which I did not clearly know to be such; **that is to say**...to comprise nothing more in my judgement than what was presented to my mind so clearly and distinctly as to exclude all ground of doubt." This method of Cartesian doubt was the process by which he reached his famous dictum: *Cogito ergo sum* (I think, therefore I am). The clarity and compelling power of this approach are plain.

C96 1528 Practical Fishkeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure

Killifish can be loosely placed into two categories: top spawners and bottom spawners. The Gold Australe is classed as a top spawner, **that is to say** the eggs are found in the top half of the tank. In a bare tank (minimum size 10 x 6 x 6), suspend two spawning mops on pieces of cork or polystyrene and place a clump of Java Moss on the tank base for the female to hide in when she requires a respite from spawning.

C9B 622 The Philosophy of Gandhi. Book-domain: belief and thought
As Gandhi explains concerning *sadgraha*: "I liked the word, but it did not fully represent the whole idea I wished it to connote. I therefore corrected it to "*Satyagraha*". Truth (*Satya*) implies love, and firmness (*agraha*) engenders and therefore serves as a synonym for force. I thus began to call the Indian movement "*Satyagraha*", **that is to say**, the Force which is born of Truth and Love or Non-violence..." The concept of *satyagraha* gave practical expression to the religious and ethical ideals of Truth and non-violence.

C9L 2611 Guitarist. Periodical-domain: arts

(Sept issue p.49) No: but I'll agree that portion of the Metheny interview was ambiguous! Where the confusion seems to stem from is the fact that guitar music sounds an octave lower than concert pitch. **That is to say** that Middle C, at 256Hz, has its true pitch represented on the guitar at the first fret, second string. But when it is written on the

slave, middle C is played an octave lower-on the third fret, fifth string. Hence it's dropped an octave. I think this was the point Pat was trying to get across. VIVA EGGLE!

C9M 229 Guitarist. Periodical-domain: arts

There wasn't a bass drum on that? "No, no drums whatsoever-just feet on the boards and handclaps." The new album starts with an entirely different version of We Will Rock You, **that is to say**, the traditional carol. Was that kind of polarisation with the Queen song intentional? Er, yes. I'm a bit wary of explaining things, but throughout the whole album you can hear this person who is very small and very confused, confronted by different situations as they roll past him.

C9R 2162 Hearing loss: a guide to self-help. Book-domain: social science

What is it like? A formal definition of subjective tinnitus is given by Mr Stewart Mawson in his book Diseases of the Ear. He says: "Tinnitus (Latin for ringing) is the name given to the subjective (heard only by the person concerned) experience of hearing sounds in the ear or head which have no basis of reality in the environment, **that is to say**, the sound cannot be accounted for by vibrations coming from objects external to the patient." Objective tinnitus that other people can hear is very rare.

CA1 949 Kites. Book-domain: leisure

Raoul Fosset's fully articulated carrier, actuated by radio control. Getting it up there We have already mentioned the simplest method is to tie a stripwood header to the kite line after the kite has been launched and is then able to lift the weight; **that is to say**, after about 20m or 65ft of line has been paid out, and the kite is free of ground level turbulence. A variant of this basic system is to attach a pulley to the kiteline, and to hoist the camera unit by a second line via the pulley.

CAH 10 73 New Statesman and Society. Periodical: world affairs

There, I would be just as much a stranger, but they would have to define themselves against me as natives against incomers, or in terms of social classification. This would probably be a less effective form of making collective distinctions than "ethnicity", but I am by no means clear why. Every separatist movement in Europe that I can think of bases itself on "ethnicity", linguistic or not, **that is to say** on the assumption that "we"-the Basques, Catalans, Scots, Croats, or Georgians are a different people from the Spaniards, the English, the Serbs or the Russians, and therefore we should not live in the same state with them. This is not, by the way, the case, as yet, in most of Asia, Africa and the Americas south of the Canadian border.

CBN 756 Van Gogh: a life. Book-domain: arts

At other times his need to go to her was awful, He wanted them to complete each other, to be made fully whole and created by her, instead of enduring the throes of his uncreated self. He preached to Theo like a priest of marriage, outdoing his father in unshakeable belief. "A man and wife can be one, **that is to say**, one whole and not two halves.

CBR 155 Aspects of language teaching. Book-domain: social science

But if one troubles to read what Chomsky actually says here, it is apparent that he recognizes that linguistics and psychology are associated with ways of approaching "the problems of language teaching from a principled point of view". What he questions is whether these disciplines can "support a "technology" of language teaching", **that is to say**, presumably, whether they can directly inform pedagogic technique.

CCA 203 A bad spell for the worst witch. Book-domain: imaginative

"I hope you have all been practising during the holiday," said Miss Hardbroom, as the girls all lined up with their brooms hovering next to them and the cats perched on the back-**that is to say**, most of the cats

were perched on the back. Mildred's tabby was clinging desperately to the front of her cardigan, its claws hooked in and a wild, desperate look on its face.

CCEB 2 Understanding book-collection. Book-domain: leisure

The Language of Book-Collecting (ii) The language of book-collecting, if there is such a thing, is a hotch-potch in which the chief ingredients are borrowed from the language of bibliography, borrowed, **that is to say**, at second-hand from the various book-productive and book-distributive trades. It is inevitably so. For every book-collector, and every bookseller, is in greater or less degree a bibliographer. Simon Nowell-Smith in *Talks on Book-Collecting* (1952) It is time that we turned to the inside of our book and began to explore its mysteries and terminology.

CCE 8 Enemy territory. Book-domain: belief and thought

At one level this statement is clearly metaphorical and rhetorical. Britain was at war with Germany, and Lewis's famous religious broadcasts were replete with images of sabotage, secret wirelasses and enemy-occupied territory. But at a deeper level Lewis wanted to make it plain that talking in this way was not mere metaphor. **That is to say** that although he was clearly not endorsing a militaristic brand of Rambo-style Christianity-say, fighting modern crusades against Muslims, or shooting atheists-he was insisting that to be a Christian meant to be a person engaged in the Great Battle. This battle, which is still raging, is no less than the fight between good and evil: the war between God and the Devil.

CDE 247 The English way of Death-the common funeral since 1450.

Book-domain: periodical

Mr Sowerberry, the undertaker in Charles Dickens's *Oliver Twist*, was in the middle of the funeral hierarchy, but towards the bottom end as he only catered for parish funerals-**that is to say** those from the workhouse

or those receiving outdoor relief' His shop would have been in a back street, probably in a run-down part of the town, amongst the dwellings of those whom he catered for; indeed, Sowerberry himself was only just above the bread-line.

CE7 132 Protestors and visions. Book-domain: world affairs

Angell's analysis reflected a Eurocentric racism widespread in pacifist thinking. Quakers had long distinguished between the policeman and the soldier, and the suppression of disorder among heathens was seen as legitimate in a way that prosecuting war between civilized Christian peoples could never be. As George Dangerfield remarked in 1935: "the Englishman of the seventies and eighties...was strongly in favour of peace-**that is to say**, he liked his wars to be fought at a distance and, if possible, in the name of God.

CEB 2006 A season for murder. Book-domain: imaginative

Markby tapped his fingers on the table top and hissed with exasperation. It was impossible to tell whether this youth was very shrewd **or rather** simple. The law recognises degrees of homicide other than murder and is observed with some nicety on the matter of recklessness or assault with intent to cause bodily harm. The element of "mens rea"-**that is to say**, what was actually in the accused's mind at the time of the assault-is of utmost importance. Parody had certainly behaved recklessly as the law understood that term.

CEG 222 The new science of strong materials. Book-domain: applied science

Thus the situation goes from bad to worse. In this way a crack is really a mechanism which enables a weak external force to break even the strongest bonds one by one. And so the crack runs through the material until total fracture occurs. Inglis calculated the stress concentration factor, **that is to say** by how many times the stress is increased locally, not only for rectangular hatchways, but also for other openings such as

round and elliptical holes. By making an elliptical hole very long and narrow we get a crack, or something very like it.

CFX 45 Sounds from the bell jar. Book-domain: arts

Or, as Sylvia Plath, one of the writers to be considered in this book, put it, with more feeling: We can therefore anticipate and this brings us to our second theme-that the answers we seek actually lie elsewhere than in a simple equation between creative and mad thought. **That is to say**, if creativity and psychosis are found to be connected then this is more likely to be revealed, not as a function of the psychotic state itself, but in more subtle ways-for example, through certain modes or forms of thinking and perception which the tendencies to psychosis and creativity might prove to have in common.

CG3 1121 Creative writing. Book-domain: leisure

I can't. I can imagine him saying "Ah luv thee, but dunna ma me feel sma" but it's hard for me to picture the careful explanation and vindication of himself that comes after. I think he could have said it but that he wouldn't have. **That is to say**, he could think through those ideas and feelings and in theory he could say them aloud but his shyness and his social position and the conventions about men expressing their feelings would have prevented him. That's if Parkin were a man in real life. But he's not, he's a character in a novel.

CKN 367 British literature since 1945. book-domain: arts

Perhaps all that makes it easier to understand why Orwell was so anxious that Waugh should read his books: anxious enough to send him copies, though to a stranger. As novelists, however, Orwell and Waugh evolve not towards each other but, technically speaking, in opposite directions. Waugh's novels grow towards realism as he ages, **that is to say**, after 1945, and Orwell's away from it. Orwell, unlike Waugh, was never a natural master of narrative, and his uncertain career in fiction

had begun, after much trial and error, with *Burmese Days* (1934), where he had exploited his youthful experiences in the Burma police.

CKR 13 Saint Anselm. Book-domain: belief and thought

These two letters were written in 1093 when Anselm was awaiting consecration as archbishop. One was addressed to the bishop of Paris, the other to the precentor of Paris. Their theme was simplicity itself: the precentor wished to become a monk; the bishop wished to retain him in the service of the cathedral. Anselm had no doubt where justice lay: "No man having put his hand to the plough [that is to say, in this case, having committed himself to a monastic life] and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of Heaven. In writing to the precentor, Anselm enforced this theme with all his old ardour. It follows from this that the test of legitimate episcopal authority is that the bishop should speak with the voice of Christ.

CKX 307 The Art Newspaper. Periodical-domain: arts

"American Art in the Twentieth Century" is the fourth in a series of reassessments of national schools and follows Rosenthal's presentations of German, British and Italian art. Do such surveys, taking place five or ten years before the century's close, have validity? What are their limitations? "Thinking big" is certainly a professional challenge, or temptation; **that is to say** trying to conceive an omnibus exhibition that will sort everything out and establish a record is an interesting proposition. But I have not seen much evidence that it is really possible to do it on this scale. Tackling the same project in smaller but more detailed and significant chapters is perhaps the better exercise.

CLE 169 Comparative industrial relations. Book-domain: commerce

To overcome this problem and allow for differences in the industry-mix between different countries industrial relations at industry level also need to be taken into account. **That is to say**, it is useful to examine the double variation of both national and industry factors. By comparing

similar industries across countries the more industry-specific forces of technical and market contexts are held fairly constant. It is then possible to test for any separate impact of environmental forces appertaining to the national level, in terms of broader social and political influences.

CLW 182 Frameworks for teaching. Book-domain: social science

In most schools the percentage of girls choosing physics in the GIST cohort increased in comparison with previous years. However, the increase in control schools was as large as in the action schools! The girl friendly school Unfortunately the pattern of option choice and attitude differences is not perfectly matched within each school. **That is to say**, certain action schools were successful in changing attitudes, while others were successful in shifting option choices. Only one school was successful on both counts. The implication is that pupil attitude change is not sufficient on its own to ensure that pupils will actually make non-traditional option choices. Presumably the major mediating factors are the teachers, and the school, concerned.

CM2 832 Minds, machines and evolution. Book-domain: belief and thought

In what follows, I shall play fast and loose with these words and the subtle distinctions between them. **That is to say**, I shall not distinguish carefully such questions as: Does X think? Is X conscious? Does X have essentially private inner processes? Is X aware of a sensation of pain? Is X aware of those trees in front of him? Is X conscious he is giving an after dinner speech?

CM5 140 Investigating society. Book-domain: social science

Interviews I used three main methods: interview, questionnaire and participant observation. Altogether I probably interviewed about five hundred persons (members, parents, deprogrammers, anti-cultists, media etc), but not all these interviews were conducted in a systematic way-**that is to say**, they were with people with whom I happened to

make contact, and may not have been representative of the Unification population as a whole.

CM6 1052 Europe 1880-1945. book-domain: world affairs

Bismarck was right to distrust the cities as breeders of socialism, but wrong to exaggerate the danger. New disciplining agents were at work in them, and a new kind of politics was to give outlet to their grievances. POLITICS Few Europeans would have contested the view that they should be organized politically in sovereign states. They felt, **that is to say**, that within a given territory, there should be one authority with an ultimate monopoly of coercive power. There were still people who resisted the idea of a sovereign law-maker with the right to invade any vested interest and set aside any restraining principle, but by and large, the supremacy of the State was acknowledged after centuries of dispute.

CMA 1321 Evolution from molecules to men. Book-domain: social sciences

This argument seems to me sound so far as it goes, but it does not go very far. Implicit in this last argument is another logical relation which is more interesting for this question than that between ought and is: the relation, **that is to say**, between ought and can. This relationship underlies some important negative arguments which by citing certain claims to the effect that human beings cannot, as they may suppose, live in a certain way, lead to the conclusion that certain ethical goals or ideals are unrealistic and should be revised.

CMF 417 Research methods. Book-domain: social science

Exactly the same principle applies when sampling for social research. The researcher aims to investigate a sample of the population, because this is cheaper and quicker, but the sample must be representative of the population as a whole. **That is to say**, what is true of the sample should be true of the population, or at least it should be possible to calculate

the likelihood of its being true. There are various ways of selecting such a sample. Random or probability sampling is the one that most people are familiar with..

CMH 76 Issues in psychobiology. Book-domain: applied science

What the psychologists showed was that stimulus elements in groups had properties not present in the individual elements. Moreover, those properties are often distortions of the true appearance of objects. **That is to say**, lines which are physically straight will appear bent, lines that are the same length will appear different, exposure to one stimulus will alter the appearance of one presented subsequently, and lines and edges that are not physically present will be seen by the subject.

CMN 485 Content of social explanation. Book-domain: belief and thought

The aspect of society which is seen to be most important in this respect is called the dominant instance, and Althusser and his followers argue that it is determined in the last instance by the economy. **That is to say**, the economic practice of a society determines that some other aspect of it will be dominant in the structure of the society as a whole. This view is supported by a passage from the first volume of Capital, in which Marx answers the objection that his theory only applies to capitalist society.

CMU 1106 Special education needs. Book-domain: social science

Group consultation in practice

The aims of the consultative exploration are thus: to deepen teachers' understanding of individual needs to become aware of obstacles to the learning task to develop their abilities to meet these needs by adaptations within the context in which they occur, within the remit of an ordinary teaching day; **that is to say**, through the day-to-day learning programme (analysing it to discover its remedial/ therapeutic potential) therapeutic-educative relationship experiences between

teacher, pupil and other classmates (activating the educational potential inherent in daily classroom interactions)

CN2 566 Safety is no accident. Book-domain: applied science

In this manner the alleged dispensation of justice can be seen to be in direct conflict with the best interests of air safety. What, then, is the answer? The Warsaw Convention, with all its amendments, protocols and variations, seeks to limit the liability of international air carriers to a specific sum of money while acknowledging the air carrier (airline) as the only party liable; **that is to say** aircraft manufacturers, component manufacturers, pilots, engineers, air traffic controllers and governments who operate airports and navigation services are excluded from all liability unless negligence can be proved. However, the USA have never ratified the Warsaw Convention so as far as air carrier liability is concerned within the USA the sky is the limit and any party whose negligence can be proved is liable.

CRE 213 Computergram international. Periodical-domain: applied science

"Is a balancing act," according to Hewlett-Packard's UK workstation business manager, Peggy Heppelmann. She believes that Hewlett-Packard has now carved itself enough of a breathing space to be able to consider various options at both ends of the market. If multiprocessing desktop machines are on the agenda, and all indications are that they will appear later-**that is to say** next year-rather than sooner, then they will definitely use a higher performance Precision Architecture RISC 7100 part (currently at 99MHz), which Hewlett-Packard will first introduce in a new uniprocessor system.

CRF 1008 Family obligations and social change. Periodical-domain: social science

Whether this is the case in contemporary societies is an issue to which I shall return in later chapters. However, even where a less rigid gender

division of labour prevails, it seems to be the case that women commonly act as the "kin keepers", **that is to say**, the people who keep up regular contacts with members of the wider kin group. In so far as women have these contacts rather than men-even if sometimes they are, as it were, on behalf of men-it is likely that they are in a position to mobilize support in a way that men are not.

CRK 157 Modern Catholicism: Vatican II and after. Book-domain: belief and thought

If in the age of Paul VI the major challenges to Roman policy still came from Western Europe, by the age of John Paul II they were coming from other continents. In retrospect, the ending at this point of the long preponderance of Western Europe (**that is to say**, Italy, France, southern Germany, Belgium and Spain)-a preponderance common to the pre-conciliar Church, the Council and even the pontificate of Paul VI-in the affairs of Catholicism and its replacement by a far wider range of geographical influences, may appear as far more significant than any shift from the mildly liberal to the neo-conservative.

EAW 248 Exploring the night sky with binoculars. Book-domain: natural sciences

There is a catastrophic "implosion", which may be called the opposite of an explosion, followed by a shock-wave which literally blows the star apart in what is called a supernova outburst. The end result is a cloud of expanding gas, in the midst of which there may be a very small, super-dense object known as a pulsar, made up of neutrons-**that is to say**, atomic particles with no electrical charge. Because the neutrons can be so closely packed, the density is far greater even than that of a White Dwarf.

EB2 1332 Legal Theory and common law. Book-domain: social science
Thus crude or naive positivism might well be characterized as including no "thought" whatever. Natural law thinking, however, is overtly

normative and therefore includes an "ought". The "ought" of natural law thinking is, in my view, irreducibly a material ought, **that is to say** that somehow the "ought" of natural law predetermines to some extent what can be the content of an ought statement. Consider the related concept of "good" as an illustration.

EBM 76 An Introduction to administrative law. Book-domain: social science

In this sense, to ask whether a body is subject to judicial review is to ask whether its activities are subject to supervision according to rules and principles of public law. This "supervisory jurisdiction" (which is "inherent", **that is to say**, it is a jurisdiction which was assumed by the judges rather than conferred on the court by statute) is to be contrasted with "appellate jurisdiction" (which is possessed by a number of courts and other bodies such as appeal tribunals).

EBP 563 The Angevin legacy and the 100 years war. Book-domain: world affairs

The treaty can be divided into four main parts. Firstly, Henry III of England took the somewhat unwise step of renouncing his fiefs in Normandy, Anjou, Touraine, Maine and Poitou. His heirs and successors were not to lay claim to them. Secondly, this was conditional upon Louis IX of France ceding to Henry all rights "that he has and holds in these three dioceses and three cities: **that is to say**, Limoges, Cahors and Périgueux, in fiefs and in domains". Thirdly, the Agenais, claimed by the king of England, was to remain in French hands until the question of his legal right was determined.

EBS 1314 The Art Newspaper. Periodical-domain: art

This was to consider whether a protocol to the Berne Convention should be prepared and if so, what its content should be. One of the questions the committee considered was whether an "author of a literary or artistic work should have exclusive right to authorise the public

display of the original work or a copy thereof, **that is to say** to display the work directly (exhibition) or indirectly, **that is to say** by means of a device (example: a screen)". If such rights were introduced, this would allow artists legitimately to charge a royalty either on public exhibition or where their work is displayed on a visual display unit.

EC8 596 The bright face of danger. Book-domain: arts

He is introduced literally with a bang, explaining in his pedantic way an alarming explosion in his room to his clergyman uncle as "a little experiment": "It had occurred to me that if the substance known as Potassium Chlorate were to be contained in some small vessel with the right quantity of Sulphur, and the compound impacted-**that is to say**, if I hit it a pretty fair whack with a pestle-the result would be an explosion.

ECD 1164 Financial conglomerates and the Chinese wall. Book-domain: commerce

Under the CSA 1985, an insider must deal and know that he is dealing when in possession of a particular type of information, referred to as "unpublished price sensitive information". Section 10 defines "unpublished price sensitive" information as information which: (a) relates to specific matters relating or of concern (directly or indirectly) to that company, **that is to say**, is not of a general nature relating or of concern to that company; and (b)is not generally known to those persons who are accustomed or would be likely to deal in those securities but which would if it were generally known to them be likely to materially affect the price of those securities.

ECV 605 Feminist perspectives in philosophy. Book-domain: belief and thought

Essentially, they are of two kinds. First, there are facts about what different people's moral ideals actually are. Here it is important to know (a) whether male and female ideals diverge: whether, that is, the moral

outlook people have depends in some causally related way on whether they are male or female, and (b) whether the ideals themselves are gender-relative: **that is to say**, whether what is good in a woman or right for a woman might not be bad in a man, or wrong for a man, and vice versa. Secondly, there are facts about the lives of men and women and the systematic ways in which their lives differ, which it would be unwise to overlook.

EDT 1285 Management today. Periodical-domain: commerce

The most dramatic effect of the squeeze, says Sir Eric, is seen in academic salaries, He produces figures which show that while dons' salaries have retained their real value over the last 15 years or so-**that is to say**, they have kept pace with the Retail Price index-almost every other non-manual worker in the UK has done significantly better. Academics are about 36% behind the average (non-manual) index. The main problem that Ash foresees is among the younger academic staff. He could not argue, looking at Imperial, that there has been a major brain drain of senior staff.

EDU 1053 Marxism today. Periodical-domain: world affairs

In the "dependent" world of the first half of the 20th century, movements for national liberation and independence were the main agents for the political emancipation of most of the globe, **that is to say** for an elimination of imperial administration and, more significantly, direct military domination by the imperial powers.

EEB 179 People in organisations. Book-domain: commerce

They believe that creative thought is only for clever people. This is not the case. Thinking is a skill and like any other it can be developed and improved through practice. Traditional academic courses stress learning. If you take a degree in English Literature or International Relations, you will do so with the intention of learning about the subject. **That is to say**, your study will provide you with the knowledge

that is generally accepted as making up the subject. This is true to some extent on a Business Studies course, but learning about commercial activity is only a part of your studies. What is different about a vocational course is that you are also expected to be creative and to produce new ideas, novel applications and improved methods of doing things.

EEN 99 Sex, politics, and society. Book-domain: commerce

Power is, on the contrary, omnipresent, it is the intangible but forceful reality of social existence and of all social relations. Foucault is not interested in a grand theory of power, but in the "concrete mechanisms and practices through which power is exercised". Power, **that is to say**, is not a single thing: it is relational, it is created in the relationships which sustain it. Although he is unwilling to specify in advance any privileged source of power, there nevertheless underlies his work what has been described as a "philosophical monism", a conception of a "will to power" forever expanding and bursting forth in the form of a will to know.

EY 445 The Tudor regime. Book-domain: world affairs

But as long as we bear these limitations in mind we can, to some extent, assess the muscle of the political machine. An estimate of royal revenue indicates not only the ability of the government to meet its commitments, but also its capacity to extract money from its subjects. It is customary for historians to distinguish between the ordinary and the extraordinary revenues of the Crown, between, **that is to say**, its recurrent, peacetime income and those occasional sums derived during wars or other emergencies from parliamentary grants or benevolences.

EF0 26 Theology and Feminism. Book-domain: belief and thought

Christianity has this necessary relation to history. Of a worship service in which no mention was made of Christ, the bible was not read, and no reference made to God's dealings with the people of Israel or of the

early church, we might well say that it was theistic (if mention was made of God), but it could not rightly be called Christian. Christians believe in particularity. **That is to say** they believe that God was in some sense differently related to particular events, or may be said in particular to have revealed God's self through those events, in a way in which this is not true of all other events or periods in history.

EF4 72 The third way: the promise to independence democracy. Book-domain: commerce

He had just persuaded the Operative Builders Union to restructure itself as the Grand National Guild of Builders. In effect the people working in the industry were to take it over and to run it as an industrial co-operative, organised nationally. Now he sought to extend the idea to the whole of industry. Note again the title and functions. The Union was to be "Moral": **that is to say** it would look, as Owen had always looked, beyond the immediate need to protect working people against exploitation of the work-place.

EFV 914 Richard the Lionheart. Book-domain: world affairs

It is much more likely to be no more than a reflection of the fact that almost everything we know about Richard as Duke of Aquitaine comes from an English chronicler, Roger of Howden, and Roger only has information when he has access to the reports sent by Richard to his father, **that is to say** when Henry is in England.

EFW 1654 The siege of Krishnapur

The Collector had an unpleasant feeling that unless something unexpected happened he and the Sikhs would find themselves cut off...But just then something did happen. Ever since Ford had pointed out the location of the sepy magazine Harry had been unable to get it out of his mind. He had even fired a round shot in its direction with the long iron six-pounder at the normal maximum elevation, **that is to say**, five degrees; the brass six-pounder, of course, no longer consented to

swallow round shot. The shot, as he had expected, had fallen short by somewhere between three and four hundred yards.

EUJ 70 Directions in biblical Hebrew poetry. Book-domain: belief and thought

But it is not at all certain that the signifier 'less than' rather than 'consisting of, made from', and there is also the possibility that the text should read: 'No doubt ' and emptiness' adds a further precision or perhaps elaboration to the of line A; **that is to say**, to the idea of ignorable non-existence is added that of chaotic absence of form.

EV4 31 Literacy. Book-domain: social science

Learning a language, as Halliday (1984) and Hymes (1971) amongst others have pointed out, involves more than acquiring a grammatical system that will generate well-formed sentences. It involves learning how to produce and understand sentences in a wide variety of contexts, **that is to say** how to use language as a resource for communicating with other people. Sentences take on their meaning for an individual in relation to the situations in which they are used. Their effectiveness as a resource depends on the range of purposes to which the learner discovers they may be put from his or her experience of interaction with other speakers.

EVX 602 Mind and brain. Book-domain: belief and thought

We do indeed have it that a causal circumstance necessitated its effect. But to assert that is by definition to assert no more than a certain independent conditional-roughly, that since the circumstance existed, even if most other things had been different, the effect would still have occurred. We also have it that effects do no more than dependently necessitate their causal circumstances. **That is to say**, roughly, that if the effect occurred, and no other causal circumstance for it but one existed, that one would still have existed even if most other things had been different.

EW7 372 Resource-based learning. Book-domain: social science

Elsewhere, significant explorations were made of the types of cooperative support that could be developed, between schools and teachers from different schools, and between a variety of other educational institutions such as colleges, polytechnics, universities and that peculiarly British innovation, the teachers' centre. The ILFA pattern is superficially similar to that often found in American schools: **that is to say**, the two aspects of resources production and resources acquisition and management are related to types of para-professional staffing.

EW8 1012 Sexual aspects of social work. Book-domain: social science

In milder manifestations, counselling in its true sense may help the individual concerned either to overcome or to come to terms with the tendency. In more severe disorders, more intensive psychotherapy or psychotherapeutic treatment may help; if not, control by drugs or even personal containment may be necessary (**that is to say**, detention not necessarily as punishment but in protection of society and its members). Rape and sexual assault By definition these are, without exception, social deviations and offences against the law of this country. Perhaps more importantly, they are essentially offences against the person and personality; their sexual nature is secondary and almost incidental.

EWX 579 Myocardial infarction: acute care and rehabilitation. Book-domain: natural sciences

Outpatient exercise programme: When an outpatient exercise programme exists, patients can begin by about 5-6 weeks after the infarct. The principles of exercise for coronary patients is no different from that applied to normal individuals trying to get fit. The exercise should be 'aerobic', **that is to say** using much movement but little strength, as opposed to isometric which uses much strength and little movement.

F86 172 Church of Scotland. Meeting on rules and regulations. Speech recorded in public context

Now that is accepted by all and I've discussed it recently I say with one of the Roman Catholic hierarchy. Transubstantiation now listen carefully I have discovered this in conversation to be a matter of semantics of words. I've said to my brother Roman Catholic if what you are saying is that the substance of the godhead is in a mystery transferred into our substance **that is to say** that we are recipients in the sacrament of the divine life then we go out in faith together believing the same essential. If that is so, and it does seem to be so, is it not time that we rejoice together while we are being nourished together at his table.

F8M 497 Norwich City College: drama course meeting and lecture. Speech recorded in educational context

As a story line it's not all because it doesn't say anything about the girl, it doesn't say where she's going, where she's come from and what's happening on the way. So, that's the starting point. That's the basis of the structure. From that point on we need to give a name to that person we need to give the environment, **that is to say** is she inside? Is she outside? Is she walking in a park? It is good to know, if it's outside, what the weather conditions are like.

F9J 180 Bookseller. Periodical-domain: arts

"I always knew that finishing the publication cycle was a necessary precondition to anything else happening. **That is to say**, so long as there was some incomplete aspect of the book's publication, there was something for people attacking it to focus on.

F9L 177 Church and real 1272-1416. book-domain: belief and thought
At first sight, the stature looks like a piece of blatant, novel and radical anticlericalism, but on closer inspection another view emerges. Within its brief text is contained a world of mystery. It claims to have been

made "on the advice of prelates" as well as of "earls, barons and other faithful subjects of our realm who are of our council", **that is to say** in the parliament which was then sitting.

F9W 1714 Discourse. Book-domain: social science

We know some general facts, and we can begin to fill in the gaps in our understanding. A student, faced with discourse slightly beyond his or her current knowledge, is in the same position relative to that discourse as we are to the above. We should expect a student to tackle a problematic discourse in the same way as we would ourselves: **that is to say** top-down, starting with general ideas of the discourse and filling in details-like difficult word meaning-later. To ask about details before establishing the general context is to approach from the wrong direction.

FA0 1264 Restructuring Britain: the economy in question. Book-domain: commerce

In order to proceed further with this debate, it is necessary to look more deeply at the form of the arguments. One point on which all the above theories agree, although they would put different degrees of explicit emphasis upon it, is that "space is socially produced". **That is to say**, characteristics of places, which give rise to the equilibrating tendencies of neo-classical theory or the reinforcing tendencies of cumulative causation, or which propel capital's restless search for profit described by Marxism, are characteristics produced by society itself; indeed they are products of the very industrial system which subsequently reacts to them.

FA2 1059 The French Pyrenees. Book-domain: leisure

As it is, going to Lourdes out of season, in the late autumn or winter, brings one even more starkly face to face with what the Catholic Belloc calls this supernatural place's 'detestable earthly adjuncts'. They are the more detestable for having temporarily lost their reason for existence:

that is to say, shops full of a disastrous religious trinkety no longer have any customers to sell it to, and whole street-fuls of hotels and pensions are all of them closed until the following spring, making parts of the town seem gloomily abandoned.

FAC 62 Lexical Semantics. Book-domain: social science

With this test, sentences 1 and 2 are correctly diagnosed (**that is to say**, in accordance with strong intuition) as semantically and grammatically deviant, respectively.

FAG 607 The making of the English landscape. Book-domain: world affairs

The nearer we came to Halifax , we found the houses thicker, and the villages greater in every bottom; and not only so, but the sides of the hills, which were very steep every way, were spread with houses, and that very thick; for the land being divided into small enclosures, **that is to say**, from two acres to six or seven acres each seldom more; every three or four pieces of land had a house belonging to it.

FAK 79 Material culture and mass consumption. Book-domain: social science

In a close knit society, the sense of personal obligation is overwhelming. Such obligations, usually based upon kinship relations, are highly specific as regards both the actions demanded and the identity of the individual subject to them. **That is to say** that every individual lives according to a highly structured set of personal obligations which he or she must continually fulfil.

FAT 2794 Pillion riders. Book-domain: imaginative

There was to be more submission. What a waste of life! But then, I was barren. I had to remember that. There was no need in the world for women like me-except to serve. Our affair never ran its course. We were still what others term "in love" when I left. **That is to say**, we still

desired one another. The difference was that, whereas I sought fulfilment with Jean-Claude, he sought only to renew his desire with me.

FB3 583 Studying popular music. Book-domain: arts

This approach has two effects. It privileges the music which Adorno chooses as best representing the contradictory whole-thus alongside Beethoven and the tradition following him other kinds of music (Berlioz, Rossini, Verdi, Elgar, Stravinsky, Eisler, let alone Lehár, Louis Armstrong, Walter Donaldson or Elvis Presley) are inevitably presented as partial, **that is to say** more socially specific, less autonomous; it also reduces the possibility of struggle over the specific uses and meanings of musical materials and forms: competing viewpoints are dismissed as regressive or false.

FBD 896 Ways of communicating. Book-domain: social science

The novel therefore has a family resemblance to other narrative forms, both the purely verbal, such as the classical epic, the books of the Bible, history and biography, folk tales and ballads; and those forms which have non-verbal components, such as drama and film. Narrative is concerned with process, **that is to say**, with change in a given state of affairs; or it converts problems and contradictions in human experience into process in order to understand or cope with them.

FBM 659 Esquire. Periodical-domain: arts

"I was puzzled when a paper recently called me a "bread head". If I wanted to quadruple my income I could do it, very easily. But my attitude to money is slightly easy come, easy go. **That is to say**, I earn a lot, but I also give quite a lot away in different ways. Charities mainly, but also sometimes commissioning friends to do things, that kind of thing. It's the complete opposite with time. I always feel I haven't got enough of it, so I'm mean about giving it away".

FBN 579 Practical Fishkeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure

It may therefore come as a surprise to learn that there are some species which are not only not "rock-dependent", but are also relatively peaceful, even when breeding. This group of species lives near rocks, but over a sandy substrate, and all its members utilise the empty shells of the snail *Lanistes ryassanus* as shelter to some extent. **That is to say**, the fry and adolescents of all the species do-but some adults are actually too large.

FBT 179 The Weekly Law Reports 1999 volume 3. Periodical-domain: social science

Since the question of delay is at the root of this reference, it is necessary to examine the chronology of events in some detail. The respondent was informed in the early hours of 17 August 1987, **that is to say**, the day after the incident, that a complaint had been made against him. The matter was then reported to New Scotland Yard.

FBU 104 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain: social science

That this was Parliament's intention is clear from the use in section 7(4) of the words "shall...be brought as soon as practicable and in any event within 24 hours after his arrest." The structure of section 7, in my view, clearly contemplates the constable who has arrested the person bailed bringing him before the justice and stating his, **that is to say** the constable's, grounds for believing that the defendant has broken a condition of his bail. That may well involve the giving of "hearsay evidence." No doubt the justice will in fairness give the defendant an opportunity to respond to what the constable is saying.

FBV 285 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain: social science

The author said, at pp. 278-279: "It is obvious that "reputation," in the sense in which alone it concerns the subject of defamation, has relation

to the particular person enjoying it. But it must not be forgotten that "person" for this purpose includes an artificial person: **that is to say**, it includes both a body of persons, and a firm...That a commercial body of persons has a trading character, and can sue in respect of a publication tending to injure that trading character, is now clearly established...

FC0 57 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain: social science

Nothing is said in the Act about whether orders can be made *ex parte* or only *inter partes*. By the Family Proceedings Rules 1991, coming into force on the same day as the Act, **that is to say** 14 October 1991, applications under the Act are to be found under rule 4.4, and under paragraph (4) there is set out the way in which *ex parte* applications can be made under section 8 in respect of a prohibited steps order or a specific issue order, and then in respect of emergency protection orders and recovery orders.

FC3 83 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain: social science

The local authority will know whether if they let the council house to the tenant the house will also be occupied by a potential successor who has made his home with the tenant. If the tenant's death is untimely, **that is to say** within one year of the date of the letting, there is no reason why the potential successor should lose his home if he has in fact resided with the tenant for 12 months. In the present case the plaintiffs have been unable to suggest why the defendant should lose his home as well as his brother by reason of the death of his brother.

FCB 149 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain: social science

They went to Italy to take up their work and they have remained there ever since. I mention in passing that the couple have an eight- or nine-year-old child to look after. The fifth matter of complaint, which goes

partly to the intention of the appellants and to the difficulty they found themselves in before the judge was that their solicitor never explained these matters to the judge, **that is to say** the technical nature of the breach, the details of the two charges that had been made, and the advice that their solicitor himself had given to the appellants when they came to consult him.

FCJ 677 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain: social science

1. The factual and legal background to the two cases with which this opinion is concerned is well known to the court. The cases form part of a series of actions relating to the various measures which the United Kingdom and Ireland took successively from 1983 onwards in order to combat what is termed in English as "quota hopping," **that is to say** the practice whereby, according to the United Kingdom, its fishing quotas are "plundered" by vessels flying the British flag but lacking any genuine link with the United Kingdom.

FCL 803 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain: social science

They must have known and must have had present to their minds all that. Earlier the judge, after referring to the rule that money paid under mistake of law is irrecoverable had said, at p. 745: "There is no doubt as to the general rule stated in Leake on Contracts to which I have already referred, that money paid voluntarily-**that is to say**, without compulsion or extortion or undue influence, and, of course, I may add without any fraud on the part of the person to whom it is paid, and with knowledge of all the facts, though paid without any consideration, or in discharge of a claim not due, or a claim which might have been successfully resisted, cannot be recovered back.

FD0 110 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain: social science

The interests of the children in the welfare context, he said, were irrelevant to the consideration of the exercise of discretion by the judge. He emphasised the purpose of the Convention as cited by Lord Brandon of Oakbrook. He submits that the court is simply not entitled to do what Booth J. did-**that is to say**, to consider the interests of the children in relation to all the circumstances of the case. He referred to a passage in the judgment of Lord Donaldson of Lynton M.R. in the earlier appeal [1992] Fam. 106, 122-123. Lord Donaldson M.R. said:

FD1 426 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain: social science

Such a member was Norwich. Mr. Collins seeks to avoid this difficulty by referring to rule 7.23(1), which provides "a person may appeal to the Appeal Tribunal...against a notice under Chapter II of this Part of these Rules," **that is to say**, against a prohibition notice. Mr. Collins said that a person includes any person whether a member or not, and in particular is apt to include a person, such as was Winchester, who is referred to in a prohibition notice.

FD7 457 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain: social science

Nevertheless, it is readily intelligible that Luxmoore J. should have considered that, when the discretion fell to be exercised, the equities were all on one side-**that is to say** in favour of the chargees, who had acted on the faith of a document of transfer which the mother had herself executed after having failed to make inquiries which would have revealed that the document related to the property.

FDH 144 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain:
social science

Those rules are therefore designed to preclude, in so far as is possible and from the outset, the possibility of a situation arising such as that referred to in article 27(3), **that is to say** the non-recognition of a judgment on account of its irreconcilability with a judgment given in a dispute between the same parties in the state in which recognition is sought.

FDM 126 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain:
social science

It is obviously fundamentally different in this respect, that, whereas before, he was entitled to the protection of the Act until successful proceedings were taken, he is now in the position that proceedings have been taken and that an order for possession has been made. All that he has is a right to apply for postponement under section 5(2). In my opinion a tenant in that position, **that is to say** where an absolute order for possession has been made against him, notwithstanding that it may be suspended, is not a tenant for the purposes of section 12(1) (g). That I think is in accordance with a common sense application of the paragraph.

FE2 193 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 Vol 3. Periodical-domain:
social science

Moreover the provisions of section 2(1) (a) also seem to point in the same direction. It follows therefore that it is enough for the prosecution if they have proved in these cases the assumption by the [defendants] of any of the rights of the owner of the goods in question, **that is to say**, the supermarket concerned, it being common ground in these cases that the other three of the four elements mentioned in Viscount Dilhorne's speech in Reg. v. Lawrence had been fully established.

HGW 1146 Home design. Book-domain: arts

Independent switches for each light will make it easier to create the appropriate atmosphere. Fluorescent tubes are best for under cabinet/worktop lighting. They last much longer than incandescent tubes, offer more light per watt but need to be carefully chosen in the right colours for the most accurate presentation of food. **That is to say**, choose warm white de luxe (not just warm white) or cool white de luxe (not just cool white).

HGW 1024 Home design. Book-domain: arts

Unless you have ample funds to hand, it is of the utmost importance to think ahead when you are planning a kitchen. You might not be able to afford all the appliances you would like from the start, but if you think you will need them and will be able to afford them later you must leave the space and supply utilities for them. **That is to say**, if you want a dishwasher but know you won't be able to afford one for, say, three years, then make sure the plumbing is available and that there is a niche for a new fixture before you install your worktops and units. If you are planning on a family and intending to stay in your present home, then allow for much more storage space than you need now.

HGS 2749 Frankenstein unbound. Book-domain: imaginative

But organized science had allied itself with Big Business and Government; it had no interest in the individual-its meat was statistics! It was death to the spirit. As science had gradually eroded the freedom of time, so it had eroded the freedom of belief. Anything which could not be proven in a laboratory by scientific method-anything, **that is to say**, which was bigger than science-was ruled out of court. God had long been banished in favour of any number of petty little sects, clinging to tattered bits of faith; they could be tolerated, since they formed no collective alternative to the consumer society on which organized science depended so heavily. The Frankenstein mentality had triumphed by my day. Two centuries was all it needed.

IN OTHER WORDS

A6S 730 Marxism and Anthropology. Book-domain: social sciences

The Polynesians, according to this way of seeing things, had a system of kinship terms, which indicated, not the marriage system which they practised, but the marriage system which they had practised in the past. The system of marriage which the Polynesians actually practised was, Morgan, and therefore Engels, believed, more advanced **or, in other words**, more restrictive, and represented the third stage in the evolution of marriage. This was a system in which, not only were members of one's own generation the only legitimate sexual partners, but not even all of these, since people who were descendants of the same ancestors would not marry.

AMK 1279 Against a federal Europe. Book-domain: world affairs

The much vaunted independence of the Länder is more a mirage than reality. The Basic Law divides legislation into "exclusive" and concurrent. In exclusive legislation the Länder have no rights except those explicitly granted by the Federation (Article 71). In concurrent legislation the Länder must agree, but they do this via the Bundesrat, the forty-member Council of Länder Ministers. **In other words**, the power to legislate and to tax lies overwhelmingly at the federal level, and individual Länder risk being outvoted. The Bundesrat is a federal organ passing laws and raising taxes centrally for the whole country (Article 106).

AL7 19 Charlemagne: founder of the Holy Roman Empire. Book-domain: world affairs

For much of his reign they persistently took advantage of Charles' absence in Italy or Spain to revolt against his rule. To give even a simple account of this sequence demands chapters that travel back and forth between the various territories that Charles conquered and ruled.

Thus there is a pattern not only of territorial movement and campaigning, but of interaction through time, politics and dynastic struggles. **In other words**, much of the story weaves in and out, sometimes travelling back in time, sometimes forwards, in order to achieve a practical overview of the struggles and triumphs of Charlemagne. Of particular importance to understanding Charles' rule is the need for a clear picture of the geography and political divisions of the huge territories over which he ruled.

EW6 1028 The quantum world. Book-domain: natural sciences

Einstein suggested that the box should be weighed before and after the opening of the shutter and the loss of weight determined. The change in mass thus found could be interpreted, via the equation [(equation)] (for which Einstein doubtless had a certain affection), as a change in energy content of the box. **In other words**, the energy release could be determined exactly, whatever Heisenberg might say to the contrary. This example gave Bohr a sleepless night. In the end, however, he found a most gratifying resolution. In turning the tables on Einstein he used another of the latter's ideas. The acts of weighing involve probing the box's interaction with a gravitational field. That is what weighing is.

FW8 842 Sexual aspects of social work. Book-domain: social sciences
Sexuality is not an either/or affair but a range between exclusive heterosexuality and exclusively homosexual impulse. As a second parameter there is a similar scale between the highly masculine and the highly feminine temperaments. The extremes, on both parameters, are comparatively rare; most of us occupy a position part-way along each. **In other words**, most of us have some element of the 'other' sex in our make-up and most of us have some degree of homosexual feeling, whether we like it or not. The masculine-feminine parameter has little relation to homosexual preference.

FAK 410 Material culture and mass consumption. Book-domain: social science

Coluhoun also notes the impossibility of abstracting some “arbitrary” meaning outside of the spatial and functional context within which the materials of buildings operate, underlining particular differences such as the reliance of architecture upon self-referential and “traditional” modes for its meaning; **in other words**, its historicism. Less remarked on are the inadequacies and crudity of language when faced with objects in everyday interaction. This point is easily illustrated through a simple reflective exercise. Imagine for a moment attempting to describe in detail the difference in shape between a milk bottle and a sherry bottle, or the taste of cod as against haddock, or the design of some wallpaper.

FBD 722 Ways of communicating. Book-domain: social science

The fact that he gets it by being told it, as opposed to observing it for himself, is incidental. Communication here is a means to an end (the acquisition of a true belief), not an end in itself. And Rabbit, knowing this, could in fact have answered Pooh's question without telling him anything at all. **In other words**, he needn't have told Pooh that there was honey, he could have shown him that there was-for example, by drawing his attention to the pot of honey on the sideboard. But what then is the difference between being told the truth and being shown it, and does the difference really matter?

FAC 954 Lexical semantics. Book-domain: social science

This means that, for the vast majority of utterances, hearers are expected to identify specific intended senses for every ambiguous word form that they contain. The process of sense selection is, of course, extremely complex, with many interacting factors. However, in general, one can say that a hearer selects that combination of lexical readings which leads to the most normal possible utterance-in-context. **In other words**, a hearer will generally assume that the producer of an utterance

wants to communicate something, and has chosen the linguistic context of his utterance with a view to furthering this aim.

FRL 1772 In other words: a course book on translation. Book-domain: social science

(Does replaces knows). My axe is too blunt. I must get a sharper one.(One replaces axe).A: I'll have two poached eggs on toast, please. B: I'll have the same. (The same replaces two poached eggs on toast). Ellipsis involves the omission of an item. **In other words**, in ellipsis, an item is replaced by nothing. This is a case of leaving something unsaid which is nevertheless understood.

FR4 1078 The impact of social policy. Book-domain: social science

A large-scale labour mobility programme, it is argued, would result in the economic and social degeneration of the out-migration areas. This would create economic and social costs to the in-migration areas. This is simply an argument for regional policies. Moreover, a labour mobility policy will not achieve a different result from the one achieved by unassisted labour mobility. **In other words**, the same people who would have emigrated on their own will be assisted by government programmes. In addition, there is no guarantee that the assisted emigrants will not return to their communities after a short period. This is an argument for governments leaving migration to the pressures of the market.

F7G 655 Teacher's conference: discussing assessment procedures.

Speech recorded in educational context

-PS1M5 (Angela-teacher female): What about the small staff room?

-PS1MA (Terry-teacher male): secretary that could be got that way.

-PS1M5: Can all the tables

-PS1M9 (Alan-teacher-male): There is no need for you to do

-PS1M6 (Paul-teacher-male) Right.

-PS1M9: an enormous amount

-PS1M6: Yeah.

-PS1M9: of work.

-PS1MA: Right, so in **other words**, we just take it out of the files, keep the children information in the tutor's office and just extract what you want to put in somewhere else?

-PS1M7: But you would put it in alphabetical order

F7R 47 Mark Hall School: religious studies lesson for eleven-year-olds.

Speech recorded in educational context

Now we've got several ways of doing this, first of all, were you able to collect information for the class survey, whoever's fiddling with a pen please don't, it's driving me nuts.

Could you collect information for the class survey? Were you able in **other words** to go round and talk to people to get their answers and record your answers on their grid, if you think yes you did do that, sign your name now, in section one, where it says survey.

F7T 37 Lecture for eighteen-year-old students on local councils and elections. Speech recorded in educational context

Ern but there is a similarity in both er elections yeah.

Anyone standing for election at local government level has to have an election agent. However you can be your own agent. The agent has to fill in the financial returns has to send in a report of financial expenditure.

Normally of course a party will appoint a single agent.

In **other words**, at local election, at local election time the Conservative Party will have X candidates standing. There will be a, a Conservative Party appointed agent who will act on behalf of all those candidates and simply fill in the election expenses. The accounts are submitted to the returning officer.

It's an offence to er exceed the er expenditure.

F7T390 Lecture for eighteen-year-old students on local councils and elections. Speech recorded in educational context

Most of what local authorities do is in a sense not really party politically controversial because they've got because most of the things they do they've got to do, they're mandated to do. In **other words**, you couldn't stand for office in Harlow and say for instance ern if ern if we er win the election we're gonna stop the sale of council houses. Yeah?

F7U 249 Lecture on Isomers. Speech-recorded in educational context

Well that's entirely up to you, but we'll see how we go with that. Right, let's start with position isomerism. Now, position isomerism is all about the position of the groups or the position of functional groups so it's not just necessarily groups on their own it could be functional groups. Now, I've made a distinction between those, in **other words** a group maybe a methyle group now, methyle group is not a functional group it's not something that dictates the properties of a compound, necessarily. And the influences that doesn't dictate and a functional group does. Where as a functional group might be, for example, a no age group which does tend to dictate the properties of that compound.

F7U 265 Lecture on Isomers. Speech-recorded in educational context

Just been drawn differently. You really have to watch that! So, let's start with position isomers and some examples and try and select examples using these. What I'm gonna to, what I, what I intend to do is just show the skeleton in **other words**, most times I'll tend to do right? Just a quick and easy way of doing it. Let's take this example here I've got a carbon chain there and I'm going to put a methyle group there and I'm going to put a methyle group there two, three that.

F7U 269 Lecture on Isomers. Speech-recorded in educational context

Identical chain again let's have a methyle group there and one there let's do one more of those a methyle group there and a methyle group there. Now, in terms of naming these always you go for the longest straight

shape that you can, by straight straight really is in inverted commas what we should really say the longest continuous chain that you can find **in other words**, you'd have to go back on yourself. Now, if you look at all of these and find the longest chain we you can actually get in that respect is a six chain, isn't it?

F7U 336 Lecture on Isomers. Speech-recorded in educational context
Yeah. It doesn't matter which end you start from cos either way it, it'll still be two, five. Er, Chris you suddenly become extremely interested in what he's writing!

Do his ostrich impression!

In other words, if I put my head down low enough he can't see me! No, I'm trying to write my down. Yes Chris. Was is he gonna Well wait, yes we will wait, that's fine! I'm writing, I'm, I'm going to wait.

F7U 427 Lecture on Isomers. Speech-recorded in educational context
A: If that was an alkane that would be a butane four carbons.

This is an alcohol it has an O H group so it is a butanole but you have to indicate where the O H group actually is it's either on four or it's on one.
B: Oh yeah it is.

A: So you'd name this as butane **in other words**, you're saying it's a butane chain you take off the E you will add O L and if there are positional isomers possible you have to indicate the position one O L butane one L one O L butane one O L.

B: Butane one O L?

F7U 673 Lecture on Isomers. Speech-recorded in educational context
So you still you still buy it it's actually butile alcohol. But they're now ca, they're now catching up they're now putting on the label its proper name. But Customs and Excise still call this industrial meths unless it's pure etha, completely pure ethanol **in other words**, no water in it and then they can call it absolute alcohol but they don't specify which alcohol it is look! Got some they've got some old terminology still

around the organics, still in use around organics, it should be. And omit wherever you go.

F7U 734 Lecture on Isomers. Speech-recorded in educational context

A: Once you've got the names then decide what you think what type of isomerism you think it actually is. It's really weird! And I'll give you the old name for it. Alright?

B: methoxy pro propate.

A: Yeah exactly right! The first one is methoxy propate **in other words** you're saying, effectively, this group here wasn't the longest chain you can get is a propate. So you got a methoxy group so this one

B: Page six.

A: is methoxy propate. Now what about this one?

F7U 1058 Lecture on Isomers. Speech-recorded in educational context
That's why it's damn tricky to do it! You draw it to show that it has a mirror image so what you find in practice is that it and it's mirror image are not superimposable. **In other words** like your hands and feet etcetera they're mirror images you can't thank you they're mirror images that you can't superimpose. You can't even superimpose to that extent cos they're slightly different can't even superimpose that my fingers can't superimpose cos they're slightly different.

F7U 1142 Lecture on Isomers. Speech-recorded in educational context

A: To some extent you can, yeah.

B: It's a mixture of the
A: But with optical you try to produce a particular isomer, what you normally

B: Have you?

A: get is the racemic mixture **in other words**, both are there but it has no ah!

Both are there but it has no effect on plane polarised light, for instance, like, as if one of them is trying to rotate it to the left by so many degrees and the other one is rotating to the right by the said the amount. So that they, they can only twenty.

F876 216 Church of Scotland: meeting on rules and regulations. Speech recorded in public context

Now that is not to deny that it is in effect surely of bringing Christians together, but there are certain questions.

At what point do you, in all honesty and sincerity er celebrate a sacrament which is a sacrament of giving unity as well as bringing unity forward.

The other principle is the principle of particular need.

In other words, sacramenta procta hominas

the sacraments are for the good of men and woman, of course the hominas in Latin includes both, it's inclusive language for the sake of er well of certain persons who will be picking me up.

F86 308 Church of Scotland: meeting on rules and regulations. Speech recorded in public context

My question concerns the Shetland Island project and the question is this how much has the withdrawal of the Board of Social Responsibility from the Shetland Islands project got to do with the Board's policy on social responsibility appointed staff being sympathetic to the Christian faith, and how much has it got to do with the fact that the Shetland Islands Council no longer need the Board of Social Responsibility to be able to spend charitable trust money, **in other words** oil money, without jeopardizing community charge support grant?

F87 79 Church of Scotland: report on church funds. Speech recorded in public context

I've used a phrase about the lack of financial resources because it relates more obviously and directly to many of the concerns of the

Board for example almost certainly the real reason why there was no room in the inn at Bethlehem is that the income of a village didn't go near the exorbitant prices being charged by mine host when, to use the good Scots phrase, the cow calved and there was this boom over the crows for the census.

In other words, lack of financial resources can contribute to homelessness and it does. And in all our consideration about homelessness to which the report rightly refers, we must remember that lack of financial resources is a contributory factor and how many in the assembly know that while we naturally think, in homelessness, of our tragic young people, five per cent of the homeless are elderly.

F87 89 Church of Scotland: report on church funds. Speech recorded in public context

He went not to collect particulars and feed them into a computer, he went to get down on his knees and get himself covered in mud and blood. He did not qualify him for income support, he supported him on to the back of his ass, he took him to the inn. He took care of him and the Greek verb means that he literally took total charge of his case, **in other words** he probably stayed up all night nursing him, and so he made the inn into temporarily a nursing home and we're back into another area of the Board's concerns. But he gave two pence, how miserable can you get? ut put the two pence in their contemporary context.

F88 116 Birmingham College of Food: lecture on tourism. Speech recorded in educational context

We're also gonna look at where they live, remember what they're income is etcetera and the important thing is because of these increases here and because of the recession in general, it dictated to us that there were gonna be more one and two person households. Households without children **in other words.**

F88 419 Birmingham College of Food: lecture on tourism. Speech recorded in educational context

So you have these two extremes. In between you have elite, offbeat, unusual, mass and so on but they all lie somewhere between these extremes in terms of totally interacting and totally ignoring in many cases. The second type is the cognitive normative. **In other words**, defining tourists according to what's actually going through their heads. And here for example you might have the recreational mind, healthy mind and body the existential, the person who as much as anything may be looking for an experience based on meditation, er religion, this sort of thing.

F8B 66 Harlow Rotary Club: talk on engineering. Speech recorded in leisure context

But when we look at the positive side, and that's where we've got a plan a cunning plan if you watch Black Adder at all! A cunning plan, to do something about organising the careers' conventions. And this is where we've decided that what we really need is young engineers, **in other words** er, people who have just entered the profession itself to talk to the school children.

F8B 67 Harlow Rotary Club: talk on engineering. Speech recorded in leisure context

But when we look at the positive side, and that's where we've got a plan a cunning plan if you watch Black Adder at all! A cunning plan, to do something about organising the careers' conventions. And this is where we've decided that what we really need is young engineers, **in other words** er, people who have just entered the profession itself to talk to the school children. **In other words**, I mean I'm retired and I mean the point is that my erm experience goes back into the er into the dark ages I can almost say because in these days, you probably realise, I mean if anybody buys a video you don't ask you don't look for the book of instructions you ask about a five year old kiddie how to programme it!

F8B 94 Harlow Rotary Club: talk on engineering. Speech recorded in leisure context

As it happened, as I say, I was apprentice at Vickers Armstrong and I moved on, quite obviously, to another firm who were looking for people like this. And quite obviously, adjacent to Harlow was one of the largest training schools ever, anybody trained at a Ford training school was made!

In other words, I mean that was a basic kind of training you could get as a mechanical engineer.

Now, I mean, I'm talking about Vickers Armstrongs' three thousand, let's get back to er my particular home base, Colchester.

F8B 120 Harlow Rotary Club: talk on engineering. Speech recorded in leisure context

So, gentlemen, what I'm really doing is to show you a bit of the background and the fact that it's not all doom and gloom there is a hell of a light at the tunnel and in matter of fact, we got another lecture on the channel tunnel in a few days time!

In other words, there are marvellous projects going on which really stimulate the interest of everybody, and it's, the Engineering Council's still trying to push them along into the twenty first century itself. Thank you very much indeed gentlemen! Thank you Donald. Could I ask er, Rotarian Alan to give us a vote of thanks?

F8D 206 British Red Cross: first aid course. Speech recorded in educational context

By the veins by the veins, there's always an exception to every rule and the exception to that rule in the case of the heart and the lung connection is the pulmonary artery and the pulmonary vein, you may not get asked anything about this, but just in case you do it's as well to know, in that instance the flow is reversed, **in other words** the pulmonary vein takes blood away from the heart and up to the lungs,

and the pulmonary artery brings the oxygenated blood back down to the heart from the lungs, if you want to have a look at the diagrams for that and look at it yourself later on, there's no need for you to get concerned or confused about this at all, there's no need.

F8D 219 British Red Cross: first aid course. Speech recorded in educational context

Now we need to talk a little bit about what happens when the veins or the arteries or the capillaries for that matter, the veins, the arteries or the capillaries have a leak in them, they become broken, now you already know that the circulatory system is a closed system and that the blood can only do its job if it's being transported within that system, once the blood comes outside of that system then it's lost the circulation and it cannot perform its proper function any more, **in other words** the body's losing its blood, okay, what condition do we call it when the circulatory system stops working properly?

F8R 38 Leigh Community Centre: lecture on China. Speech recorded in educational context

A: Why?

B: Well for two reasons.

One, I think, because the Communist Party in China itself was completely disorientated by defeat.

Right up until the coup in nineteen twenty seven they had been following a policy dictated by Moscow, dictated by Stalin which told them form alliances with the Kuomintang, work with the Kuomintang, first of all trust Chiang Kai-shek, then when Chiang Kai-shek turned on them they were told to trust the left Kuomintang leaders who were based in Wo Han in the middle Yangtze valleys, and then they turned on them a policy, **in other words**, that had proved absolutely disastrous.

FL6 199 Eating disorders: Television discussion. Speech recorded in leisure context

I think there's a third fact that you touched on earlier that I think it's just worth mentioning and that is that we know it's also a genetic predisposition to anorexia nervosa, **in other words**, we know that in certain families it is a disorder that will run from one generation to another. Na, yes? Errn, I'd consider myself to have an eating disorder but I don't have anorexia or bulimia.

ASH 378 Today's Horse. Periodical-domain: leisure

It may make me sound as if I'm in training for a Blue Peter badge, but it works. This system is only successful if you are confident that your horse will be treated as an individual and that the people helping you care enough to spot when something is wrong. **In other words**, pay as much attention to the owner/manager as the yard when choosing premises. The Mutual Help SystemSome owners manage by helping each other, but this takes a lot of organisation and a failsafe mechanism if something goes wrong.

EF4 367 The third way: The promise of independent democracy. Book-domain: commerce

That contrast needs to be focused more sharply. Was Consumers' Co-operation, first conceived of as a means to realise co-operative aspirations of a much more comprehensive kind, to establish the same relations with its employees as would any other employer? Was it, **in other words**, to adopt a tactic which, however successful in securing the advance of a particular sector at a particular period, would tend to work against that realisation?

EFX T.S. Eliot. Book-domain: arts

He suggests the importance of community' units' like that of the parish, which have both a religious and social dimension. But his remarks are couched in a tentative and hypothetical form. He did not concern

himself with the business of creating such a society, only with the description of what it ought to be like: the actual propositions in the book are not to be taken literally, **in other words**, since he was offering only the ideal model of a better civilization.

EW4 272 Proportional representation: which system? Book-domain: world affairs

Suppose on the other hand that as a thoroughly loyal supporter of the Fruity Party I give all of my first three preferences to all of its three candidates-to Cherry as well as to Apple and Banana. Suppose I stop there, even though I could express as many preferences as there are candidates. Suppose, **in other words**, that I 'plump'. Will that be to the Fruity Party's advantage?' 'Yes', say some voices, 'No', say others.

FB D 604 Ways of communicating. Book-domain: social science

See Figure 1. That's my first truism about truth. The second truism is one I shall need to answer the question: why should we want to be told the truth? Or more generally, why should we want to find it out, whether by being told it or otherwise? Why, **in other words**, should we want to get true beliefs rather than false ones? The reason is not a moral one. True beliefs aren't generally better than false ones in any moral sense: there is usually nothing morally wrong about being mistaken in one's beliefs about matters of fact. Sometimes there is, especially when one has to act on one's beliefs in ways that affect other people.

FU0 781 Dog-whelks: An introduction to the biology of nucella.

Periodical-domain: applied science

The groove is repaired but the 'scar' remains. It is necessary to mark very large numbers to achieve any useful result. The only real problem with all these lies in marking out the study area for it will rarely be possible to delimit a discrete enclave of the animals.10. What is the area of the pannicic unit? Or, **in other words**, how far do they roam? This simply involves marking out a small area, collecting and marking all

the dogwhelks within it, releasing them again into the same area. On each subsequent visit the distance of the marked animals from the release point is measured.

J52 610 The blind watchmaker. Book-domain: natural science

To some extent this may happen, but it is by no means the whole story. How bats avoid being jammed by other bats is not well understood, but an interesting clue comes from experiments on trying to put bats off. It turns out that you can actively deceive some bats if you play back to them their own cries with an artificial delay. Give them, **in other words**, false echoes of their own cries.

FME 151 Tutorial lesson GCSE maths. Speech recorded in educational context

Okay. We've got V is equal to nine thousand five hundred, that's how much it's worth, and then take away N over ten. Take away a tenth of a pound for every mile. Yeah? So when will it be worth nothing? When will it have gone right down to nothing? **In other words** when is when is V equal to zero?

F8B 66 Harlow Rotary Club: talk on engineering. Speech recorded in educational context

And this is where we've decided that what we really need is young engineers, **in other words** er, people who have just entered the profession itself to talk to the school children.

BM2 1279 The Alternative Religion. Book-domain: belief and thought

The Difference Between a Healthy Conscience and a Guilt Complex For those who rear children, one of the most difficult tasks if not the most difficult, is learning the art of instilling and developing in the young mind that mysterious thing which we call the conscience. That is, how to give a child a knowledge of what has been accepted as right and what has been accepted as wrong, or, **in other words**, of good and evil;

and further, how this can be so well rooted in their minds that it produces in them an inclination to act automatically in accordance with what must be designated civilised behaviour.

B2F 1127 Improve your people skills. Book-domain: commerce

All of us, whatever our walk of life, are frequently in situations where we want to persuade someone or, **in other words**, influence someone to do what we want them to do (eg a salesperson trying to persuade a buyer or a negotiator trying to persuade another negotiator).

B2F 986 Improve your people skills. Book-domain: commerce

Irrespective of these differences in time, a respectable objective has certain known qualities as follows: Any objective has two parts to it: A forecast of the end result Indicators of success. Any objective should be in step with the circumstances of the situation as you know or understand them. Any objective should be realistic or, **in other words**, possible to achieve successfully within the forecasted time span.

A69 523 Reflections of a Statesman. Book-domain: world-affairs

So far as I know, one cause of a general fall in the value of money is not open to dispute, either as theoretically possible or as practically instanced within our own experience: that is the monetisation of debt, **in other words**, the process whereby part of the expenditure of public authorities is financed by the creation of additional spending power.

ABJ 196 The Economist Newspaper. Periodical-domain: commerce

A government promise to liberalise prices next year is so far just that: a promise. Letting markets, rather than bureaucrats, set prices is the only way factories will get both the signals they need about what people really want to buy and the incentive to economise on costs. But the signals will get through only if there is budget discipline: if, **in other words**, the still massive indirect subsidies to factories-tax exemptions, soft credits, loans- are cut at the same time.

AMT 882 Does God exist? Book-domain: belief and thought.

Praise be to Allah, the Creator of heaven and and earth! There is nothing in heaven or earth beyond the power of Allah. (Both from "The Creator", sura 35) These "god-like" qualities cannot really belong to more than one being. If nothing in heaven or earth is "beyond the power of Allah"-if Allah, **in other words**, is omnipotent-then this quality can only be attributed to Him and to no-one else.

C8E 1008 The Buddha of suburbia. Book-domain: imaginative

"Oh God, this whole country has gone sexually insane," he said. "Your father should go back home for some years and take you with him. Perhaps to a remote village". Changez's disgust at everyday things inspired me to show him South London. I wondered how long he'd take to get used to it, to become, **in other words**, corrupt. I was working on it.

EFX 737 T.S. Eliot. Book-domain: arts

In August he joined the Fabers on holiday in Sussex, but he still wanted to complete a rough version of the whole play by late summer. Browne would then have time to look at it, before Eliot embarked for America in late September. He had been invited to become a visiting fellow at the Institute for Advanced Studies in Princeton: he would, **in other words**, have plenty of time on his hands and would there be able to consider Browne's suggestions.

A1U 196 Independent electronic edition of 1989-10-03 Focus section. Periodical-domain: social science

It is a matter of judgement whether Canada, Australia and Japan should be able to dispose of their own PCBs. At present, none of them can. Margaret Thatcher will next month tell an international conference that the trade in wastes for incineration should be allowed where it is the best environmental option for existing wastes. **In other words**: keep a legal route open, sooner than see dumping.

ALK 74 Richard Baxter 1615-1691. Miscellanea-domain: world affairs. Baxter was so upset by this that he felt like leaving the school altogether. However, he says that Mr. Owen, thereupon, gravely, but very tenderly rebuked my pride, and gave me for my theme: Ne sutor ultra crepidam (Let the cobbler stick to his last). **In other words**, Don't think more highly of yourself than you should!

ARJ 1422 She magazine. Periodical-domain: leisure

Don't give problems a chance to grow and fester. Enhance your partner's self-esteem. Be positive: praise your mate's good qualities, treat him or her with respect. A survey of more than 300 marriage counsellors showed that confirmation treating the marriage partner's words and self as worthwhile was considered to be the most important factor in a healthy relationship. **In other words**, make your partner feel important and special. Take a genuine interest in each other. Too many couples don't make each other a priority; work, kids, everything else comes first. The intimacy between couples who take an interest in each other is an essential ingredient of a lasting marriage. That means taking an interest in little things as well as big ones.

ASH 378 Today's Horse. Book-domain: leisure

It may make me sound as if I'm in training for a Blue Peter badge, but it works. This system is only successful if you are confident that your horse will be treated as an individual and that the people helping you care enough to spot when something is wrong. **In other words**, pay as much attention to the owner/manager as the yard when choosing premises.

B7D 1170 New Scientist. Periodical-domain: applied science

(All this had been laid out by the father of information theory, Claude Shannon, in an influential paper published in the late 1940s). The next major contribution to the field was made at the Carnegie-Mellon University in Pittsburgh in 1957. A team at Pittsburgh realised that the

fact that a move need only be proven bad once could be the key to enormous time savings. **In other words**, imagine a machine that can look ahead one move. It is given a position and starts to consider play A. Upon reviewing all the comment's replies to A, it concludes that it can get at least 10 (hypothetical) points with A. Then it goes on to look at a second play, B, and the replies to that.

BMG 1632 Catlore. Book-domain: applied science

All this created something of a problem, since it was also recognized that cats were useful "for the suppressing of small vermin". Topsell's compromise was to suggest to his readers that "with a wary and discreet eye we must avoid their harms, making more account of their use than of their persons". **In other words**, exploit them, but do not get too close to them or show them any affection. This restrained attitude did, at least, enable farm cats and some town cats to live a tolerable life as unloved pest-controllers, but for certain village cats life was far more unpleasant.

BMM 1114 Linford Christie: an autobiography. Book-domain: leisure

I held him tight, cooled him down and separated them. Another woman in the street called the police. When they arrived the woman began crying, behaving as the injured party. We tried to explain the situation as we saw it to the police. They turned to us. "Listen", they said. "Shut up. We don't want to hear from you. **In other words**, fuck off". Two weeks later Russell was arrested for assault. He was remanded in custody for six months. When his case finally came up the evidence of the couple's daughter, who had been watching the whole incident, was torn to shreds by Russell's lawyer. The verdict was not guilty.

A0H 435 Gliding safety. Book-domain: leisure

It is important to make the student aware of the subtle difference between being safe at all times and being safe in particular conditions. Above all it is vital for every pilot to have the old adage "safety first"

indelibly imprinted on their mind. **In other words**, if in doubt, don't take a chance. The mature glider pilot would never hesitate to make a fool of himself in the interests of safety. However, it is not just beginners who make mistakes and get caught out. On one occasion a very experienced pilot in a Nimbus 2 was starting on a car launch when it swung off the runway into a K8 which was some distance ahead.

CA1 412 Kites. Book-domain: leisure

Bias in the fabric allows ripstop to stretch more along the diagonals of the square patterns made by the slightly heavier threads. So it pays to arrange the squares at right angles to the leading edges or at right angles to the spine. **In other words**, do not lay the nylon at random. With experience you will learn how to use bias to best advantage in allowing the nylon to "billow" with a curvature that helps to create an aerofoil. Many professional stunters use strips of nylon or panels with the ripstop at different angles to achieve a curve upwards from the leading edge pocket.

CC0 953 The Artist and Illustrator's magazine. Periodical-domain: arts
I used to wrestle with my conscience as to whether I should ask Francis Bacon, but I never did in the end. I just didn't know what he'd come up with. But there's only one piece of advice that matters really: think of the general public, **in other words** don't produce something that leaves 99 per cent of the public behind".

CDR 147 Total health and fitness. Book-domain: leisure

If (and hopefully when) you do finally quit, it may create more of a problem than if you gird your mental loins at the outset and make up your mind to do it first and foremost. Most experts advise that if you have made up your mind to stop smoking, you will probably stand a better chance of being successful if you can go "cold turkey"-**in other words**, stop smoking all at once. This may seem like an impossible demand to make on someone who has smoked 20-60 cigarettes a day,

but psychologically it works better for most people than attempting the "slowly does it" campaign of a cigarette less every day.

CEJ 584 The synoptic gospels: an interpretation for today. Book-domain: belief and thought

Mary was to conceive a child without the usual help of the male. The birth would be the result of the direct intervention of the creative power of the Holy Spirit. The baby was to be named Jesus, which means "God is salvation". Matthew states from the outset that the purpose of this child will be to offer salvation from sin or, **in other words**, bring people back to God. Having reached the high-water mark in his claim for the nature and purpose of the birth of Jesus, Matthew goes on to cause all sorts of problems for the modern reader.

CHH 1123 Outdoor action. Periodical-domain: leisure

Good footwear is the most important item of kit for any walker. However, these days the choice of styles available is so wide that it is easy to become confused when making a purchase. Your best bet is to seek out specialist footwear which will prove safe and comfortable in use, although not overspecified for the walking you have in mind-**in other words**, don't buy a pair of heavy duty mountain boots if you only intend going for walks on country lanes! Comfortable boots or shoes, for whatever purpose, are a must.

CK3 830 Machine Knitting Monthly. Periodical-domain: leisure

Compare your fabric with similar bought ones. Ask yourself what you would have bought this cloth for. It will no doubt suit a good top coat, or perhaps cushion covers or possibly a bed cover. However, if you are already a keen needlewoman the answer to using this type of fabric is what we call "cut and sew". **In other words**, buy a good dressmaking pattern of a suitable garment, look at the pattern layout and make a length of cloth to suit the widest section the pater.

CDF 224 Today sport pages. Periodical-domain: leisure

These questions should have been foreseen, certainly, but the real personnel issues have more to do with selection, induction and training in general, and the question is whether George's relatively informal system is really suited to the new circumstances. **In other words**, don't get too bogged down discussing individual personalities (with the possible exception of the joint owner-managers, of course). The trouble with the "functional" approach, however, is that it carries with it the risk that you will omit general considerations such as overall objectives and strategy.

IN SIMPLER TERMS-IN PLAIN TERMS-TO PUT IT MORE PLAINLY-TO PUT IT MORE SIMPLY-IN MORE TECHNICAL TERMS-TECHNICALLY SPEAKING

G3K 1265 Instrument flying. Book-domain: applied science

In the null position there is an 180° ambiguity, and with the RC this is automatically solved by a sense unit.³ The signals received by the loop and the sense unit also drive a motor which turns the loop. Thus the loop aerial is always, in effect, kept pointing at the ground station to which the receiver is tuned.⁴ **In simpler terms**, therefore, the RC needle is always pointing directly towards the station, regardless of your heading. So you will normally know whether the station is to your left or right and whether it is ahead of astern.⁵ Mentally divide the RC dial into two halves with a line from 0° to 180°.

AS3 58 The first fifty. Book-domain: leisure

In the older cases I find no such distinction. Lord Coke lays it down broadly that the staying of an action that has been unjustly brought is no consideration for a promise to pay money. I cannot help thinking, on broad principles, that the staying proceedings in an action brought without any cause is no good consideration for a promise such as is

relied on here. The plea, **in plain terms**, avers that the plaintiff never had any cause of action, and he well knew it.

G1G 506 Power in capitalist society. Book-domain: world affairs.

From Wright Mills's position that one does not need to demonstrate directly the existence of the shared ideology and shared objectives, it might also be argued that the corollary is also unnecessary; that is, that the members' awareness of the shared ideology is not a necessary condition either. **In plain terms**, this means that one may be unwittingly a member of an elite group, on Wright Mills's argument. Since this effectively precludes the existence of internal organisation as a source of elite power, this line of explanation has to find other such sources and other unifying characteristics.

H81 544 A casebook on Contract. Book-domain: commerce.

The next danger for me was the Arête. Carn Mor Dearg's cairn provides a perfect view of the remaining route, with the Arête sweeping elegantly off to the south-west. To those of us with vertigo, it fortunately reveals that the southern side of the ridge is not nearly as precipitous as the northern. This, **in plain terms**, means that apart from one small section of scrambling, you can chicken out and walk along the Arête with your head bobbing safely below the crest. Constantly at war with my vertigo, I decided not to be pathetic and strode off on the flat, step-like slabs that top the crest of the ridge.

B7F 381 New Scientists. IPC Magazine. Periodical-domain applied science.

In their report, the prime minister's advisers did not come out against optical fibres altogether. They suggested a mixed system in which the trunk cables that connect towns and neighbourhoods are fibre, leaving coaxial wires to carry signals into houses and offices from a series of switching stations each serving about 100 subscribers. **In more technical terms**, this approach differs from the tree-and-branch system

of cabling, the type used in the US. In a tree and branch network, all the input signals are fed into a main trunk and branches successively split off to serve each subscriber individually. So each link in the system has to handle the whole range, and bandwidth, of services provided.

BN5 928 Rosemary Conley's hip and thigh diet. Book-domain: leisure.

A friend of mine realized how much cellulite she had when her little girl spotted her sitting on the loo, bare flesh displayed. "Why have you got holes in your leg, Mummy?" she enquired and that, I am afraid to say, is what cellulite looks like. An ugly area of fat which is very uneven and very unattractive. **In more technical terms**, cellulite is a modified form of fat tissue to be found just below the surface of the skin. It all begins with the stagnation of the blood in capillaries (tiny blood vessels), and this leads to a flow of blood fluids (plasma) through the capillary walls which separate fat-storing cells known as adipose cells.

A2G 90 Independent Electronic Edition. Arts section. Periodical-domain: arts

Timothy Neat directs tricksily; the aim is to reflect on different ways of telling stories. But its insights rarely exceed the banal. **FILM / Rushes** By SHEILA JOHNSTON COMING soon, maybe: a triumph for the gods of chaos, lunacy and bad taste - **or, to put it more plainly**, a film version of John Kennedy Toole's wonderfully funny cult novel, *A Confederacy of Dunces*. As followers of these pages will know, this project was at one time to have been directed by a America's leading connoisseur of chaos, lunacy and bad taste, John Waters (who made *Pink Flamingos* and *Hairspray*).

CET 242 The great unsolved mysteries of science. Book-domain: imaginative

It might take millions of years before the spacecraft encountered a suitable planet, and billions before the result of its efforts would

produce an intelligent lifeform, if at all. Taking all this into account, we have to ask why the extraterrestrials should be remotely interested in seeding distant planets. **To put it more simply**, why should they bother?

FA6 160 Gender and subject in higher education. Book-domain: social science

In common with English, however, most students came to the course with humanities A levels. Interviews were the obvious method for researching the interlinked topics of gender identity and subject specialization. I was interested both in how individuals develop a sense of themselves through their subject choice, and in how a world-view of a discipline is constructed at an academic and departmental level. **To put it more simply**, I wanted to look at the reciprocal interaction between individuals and their immediate social world.

H9M 901 Rational expectations in macroeconomics. Book-domain: commerce.

But it is a common and easily observed fact that measures of aggregate output in any economy tend to be positively serially correlated; that is, a higher than average value for aggregate output in any period is more often than not followed by a higher than average value next period and, similarly, a low value in any period is more likely to be followed by another low one than by a high one. **To put it more simply**, all economies experience booms and slumps, many of which are quite drawn out or persistent.

AM5 810 Do it Yourself. Periodical-domain: leisure

And are you sure that you can get your bit done in time for him to continue? "We can't really do much, then?" You can still do a lot, but you'll need a different approach. You will have to be the builder, **technically speaking**. That means that you will have to find and hire different tradesmen for the bits and pieces you can't do yourself. This

way the work can proceed at your own rate, and without the problems already mentioned. Such undertaking does bring certain responsibilities.

CFS 1445 Advertis from Clothes Show. Miscellanea-domain: commerce
To add volume to an entire head of hair, we start with each individual strand. Because one in three women in Britain have fine flyaway hair, we've introduced new Wella Balsam Hair Restructurant. Unlike ordinary conditioners, which simply coat the outside of the hair, Hair Restructurant actually works on the inside and remains in the hair all day to give volume and body. **Technically speaking** (as the diagram shows), the unique formula penetrates the hair, enters the cortex and strengthens the hair bonds. Or, in plain English, it gives natural strength and volume to each strand, making your hair noticeably thicker, shinier and easier to style. So if you want to give your hair extra body, try new Wella Balsam Hair Restructurant, the latest from the Wella Balsam range.

NAMELY

B04 796 Animal welfare and the environment. Book-domain: world affairs

To legitimise culling is itself an evil, and it may risk encouraging other, much less justifiable, slaughter. There is a real difficulty. But some sort of compromise does have to be reached. I am going to point out the arguments for culling. The central point I want to make is the general one, not just about culling: **namely**, that there really are arguments on both sides and we have to do justice to the complexity of the problem. In such hard cases, as also in the ones where either of these interests conflicts with the interests of humans, we need to proceed by careful study of all the local factors and not by general principles.

BPB 1222 Today's horse. domain-leisure from a periodical
Dear Kate, Yes it's me again, Lisa Robillard, the controversial lady on sexist language. Thank you for printing my letter. I was amazed at the answers and simply had to reply. Firstly, I understand that you must edit letters, but the crucial point on avoiding sexist language was omitted. **Namely**, the use of the word "they", eradicating the need for (in some minds) the clumsy he/she. I must say that I feel Charles Greenwich must have been joking in his reply. I am fascinated by the use of the English language, I do not wish to undermine it, but, as I would argue, it does overtly undermine 50 percent of its users (i.e. women).

EBA 170 Action. domain-belief and thought.

A new dimension of communication education was added by Central Committee in 1989, **namely**, Media Awareness Training, also known as Media Literacy, Media Pedagogy, Critical Reading or, as it is now usually called, Media Education. The Manila Declaration, subsequently endorsed by WACC's Central Committee, put great emphasis on this Forum Programme (see paragraph 12 and recommendation 22). Media education

ECN 646 The rules of disorder. domain-social science.

Trouble in school is conceived by the pupils who take part in it both as a natural reaction to being in a classroom confronted by a teacher, and as a specific response to particular offences on the part of the teacher. As we will see shortly, there are a number of specific offences and principles of retribution that emerge from our participants' accounts, but there is also a discernible generic category of action-sequences, **namely**, "messing about", or "dossing about". This is seen both as a device for testing the seriousness of the teacher and thus his/her attitudes to the pupils themselves, and as a retributive routine for dealing in an orderly fashion with what they construe as insulting or demeaning. This basic sequence is illustrated in the following extract:

EC4 167 Freud and modern society. Book-domain-applied science
 Trouble in school is conceived by the pupils who take part in it both as a natural reaction to being in a classroom confronted by a teacher, and as a specific response to particular offences on the part of the teacher. As we will see shortly, there are a number of specific offences and principles of retribution that emerge from our participants' accounts, but there is also a discernible generic category of action-sequences, **namely**, "messing about", or "dossing about".

EF8 439 Understanding children. Book-domain-social science

They take for granted that they themselves have a name they may be called by, as well as nicknames and endearments, alongside such designations as the kid, the boy, and so on. They can formulate hypotheses about reference on the basis of the contexts in which they hear new words, and, with the help of Contrast, they also start out with a strong guiding principle about relations among word senses. **Namely**, wherever there is a difference in form, they should expect to find some difference in meaning.

GOG 1360 The earliest English kings. Book-domain-world affairs.

The creation of an Anglian archdiocese could have been primarily intended as an expression of a new southern Anglian political community. Its ecclesiastical centre was Lichfield, its principal trading emporia London and Ipswich. What happened in Kent and Sussex can obscure the central fact of the reign, **namely**, that Mercia had changed from "a confederation of peoples under Mercian overlordship to a vast kingdom comprising most of the English areas between the Thames and the Humber".

H0J 387 Introduction to language learning. domain-social science.

If having one's voice recorded is considered an honour, invite the important members of the community to speak first. Explain your

reasons for wanting to record stories and speeches, **namely**, that you are anxious to learn their language as well as possible.

HH7 844 Sale of goods and consumer credit. domain-commerce.

Unless the contract is frustrated, the seller will still have to carry out the contract and if he delivers goods which do not comply with it, he will be in breach of contract.

WE have just considered the problem of who is to bear the loss when goods perish. We now face a different problem-**namely**, what effect does the perishing of the goods have upon the contract? **In other words**, must both parties still fully carry out the contract and, if not, to what extent is either party excused?

HJ0 16160 Rapid-ESRC gran abstracts.

With this goes the argument that small enterprises tend to be more efficient than larger ones, both in their use of scarce resources and the flexibility of their response to market processes. One finds in this approach a judgement about the effects of trade union and state interventions in labour markets with regard to resource allocation. **Namely**, it is argued that small enterprises tend to be less unionized and therefore characterised by competitively-set flexible wages, while large enterprises are characterised by wage rigidity.

HTP 685 Madness & modernity: a study in social psychoanalysis. book-applied science.

This is perpetuated in modern weaning during the oral stage and finds an equivalent in manic-depressive and paranoid-schizophrenic disorders. Finally, we have a cultural anal trauma associated with pastoralism and monotheism whose modern adult equivalent is obsessive neurosis and whose pre-Oedipal focus lies in the anal-sadistic phase. We are now in a position to answer the question with which we started: **namely**, why do individuals in our culture go through

these three stages of developmental growth in the manner in which they do?

HUL 196 Spoken. London School of Economics: Lecture on psychoanalytical study of society. Speech recorded from an educational context)

So it seems to me that the existence of death, the fact that organisms don't live forever, and they certainly are not perfected in terms of personal fitness or survivability, because they get diseases and they die suggests to me that our modern insight into evolution acting on individual genes is, is correct. **Namely**, that organisms evolved to be the biodegradable packaging of those genes.

JU 256 Whiteside words. Speech recorded in public context.

Erm, on the basis that they should be put back into the position that they would have been had there been no breach. Now erm I understand that, talking to my learned friend Mr this morning, that erm he will be contending for a different approach as to the basis of compensation. **Namely**, he will be inviting your Lordship to er look at whether or not the business the plaintiffs would have failed in any event er because it is the defendants case relying er extensively upon the opinion of their expert Mr er that even if the plaintiffs had had the finances which were originally anticipated and had completed the deal in accordance with that, the probabilities are that this business would have

KRG 476 Ideas in Action programmes. Radio broadcast. words/speech. domain-educational context.

You talked a lot about computers being more friendly in the future than in the past. What did you have in mind particularly? Well, there are a variety of different aspects of friendliness. One I've already mentioned, **namely**, if you type something that the computer doesn't understand, it shouldn't just say, "I don't understand, Error number three hundred and

twenty-two", or something like that. It should make some effort to understand.

A69 1445 Reflections of a statesman. Book-domain: world affairs

From the mid-nineteenth century onwards it turned out that not the whole population of Ireland was willing to be represented at Westminster but only a portion, the portion **namely** in which sixteen out of seventeen constituencies still choose to send Members to Westminster today. Meanwhile across the Atlantic Ocean an event had taken place which was destined to have the most far-reaching consequences. It was essentially a new attempt to revive the Burkeian fallacy of empire through freedom, obedience through liberty. Its surname is Canada; and its christian name is Durham.

AAV The Guardian Electronic Edition of 1989-12-31. Periodical-domain: leisure

Public opinion is growing too large for the channels that it has been accustomed to run through. He even managed to reform the British judiciary. Solutions. 1. Had the attendance of the third party been only two, the Treasurer would have eaten his half-cake at that party alone. Assume the fewest possible, **namely** three.

ABB 172 Delicatessen: a celebration and book-cook. Book-domain: leisure

The best Mortadella also includes pistachio nuts, the texture and flavour of which relieve an otherwise bland but pleasant meat. Within this category of sausages are several harder and spicier varieties which are excellent when added to cassoulet-type dishes or bean stews. These are, **namely**, chorizos and kabanos. Chorizos are always peppery, flavoured with paprika and although they sound Spanish, are often made in Germany.

ACA 482 The masks of death. Book-domain: world affairs

Those who were not in the hand of God were the playthings of blind hazard. "Chance or Providence!" wrote Pater, "Those are the 'fenced opposites' " of the speculative dilemma..." However eager sceptical Victorians might be to replace the superstitious world of their forefathers with a structure that seemed to them more solid and more rational, the alternative, **namely** that they lived in a meaningless world of chance, was repellent to many of them.

AD0 Get slim and stay slim. Book-domain: leisure

These last four items also contain sugar and have already appeared in the list of goals for sugar reduction. They therefore need not appear here as well. The principles for establishing lists of goals for fat reduction are similar to those for sugar reduction, **namely**, do the things that are easiest first; use lots of small, easy steps; spend about a week trying to behave according to that week's goal (and with all preceding ones being maintained) before going on to add the next goal to your repertoire.

AMT 601 Does God exist? Book-domain: belief and thought

But the opportunities have only been adopted half-heartedly. Many Christians started to worry that Christian faith was being made to rest upon the merely provisional conclusions of historians. Theologians pointed to what was dubbed the "ugly broad ditch" of A D. Lessing, **namely** that "accidental truths" of history cannot be the basis of "necessary truths of reason".

ANP The National Trust Magazine. Periodical-domain: world affairs

Soon after One-Leg 's publication I was lying in my bath in what is shown to visitors as Lord Anglesey's Bathroom, looking out on the incomparable view of the Menai Strait with the majesty of Snowdon beyond, when a bold idea occurred to me. Would it be feasible, I asked myself, to fill what for some time I had thought was a serious gap in

British military history, **namely** a socio-military chronicle of the last hundred years of the army's mounted arm? For thirty years I've been trying to give an affirmative reply to that question.

ANR 1179 Napoleon III. Book-domain: world affairs

But he went on to add, significantly, that he feared "In this matter the French government were following not leading the nation." Even Prince Anthony of Hohenzollern, the father of Leopold, wrote to the King of Prussia: Of Napoleon's PERSONAL (in capitals in original) desire to keep the peace I have striking proof. **Namely** he has expressed his wish to King Leopold of the Belgians and requested him to press us for a withdrawal.

APV 74 Cleaning professional kitchens. Book-domain: leisure

The properties are: Surface wetting (surfactancy) Dispersion Suspension Surface wetting : Contrary to expectations water is not very wet so the initial purpose of a detergent is to improve the wetting power of water. By this is meant the ability of a fluid to make complete contact with a surface at the point where they meet **namely** the interface. To a casual observer water on a surface may appear to be in complete contact with it.

APV 230 Cleaning professional kitchens. Book-domain: leisure

Solvents are used instead of alkalis, if they are more convenient or faster acting, particularly butoxy ethanol on heat modified soils and methylene chloride on carbonised grease. Oxidising agent responsive soils: Only one main type of dirt is affected by oxidising agents, **namely** tannin, derived from tea, coffee, wine and certain fruits. If tannin occurs built onto a layer of scale it is best treated as acid soluble Dirt attachment :In addition to the type the way by which soil is attached to a surface has a material effect on the cleaning required.

APV 1098 Cleaning professional kitchens. Book-domain: leisure

They consist of a cabinet or tunnel in which items are placed and where they are subjected to hot spray of detergent solution followed by rinse water. Older types and some glass washing machines use powered rotary brushes. Within this general description there are two basic types **namely** the batch and continuous loader.

APV 1730 Cleaning professional kitchens. Book-domain: leisure

They can waste amounts of chemical product valued far in excess of their wages and destroy the economics of integrated energy usage and they can return such low levels of productivity that excessive and unnecessary staffing levels result. Organising the work Cleaning without organisation is like a moving car without a driver. Like good driving, organisation is conducted in two phases **namely** planning and implementation.

ARC 674 A generation of schooling. Book-domain: literature

During those same years J. W. B. Douglas was carrying forward into the secondary-school stage his massive study of a sample of 5,000 children born in 1946. The Home and the School, published in 1964, hammered home the message about selection at eleven-plus. Moreover, 70 per cent of those who had been admitted to grammar schools left school at the minimum permitted age, **namely**, fifteen. There was only a thin trickle of transfers from secondary modern to grammar schools at the age of thirteen, but even this simply exaggerated the class differentials, giving an added advantage to the children of middle-class parents.

ARD 383 Screen. Book-domain: imaginative

It was released in December 1945, to an overwhelmingly positive critical response that praised its "maturity" and "realism", and also hailed it as the latest success from the Coward/Lean "team", which had, during the Second World War, produced three notably successful films,

namely In Which We Serve (1942), This Happy Breed (1944), and Blithe Spirit (1945). This run of critical and box-office hits prompted C. A. Lejeune, film critic of The Observer, to claim: these Coward films are probably the nearest things we have to a valid modern school in British cinema....

ART 1949 The Smiths. Periodical-domain: leisure

This is interesting because Morrissey was referring back to his days spent in hopeless fandom when he practically worshipped everything that moved within the media. What's more, he obviously still elevated those early influences above and beyond their deserved stature. In the north west, it was astonishing to see this superstar, **namely** Morrissey, worshipping this formerly dreadful local TV presenter.

ASA 10 How we won the open: the caddies' story. Book-domain: leisure

Today's caddie will probably tell you that nothing much has changed since 1560! Gradually the word cadets was corrupted by the Scots to "cady", meaning an odd-job man. And it is a Scot who is credited with using the first "cady" on the golf course, **namely** the Marquis of Montrose, who played on that delightful east-coast course in the 1620s and wrote in his accounts, "payment of four shillings to the boy who carried my clubs".

ASB 908 Freedom under Thatcher. Book-domain: social science

So far as property rights were concerned the Vice-Chancellor held that words being transmitted by electrical impulses could not in themselves be the subject-matter of property rights. So far as privacy was concerned, Malone accepted that there was no general right to privacy in English law, but argued that there was a particular right of privacy, **namely** the right to hold a telephone conversation in one's home without molestation.

ASF 848 Time in History. Book-domain: world affairs.

This system was still in use in western Europe as late as the sixteenth century! In Imperial times, however, the custom became popular, under astrological influence, to use the seven-day week with the different days named after the respective "planets". Inscriptions at Pompeii list the "days of the gods", **namely** Saturn, the Sun, the Moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, and Venus.

ASK 471 Treat me right. Essays on medical law. Book-domain: social science

It pointed out, however, that an annotation of the changed sex on the register would not safeguard privacy because it would reveal Rees's change of sexual identity. To this, Rees replied that the annotation of the changed sex could be kept secret from third parties. You may recall that I proposed earlier a scheme to do just that-**namely**, the registration of a new entry, but accompanied by a code known to the Registrar which would alert him in any case of attempted fraud. This, to me, is the crucial part of Rees's case, concerning, as it does, the protection of his privacy without any significant change in policy or practice by government.

ASK 1750 Treat me right. Essays on medical law. Book-domain: social science

Fletcher resolves this by saying that "[It] all depends on what doctors customarily do," so that if doctors customarily switch off ventilators in the circumstances under discussion, then this of itself makes it lawful to do so. This is obviously unsatisfactory, for it suggests that what is a matter of policy and values-**namely**, whether the doctor ought to treat-is within the special competence of doctors, whose expertise, in fact, is not in policy, but only in medical science. The question of criminal liability cannot be relegated to a matter of medical consensus.

ASY 1361 A common policy for education. Book-domain: social science

Often the most one can learn from them is that the student stuck out the course and actually learned enough to pass the examination, retaining what he learned long enough to get it down on paper. To know this much about a student is better than nothing. But it is not enough. One of the drawbacks of A level is that because it is an examination to be taken at a particular time, **namely** after two years of study in the sixth form (there are exceptions to this, but such is the general rule) it is taken by people who are at very different stages of development, of readiness for the examination, and, above all, of interest in the subject matter.

ATG 79 Yugoslavia in crisis. Book-domain: world affairs

But there are no convincing reasons for believing that this would have a beneficial effect on economic performance. In many Western countries, in fact, the majority of "informed opinion" favours a shifts in the opposite direction. Underlying this argument there may well be a different one, **namely**, that there is a need for a more progressive tax structure, and that this cannot be achieved without a greater emphasis on direct taxation.

AYJ 2332 Twenty ways to manage better. Book-domain: commerce

Yet unlikely figures often have a nasty habit of turning out to be true. Knowing the original figures may also change the meaning or alter the impact of the data. In Britain, for instance one in 3.5 births are identical twins. This could in theory be rounded up to one in four or down to one in three. A percentage misguidedly based on either would give two widely different figures, **namely** 25 or 35 per cent. Faulty comparisons A common mistake is to compare two figures which cannot be logically linked. For example, leaving rates of women employees may show a worse picture than for male employees. But the two sets of data may not be comparable if one group is part-time and recruited prior to having children.

B0X 1419 Diabetes and the heart. Book-domain: natural sciences

Frequently patients respond to a small dose and indeed some patients may be very sensitive to this drug and care needs to be taken that hypoglycaemia does not occur. For this reason it is prudent to commence with the smallest dose of glibenclamide, **namely** 2.5 mg. Patients need to be cautioned about not missing meals and using alcohol with discretion when receiving sulphonylureas because of the risk of precipitating hypoglycaemia.

B1D 1381 The Foreign Office: an artificial architectural history. Book-domain: arts

Some of its members, **namely** Barry, Brodrick, Ashpitel, Jones and Lamb, must have been motivated by pure self-interest, as they themselves produce buildings in what they were saying was the hated Gothic style. It was "unprofessional, unartistic, and, we had nearly said, ungentlemanly".

B1X 3317 The killing frost. Book-domain: imaginative

He paused deliberately, slowly switching his gaze from one side of the table to the other. "But I think the time has come," he went on, "when the same microscope should be employed in another part of Ireland, **namely** the North. "Information should be collected as to the goings-on in parts of Ulster of organisations which lately have been supplied with arms and are being detailed for eventualities".

B23 538 Local management of schools. Book-domain: social science

To make such statements usable it may be necessary to establish criteria which would recognise whether they are being fulfilled. For example, a school may judge that developing "lively and enquiring minds" among its students requires certain teaching styles, **namely** a move away from didactic teaching to active student participation. This could give staff and governors something specific to aim for and a way of measuring

success. Beyond the key pieces of information outlined on the curriculum and resources, each institution will choose which further items it reviews. This choice will reflect both the values held and the stage the institution has reached.

B2C 1244 The evolution of human consciousness. Book-domain: applied science

The diurnal raptors and small mammalian carnivores form a third and most extreme group (Fig. 3.10). Fig. 3.9 Proportions of proximal against distal ends of limb bones. The horizontal axis has the most frequently preserved part of the bone, **namely** the distal humerus and proximal femur.

B73 2203 The road to middle-earth. Book-domain: arts

His motto seems to be "what is good for me, must be good for everybody else too". It is all very well reading Isaac Asimov and making robots that cut the grass, play ping-pong with the children or slave in households. Somehow he thinks it remote from morality to face the facts; somehow he thinks it possible to be good without being wise. **Namely**, he should try to answer some hard questions, one of them being formulated by Arthur C. Clarke himself: "The question is not what shall we do without work-but what do we live for?" Or, have shorter working hours and more leisure time brought by the automation resulted in having more composers, writers painters, poets, sculptors, philosophers? And what has brought increased affluence?

B7B 335 New Scientists. Periodical-domain: applied science

So these first results indicated that quantum mechanics is adequate even for those situations where nonlocal effects might seem to be necessary. But these results left unanswered a second question, **namely**, is it possible to reproduce the results of quantum mechanics by associating definite but unknown positions and momenta with individual particles without resorting to non-locality? It turns out that it is possible to

reproduce exactly the results of non-relativistic quantum mechanics by attributing definite properties to individual systems.

BP5 51 Competition and business regulation in the single market.

Book-domain: commerce

The Treaty on European Union, which was signed at Maastricht on 7 February 1992 and is expected to come into force during 1993, has widened areas where qualified majority voting applies before the Council. Moreover, the new Treaty sets out a new legislative procedure, **namely** the "co-decision" procedure.

BP5 1107 Independent electronic edition of 1989-10-02. Business section-domain: commerce

The requirement of a compulsory bid has been criticised as being too prescriptive in nature. However, there are a number of situations provided for in the Directive where the supervisory authority of the member state in question may allow for an exception to a compulsory bid. A takeover bid must be accepted within a certain period of time, **namely** not less than four weeks but not more than ten weeks from the date of when the offer document is made public.

BP5 1283 Competition and business regulation in the single market.

Book-domain: commerce

The Commission pointed out that these percentages would have been even higher for certain types of plane. The proposed concentration would not only have significantly strengthened ATR's position in the commuter markets, but also have eliminated De Havilland from the relevant market, where there are only few competitors, **namely** British Aerospace, Saab, Fokker, and some minor firms. Moreover, the merged company would have been the only commuter manufacturer covering the whole range of commuter aircraft.

C8L 1020 Church planting: our future hope. Book-domain: belief and thought

Clergy can then "do what lies within them to bring people to know God." One of these things is certainly to plant churches. Bishops can do what they have already promised to do, **namely** "be faithful in laying hands upon others", **namely** church planters. They will take initiative for the sake of "the poor and needy strangers", **namely** those outside the church who have no intention of going near the institutional church.

C97 1815 Global ecology. Book-domain: applied science

In addition to their role as refuse removers, these crustaceans also provide a valuable food source for some fish, particularly Mandarins, which are next to impossible to maintain for long periods in aquaria which are not well stocked with inverts and living rock. Mandarins also enjoy eating one of the two types of accidental introductions commonly seen in fish-only tanks, **namely** copepods. Their presence in large numbers is fish-only systems is an indicator that the aquarium is overfed, or that uneaten food is not removed thoroughly enough.

CAC 1744 Myths, gods and fantasy. Book-domain: belief and thought

By his actions he ensured temporary respite for mortals from evil forces, though they periodically seep past the stone to plague the world, at Izanami's behest. Jack In Irons A giant Yorkshire PHANTOM who haunts lonely roads. He is swathed in chains, from which hang trophies- **namely** the heads of his victims, hanging by their hair.

CAE 2253 Daily Telegraph. Electronic edition of 1992-04-04. Arts section. Periodical-domain: arts

The same applies to Scratch, although they're about as glamorous as a donkey on Skegness beach and marginally less attractive. However, wild horses couldn't drag them away from the task in hand tonight, **namely** lowering the floor six feet with every beat. They go about this

by jumping up and down a lot and cranking the drum machine up to unfeasible volumes.

CAP 1185 Nursing times. Periodical-domain: applied science

A separate audit of all X-ray requests made by me was carried out. The 10-week period of clinical practice proved to be invaluable. Before its commencement we did not know how the ENP would be received in the department or indeed whether the proposed scheme would turn out to be a workable one. I was able to identify four problem areas, **namely** training, various restrictions to my practice, other nurses being unfamiliar with my parameters of practice, and unrealistic expectations of both medical and nursing staff.

CAW 164 Daily Telegraph. Electronic edition of 1992-04-04. Arts section. Periodical-domain: arts

He watched them rushing through Calais on their way to pay court to Napoleon (Sonnet: "Is it a reed that's shaken by the wind"), and decided, since he regarded the French leader as a despot and a menace to free institutions, that the only course open was to support that party in England which wanted to continue the war, **namely** the Tories. His patriotism became inflamed (Poems Dedicated to National Independence and Liberty) and when Napoleon crowned himself Emperor, he shared the disgust of Beethoven, who tore out the dedication of the Eroica symphony.

CBP 1482 The complete videocourse. Book-domain: leisure

There are two reasons for this diversity: microphones have differing pick-up characteristics depending on their intended use; and they differ in the ways in which they convert sound into electrical signals. There are two basic types of pick-up pattern, **namely** omnidirectional and unidirectional. Omnidirectional microphones are designed to pick up sound equally in all directions; the one on your camcorder may be omnidirectional.

CBR 830 Aspects of language teaching. Book-domain: social science

This is where I consider Krashen, for example, is mistaken. He has harsh words to say about eclecticism. In so far as he means the random use of techniques removed from all contact with appraisal, then I think that he is right. But he appears to reject eclecticism as an evaluative principle as well and to argue that pedagogic practice must be the application of a single theory of language acquisition, **namely** his own. (See Chapter 2.)

CE2 1120 Points to prove. Book-domain: social science

If the "qualified driver" does not do what can be reasonably expected of him regarding these duties the learner could be said to be not under supervision. 9. "of a qualified driver" The supervisor must be a "qualified driver" as defined in regulation 9(6) of the Motor Vehicles (Driving Licences) Regulations 1987, **namely**, a person who holds a full licence authorising him to drive as a full licence holder a motor vehicle of the same class or description as the vehicle being driven by the holder of the provisional licence.

CEE 7 British Journal of social work. Periodical-domain: social science

And because the particular form of constancy adopted by my family seems at least as important in the aetiology of my own disease as the changes which accompanied it, I shall start with an anecdote which illustrates, in little, the fixed but complex family structure of which I was a part. I was about 13 years old, and my aunt (my father's sister) and uncle had come to stay with us-**namely**, my father, my mother, my four younger sisters and myself.

CHB 2730 New Musical Express. Periodical-domain: arts

Unfortunately THE CHARWALLAS (UK) were either too drunk or too gobsnacked to say anything to the pointy-chested one, only managing a mumbled "Hi". Unfortunately, Madonna took this to be an indication of the lads' state, and took her leave. Would you let your daughter sleep

with these lads, **namely** SUEDE? Yes, probably. Perhaps Madonna should have a chat about the pop ethics with these young hopefuls.

CHC 326 Libyan politics: tribe and revolution. Book-domain: social science

This was drawn up on account of the difficulty which the negotiators at The Hague had in agreeing whether or not irregular forces in occupied territory might or might not qualify for combatant status, but its words have a wider relevance: Another agreement concluded at the same conference, **namely** the 1907 Hague Convention V on Neutrality in Land War, also has relevant provisions, especially Article 1.

CHL 883 Electronics and Wireless World. Periodical-domain: applied science

In fact it provided the industry with more control over its environment by making conflicts over environmental damage an administrative problem whose outcome could be predicted by corporate executives. It thus gained for the coal industry what all organizations strive for, **namely** rational control of the environment through being better able to predict its fluctuations. Similar processes, reflecting the ability of corporations to prevent their socially and economically injurious behaviour being criminalized operate also in Britain.

CJ1 60 Societies at peace: anthropological perspectives. Book-domain: social science

Several edited volumes have been published that deal specifically with these issues. However, their sole interest has, in almost every case, been to explain the violent aspects of societies (see e.g. Bramson and Goethals 1964; Bohannan 1967; Fried et al. 1967; Vayda 1976; Ferguson 1984; Le Crone Foster et al. 1986; Riches 1986). The opposite of violent behaviour, **namely** peaceful cohabitation on a societal scale, has-with the notable exception of Montagu (1978)-been ignored.

CJ1 202 The Economist. Periodical-domain: commerce

Militarism Fourth, the Western post-war build-up of defence is partially justified in the above terms. The nuclear arms race, and East-West conflict, is seen as inevitable given that human nature is what it is (**namely** competitive, aggressive, and combative) and the consequent pessimism shared by a large proportion of Western Europe's population concerning the possibility of nuclear war is again expressed in such terms.

CJ1 783 Space marine. Book-domain: imaginative

"You have already received some of the precious germ-plasm of our blessed Patriarch to kindle you as a true Imperial Fist..." Seated along a wide curve of plasteel stalls, their canopies embossed with battle scenes, the cadets hardly moved. "Your new organs and glands have only one ultimate source-**namely** the gene-seed of the godly Rogal Dorn enshrined from generation to generation within the temples of our bodies.

CK1 936 Your body clock: how to live with it. Book-domain: natural sciences

The assumption is that there is only one possible explanation of our saying this: **namely**, that we believe that the man's utterance is the result of encoding something that exists at a pre-linguistic level, **namely** a thought, and that in the case of the parrot there is nothing at this level. To show that this assumption is false I need, of course, to supply an alternative explanation.

CLE 17 Comparative industrial relations. Book-domain: commerce

In Dunlop's conception of an interdependent industrial relations system three principal actors, **namely** workers, managers-as well as their representative organizations-together with certain state agencies, all interact to establish a network of rules governing their relationship in the workplace, the rules being the output of the system.

CM0 838 The headhunting business. Book-domain: commerce

Some use researchers mainly as librarians, keeping all the contact with clients and with potential candidates with the consultant who is handling the assignment. Other firms use researchers to do most of the contacting or cold-calling. In particular, four firms are very large users of this latter type of research approach: **namely** Heidrick and Struggles, Whitehead Mann, GKR and Tyzack.

CMN 1146 Content of social explanation. Book-domain: belief and thought

Some people will want to quarrel with this analysis; but for our present purposes its accuracy is less important than the use Miller makes of it. For he distinguishes sharply between two questions. We might ask, first of all, "Why do the particular people who are major capitalists, **namely**, John D. Rockefeller III, David Lindsay, Walter Wriston, and others, typically identify the bourgeois and national interests?" And the answer to this may be given in terms of the individual histories of these men.

EA2 965 British Medical Journal. Periodical-domain: natural sciences

It follows from this that younger people will normally take preference over older people in the allocation of resources that would postpone death. Is this fair? Do we not all face the same loss, **namely** death? And do we not all have the same right to be saved? This raises the fundamental issue of how, ultimately, the value of life is to be determined. Harris has argued that the value of life can only sensibly be taken to be that value that those alive place on their lives.

KAP 345 Christian aid. Miscellanea-domain: social science

Once again nearly all the food for catering (and also some equipment for the moving of books) was provided by our good neighbours in the hotels and shops of the Parish. This year the traditional menu was made a little more exotic by the addition of Turkish Delight. Incidentally, the

hero of the end of the week, when the going was really hard, **namely** our Church Officer's young grandson, Steven Massey, said to Frances Robertson when she offered him this form of sustenance "Well, I don't know about the Turkish, but you're certainly a delight".

K47 968 Liverpool Daily Post and Echo. Foreign new pages. Periodical-domain: world affairs

The full charge alleged that Rymer, on June 9, unlawfully and maliciously attempted to cause to be administered to the boy, a poison or other destructive or noxious thing **namely** Atenolol, Temazepam, Bendrofluazide and Coproxamol so as to endanger the life of the boy or inflict grievous bodily harm on him.

CBU 2679 Accountancy. Periodical-domain: commerce

that is so that is the point of the case and now the avoidance of doubt, when you've got to another aspect of the case quite different, **namely** the claim for special damages, you were suggesting to Mr that there, there was a deliberate attempt to and after all whereas you might not like my er use of the to swing on to the Daily Telegraphyset the costs which would have been paid in any event that's all the case is

J7D 154 Sale and supply of goods. Book-domain: commerce

Nevertheless, there still appear to be notable differences, for example, with regard to the passing of property (see Chapter 7) and also the effects of frustration (see Chapter 10). The approach of the law is to distinguish the following transactions, **namely**, a contract for the sale of goods with a severable contract for services, a sale of goods, a contract for work and materials, and lastly, the supply of services.

J6X 384 Damages for personal injury and death 5th edition. Book-domain: social sciences

In *Hoffman v Sofaer* [1982] 1 WLR 1350 Talbot J held that where a foreign plaintiff suffered his injuries in Britain, his damages should be

assessed in the currency most closely linked with the loss, **namely** the currency in which the loss was suffered or the expense incurred, with the exception of damages for pain, suffering and loss of amenity which should be assessed in sterling.

J6T 911 Drafting commercial agreements. Book-domain: commerce

However, one has to ask whether the court would not be tempted to hold that the clause was not only unenforceable under s 2(1) but also failed the reasonableness test under s 2(2). One of the circumstances which was known, or ought to have been known, to the parties at the time they were entering into the contract was that in certain circumstances the clause would clearly be unenforceable (**namely**, in the area of liability for death or personal injury). Is a clause which is known to be unenforceable in certain circumstances an unreasonable one?

J6N 540 The acquisition of business assets. Book-domain: social science

However, in *Re Cadbury Schweppes Ltd's Agreement* [1975] 2 All ER 307 a parent company and a subsidiary were not treated as a single person where two companies agreed to accept restrictions on the supply of goods to a third which was a subsidiary of one of them. In an asset sale, the entire transaction, **namely** the main sale agreement together with all ancillary agreements, must be looked at in the light of RTPA 1976.

EW R 822 English-Englishness. Book-domain: social science

President's Report Our congratulations to Margaret Thatcher on the signal honour of becoming a member of the Order of Merit, where she has joined her tutor, Dorothy Hodgkin. So two Somervillians in a prestigious order limited in numbers to twenty-four. Professor Kathleen Tillotson is also to be applauded on her C.B.E. as are the recently appointed O.B.E.'s: **namely** Ann Gray (1953) Deputy Head Teacher of

Wakefield Girls' High School, Mrs Mary Lobel (Librarian 1946-8) for her work on the Victoria County History and Esther Rantzen (1959) for her remarkable work for children.

J27 171 Short courses in religious and moral education. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: social science

The content of catechesis is "the Mysteries of the Faith" (8), and specifically the four key mysteries of The Trinity, The Incarnation and The Redemption, The Spirit and The Church. There are five main content areas in which these mysteries are enunciated, **namely**: Scripture, Doctrine, Liturgy, Life Experience and Morality.

HY9 436 Politics under the later Stuarts. Book-domain: world affairs

Traditionally Convocation had met whenever Parliament assembled, but the institution had been largely dormant after 1664, when the clergy relinquished their right to tax themselves in return for the vote in Parliamentary elections, and had met only once since then, **namely** in 1689.

HY8 246 The special relationship. Book-domain: world affairs

He also liked to portray British social democracy as an alternative to the 'red tooth and claw' of American capitalism and Soviet communism. Such ideas were abandoned only when advocates of a third force were squarely confronted in 1948 with a precise timetable-**namely** that Britain's needs were so great that (to be of value) such a 'force' would need to be created within five years.

HXN 286 European economic integration. Book-domain: world affairs

The sort of agreements which the legislation is designed to catch are precisely the same as those which the UK legislation is aimed at, **namely** price fixing, market sharing, restrictions on supply, etc.

HXM 58 European economic integration. Book-domain: world affairs
Presumably attempts will be made to agree expenditure ceilings post-1992 to avoid the outbreak, at a later date, of inter-institutional frictions. The inadequacy of resources The inadequacy of resources is highlighted by a recurrent tendency for expenditure to run ahead of revenue. By far the largest item of expenditure, **namely** the EAGGF (Guarantee Section), grew by 75 per cent between 1983 and 1988, and in each of the years actual expenditure exceeded the estimates.

HU2 5473 Gut: Journal of Gastroenterology and Hepatology
However, small foci of tumour within an area of fibrosis may be undetectable on MRI, which means that the technique cannot be regarded as completely reliable. MRI has been much slower to develop than computed tomography, but its impact in those areas where it clearly has a substantial advantage has been enormous, **namely** the central nervous system and the musculoskeletal system.

HTV 748 Sociology of the global system. Book-domain: social science
However, many exporters import the materials and components used in their exported goods rather than buy them locally. This reduces the magnitude of local value added, a key measure of the benefit of foreign investment. What the TNCs spend locally can be broken down into three components, **namely** wages and salaries, utility and service costs, and material linkages.

HUK 29 London School of Economics: Lecture on the psychoanalytical study of society. Speech recorded in educational context
At the very least, this raises some important questions for ego-psychology and indicates what Freud-but few others since-always knew, **namely**, that group- and ego-psychology are deeply and intimately intertwined.

HTP 307 Madness and modernity: a study on social psychoanalysis.
Book-domain: applied science

The situation which we find with regard to the Totem and Taboo analysis is comparable to that which applies to Einstein's papers on special relativity. Like special relativity, the monotraumatic theory is a restricted one, applicable only to certain specified frames of reference. What it requires to extend it is what Einstein's work on general relativity gave to the special theory, **namely**, a generalization of it which extends it to all frames of reference regardless.

HPX 912 Managing education: the purpose and practice of good management in schools. Book-domain: social science

No vision of self-improvement can be realized without a healthy degree of self-esteem. To achieve these joint ends, the school had to have a smoothly working tutorial review system and a thorough approach to records of achievement. Both had been implemented. Pupils reached the point where they could say that they realized that someone-**namely** their teachers and their tutors-knew them very well.

HPX 542 Managing education: the purpose and practice of good management in schools. Book-domain: social science

A Vocational Education and Training Task Force, reporting to the Confederation of British Industry (CBI 1990) emphasized that the connection between training policies and employer involvement would enable one of four targets to be met, **namely** that all education and training provision should be structured and designed to develop self-reliance, flexibility and broad competence as well as specific skills' (p. 19).

HPU 466 Data collection in context. Book-domain: social science

What we hope to have shown so far, if only in a general way, is the vital link between theory and method which is so essential to a fuller

understanding of methods of data collection. Chapter 3 begins a discussion of one inferential structure that is predominant in social research, **namely** variable analysis and its approach to data, measurement and theory building.

HJD 486 Unpublished creative writing. Miscellanea-domain: imaginative
 He knew he had gone down the road no cop should take, **namely** that of allowing the pursuit of a criminal to become a personal vendetta. But his initial anger at finding the latest two victims of the insane killer's bloodlust, blazed into an all-consuming hatred of the man who had done it.

HJ1 8506 Rapid ESRC grant abstracts. Miscellanea-domain: social science
 The data for the project are videotape recordings of actual day to day activities conducted within the medical organisation-consultations, clinics, team meetings, case conferences and the like. The methodological techniques are drawn from recent developments in sociology, **namely** ethnomethodology and sequential analysis.

EF8 549 Understanding children. Book-domain: social science
 These characteristics of the empirical mode raise two issues which have been explored in studies concentrating on the cognitive abilities underpinning this mode, **namely**: At what age are children able to distinguish between causes and effects? How is children's understanding of the cause/effect distinction related to their understanding of the temporal priority principle?

EDC 366 Living with heroin. Book-domain: social sciences
 Some basic concepts needed to describe the prevalence of heroin use were introduced in Chapter 2, **namely**: case (whom to count), time (when to count), and place (where to count). We also briefly discussed

macrodiffusion and microdiffusion, concepts which describe the geographical and demographic spread of heroin "epidemics".

CRU 690 Permission and Regulation. Book-domain: social science

The name change was necessary, it was argued, because the original name referred to a single event that had taken place over a decade previously, that it gave the wrong image, and didn't properly describe the work being done by the organisation. The stated aims of the organisation continue to be those originally associated with the NFOL, **namely**: "the advancement and propagation of the Christian Gospel in particular as it bears on or affects national or individual morality and ethics".

CE2 1468 Points to prove. Book-domain: social science

Secondly, a statement from the injured party detailing the injury and how it was caused would be required. 7. "or was likely to be caused to person in or on that vehicle (or trailer) or on a road in that... Where no injury is caused, the above element has to be proved. This is usually done by the subjective judgment of the officer concerned. **Namely**, a sentence in the police officer's statement of evidence to the effect that "Should anyone come into contact with the jagged metal on the front nearside wing they would be injured", or "If a pedestrian collided with the piece of metal left after the front nearside wing mirror had broken off, he would be injured".

HJL 196 London School of economics: lecture on the psychoanalytical study of society. Speech recorded in educational context

So it seems to me that the existence of death, the fact that organisms don't live forever, and they certainly are not perfected in terms of personal fitness or survivability, because they get diseases and they die suggests to me that our modern insight into evolution acting on individual genes is, is correct. **Namely**, that organisms evolved to be the biodegradable packaging of those genes. I know this is a bit of an

affront to our high opinion of ourselves as human beings, er, of course many people regard it that way, but erm my view is that er we can't expect science necessarily to tell us things we want to hear. human fantasy and for our benefit.

K4C 1285 Liverpool Daily Post and Echo: Leisure pages. Periodical-domain: leisure

Fine, that's no problem because at least you've got a fortnight in which to make contact with him and put your intentions up. Yeah. Well I, I'll wait till you bring back your, your er illustrations and then I'll talk to him. Right. Er are you happy with the way we've addressed your particular need today er **namely** the pension? Er yeah I mean a pension's a pension isn't it? So Yes. I don't need to worry about that.

EW4 147 Proportional representation: which system? Book-domain: world affairs

Pretence is, as has already been noted, a prominent characteristic of the STV. Complications Advocates of the system claim that it is 'entirely logical'. So it may be. The difficulty is that the assumptions on which it is based are to say the least shaky: the assumptions, **namely**, that only one vote suffices although more than one candidate is to be elected; that preferential voting is reliable, even when used in ignorance of all the relevant information and inhibited by the arbitrary exclusion of candidates who might otherwise be successful;

EX2 557 Regulation of the firm and natural monopoly. Book-domain: commerce

Because this does not fit with preconceived notions of, say, electricity distribution or the postal service, we will have to qualify the result in various ways, in order to realize the extent of its truth. The most fundamental question is, do the two sets, **namely** natural monopolies and perfectly contestable industries, in fact intersect? Weitzman (1983)

claims they do not. Perfect contestability, remember, assumes that any scale economies arise through fixed rather than sunk costs.

F9G 168 Beyond the inner city. Book-domain: social science

Perhaps even more interesting than the status of race as a demarcator of differentiation, is the absence of division around religion, and in particular around the ethnic-religious combination of Irish Catholicism. This is not true of places in Britain which otherwise much resemble Tyneside, **namely** Glasgow and Liverpool. I will pay attention to these things, but one aspect of the specificity of the locales I am dealing with is their relative unimportance.

F9L 159 Church and realm: 1272-1461. Book-domain: belief and thought

In the first place, throughout the century popes were adding to the corpus of canon law by collections of their own decisions and of conciliar decrees. Edward had gone on crusade with the future pope Gregory X, convener of the Council of Lyons. Later contemporaries of Edward, **namely** Boniface VIII and Clement V (who was Edward's own subject), emphasized the tradition of papal legislation in this period by their further additions to the body of canon law. But it was not only the head of Christendom whose example would remind Edward of the prestige attached to making and coordinating laws.

FA0 1608 Restructuring Britain: the economy in question. Book-domain: commerce

There is, however, one significant difference. In comparison with the debate over deindustrialization, the debate on the uneven development of service sector growth is less advanced; the theoretical divisions are less clear-cut. Nevertheless, an attempt has been made to identify the theoretical differences that are emerging. First, however, there is a more pressing issue which has to be addressed, **namely**, what are services?

FAJ 1026 Masai dreaming. Book-domain: imaginative

As I lie here under the green, seaweeded tent I remember from some trite television interview, a remark made by Brigitte Bardot, loopy Parisienne, **namely** that in all her many love affairs she was off at the first sign of the waning of passion. Perhaps Claudia grew tired of Tepilit.

FAU 2240 Principles of hotel and catering law. Book-domain: social science

There may be an implied term of contract, **namely** that the occupier will take reasonable care regarding the safety of the party entering the premises under the contract. Duty at common law. It is arguable that the "activity duty", **namely** a duty owed by people carrying out an activity on their premises (e.g. hotel or catering business) to take reasonable care for the safety of people who may be injured by their activity has survived the OLA 1957.

VIZ

MN 727 Foxton: locks and barge life. Book-domain: leisure

The total lift or rise from the Lower to the Upper Pond is 75 feet 2 inches. Three firms of Mechanical Engineers have been asked to tender for the machinery and steelwork under conditions embodied in a Specification of Terms, a copy of which is hereto appended. The specifications and tenders of the three firms **viz**:-Messrs. Hunter & English of Bow £12,390 Messrs. Glover and Sons of Warwick £9,942Messrs J. & H. Gwynne of Hammersmith £14,130allow for Exps. 500£ 14,630are hereto attached

AMY 823 Henly Golf Club-the first 80 years. Book-domain: leisure

The usual high-spirited Artisans' Dinner was held with Bill as usual leading the singing with "Burlington Bertie". His golfing prowess earned him a series of length golfing tuition articles in the Standard.

They read very well, **viz**: -"PITCH AND RUN This is a real St Andrew's stroke, played with the right hand-firm grip with the fingers of the same hand. The ball should be played nearer the right foot than in other shots.

BO2 317 Agriculture and nature conservation in conflict. Miscellaneous-domain: applied science

Rather, the components of the aid package (including national aids paid by member states within the LFA) with implications for nature conservation will be selected for study. In the UK, the implementation of the directive is nationally uniform so no different provisions apply to the LFA in Wales or elsewhere. The aid package may be divided into four sections, **viz** compensatory allowances, investment aids, other EEC measures and national aids.

BO2 847 Agriculture and nature conservation in conflict. Miscellaneous-domain: applied science

It is suggested that the UK's existing LFA is assessed in order to define at least 3 zones of natural handicap within it, **viz**: -A.A mountain zone (areas such as the Scottish Highlands, the core of the Lake District and northern Snowdonia) where HLCAs should be increased to the Directive's maximum rates (subject to the livestock numbers per farm limit recommended earlier in this chapter.

BO2 1158 Agriculture and nature conservation in conflict. Miscellaneous-domain: applied science

Proper zoning of the LFA is essential in order to relate levels of financial aid to degree of handicap experienced and MAAF (and WOAD's) refusal to differentiate a proper zonation is a fundamental shortcoming on their parts. 2. Levels of HLCA payments should be related to handicap zones and three levels are proposed, **viz**: Mountain zone-set at EEC maximum, i. e. £60 per cow; £9 per sheep. Intermediate zone-set at 80% of existing level, i. e. £36 per cow; £5 per

sheep. Marginal zone-set at 33% of existing level, i. e. £15 per cow, £2 per sheep.

B15 920 Environmental scanning and business strategy. Book-domain: applied science

In his excellent review of studies of "what managers do", Hales has argued that three areas of difficulty may be encountered in the published research evidence on managerial work, viz: The plethora of categories for describing the phenomenon The difficulty of judging the appropriateness of the behaviour identified The problem of whether the work described is exclusively "managerial" (and in what sense)

BM2 366 Bukharin's theory of equilibrium. Book-domain: world affairs
Bukharin's Presentation: A Reformulation and Critique As a preliminary statement we can say that the equation: is at best only ever achieved as a momentary or fleeting condition. Such an equation is basically made up of two parts: viz which indicates that business conditions are good, and which indicates business conditions are poor. The equation for equilibrium conditions is, in reality, a combination of these two dis-equilibrium conditions. Or, put another way, the equilibrium equation represents an average of a graph of fluctuations.

BMK 1920 Chemistry in Britain. Periodical-domain: natural sciences
This book is particularly useful as a reminder of areas where the reader may have become rusty, and as an update of the very good ongoing R&D work in the field of corrosion inhibition. However, workers in the main fields covered, viz oil field applications, heating and cooling systems, steam raising and lubrication, will find this monograph valuable. I liked the way that all the papers explained the reasoning behind the decisions taken by the authors during their research.

BMP 900 Way of life: dominant ideologies and local communities.
Book-domain: belief and thought

This housing controversy aligned Orcadians against both the English and the planners for in this context any non-local was regarded as English and since most planners were also non-Orcadians this meant that all planning policies were thought of as alien. By and large, planners were associated with incomers in that they wished to control the way things were done, viz to impose rules where there were none before and to replace the old social norms by fiat instead of the usual agreement between households.

BPH 1128. The worst poverty. Book-domain: world affairs
NEED CASH? NEED IT FAST? Decision Today! Loan Refused?
Whatever your needs or circumstances give us a ring now! Even if you've been turned down elsewhere. Every day the London Evening Standard carried two or three small classified advertisements headed LOANS from lenders who only gave their telephone numbers, viz: UNSECURED Loans £1000-£10,000, payout 4-8 days, no bad debtors 081000 0000 up to 8 pm. Written quotations on request. Licensed Credit Brokers. Some 35,000 still used one of the 140 Credit Unions operating in Britain in the 1990s as cooperative savings and loan clubs.

BPH 1136 The worst poverty. Book-domain: world affairs
Banks promoted such services by press and television advertising. And other firms with "Bank" in their title also offered to lend, viz: CREDITPLAN FLEXI START BANKLOAN was the headline of a large advertisement of such a bank.

CAH 197 New Statesman and Society. Periodical-domain: world affairs
Despite his election triumph, John Major is already looking like a mug. In this matter, at least, he is following in the footsteps of his predecessor. A Wakefield-based china and crystal chain, Peter Jones China, is already manufacturing a £25 fine bone china commemorative

ming to mark the "historical landmark in our political history", viz, John's recent scrape home.

CAJ 1872 New Statesman and Society. Periodical-domain: world affairs

He never married, though he is understood to have received a number of proposals. His chief pride lay in the talented cartoonists he fostered and encouraged. In recent decades, afflicted with the loss of bite, partially caused by loose-fitting debentures, Mr Punch's health was further weakened by circulation problems. As he grew more feeble, his followers were left prey to seduction by lusty upstarts, viz private eyes with all their teeth.

CAK 1410 New Statesman and Society. Periodical-domain: world affairs

Report by Ms de Meaner Aside from Katie Mallett who, early on, informed me she wouldn't be entering this comp (she'd never heard of Summerhill), most of the regulars entered. Speaking of regulars, the comp complex has had a letter from G Douglas Vaisey pointing out what we all know, viz that "the compers club is a mite exclusive". He goes on to say he's "curious to know whether it is open to a wider and perhaps more aggressive audience with access to fax machines".

CBX 2499 Accountancy. Periodical-domain: commerce

Furthermore, ERM membership has effectively disciplined many EC governments unable to cure inflation for themselves; this has been a major factor in the creation of prosperity in Western Europe. It is not by accident that the countries within the ERM-viz Spain and Ireland-and countries shadowing the system-such as Sweden and Norway-believe that the price of higher than warranted interest rates, from their domestic point of view, is nevertheless worth paying, in return for the longer-term stability that the ERM will provide.

CC7 59 Queen's Park Baptist church magazines. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: belief and thought

On December 22nd 1800, both men confessed their faith in Christ. They sat down for a meal with the missionaries, fully appreciating the significance of their actions. On December 28th 1800, a baptismal service took place in the river. Carey wrote with jubilation, "Yesterday was a day of great joy. I had the happiness to desecrate the Gunga by baptising the first Hindu, viz Krishna and my son Felix..."

CE2 65 Points to prove. Book-domain: social science

"Public place" has been added to certain offences under the road traffic legislation to enlarge the use of the offences. Although not defined under the Road Traffic Act it is considered that having regard to the spirit of the legislation that the definition used in other Acts would apply viz: Includes any place to which the public have access whether on payment or otherwise, e.g. fields where the public can park for a race meeting or traction engine rally, footpaths or bridleways (unless the Act states otherwise: see section 22A (5) of the Road Traffic Act 1988), or anywhere where the public could be at risk from mechanically propelled vehicles.

CE2 2479 Points to prove. Book-domain: social science

The whole phrase does not create more than one offence. Under section 7(2) for the purposes of the rules against charging more than one offence in the same count or information, each of sections 1 to 5 creates one offence. The mental element or mens rea for this offence is explained in Section 6(4) of the 1986 Act, viz: A person is guilty of an offence under section 5 only if he intends his words or behaviour, or the writing, sign or other visible representation, to be threatening, abusive or insulting, or is aware that it may be threatening, abusive or insulting or (as the case may be) he intends his behaviour to be or is aware that it may be disorderly.⁴

CE2 3107 Points to prove. Book-domain: social science

For example, a boy under 10 years, the age of criminal responsibility, took his friend's bicycle home and gave it to his father. Although the father came by the bicycle innocently, if he assumes the rights of an owner by selling it, for instance, he will steal it. (iii)"Property"-what is stolen must come within the definition of property viz: money and all other property, real or personal, including things in action and other intangible property.

CFX 23 Sounds from the bell jar. Book-domain: arts

We should state at the outset that it is not the purpose, nor within the scope, of this book to try to answer such questions in their entirety. This is partly because, for reasons to be discussed later, we shall be confining ourselves to a certain class of creative person, viz authors: it would therefore be presumptuous of us to extrapolate from our conclusions to other forms of originality.

CGH 871 Practical fishkeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure

In the event of trouble, remove the villain, let the other fish settle for a few days and then put him back. If he is the cause of the trouble, then it sounds very much like territoriality, not food-seeking: a territorial cichlid will rarely attack much smaller fish, especially non-cichlids, but will go for territory contestants, viz other cichlids and especially conspecifics.

E9U 426 The East Anglian. Periodical-domain: world affairs

They come out after dark, up to no good." But I am bound to agree with Kenneth Tynan who wrote this definition of a critic: "A man who knows the way but can't drive the car." The Guinness book of theatre quotes, which costs £7.99, is compiled by Michele Brown who readily agrees that actors and authors are every bit as cruel about actors as critics, viz Richard Burton talking about his wife Liz Taylor: "She has a double chin, her legs are too short and she has a pot belly."

EBV 2335 The Art Newspaper. Periodical-domain: world affairs

The number of drawings sold has increased from eight to ten, but the total value has decreased from £5,600 to £4,400. What is the value of the price index in year two with respect to year one? The usual (but wrong) method of calculation would simply compare the value of an average sale in the two years, viz £700 in year one and £440 in year two, and conclude that the index dropped.

ED4 3367 Good Housekeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure

When visiting new acquaintances, it is safer to take flowers or chocolates. When my friends visit me I never feel insulted by what they bring, nor if they come empty-handed. I'm just pleased to see them. It seems general practice to address a widow by her own Christian name and not her late husband's-viz Mrs Joan Smith, not Mrs Ronald Smith. I thought I'd read in Debreit's Etiquette that the latter form was still correct and that Mrs Joan Smith denoted a divorcee.

319. EE6 293 The Nottingham Graduate. Miscellanea-domain: leisure

Clare is one of several Nottingham graduates working at Caversham and possibly the only Nottingham graduate to have used here Serbo-Croat for the whole of the 20 years since graduating. In your own write... Treasures out of the "glory hole" "WHEN clearing-up a glory hole, viz the cupboard under the stairs, I came across an anonymous parcel.

EE9 565 The foundations of the welfare state. Book-domain: world affairs

The circular gave formal acknowledgement to a practice already employed by some authorities and which continued thereafter to be ignored by others. Chamberlain was explicit about his motives in a letter to Beatrice Webb: "It will remove the great danger, viz, that public sentiment should go wholly over to the unemployed and render impossible that state sternness to which you or I equally attach importance.

EVJ 971 Britannica's typesetters. Periodical-domain: world affairs
 The remaining employers, during the negotiations which followed the mass meeting of 31 August and the threat of a strike, were still sticking at a compromise formula, one which Amelia McLean, putting the women's case in The Vote, said she was prepared to accept, viz: a five-year ban on women entrants from 1 January 1911, and the establishment of a 50 per cent distribution of Monotype keyboards between men and women.

EVK 438 Nutshells: constitutional and administrative law. Book-domain: social science
 The Lords Spiritual.²⁶ Bishops of the Church of England, viz: Archbishops of Canterbury and York, the Bishops of London, Durham and Winchester and 21 other Bishops in order of seniority of appointment. They sit only so long as they continue to hold episcopal office. Disqualification for membership of House of Lords: (a) Aliens.

EWA 1520 Style in fiction. Book-domain: imaginative
 Passages [17] and [18] are respectively the unemended and emended versions of a short extract from Chapter 17 of Samuel Butler's *The Way of All Flesh* (changes of wording have been italicized) The extract concerns the birth of the book's hero, to the younger son of George Pontifex: [17] Now, therefore, that the good news [viz of the birth of Theobald Pontifex's son] came it was doubly welcome and caused as much delight at Elmhurst as in Woburn Square [it caused dismay], where the John Pontifexes were now living.

EWS 431 Falcon Mystere 20-Product History. Periodical-domain: leisure
 The squadron, which moved to Uplands in 1955, has over the years operated a variety of transport aircraft, viz North Stars, a C-5, Comet 1As, Yukons and Cosmopolitans. In 1967-8 the Yukons were being

phased out and an aircraft was needed to supplement the Cosmopolitans.

EWS 480 Falcon Mystere 20-product history. Periodical-domain: leisure
 Crew will normally comprise eight members, which will include two pilots, a Surveillance Systems Operator at a fully equipped console and two observers at search window stations. The special missions will fall into one of these main categories, viz search and rescue, pollution surveillance, law enforcement of U.S.A. territorial waters and the 200 miles fishery conversation zone. In addition each aircraft will be capable of carrying an oil pollution detection system.

FAV 1246 Public sector financial control&accounting. Book-domain: commerce
 The Commission came into being on 1 April 1983. It has two main responsibilities: 1 To secure continued integrity of local government, so that confidence in the institutions of government is not eroded by concerns over fraud and corruption. 2 To help authorities improve the returns on the £25 billion as required by Section 15, viz: An auditor shall by examination of the accounts and other wise satisfy himself... that the body whose accounts are being audited has proper arrangements for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in the use of its resources.

FBK 580 The Criminal Law Review. Book-domain: social science
 It is clear from their context and from the structure of criminal appeals that these judicial doubts as to the right of the appellant/respondent to raise non-certified questions before the House of Lords can only refer to the situation exemplified by Berry (No. 2)-viz, where grounds of appeal have been argued before but not determined by the Court of Appeal.

FCA 161 The weekly Law Report. Book-domain: social science

On the same page of the report Parker L.J. is quoted as saying: "Firstly, on the basis of the passage from Lord Bridge's speech in *Cocks v. Thanet District Council*, with which the other four members of the Judicial Committee agreed, it is clearly the case that, having made their decision on 24 June 1983 [viz that she was homeless, in priority need, and not intentionally homeless] the council came under a statutory duty to secure that accommodation became available.

K56 513 The Scotsman: Applied Science pages. Periodical-domain: applied science

This amazing £250,000 Japanese import is apparently so sophisticated that it is beyond its capability to frank more than one all-purpose hybrid place of origin on its postmark, viz "Cumbria" occupying the whole upper half of the disc, with "Dumfries & Galloway" (nearly three times the length) squeezed into the lower half. Thus the entire region of south-west Scotland is being relegated to the status of an English sub-county like Rutland or Westmorland.

K2D 1510 Belfast telegraph: leisure pages. Periodical-domain: leisure
Yorkgate 410-Lost Randy, Cammwood Mover, Jays Jewel, Coolroe Val, Flamingo Playboy, Lynsey Mark. Reserve Political Band. YOUR editorial "Home Truths" (BT 17/8/93) together with map B (BT page 2 20/5/93) point clearly to what is by far the best solution to our present predicament in this province: viz re-partition.

J7B 439 Restraint of trade and business secrets: law and practice. Book-domain: commerce

The court held that there were two relevant questions: is there in reality more than one restraint? If so, is the excision of the unenforceable part capable of being achieved without other addition or modification? It rejected the majority view in *Attwood* that, in employment cases, there existed a third consideration viz: it is for the court to decide in its

discretion whether or not to treat the two restraints as separate or not. It may have been this subjective judicial approach which led to the strange result in *Attwood*.

J7B 432 Restraint of trade and business secrets: law and practice. Book-domain: commerce

It was recently applied in *Commercial Plastics Ltd v Vincent* [1965] 1 QB 623 where it was said that as the provision was a single one and could not correctly be divisible into two or more parts severance could not take place. However, in *Ronbar Enterprises Ltd v Green Jenkins LJ*, having reviewed some earlier business sale cases in which severance had taken place viz *Goldson v Goldman* [1914] 2 Ch 603 and *British Reinforced Concrete Engineering Co Ltd v Schelff* [1921] 2 Ch 563, said that *Attwood v Lamont* could be distinguished because it concerned an employment contract.

J77 856 Commercial leases: tenants' amendments. Book-domain: commerce

The landlord should either obtain from the insurers a waiver of subrogation rights as regards the tenant, any undertenant and their mortgagees, or if that is not possible or practicable then the landlord should endeavour to note their interests on the policy. This is in order to try to avoid the effects of subrogation, viz where the insurer pays out money to the landlord under an insurance policy he will be subrogated to any rights the landlord may have against the tenant for breaches of covenant which may have given rise to the damage or destruction.

J6U 905 Country court practice handbook. Book-domain: social science
Such notice might also be given in an originating application under s 17 of the *Married Women's Property Act 1882*. The purposes of a pre-trial review are twofold, viz: (1) if there is no reasonable case in law to be tried (whether on the claim or defence), as far as is possible, to dispose

of the case; (2) if there is a case to be tried, to give directions to see that it is properly prepared.

J6U 797 Country court practice handbook Book-domain: social science
Consolidation of actions The criteria for an Order for Consolidation, which may be made on application or by the court, are the same as for joinder of parties, viz a common question of law or fact, the relief sought arises out of the same transaction, or, 'it is desirable' for 'some other reason'. An undertaking may be required from the applicant to be bound by the decision in a selected action, in the case, not usual in the county court, of a 'test action' (Ord 9). Split trial

J17 2891 A landing on the sun. Book-domain: imaginative
The thought is about how I must find someone to mend it before it gets any worse. I am slightly irritated to find myself thinking the same thought at the same point every evening, but also rather comforted. This, I believe now that I examine it, is because underneath this thought, like a warm underblanket, is a reassuring additional thought, viz: "Every evening, as I see this crack, I think the same thought." And underneath that thought (I think) is another one another underblanket, insulating the underblanket above and which, so far as I can make out through the layers on top of it, runs something like this.

HXS 79 The Flabiau in English. Book-domain: arts
He goes home, to be abused by his wife for not being at work, until he tells her of his heavenly gift. Eventually he allows his wife to make the first wish; she wishes for him: ("That you should be completely covered with penises") (vit, viz in fact has much more the tone of modern colloquial English prick(s): see further below). He retaliates by wishing: ("That you should have as many cunts as I have pricks on me"). he peasant then seeks to reverse these wishes by wishing: ("That she had no cunt and he had no prick")

HPP 1068 Spokes: unpublished letters. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: social science

I am particularly concerned about the impact on the tourist trade, because safe facilities for cycles outside urban areas are virtually non-existent, and I would like to mention two specific examples and ask you what action the Department might take, to improve the situation. The first is Edinburgh. I am concerned about the absence of provisions for cycle tourists to get out of the city in the most desired directions, viz westwards along the A8 (trunk road), and north-west along the A90 (also trunk road) to the Forth Bridge.

HPL 1067 Lothian Council unpublished documents. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: social science

The Rivers almond and Avon are the two major rivers in West Lothian which carry sewage effluent to the Forth Estuary. Of the two the Almond has the poorest water quality as it serves four sewage works directly viz Whitburn, Blackburn, East Calder and Newbridge and two works by tributaries, Fauldhouse via the Breich Water and Winchburgh via the Niddrie Burn.

HJ7 1120 Journal of the Law Society of Scotland. Periodical-domain: social science

It is understood that the formula used by the Building Societies 'Association when recommending their rate of interest is as follows, viz: "That the rate of interest on new offers of advance made on the security of private dwellings (occupied solely by the owner and members of his family) be 11 per cent per annum forthwith." Property Centres Group

FCB 86 The Weekly Law Reports 1992-volume 3. Periodical-domain: social science

However, if the tribunal had implied similar words into Sec 24 it is difficult to see why it found the reason for the dismissal was, in fact,

"some other substantial reason", viz, the conviction. Clearly, it is important from the practical point of view. If appearing on behalf of a respondent in such a case it would be essential to argue the alternative reasons when showing what was the reason for dismissal.

CEP 7934 Today-sport pages. Periodical-domain: leisure

After receiving a twelve-month suspended sentence he was dismissed. The industrial tribunal (Huntingdon) held the dismissal unfair, taking into account the shortness of the absence and his previously unblemished record. In addition, the offence was not in any way concerned with his employment and seems to have been fairly trivial, viz, causing damage to the windscreen-wipers on his girlfriend's car.

HJ0 10584 Rapid-ESRC grant abstracts. Miscellanea-domain: social science

15 March 1987 Primary Discipline: [11: Management and Business Studies] Despite the widespread provision of automatic teller machines (ATMs) which has now been in existence for a number of years, there is an apparent reluctance in the public to adopt this facility wholeheartedly. This reluctance is summed up in a phenomenon which is referred to as "the wall" viz the limitation of regular ATM usage to 33% or so of account holders. This study examines the reasons for the existence of the wall.

HHL 75 Bishop's Castle Railway Society Journal. Miscellanea-domain: commerce

Meanwhile, if other members have material on similar themes, the Social Secretary will be pleased to hear of them with a view to their incorporation in a future programme. MARCHES LINE ASSOCIATION (M.L.A.) The Association Newsletter deals with some items of interest to BCRS members, viz: -Craven Arms Station Lighting The lighting in the station approach has long been the subject of complain and the Association is actively pursuing the matter with BR.

Ludlow Station Mr F. Dunn has taken over the Rail Agency at Ludlow Station. Passengers can now buy tickets, make travel enquiries, have tea or coffee, buy a paper and have a friendly chat.

HD4 470 Personal letters. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: leisure

What a silly small world it sometimes is!! I had an interview for a job which is a four year term at the-the job is based there but is to run the exams set up of the four major surgical colleges viz London, Glasgow, Edinburgh and Dublin. Very much a hack and secretarial job.

HD2 314 Lothian Regional Council unpublished documents. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: social science

Yours faithfully Dear Sir THE WEIGHTS AND MEASURES (PACKAGED GOODS) REGULATIONS 1986 I hereby certify that I have examined and tested the following measure and found it to comply with the provisions of Schedule 4 Part II, Paragraph 4 of the above-mentioned Regulations, viz:-200 ml Glass Measure No. 385 The measure was tested using the Department's Local Standard Automatic Pipette No. 14282 and Pipette No. 16514 which are traceable to National Standards. Yours faithfully

HB4 49 General accidents miscellaneous documents. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: social sciences

It is most helpful with regard to such precognitions to state the full name, address and, if relevant, telephone number of the witness in question, together with intimation of the date on which the particular statement was obtained. Also to be obtained, in all cases, is written documentation viz: -1. Entry in Accident Book. 2. Serious Accident Report to H.S.E. 3. Internal Accident Report (if any). 4. Written statement submitted following on accident (if any).5. Safety Committee Minutes, if relevant.6.

H46 516 Bookseller. Periodical-domain: arts

Publishers grow thick skins against negative reviewing, but I remain puzzled at the volume of abuse directed at this particular book, by an author who has spent many years working on his subject, opening up new areas of research, and who has arguably contributed more in recent years (*viz* Orwell: The War Broadcasts , Orwell: The War Commentaries and The Larger Evils) to the study of Orwell's work than any other scholar.

G3T 450 Weaving's bankruptcy procedure. Book-domain: social science

Notice of the meeting must also be given to the official receiver and the chairman of the meeting must inform the official receiver of the resolutions passed at the meeting, *viz* to accept the resignation of the trustee, that a new trustee be appointed and that the resigning trustee be or not be given his release (r 6.127(3)). The trustee's resignation is effective from the date the notice of it is filed by the official receiver at court (r 6.127(7)).

G3K 739 Instrument flying. Book-domain: applied science

Time on outbound leg. Therefore, convert the time given on the chart to a Distance: Base this distance on 150 kt. Most of the charts are drawn at this speed, *viz* Aerad and Jeppesen.

G3F 1259 Elements of marketing. Book-domain: commerce

The product should be: soft enough not to irritate or harm. Two other characteristics which mostly attracted indirect mention but which, nevertheless, were important included: purity, in the sense of not containing other substances; dependability in the sense that the product can always be relied upon to meet the mothers 'standard (*viz* softness, non-irritant, pure). Mothers were generally confident enough about the product not to show much spontaneous concern, but these characteristics were of significance to them.

(OR) MORE PRECISELY

A1A 727 Exploding English. Book-domain: arts

Unlike Leave's, Winter's deconstruction of tradition proved too extreme to have even a temporary lodgement in the academy, though his readings of sixteenth-century poetry have had some influence, and a theorist such as Gerald Graff acknowledges a debt to Winters, who was his teacher. It remains to show why genuine criticism is not at home in the academy; or, **more precisely**, why it is irreconcilable with pedagogic practice. Criticism, I take it, is an activity that occurs between equals, whatever its object. The critic is an unusually acute and well-informed reader, but there should be equality of esteem between the critic and other readers. What he or she has to say is always open to comment, questioning, refutation.

A5X 354 Independent electronic edition of 1989-10-14 travel pages.

Periodical-domain: leisure

From The Good Skiing Guide reports I estimate that for those with a taste for Cabernet-Sauvignon, a budget of \$30 a day would not be extravagant, adding another \$400. Lift pass \$200. Total, excluding tuition and equipment, \$1,600. For that I could have three separate weeks in Alpine chalets. So, where does this leave us or, **more precisely**, me? Back where I started, with concerns about snow. The Rockies are touted as having guaranteed snow. In fact, of course, they offer no such thing: there have been lean years there, and even lean patches last winter. So what we are talking about is probabilities, and unquantified ones at that.

AAF 459 The Guardian electronic edition of 1989-12-21 Foreign news pages. Periodical-domain: world affairs

YOU MAY recall the departure of Andrew Ellis, known among jobbing politicians as a sort of one-man by-election-winning machine, from his

top job with the Liberal Democrats (as they have since become). His post as chief executive more or less folded up under him in a wholesale shake-up of staff. Now he pops up at Rupert Murdoch's Sky TV, as a pundit. Or, **more precisely**, as a consultant (election coverage a speciality):'

ABS 1823 Esquire. Periodical-domain: arts

At the moment when she suddenly needed to say something important to her boy and had no words for it, that gesture came to life and said on her behalf what she herself was unable to say. I don't know how long she kept using it (**or more precisely**, how long it kept using her), but surely up to the day when she noticed her sister, younger by eight years, tossing up her arm while saying good-bye to a girlfriend.

AE7 530 The problems of biology. Book-domain: natural sciences

This has not led us to adopt the nominalist alternative. Instead, we hold that species are real things, but that they do not have essences. This position, which would have seemed contradictory to both Buffon and Linnaeus, requires some explanation. A species is a population of interbreeding individuals; **more precisely**, because we do not want to regard the blue tits on the Isle of Wight as belonging to a different species to those on the mainland, a species is a group of actually or potentially interbreeding populations.

AE7 1687 The problems of biology. Book-domain: natural sciences

Today we are beginning to acquire an abstract knowledge of development, in terms of gradients and prepatterns and gene-switching. But although we may be confident that a gradient exists, and influences subsequent development, we usually have no idea what it is a gradient of, and rather little idea of how genes are actually switched on and off. **More precisely**, lots of people have ideas, but they do not all agree.

ANY 548 Nice work. Book-domain: imaginative

The second, Samuel Richardson, was a printer. The novel was the first mass-produced cultural artefact.(At this point Robyn, with elbows tucked into her sides, would spread her hands outwards from the wrist, as if to imply that there is no need to say more. But of course she always has much more to say.) According to Robyn (or, **more precisely**, according to the writers who have influenced her thinking on these matters), there is no such thing as the 'self on which capitalism and the classic novel are founded - **that is to say**, a finite, unique soul or essence that constitutes a person's identity; there is only a subject position in an infinite web of discourses - the discourses of power, sex, family, science, religion, poetry,

ARD 174 Screen. Periodical-domain: arts

As a starting point for thinking about the novelistic of television, I would propose a chronotope which, while retaining the centrality of character, frees space and time to a much greater extent from the strict service of narrative logic. **More precisely**, I would propose a chronotope, definitive for the development of a specific televisual novelistic, for which the foundational element is an interruptable time.

BOY 1184 The Dickens index. Book-domain: arts

Plato, Zeno, Epicurus, Pythagoras, 'all founders of clubs', **or more precisely**, schools of philosophy. PP 15.Plautus (c 254-184 BC),Roman comic dramatist. DS 11.plays.

B15 848 Environmental scanning and business strategy. Book-domain: applied science

Meanwhile - and here is a term that is proving to be particularly confusing - we have had a veritable flurry of activity in the area, **or more precisely** areas, designated as 'information management'. Although there is certainly no clear-cut distinction, there seem to have been in recent years two rather separate major usages of this term (and

related terms such as 'chief information officer', 'information system', 'information centre', 'end user', and so on) in the literature.

BIT 615 Images of youth. Book-domain: social science

This is an enormous area to consider briefly because it touches on the central issue of what is sometimes called 'the second industrial revolution' and, **more precisely**, on the relationship between labour and technological change. Some consideration, however, is essential in order to clarify the aspirations of reformers.

B7C 1469 New Scientist. Periodical-domain: applied science

Geometry comes up to date

Robert Dixon

That oldest of disciplines has been neglected by 20th-century educationalists. Modern geometry finds expression in computer graphics. They open up obscure geometric ideas, such as the transformation called inversion. GEOMETRY is the branch of mathematics, **or more precisely** the root, that derives from spatial intuition and insists upon visual expression of its theory. For Euclid, the founding father of geometry in the 3rd century BC, the drawing instruments were compass and templates. To construct a right angle, or a regular pentagon with these tools, you were given a series of instructions: do this, followed by this, followed by this...

BNV 874 Pilot. Periodical-domain: leisure

Landing configuration and associated speed (80 kt) must be stabilized at 500 ft height at the latest. Right after that you'll learn that once the bird is stabilised in the dive it's all too easy to be a bit late recovering and end up pulling g. Again, that's a neat example of what flying the TBM 700 is all about: speed control, **or more precisely**, controlling the airspeed at which events happen. Nothing new there, may say the old hands and professionals, it's just a matter of staying ahead of the aeroplane. Yes, sir, but this is an aircraft aimed at people more

accustomed to Bonanzas, Mooneys and Trinidads, people who fly for pleasure as well as business. Ground training focuses on how to use the avionics.

C8V 105 Doubt. Book-domain: belief and thought

The 'Square One Principle' Jesus challenged the Jews of his day with a searching question: 'How can you have faith so long as you receive honour from one another, and care nothing for the honour that comes from him who alone is God?' Ostensibly their faith was solely in God, but that faith was only nominal. In reality their faith was in each other. **More precisely**, their nominal faith in God was supported and accredited by a closed system of mutual human honouring which made the need for any honour from God superfluous. We should ask similar questions of ourselves, particularly those of us who are western Christians. What sort of faith do we have?

C8V 1576 Doubt. Book-domain: belief and thought

But as to why he knew God and obeyed him at all, his faith was not the least blind. Quite the contrary. It is precisely because he knew who God was that he knew he could trust God in the dark. **More precisely** still, it was because he was not in the dark about God that he could walk in the dark about Isaac.

C90 1284 Empire and the English character. Book-domain: world affairs

The political initiative had also passed to the Colonial Office by the end of the war, though here again the process had begun shortly before the war, with the commissioning by the Royal Institute of International Affairs, **or more precisely**, its founder and moving spirit, Lionel Curtis, of a comprehensive survey of Africa. This was conceived as potentially the Durham report of Africa, the authoritative statement of the continent's past history, present problems, and possible future lines of political and economic evolution.

CA4 787 Linear and nonlinear programming. Book-domain: natural sciences

The decision-maker tries to maximise the objective up to the goal value but is not interested in values exceeding the goal. For example, in the manufacturing problem described in Section 9.1, if a goal of 25 is specified for revenue, the manufacturer would seek to maximise revenue if it is below 25 but is not concerned with its value once it exceeds 25. **More precisely**, we can say that the manufacturer wishes to maximise the minimum of revenue and goal: The extremely dichotomous nature of this criterion, with its abrupt switch from maximising the objective to complete disinterest, is open to objection, but such criteria have found favour with some modellers.

CAK 587 New Statesman and Society. Periodical-domain: world affairs
Articles of this genre are expected to have a happy ending. With awareness of what is wrong, the corrective forces of democracy are set in motion. And perhaps they would be now were they in a full democracy - one that embraced the interests and votes of all the citizens. Those now outside the contented majority would rally, or, **more precisely**, could be rallied, to their own interest and therewith to the larger and safer public interest.

CAK 597 New Statesman and Society. Periodical-domain: world affairs
In a perverse way, the same is now true of modern capitalism. Although intervention by the state on a wide and varied front once saved capitalism, there is now a resistance to the state action that is necessary to ensure an economically successful and socially tranquil future. The dialectic of the modern capitalist, **or more precisely** the modern mixed, economy, all but exclusively involves the role of government. In the dialectic this is extensively ideological; in everyday manifestation it is highly pragmatic. And, to repeat, no subtlety conceals the needed attitude and action. But on nothing has the culture of contentment been so successful as in shaping the accepted attitude toward the state.

CDV 1437 The road to Middle Earth. Book-domain: arts
Romance, as Professor Kermode said (see p. 132 above), is a stripped-down form which enables one to concentrate. What Tolkien wanted to concentrate on, obviously, was death: **more precisely** perhaps on why people love this world and want so strongly to stay in it when it is an inescapable part of their nature 'to die and go we know not where'. His imagination centred again on a kind of calque, a diagrammatic reversal. Since we die, he invented a race which did not.

CEU 221 Wings. Book-domain: imaginative
And this had been the way things were for as far back as the frogs could remember. Except that on this day, while it hunted for flies, one frog lost its way and crawled around the side of one of the outermost petals, or possibly leaves, and saw something it had never seen before. It saw the universe. **More precisely**, it saw the branch stretching away into the mists. And several yards away, glistening with droplets of moisture in a solitary shaft of sunlight, was another flower. The frog sat and stared. 'Hngh! Hngh! Hngh!' Gurder leaned against the wall and panted like a hot dog on a sunny day.

CGF 859 Feminism and linguistic theory. Book-domain: arts
Feminists should question, for instance, the way Western thought has downgraded the body relative to the mind, the emotions relative to reason. (We will look at this point again in Chapter 8.) What has any of this to do with language, **more precisely** with the 'grammar' of this chapter's title? On a fairly simple level, it is obvious that the masculine/feminine opposition pervades the English language and its conceptual metaphorical structure. The experiment with word pairs demonstrates that clearly enough.

CJ3 1772 The survival factor. Book-domain: applied sciences

The eagle still had its talons in the goat, and the goat had its horns embedded in the eagle. While bears, wolves and the like undoubtedly eat mountain goats, they probably do so through scavenging for carcasses rather than through direct predation. The most serious enemy of the mountain goat is snow, **more precisely** avalanches. In late winter, avalanches are common and many goats are swept away. Predators like bears, coyotes and Lynx regularly patrol the bottom of avalanches looking for carcasses. Snow kills goats in other ways too. Foraging for food in the depths of winter often means travelling through deep snow, and this takes its toll of the goat population.

CKP 970 Growing old in the twentieth century. Book-domain: social sciences

Over three-quarters of those who were retired when they were interviewed had done so before pension age. Just over half of those who retired prematurely did so at the same time as their redundancy. The rest took early retirement at different points over the following three years. There were four main characteristics which distinguished the early retired from other older people. First, **age**, **or more precisely** proximity to the state-pension age, had an important bearing on early retirement. This relationship was also found in the national study of retirement and early retirement, conducted in 1977 (Parker 1980: 13).

CLN 950 The culture of English anti-slavery 1780-1860. Book-domain: social science

A number of the earliest abolitionists, however, experienced a difficult and anxious passage before they recognised the particular role providentially required of them. In the case of the elder James Stephen's commitment to antislavery, it came after the experience of working in the West Indies as a lawyer, but **more precisely**, that experience helped direct into antislavery the expression of his gratitude 'for the infinite mercy of God' in extricating him from the depths of sin brought on by

sexual passion and setting him on the path of prosperity and happiness. His language, in the remarkable autobiography about his young manhood written for his grandchildren, plays on the language of enslavement and emancipation.

CLS 739 Film and the working class. Book-domain: arts

The truth was that Cagney was marvellously photogenic and the combination of his looks and his relentless energy made him come alive in his every role. The stunning realism that he offered was not that of any old son of an Irish barman from New York but **more precisely** his own realism, in part natural and in part perfected by the very conscious application of technique. Once again the movies were proving that they had their own version of what was real. What the cameras were now discovering and what audiences were now reacting to was Cagney's own reality, a unique one-off reality or presence, albeit of the kind one hopes to run into whenever entering a New York bar.

CM2 275 Minds, machines and evolution. Book-domain: belief and thought

Second, the definition of an ESS contains a criterion for the stability of the equilibrium which is missing from the definition of Nash equilibrium. Since ESS's arise from a dynamics, there is no assumption of rationality any more than there is in the case of kin selection. However, some games (or, **more precisely**, some strategies) do require intelligence to play. I now describe three games - the repeated prisoner's dilemma, the queuing game, and the social contract game - which are played both by men and animals, but in which the strategies available to men are more extensive than those available to animals. An example of the prisoner's dilemma game is as follows:

CM6 1059 Europe 1880-1945. Book-domain: world affairs

This was a part of the general movement of progressive societies towards replacing non-rational by reasoned arrangements, a movement

which goes beyond politics. The family, for example, was at the same time tending to lose some of its authority and responsibilities. By the end of the nineteenth century, the political side of this process was far advanced. **More precisely**, it meant that discussion about the organization and use of state power turned more on means and less on ends. This did not mean there were not still big divergences of belief about ends. Views held widely, but by no means universally, about monarchy, nationalism and democracy were questioned because of this, just as much as because of their results.

CMK 898 Good retirement guide 1993. Book-domain: social science
Personal pensions are described a couple of pages further along, so if you are interested in taking advantage of this option you should read the section carefully. Here, we explain the various possibilities if you wish to join a scheme run by your new employer. Early leavers now have the right to move their pension - **or more precisely**, its transfer value - to a new employer's scheme willing to accept it. The transfer value is the cash value of your current pension rights. Calculating this, however, is fraught with difficulties and early leavers are usually at a disadvantage compared with those who remain in the scheme.

CNA 150 British Medical Journal. Periodical-domain: natural sciences
Glue ear, **or more precisely** otitis media with effusion, is the major cause of hearing problems in children. How should it be managed? Currently, about one child in 200 in England is treated surgically for the condition each year, making it the commonest reason for elective surgery in children. On the basis of a literature review the most recent Effective Health Care bulletin questions such frequent intervention.

CP8 99 Computergram international. Periodical-domain: applied sciences
Open VMS versions will start shipping in July. Furthermore, Software AG intends to implement Adabas and Natural for OSF/1 and Microsoft

Corp's Windows NT on the Alpha. Again, no time-scale was available. Another major cause of the Darmstadt, Germany-based company's success, Graham believes, is that it is now privately-owned again - **or more precisely**, its shares are held in a trust, set up by the founders. For a spell, its US subsidiary was publicly traded on NASDAQ, but the company bought the shares back in again. The trust consists of about 15 'guardians', made up of management and staff.

CRB 120 The Economist. Periodical-domain: commerce
The politics of the Middle East, **in other words**, is not like the politics of other places. The region's natural inclination, like that of a bicycle, is to be unstable. And the only way to prevent it from collapsing is to keep moving forward. At this point in this kind of argument it is customary to wonder what the West - **more precisely**, the United States - has done wrong in the Middle East, and how it could bring improvements faster. Think again: by and large, America has made remarkably few mistakes in the region since the end of the Gulf war.

CRB 3233 The Economist. Periodical-domain: commerce
In this multi-channelled world, Mr Myhrvold argues, the challenge will be not just to supply information but to make it easy for the user to pick out the specific bits he wants. You might have the world's biggest electronic haystack, but it will still be difficult to find the needle'. That is where software skills come in. **More precisely**, it is where Microsoft hopes a whole new range of Windows software comes in.

CTY 733 White mythologies: writing history and the West. Book-domain: world affairs
History is a discontinuous set composed of domains of history, each of which is defined by a characteristic frequency and by a differential coding of before and after. It is no more possible to pass between the dates which compose the different domains than it is to do so between natural and irrational numbers. **Or more precisely**: the dates

appropriate to each class are irrational to all those of other classes. (259 - 60) So-called historical continuity is therefore often fraudulently constructed out of discontinuous sets which each have different temporalities. History can neither be total, nor a simple series of facts, nor a continuity.

EA3 827 Literacy in theory and practice. Book-domain: social science
It would certainly be unsafe to generalise from a quality that is so difficult to establish, that English therefore allows its users to approximate to neutral, objective description! **More precisely**, in linguistic terms, it has been suggested that it is not as straightforward as Lyons implies to attribute the possibility of 'neutrality' to English grammar; some aspects, such as pronoun usage, are more context-dependent than he allows.

EBS 2467 The Art Newspaper. Periodical-domain: arts
It's on until 18 April. 'Behind Bars' at the new, huge, non-profit Threadwaxing Space on Broadway is not as you might suspect a show of political art about prisoners' rights or even about the exotic lives of cocktail waitresses but rather about the stripe in art. **More precisely**, about the-stripe-repeated in art. Curated by Meg O'Rourke and continuing until 28 April the show includes work by, among others, Dennis Ashbaugh, Jacqueline Humphries, Sean Scully, Suzan Etkin, Stephen Westfall, Ricardo d'Oliveira, Wolfgang Staehle and Karim Sander.

EBU 2656 The Art Newspaper. Periodical-domain: arts
In the heart of the gallery quarter, Galerie Pels-Leusden, housed in the Villa Grisebach and the Käthe Kollwitz Museum are near neighbours. The Galerie Pels-Leusden marks the 125th anniversary of the birth of Käthe Kollwitz with a wide-ranging exhibition of her graphic works, drawings and a selection of sculptures. At the same time, the exhibition

renews genuine links between the art trade and the artist or, **more precisely**, her family.

EBX 451 The Art Newspaper. Periodical-domain: arts
The emperor's new clothes: Milan's new costume museum without garments MILAN. Fifteen years ago the exhibition 'Towards a museum of fashion in Milan' looked forward to the creation of an institution that is finally about to happen, albeit in a different form, and with radically different contents to that originally envisaged. **More precisely**, this will be a museum with no contents at all: the first museum of costume entirely on computer.

EC3 1043 Applied economies in banking and finance. Book-domain: commerce
This is not to say that other injections and leakages are less significant, only that they are less easy for governments to control.

Fiscal policy
Since the government has responsibility - either directly or indirectly - for the management of the economy, it is especially interested in the level of expenditure generated by the circular flow process. **More precisely**, the government has certain economic objectives that it would wish to achieve, and all are affected in some way by national income levels. The reader is referred to Chapter 12 for a more thorough discussion of the compatibility of these economic objectives.

ED6 2010 Gramophone. Periodical-domain: arts
Whatever you decide, bearing in mind what I have written above, you should not be disappointed. Both of these issues include an informative booklet essay. C.H. MOZART. EARLY STRING QUARTETS These 13 quartets were composed between 1770 and 1773, or **more precisely** in 1770 in the case of the G major Quartet which is the earliest, and between 1772-3 for the others. Mozart, then between 14 and 17, was still very much under his father's thumb and it was to be another eight

years before he broke free from Salzburg, settled in Vienna and married Constanze Weber.

EDU 1085 Marxism today. Periodical-domain: world affairs

The call of ethnicity or language provides no guidance to the future at all. It is merely a protest against the status quo or, **more precisely**, against 'the others' who threaten the ethnically defined group. For unlike fundamentalism which, draws its strength from the claim to universal truth, theoretically applicable to all, nationalism by definition excludes from its purview all who do not belong to its own 'nation', ie, the vast majority of the human race.

EF4 223 The third way: the promise of independent democracy. Book-domain: commerce

Cole observes that the rate of growth in the number of co-operative societies was fastest in 1829 and 1830, when the struggle for Reform was beginning, and declined thereafter; but dismisses as unsupported by evidence the view that Reform drew popular support away from Co-operation. This surely puts the burden of proof the wrong way round: those most actively engaged in promoting Co-operation or, **more precisely**, Owenism, were involved in the fight for Reform. The need would be to show, against reasonable expectation, that the second did not divert attention from the first. And the fact remains that the People's Charter not Co-operation, not Owenism, became after 1832 the great cause. After 1832, after Reform, in Britain revolution was done for.

EF4 587 The third way: the promise of independent democracy. Book-domain: commerce

It was as millenarian because there was no tension in the mainspring of the mechanism, in the idea of the alienation of labour. Let us look at the idea. In present everyday usage the phrase could be understood to mean quite simply that capital, **or more precisely**, the people disposing of it, treats labour, **or more precisely**, the people employed, so badly as to

create resentment. The word in Marx's German text is die Entfremdung. A literal translation would be estrangement.

EF4 613 The third way: the promise of independent democracy. Book-domain: commerce

If so, the point for attention is not alienation at all. It is too much work: or, **more precisely**, too much time spent by too many people on work of a kind which contributes insufficiently to their fulfilment and which may tend to diminish their capacity for fulfilling themselves, too much soul-destroying toil or boredom.

EFW 883 The Siege of Krishnapur. Book-domain: imaginative
'Certainly,' said Dr Dunstaple. His face was flushed, his eyes glinting with excitement; he seemed to be having difficulty breathing, too, and he spoke so rapidly that he slurred his words. 'But first, ladies and gentlemen, you should know that Dr McNab holds the discredited belief that you catch cholera by drinking...**more precisely**, that in cholera the morbid matter is taken into the alimentary canal causing diarrhoea, that the poison is at the same time reproduced in the intestines and passes out with the discharges, and that by these so-called 'rice-water' discharges becoming mingled with the drinking water of others the disease is communicated from one person to another continually multiplying itself as it goes.

EUU 1620 The City share pushers. Book-domain: commerce

If he sounded logical and authoritative enough, the dealer would usually have his way. To achieve this was a gift, and had little to do with how much he really knew. It is just as easy to sound authoritative if you know a little than if you know a lot. It is a question of personality, **or more precisely** how this is projected in the voice down the telephone wires. If for instance the market was temporarily down, following a sharp rise, a dealer would address the client with whichever of the following pitches both suited his sales needs and clicked with the

client's mood and personality: (1) Buy another stock using fresh capital.' The market is down in the dumps.

EVX 860 Mind and brain. Book-domain: belief and thought

It is accepted that some conception of a set of conditions for an effect is used, but it is denied that this is the conception of a causal circumstance. That, as may be said in tones suitable to the objection, is the conception of something so complete as to necessitate by itself its effect. **More precisely**, it is the conception of something which has the nature assigned to it above all by the independent nomic conditional (5).

EVX 1524 Mind and brain. Book-domain: belief and thought

How, in general, are physical events, facts and so on to be understood? According to a long and dominant tradition, the physical is bound up with the spatial. To follow a recent and acute account in this tradition, the physical is what is spatial and also has certain further properties. (Quinton, 1973, pp. 46-53) **More precisely**, with respect to the spatiality, since we wish to exclude points, lines, and two-dimensional surfaces, we shall take it that the physical occupies a continuous three-dimensional region of space that it is voluminous or geometrically solid.

F9C 59 The adultery department. Book-domain: imaginative

But he is in restless mood and his wandering eye, seeking distraction, is caught by the sight of an attractive woman walking beside the park lake. She has shoulder-length blonde hair and wears an expensive-looking leather coat. Even at this distance, and despite the coat, William can tell that she is quite slim. William likes thin women. Or, **more precisely**, and he likes people to be precise, and would be quite anxious not to be misunderstood, he is not overly fond of fat women. He does not like spare flesh. Big breasts hold no attraction for him. His preferred

mate would be a feminine version of himself, but William tries not to admit this, even to himself. Indeed, he resists it.

FAC 687 Lexical semantics. Book-domain: social science

They are usually described as idioms. A traditional definition of idiom runs roughly as follows: an idiom is an expression whose meaning cannot be inferred from the meanings of its parts. Although at first sight straightforward, there is a curious element of circularity in this definition. Does it indicate that the meaning of an idiom cannot be inferred from (or, **more precisely**, cannot be accounted for as a compositional function of) the meanings the parts carry IN THAT EXPRESSION? Clearly not - so it must be a matter of their meanings in other expressions.

FAK 1319 Material culture and mass consumption. Book-domain: social science

A typical contemporary assumption is spelled out by Gortz, who claims that 'working-class demands have turned into consumerist mass demands. An atomised serialised mass of proletarians demand to be given by society, **or more precisely** the state, what they are unable to take or produce' (1982: 240). Such a position does not lend itself to anthropological analysis, since one of the objectives of the discipline is to learn something of value from the practices of the people one is studying.

FAV 314 Public sector financial control and accounting. Book-domain: commerce

However, as Anthony and Young (1984, p. 4) argue, 'the basic control concepts are the same in both profit-orientated and nonprofit organizations, but because of the special characteristics of nonprofit organizations, the application of these concepts differs in some important respects'. The control structure of any organization consists, by and large, of a definition of the relationships between controllability

and responsibility, **or more precisely** a specification of which managers are responsible for which resources in the organization.

FB2 1596 Rural Britain: a social geography. Book-domain: world affairs

Another stresses the fact that minimum population thresholds are necessary to maintain particular services and that, therefore, the most effective way of reducing or halting rural service decline is to concentrate growth and development in a limited number of locations (Green 1971). However, as discussed in Chapter 8, it can be difficult to establish the precise levels of these thresholds in practice. Cost, **or more precisely** the economies of scale in service and housing provision, is another major argument proposed in favour of a selected settlement policy. Thorburn (1971) considered that important economies of scale could be achieved in the provision of public utilities, transport, education and retailing.

FB3 305 Studying popular music. Book-domain: arts

Elvis's importance, then, lies not so much in the mix of elements (blues/country/Tin Pan Alley) which he helped to bring into being in rock 'n' roll, but in what he did with it. He transformed them - articulated them - into particular patterns. The only workable categorization of Elvis's music, as we have seen, is not by historical period but by song-type - **or more precisely**, by apparently self-contradictory assemblages of musical elements as they are mediated by the differential demands of varied songs at various moments.

FB3 883 Studying popular music. Book-domain: arts

Adorno's mistake here seems to rest on two aspects of his position, which in fact turn out to provide the two central explanations for the flaws in his argument. The first is his use of the 'immanent method'; the second is his own historical location, **or more precisely** what we can call his ontologization of history. These need to be grasped if we are to

understand him - and so to make use of him, rather than simply dismissing him as an embittered elitist pessimist.

FB4 7 The history of Siberia. Book-domain: world affairs

(A glance at the index of just about any reputable general text-book of modern Russian history will confirm this.) One of the direct results of this westwards orientation (or, **more precisely**, "occidentalation") has been the relative neglect by historians of the huge, seemingly limitless tracts of territory stretching eastwards beyond the Urals towards the Pacific coast, and encompassing on its north-south axis the frozen wastes of the Polar North and the deserts and mountains on the edges of Central Asia, Mongolia and China.

FB3 1718 What is this thing called science? Book-domain: natural sciences

Whilst Lakatos did propose what was intended to be a universal criterion of rationality or scientificity, he did not regard this criterion as a consequence of logic alone, or somehow God-given. He regarded it as a testable conjecture. The adequacy of the conjecture is to be tested by confronting it with the history of science, or, **more precisely**, given the historical work done by Lakatos and his followers, by confronting it with the history of physics..

FCD 46 The Weekly Law Reports 1992 volume 3. Periodical-domain: social sciences

Patrick Eccles Q.C. for the respondent. 15 April. MUMMERY J. read the following judgment. This application poses a difficult question of general importance on the scope of the provisions in the Insolvency Act 1986 concerned with administrative receivers. Do those provisions apply in the case of a foreign company? **More precisely**, do they apply to a receiver of the whole, or substantially the whole, of the property of a foreign company appointed by or on behalf of the holders of

debentures of the company secured by a charge which, as created, was a floating charge?

FEF 827 Lectures on electromagnetic theory. Book-domain: applied science

Noting that &formula; we get for the components of the magnetic field &formula;. Can you remember seeing these self-same components somewhere before? Well, the constants are different but apart from that eqn (2.33), the formula for the electric field of an electric dipole, looks the same. On the basis of this analogy we may call a ring current a magnetic dipole, **or more precisely** we should say that sufficiently far away from a ring current the magnetic field appears as if it was created by two closely spaced magnetic charges (which of course do not exist).

FEW 293 Temporary employment. Book-domain: commerce

Again, we would expect its level of use to be inversely related to the level of union organisation in an establishment. Finally, we sought the existence of any relationships between labour force structure and the use of temporary workers. The literature on both temporary working and labour-hoarding suggests that the higher the skill level, **or more precisely** the specific skill level, of his labour force, the more likely an employer is to seek to maintain continuity of employment and so protect the training investments he has made.

FEW 322 Temporary employment. Book-domain: commerce

A number of indicators suggested that where activity levels were declining temporary workers were less likely to be used. Thus, establishments with declining output, falling overtime and declining employment levels were less likely to use temporary workers or, **more precisely**, were less likely to be using fixed-term contract workers. Indeed, use of agency workers seemed totally unaffected by performance measured according to the above mentioned indicators.

FRA 12 Learning the law. Book-domain: social science

Hence the words of an Act carry a sort of disembodied or dehumanised meaning: not necessarily the meaning intended by any actual person in particular, but the meaning that is conventionally attached to such words. The point must not be pressed too far, since the statute obviously has a broad purpose (or, to speak **more precisely**, those who collaborated in framing and passing the statute had a broad purpose) which is expressed in the words.

FRA 72 Learning the law. Book-domain: social science

THE LITERAL RULE

Granted that words have a certain elasticity of meaning, the general rule remains that the judges regard themselves as bound by the words of a statute when these words clearly govern the situation before the court. The words must be applied with nothing added and nothing taken away. **More precisely**, the general principle is that the court can neither extend the statute to a case not within its terms though perhaps within its purpose (the casus omissus) nor curtail it by leaving out a case that the statute literally includes, though it should not have. (There is no accepted name for the latter, but it may be called the casus male inclusus).

FTV 154 The concept of reality. Book-domain: belief and thought.

The relevant argument might be presented as follows. To claim that things of a certain sort exist, it might be said, is no different, truth-functionally at least, from claiming that a certain disjunction of singular propositions about entities of which the world happens to consist is true. Thus given that the world is made up of a, l, c... n objects, 'Men exist', **or more precisely** 'For some x, x is a man', is coextensive with 'Either a is a man or l is a man or c is a man or... n is a man'. Every affirmative existential proposition can thus, theoretically, be replaced by a disjunction of positive singular propositions.

FYT 960 After Gorbachev. Book-domain: world affairs

His acceptance speech, in March 1985, promised that the strategy worked out by the 26th Party Congress-over which Brezhnev had presided-and at subsequent meetings of the Central Committee would remain unchanged: a policy of the "acceleration of the country's socioeconomic development [and] the perfection of all aspects of the life of the society". **More precisely**, the strategy meant the transformation of the material-technical basis of production, the improvement of social relations particularly in economic matters, and the development of "man himself" in both a material and a spiritual sense.

FYT 1181 After Gorbachev. Book-domain: world affairs

Historical truth was sometimes bitter. It was known, for instance, that "many thousands" of party and non-party members had been subjected to mass repression during the Stalin period; this was the truth of the matter, and there was no escaping it. Then there was the role of Stalin. Rather than quoting Churchill (**or more precisely**, it appeared, the British Trotskyist Isaac Deutscher) Pravda reminded its readers of Lenin's assessment of Stalin, and of the verdict of the party congresses of 1956 and 1961.

FYX 828 Black holes and baby universes. Book-domain: applied sciences

The present experimental lower limit on the lifetime is about 10³⁰ years, and it should be possible to improve this. Another observable prediction concerns the ratio of baryons to photons in the universe. The laws of physics seem to be the same for particles and antiparticles. **More precisely**, they are the same if particles are replaced by antiparticles, right-handed is replaced by left-handed, and the velocities of all particles are reversed. This is known as the CPT theorem, and it is a consequence of basic assumptions that should hold in any reasonable theory.

G28 835 Credit Management. Periodical-domain: commerce

Reproduced by permission of the Bank of England from Quarterly Bulletin November 1991. Credit control the hard way Part Two of Gordon Archer's everyday story of credit folk Jolly Roger (JR) is the newly-appointed financial director of a medium sized engineering company which is having trouble with its credit control, **or more precisely** its lack of it, and JR is attempting to introduce new controls.

GUH 593 The concise Oxford history of music. Book-domain: arts

And the final tribute was paid them by the Ferrarese organist Luzzasco Luzzaschi (1545? -1607), a pupil of Rore, in his Madrigali... per cantare et sonare a uno, e doi, e tre soprani (Rome, 1601) in which the lower parts of the madrigal were played on a harpsichord. **More precisely**: all four polyphonic parts were played, and the highest part or parts doubled, with elaborate coloratura of the type suggested by Bassano (see p. 248) and others, by the voice or voices. Perhaps the duets were those sung by one of the giovani Dame and her sister, accompanied by the composer at the gravicembalo, when the future Emperor Rudolf II passed through Brescello in 1571.

H0K 545 Alien wisdom: the limits of Hellenization. Book-domain: world affairs

The historian does not extend his sympathy to the leaders. Eunus' met such an end as befitted his knavery' (34.23). Nor does he condone the lawlessness (**or more precisely**, 'the frantic and lawless conduct') of the other rebels (36.11). He well sees that the poor among the free men joined the slaves against the rich, so that the whole social structure was in danger (36.1 1). Plunder and lawlessness from the free-born slowly emerge as the greater menace.

HOK 659 Alien wisdom: the limits of Hellenization. Book-domain: world affairs

Eutrop. 3.5; Oros. 4.13.6). Polybius gives his reasons for reporting the figures: 'so that it may appear from actual facts what a great power it was that Hannibal ventured to attack, and how mighty was that empire boldly confronting which he came so near his purpose as to bring great disasters on Rome' (2.24.1). **More precisely** he points out that while the total number of Romans and allies able to bear arms was more than seven hundred thousand foot and seventy thousand horse, Hannibal invaded Italy with an army of less than twenty thousand men' (2.24.16-17). It is evident that the way in which Polybius presents his figures leads to absurdities.

HOK 1686 Alien wisdom: the limits of Hellenization. Book-domain: world affairs

In his only attempt at an authentic prophecy the author of Daniel-or at least of its second half-predicted that Antiochus IV would go to his death in a new war against Egypt-and **more precisely** between the seas and the beauteous holy mountain' (II.45), that is, between the Mediterranean and Jerusalem. That did not happen. As a prophet Daniel had his limitations-Though he knew about the intervention of Rome in 168 B.C. which saved Egypt from conquest by Syria, he prophesied another war between Egypt and Syria, as if the Romans would not again have intervened.

H78 1399 A brief history of time. Book-domain: natural sciences

On the other hand, when one looks at 'real' time, there's a very big difference between the forward and backward directions, as we all know. Where does this difference between the past and the future come from? Why do we remember the past but not the future? The laws of science do not distinguish between the past and the future. **More precisely**, as explained earlier, the laws of science are unchanged under the combination of operations (or symmetries) known as C, P, and T. (C

means changing particles for antiparticles. P means taking the mirror image, so left and right are interchanged. And T means reversing the direction of motion of all particles: in effect, running the motion backward.)

H7S 894 The mufti of Istanbul. Book-domain: world affairs

One is faced, then, with two conflicting views about the dating of the Muftilik of Abdulkirim: first, the view of the that he was Mufti in the time of Mehmed II, perhaps from 870/1465-6 onwards; and second, the view of the writers connected with the later tradition, Mustakimzade half-accepted, that he was Mufti in the time of Bayezid II, **more precisely**, following Molla Gurani, from 893/1488 to Rajab 900/March-April 1495. Mustakimzade's account lies neatly between these two views: on the one hand he places his article on Abdulkirim after that on Molla Gurani, on the other he refutes this placement by his dating of Molla Arab's Muftilik.

H88 1742 Mathematics, teachers and children. Book-domain: social science

Rick tried to ensure their involvement by inviting each of them to contribute one unit of activities to the year's scheme of work. Everyone took up the invitation. One major issue for Rick was parental concern. Complaints from parents took some time to appear. **More precisely**, one complaint from a parent actually appeared, but this was enough to set alarm bells ringing. It pointed out that: Everything seems to be done by trial and error.

H8A 158 Murder makes an entre. Book-domain: imaginative

Algeron whistled as he worked, a habit picked up from his father, who was given to musical expression while chopping up meat. It was thus a sure sign that his thoughts were far away. They were certainly not on recipes, Mr Soyert's or Mr Didier's. Fifteen minutes later, Auguste shot out of the kitchen entrance in search of Alfred and Alice or-**more**

precisely, his quails and cutlets. Surely it could not take this long to gather up a few baskets of food?

H8V 1249 Modern literary theory. Book-domain: arts

The character Sarrasine in Balzac's story is just a collection of traits which is arbitrarily unified through being called "Sarrasine". Nor has the author any more substance. Like the characters and indeed the reader he or she is simply a collection of codes: "The "I" which approaches the text is already itself a plurality of other texts, of codes which are infinite, **or more precisely**, lost (whose origin is lost)" (p. 10). Any sense of individuality or substantiality is just another illusory effect of the codes. Subjectivity acquires "the generality of stereotypes".

HGX 472 Microprocessor based measurement of plant growth. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: applied science

Citation FLUORESCENCE

When a leaf is exposed to light and absorbs energy it has been observed that after a short delay (on the millisecond scale) up to 3% of the absorbed energy is re-emitted. This is the fluorescence. **More precisely** there are divers kinds of fluorescence, prompt/delayed. Several authors have described devices for measuring these. Existing methods are mainly destructive. Fluorimeter Measurements Gibbons used a plant productivity fluorimeter to measure the response of fluorescence to chilling. Several other authors have investigated this response.

HGX 823 Microprocessor based measurement of plant growth. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: applied science

(Note that by combining these options with Option 3 these measures could be calculated.) **More precisely**, the errors in measurement possibly eliminated in this way were much smaller than the errors occurring for other reasons. Hence picture improvement was abandoned. It was suggested that the subject be viewed with a white

background at low intensity, and an area measure defined as the complement of the sum of pixels seen, in the total pixel count.

HPY 37 The meaning of syntax: a study in the adjectives of English. Book-domain: social science

Both types of element (or strictly speaking tokens or occurrences of both types) contract a 'vertical' relation of instantiation with linguistic expressions, **or more precisely** with the meanings of linguistic expressions. In all that follows, we shall assume that these basic linguistic expressions are words, as indeed they normally are, unless we have specific reason for focusing our attention on phrases or morphemes.

HRM 1815 Urban sociology. Book-domain: social science

The recipients of welfare concentrated in this highly segregated zone are no doubt subject to the direct surveillance of state officialdom. Inner cities are, after all, back regions for middle class opinion. But Dear and Wolch's main point is that the daily lives of those dependent on welfare are suffused in largely intangible and invisible ways by the institutions on which they are dependent. Their lives, **or more precisely** their "moral careers", are certainly regulated by bureaucracy and officialdom, and, eventually, by dominant social interests; but again, the word "surveillance" overemphasises the degree of detailed, continuing and direct control which any state would find difficult to sustain.

HWF 2606 Lifespan computer manuals. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: applied science

The LIFESPAN System-An Overview Functional Description
LIFESPAN is an interactive system for managing software throughout its life cycle. The simplest functional view of LIFESPAN is as a carefully controlled software storage system into which software for most computers (written in any language) can be entered, and which will then serve as the sole source of issuable software. **More precisely**,

it fulfils two top-level functions: Production Control Support. LIFESPAN provides a number of automatic mechanisms (e.g. routine administration, modification interlocks) which help to enforce the orderly management of software development and its subsequent maintenance.

HWH 26 Public finance and public choice. Book-domain: commerce
Current possession of human, physical and financial capital tends to reinforce itself in successive periods, although not completely so. Having sketched the sources of income and wealth inequality, there is the far from simple matter of how to present the data or, **more precisely**, what unit of analysis to use. Since money income is the magnitude that underlies the day-to-day standard of living and, depending on the definition, the variable that will (to some extent) reflect wealth, most studies concentrate on this figure.

HXG 80 The English infinitive. Book-domain: social science
The potential meaning of to with the infinitive can therefore be diagrammed in the following manner: The potential meaning of to as described above fits in with that of the bare infinitive in the following very simple way: the latter evokes that which defines the end-point of the movement denoted by to. **More precisely**, the infinitive evokes an event, and to, the movement from an instant situated before this event up to the instant at which the event begins.

HXG 831 The English infinitive. Book-domain: social science
The following is typical of the majority of these uses: (181) But the circumstance which, more than any other, has made Ireland to differ from Scotland, remains to be noticed.(T.B. Macaulay 1849: 66; in Poutsma 1926: 430) Here, to differ is the equivalent of to be different, **that is to say**, the infinitive expresses its event as a state, **more precisely** as a resulting state, in this type of use. This suggests that make expresses antecedent causation, since it evokes a process of

causation giving rise to a state of affairs that comes into being only at the end of the process.

HXY 1285 London Jamaican. Book-domain: social science
In this section I want to deal only with the question of selection of a code for a particular interaction. The diglossic approach to bilingualism would have us look for particular domains where Creole might be selected in preference to British English for interactions among second-generation speakers. **More precisely**, we might look for a set of conditions or circumstances which lead to the expectation that Creole would be used in an interaction. Sutcliffe, for example, (1982a: 148) indicates that his informants reported that they used 'Jamaican Creole' with black interlocutors in the playground.

JOP 440 The age of capital 1848-1875. Book-domain: world affairs
The less organised often resented the superior efficiency and greater discipline (or docility), and the readiness to work for lower wages, of these peasants. Yet it is not enough merely to draw attention to the growth of what Marx called the "light cavalry" of capitalism, without also observing a significant distinction within the developed countries; **or more precisely** between the Old and New Worlds.

JOP 492 The age of capital 1848-1875. Book-domain: world affairs
Only a few places, such as the Bay of Naples and Capri, already established thanks to the patronage of the Russian Empress, were regarded as tolerable in the hot season. The modesty of local prices in the 1870s indicates an early stage of tourism. Rich Americans, of course, whether healthy or ill-**or more precisely** their wives and daughters-made tracks for the centres of European culture, though by the end of our period the millionaires were already beginning to establish their pattern of summer residence in custom-built Xanadus along the stern coasts of New England. The rich in hot countries made for the mountains.

J0P 506 The age of capital 1848-1875. Book-domain: world affairs
But these were also the people who, it is safe to say, could afford to pay these prices. Was the world of the 1870s therefore entirely dominated by migration, travel and demographic flux? It is easy to forget that the majority of the people living on earth still lived and died where they had been born, or, **more precisely**, that their movements were no greater or no different from what they would have been before the Industrial Revolution.

J0P 1255 The age of capital 1848-1875. Book-domain: world affairs
Pasteur was drawn into the field of bacteriology, of which he became the great pioneer (together with Robert Koch [1843-1910], a German country doctor), through industrial chemistry, **more precisely** the analysis of why beer and vinegar sometimes go bad, for reasons which chemical analysis could not reveal. Both the techniques of bacteriology-the microscope, the preparation of cultures and slides, etc.-and its immediate applicability-the eradication of the diseases of animals and humans-made the new discipline accessible, understandable and appealing.

J12 1075 Physical fluid dynamics. Book-domain: natural sciences
This procedure, called pattern control, enables one to investigate, experimentally in addition to theoretically, what happens to a "perfect crystal" of rolls (Fig. 22.3) as the Rayleigh number is increased. We will suppose that the wavenumber of the rolls is similar to that that occurs without pattern control; i.e. the control serves only to remove the defects, not to impose an unusual wavenumber. (**More precisely**, we suppose that the imposed wavenumber is within a range that exists stably in a Rayleigh number range a little above critical.

J52 185 The blindwatchmaker. Book-domain: natural sciences
But biologists can be much more specific than that about what would constitute being 'good for something'. The minimum requirement for us

to recognize an object as an animal or plant is that it should succeed in making a living of some sort (**more precisely** that it, or at least some members of its kind, should live long enough to reproduce). It is true that there are quite a number of ways of making a living-flying, swimming, swinging through the trees, and so on. But, however many ways there may be of being alive, it is certain that there are vastly more ways of being dead, **or rather** not alive.

J52 1341 The blindwatchmaker. Book-domain: natural sciences
For any given point on the sheet of glass, whether inside the triangle or outside it, the appropriate genetic formula for that point is calculated as a 'weighted average' of the genetic formulae of the three anchor biomorphs. You will already have guessed how the weighting is done. It is done by the distances on the page, **more precisely** the nearnesses, from the point in question to the three anchor biomorphs. So, the nearer you are to the insect on the plane, the more insect-like are the local biomorphs. As you move along the glass towards the tree, the 'insects' gradually become less insect-like and more tree-like.

J7W 260 Language and Literature Vol 2. Periodical-domain: arts
The enormity of the face-threatening content of Anderson's lecture provides the reason for his failure to provide the chairman with a proper explanation for deciding to give a new paper. When he does produce these propositions he does so through ironic positive politeness, **more precisely** through superficially observing the approbation maxim: Anderson's irony here is much more successful than that which he uses when arguing with the captain in scene six (where his ironic statements concerning human rights in Czechoslovakia actually prompt the captain to ask further awkward questions (pp. 70-1)), because he exploits the potential ambiguity of the academic discourse appropriate to a lecture.

K92 1287 An Introduction to modern economics. Book-domain: commerce

This mechanism would work in reverse if the public decided to hold less cash and bigger bank deposits. A change in the banks' demand for excess reserves Most mechanical models of the determination of the money supply assume that the banks will adhere to a constant ratio of cash reserves to deposits. **More precisely**, it is assumed that the banks will adhere to the minimum legal ratio, on the assumption that the banks will wish to expand bank deposits to the maximum. In practice, however, the banks may decide, or be forced, to hold cash reserves in excess of the legal requirement.

K94 2365 Sales technique and management. Book-domain: commerce

Where the product is bulky and expensive to transport relative to its value, licensing might be the only way to produce that good at a competitive price. If a firm has a good product idea, but is short of capital to expand and exploit the commercial opportunity itself, licensing allows the earning of at least some profit, **or more precisely**, royalty, without having to commit scarce financial resources. The main problem is that if one has a licensing arrangement with a company in a politically sensitive area then, for one reason or another, royalties due might not be paid.

K97 2268 Liverpool Echo. Daily Post. Periodical-domain: world affairs

Unless Customs back down, the only way for companies to avoid the extra VAT bill is to make sure any acquisitions are completed before March 1 March, 1993. "CHESTER MP STARS IN VOTE-CATCHING FILM Brandreth sells EC to the Tories CHESTER Tory MP, author and television personality Gyles Brandreth was helping explain Europe to the people yesterday. **Or more precisely**, to the Tory Party. With the Prime Minister's crucial Commons vote on the Maastricht Treaty imminent, Mr Brandreth was busy making a film to explain who does what and why in the European Community.

KRT 4077 Fox FM News: radio programme. Speech recorded in educational context

But remember it was Mrs Thatcher, who when she was arguing against the er European Monetary System, said you can't buck the markets, and ultimately that is true, or at least **more precisely**, you can only buck them at a cost, you can only buck it by buying or selling pounds, which messes up your money supply, or raising or lowering your interest rates at a time when you might not be wanting to do so. You're listening to the Fox Report.

(OR) MORE ACCURATELY

A1V 576 Independent electronic edition of 1989-10-03: Foreign news pages

The Arab League's proposals call for cabinet veto power over presidential decisions, thus reducing Maronite control over the government and **more accurately** reflecting the strength of Lebanon's majority Muslim population. Mr Sutherland and his colleague, Richard Johns, presented to Mr Hussein a letter from 16 members of the US Congress who supported the league's peace plan. According to Lebanese Muslim deputies, the Americans assured Mr Hussein that the Bush administration was "100 per cent" behind the Arab League.

A2G 247 Independent electronic edition 1989-10-05: Arts section. Periodical-domain: arts

All that it demonstrates, through a three-hours-seeming 75 minutes, is that counter-stereotypes tend to harden into stereotypes in their turn. Certainly, after a brief period of novelty, the hapless, aggrieved house-husband threatens to become as rigid and unexamined a comic invention as the grotesquely intrusive mother-in-law once was. At first, you are led to think that Marrakech means to start where A Doll's House (**or more accurately** here A Guy's House) ends. The person preparing to slam the door is Walter (charming Gregory Floy), a

landscape gardener who gave up his job to look after his GP wife Vivien (Morag Hood) and their (inevitably) stripped-floor, stripped-pine flat.

A36 104 Independent electronic edition of 1989-10-07: Book reviews. Periodical-domain: arts

In his new novel, Towards Asmara, Keneally is writing about the present; or, **more accurately**, about a historical event that is not yet over. Eritrea's struggle for its independence from Ethiopia has gone on, first against Haile Selassie and then against the Soviet-backed Mengistu regime, since 1952, when the UN feebly handed over control of its Trust Territory to Addis Ababa. The suffering and the slaughter have been almost unbelievable.

A5Y 1763 Inside the RUC. Book-domain: world affairs

Therefore, the assessments which the neighbourhood police give of how much support they obtain from the Catholic community (or, **more accurately**, how much support they see the majority of Catholics as feeling able safely to show), vary depending on wider circumstances and the time-scale used.

A6D 1527 Sexual Dissidence. Book-domain: arts

In this one episode we find interconnections with race, class, colonialism, and (cultural) imperialism, and in ironic, domestic, tragically intricate ways: witness Gide finally capitulating to the class, racial, and cultural prejudices of his own culture, as voiced through his mother, who in turn speaks through her servant. Discrimination descends through a hierarchy of the subordinate. Or, **more accurately**, hierarchies, including those of class, race, and gender, and within each of which each subject is situated differently.

A87 132 The Guardian, electronic edition of 1989-11-11: Foreign news pages. Periodical-domain: world affairs

From the East, Berliners looked across. A policeman, already working overtime, said calmly: "I hope there'll be no trouble tonight so that I can go home early. Unified state more longing than reality David Gow on Germany's history of division, tribal wars and migrations. THROUGHOUT history, Germany has been an idea or, **more accurately**, a longing (Sehnsucht) rather than a reality as a unified state. Through conquest and defeat its borders have changed more dramatically and more often than those of any country in the past 100 years.

AAW 300 The Guardian, electronic edition of 1989-12-31: Sport section. Periodical-domain: leisure

Dan Pohl, Larry Mize and even Ben Crenshaw all made hopeless hashes of the last hole, Eamonn Darcy holed the putt of his life, Ballesteros was obsessively snuffing out Strange and shortly after that something nice took place in the woodshed. It was, **more accurately**, a wood-buit open-air refreshment centre and it was taken over by Europe's supporters.

AB6 307 Defending the world. Book-domain: world affairs

Such coalitions exist at the municipal level in West Berlin and Frankfurt. Informal talks were held with the Social Democrats in June 1989 with the 1990 elections in mind, a recognition in itself that the Green pragmatists were in the ascendant and the Marxist regionalists on the wane. And then the Greens' past caught up with them-or, **more accurately**, was put on display by the government parties-and the Social Democrats retreated rapidly in case the electorate took fright at the thought of a pact with such a dubious, anarchic bunch. Die Grünen has been described by Petra Kelly as an "anti-party party", and getting into bed with them might be a guarantee of ending up on the floor.

AB6 1314 Defending the world. Book-domain: world affairs

Mitigating the causes of the crisis has to continue, of course, but the dominant issue may turn out to be crisis management within the triple-P of problems caused by poverty, pollution and population. The philosophy or, perhaps **more accurately**, the frame of thinking which will guide governments and international institutions in the 1990s and beyond is still in its formative stages.

AB6 1408 Defending the world. Book-domain: world affairs

Sustainable development consoles us with the idea that we can go on having more provided we are more hygienic and respect nature. We have to be vaguely provident, but no real sacrifices are demanded. Common sense may tell us something different: that there are limits to growth (or **more accurately**, perhaps, to real disposable income), imposed not so much by the depletion of fossil fuels and mineral which worried the Club of Rome, but by numbers of people and the cost of a worldwide defence of the environment.

ABF 660 The Economist. Periodical-domain: commerce

It will also, eventually, accumulate a mass of fine detail: on how many people have flush-toilets, for instance. A new and controversial question will find out how many couples of the same sex are partners (or, **more accurately**, how many are prepared to report the fact). The information will become known a bit faster than it used to be. The technology used by the bureau has improved. Bar-code-reading "wands" will check in the questionnaires as they arrive at various offices. The answers-read from microfilm by an optical scanner-can now be processed in district offices.

ALP 515 British journal of social work. Periodical-domain: social science

It surveys and summarizes the literature in these two fields, focusing on how the two key concepts are empirically measured. After examining

the literature on the effects of citizen participation on community work intervention, the paper puts forward an operative model for both researchers and practitioners to measure how the participation of clients can make community work more effective and productive. The underlying assumption (or, **more accurately**, hypothesis) of this paper is that client participation makes for a better social work intervention, and thus the higher the degree of client participation the more effective the intervention will be (Kurzman and Solomon, 1970; Freedberg, 1989; York, 1989). In Bernstein's words: we find that imposing, telling or giving orders do not work well.

ANU 1507 Pity the nation: Lebanon at war. Book-domain: world affairs

The Maronites would later insist that the Palestinians had helped to destroy Lebanon's democratic freedom. But as Arafat and his colleagues knew full well, the Lebanese state was not beholden to anything so exotic as parliamentary democracy. For Lebanon was run by the zaim (or, **more accurately**, zuama), the "leaders", the powerful feudal chieftains whom the Lebanese would describe as "honoured families" but whom the average Westerner would quickly identify as mafiosi.

ARC 504 A generation of schooling. Book-domain: social science

They were academically impressive and saw themselves as belonging, in many cases, to the Public School sector yet setting the pace for grammar schools as a whole. Grammar schools separated themselves from Public Schools (although, **more accurately**, it was of course the other way round) by embedding themselves in the local provision for secondary education. They were the schools attended by the children of parents able to pay a modest but not negligible fee, together with the boys and girls who had by their own ability won a free or subsidized place.

ASL 1064 The triumph of the embryo. Book-domain: natural sciences
Their approach now is to try and find out where and when the protein is made during limb development, in the hope that this will provide some insight as to how the gene works. CONTROL OF GENE ACTIVITY
Control of protein synthesis is the central issue in cell differentiation and development. **More accurately** it is the control of the "luxury" molecules-the molecules that make cells different from one another, rather than the control of the "housekeeping" proteins-which is the key.

ASS 1653 The Wimbledon poisoner. Book-domain: imaginative
She had strong hands, and the pressure she put into her grasp felt as if she was about to throw him over her shoulder or come out with some menacingly appropriate comment. "Hang on! Shall we just run a lab test on this chicken! "In fact she said: "Give it to Tibbles." Tibbles was Henry's cat. Or, **more accurately**, she was Maisiel's cat. Or, even **more accurately**, she was no one's cat. Responsibility for Tibbles was a free-floating affair, mainly consisting of whoever didn't want to feed her saying to whoever they thought should be feeding her, "She's your cat!" She was, of course, in the way of cats, no one's but her own.

ATA 1327 Women: a cultural review.
But focusing on The Master ensures that there is, acceptably, a male at the heart of Dickinson's emotional life. Over the years lesbian readers have become adept at spotting the obligatory men hauled into the biographies of women who seem to have lived perfectly happily without them. Dickinson, to be fair, poses the biographer special problems: so many theories, so few facts-or, **more accurately**, so few biographical facts which can be neatly matched to the tussles and triumphs of individual poems. Paula Bennett, her most recent critic, devotes surprisingly little space to the "facts" of Dickinson's life.

B10 961 Discipline a positive guide for parents.
To put it bluntly, the child goes through a stage of sheer "bloody mindedness". This pattern often begins at about eighteen months and reaches a peak between three and six years, after which it rapidly declines. Boys tend to have a resurgence of negativism between ten and eleven years of age. The reasons why some children and teenagers go "out of control" or (**more accurately**) fail to come "into control" are complex and many

B2L 7 Politics in transition. Book-domain: world affairs
But the direction taken at that turning-point is less easy to identify. In the previous chapter Simon Mohun considered one aspect of the problem, exploring different interpretations of the changing relations between state and economy in the post-war period. Here we shall be looking rather more closely at changes within the state system itself, considering ways in which it has been restructured or, perhaps **more accurately**, was restructuring itself, in response to crisis. A key concern will be to explore the extent to which there has been structural change in this area. **In other words** the issue is whether there has been a gradual process of change based on clear continuities with the past or an accumulation of changes in a relatively short space of time which has fundamentally altered the structures of the UK state.

B7L 2424 New Scientist. Periodical-domain: applied science
The climate is a good deal more hospitable than many parts of Britain. ARIADNE The other night I was asked to a wine tasting. It is hard to know how to comport yourself on such an occasion, the choice appearing to be between solemnity and frivolousness, with nothing in between. The wines under examination were American, **or more accurately**, Californian. I had tried three of them, swallowing the small amounts in the glass with what I thought was a superbly noncommittal expression when I discovered that in the middle of the room were two iron spittoons, waist-high.

C8R 1015 An Introduction to British Constitutional law. Book-domain: social science

To this end, a Select Committee on European Legislation, charged with examining such drafts, has been established. The Committee draws attention to any draft which it considers to raise a matter of political or legal importance. Controlling the Executive Much of the entire activity of Parliament is directed towards controlling or, possibly **more accurately**, embarrassing the Executive.

CBH 284 Some psychic and political dimensions of work experiences.

Miscellanea-domain: social science

In the meanwhile they must wait, and engage in competition for the father's place; what is known as "sibling rivalry". But this rendering of the myth emphasises what lies in the shadow of the model. In explicating this model, managers tend to emphasise the goodness of relationships such as one would find in a happy family. **More accurately**, it should be said: relationships as could be phantasised as happening in a happy family. As in the Military Model, the family metaphor provides a sense of order. Age is equated with experience and experience with dependability. Younger managers will grow in experience and be able to take on their responsibilities in time.

CBH 668 Some psychic and political dimensions of work experiences.

Miscellanea-domain: social science

Sometimes this can be described as apathy: "to have difficulties in taking initiative, and to experience problems in personal control and human relations" (Kets de Vries, 1978). But a sense of apathy arises from the feeling that life is pointless and futile. **More accurately**, the apathy and futility can be described as schizoid aloofness.

CDS 733 On my way to the club. Book-domain: world affairs

I was not proposing to ask her about her relationship, or lack of it, with Edward VIII and Mrs Simpson, or to what degree she blamed them for

the unexpected and, at the time, unwelcome change in her life. But not to have mentioned the subject at all, to leave a void which demanded to be filled-that, it seemed to me, would have been Hamlet without the prince (or, **more accurately**, Queen Mother).

CE1 1319 Counselling older people. Book-domain: social sciences

This is often the life-attitude more obviously held by many older people who are in need of counselling support. They see their lives as becoming progressively more empty and meaningless, and this essentially pessimistic outlook on their lives is reflected in all that they do, or perhaps **more accurately**, in all that they fail to do.

CEE 561 The art of starvation. Book-domain: social sciences

The plain fact of the matter, snobbish though it may sound, was that they were both unintelligent and ill-educated in comparison to myself, belonging as they did to a different social class from the one into which I had been co-opted at school. But I was so anxious to please or, **more accurately**, to avoid the stigma of being abnormal, that I did manage to find myself a boyfriend.

CEP 1930 Today: sport pages. Periodical-domain: leisure

"We're just money-making machines," he says, "though I don't know who for." But Campese admits to achieving millionaire status five years and about 20 tries ago. Having taken better care of it than Besty, **or more accurately** Besty's hangers on, he invested some of it in a Sydney sports shop a few months ago, which he'll run when he retires. For someone who is never less than outspoken-he even insulted the Irish last week and says if he was subjected to a Will Carling team talk he'd fall asleep-Campese can be genuinely modest about his achievements.

BETTER STILL-YET

KNY 728 9 conversations recorded by "Alex". Speech-recorded in educational context

Then then you get the choice of either doing a special or a foundation. It's up to you. And this is the way we work it. The specials are here. Foundations are here next to one another. Marked special and foundation. And what will happen is that when you finish with your merit paper and you're happy just leave it where it is. No **better still** you bring it out here put it down with your name on it and er take whichever you want. Foundation or special. And to a certain extent you can be guided as to which one you're going to take by how well you how easy or how difficult you found the merit paper. Yes John.

A0F 1819 Part of the furniture. book-domain: imaginative

"I'm not sure what you'd like. How does ham and egg sound?" "Fine, really I..." "Tea or coffee?" "Coffee, please. Thank you." She came back with what I'd asked for. "Right. I'll catch up with you again in a few minutes. No, **better still**, I'll stay here to stop you running away." She fetched herself a packet of sandwiches from the counter and then came back to where she had been sitting. "Feed the fever, starve the cold and stuff the diet, that's what I say." I laughed. "I've actually lost quite a bit of weight recently," I said.

A0J 30 Health promotion and education leaflets. Miscellanea-domain: natural sciences

If your bike is second-hand, or hasn't been used for a while, then it's important to check that it's safe to ride.

SAFETY FIRST

Always make sure you can be seen easily at night. Keep your front and rear lights in good working order and don't forget to switch them on. Wear light-coloured clothing or, **better still**, a reflective jacket.

A0X 1538 Woodworker. Periodical-domain: leisure

A I think that the design considerations of your notice board should be given some careful thought. As you say, plain boards lettered and varnished and exposed to the elements soon lose their fresh effect. Some shielding from sun, wind and rain should be provided even if it is just a capping to the board, and the whole fixed on some sheltered wall. **Better still**, the whole board should be protected within a framework rather like a picture frame with its face covered with clear polycarbonate sheet.

A16 1070 Do it Yourself Magazine. Periodical-domain: leisure

However, he eventually sold it, and replaced it with another model. Following in my father's footsteps, I would like to build myself a Cliff Bowers saw bench. I have scoured magazines for any information on this subject, but so far, to no avail. I would be very grateful if any of your readers could assist me in obtaining an address to write to, or **better still**, a copy of the plans.

A4U 322 Independent electronic editions of 1989-10-12: Editorials, world affairs.

King: You mean the constant limelight and the gossip? The crowd of critics waiting for a fall?

Ghost: Oh no-that's all great fun, I think, don't you?

King: Well then, the titles, slowing down the actor, Like silken chains around his neck and feet?

Ghost: Well, to be honest, I was never bored with being a knight, or, **better still**, a lord. No, I was thinking of a far worse fate Which can o'take you when you're 28.

A6A 293. The rock file. book-domain: arts.

That leaves only the third, and even then any serious nagging offensive requires careful planning and execution to stand a chance of success.

First, select your target publications. The national dailies can be dismissed quickly, especially the tabloids. Unless you can promote yourself as a bit-part player in some concocted yarn involving Madonna, outlandish sexual indiscretions, willful substance abuse or, **better still**, all three, they aren't going to be interested.

A70 1211. Best. Periodical publishers Association. domain: leisure.

Don't let your resentment build up any more-explain the financial situation to him clearly and calmly. List all your outgoings and expenses over a few weeks. Prove to your husband that you are not extravagant but point out that it is impossible to make ends meet on a pittance. If necessary, take him shopping with you, **or better still**, send him to the supermarket alone so that he realises the cost of basic necessities.

A7D 1518. Country living. the national magazine company. Periodical-domain: leisure

Tip the fruits into a sieve (save the juices that drain from them to whip with thick cream to serve with the Bakewell) and mix them with the flaked almonds. turn the mixture into the pre-cooked pastry case and pour the topping over it. Bake at 400°F (200°C) gas mark 6 for 40-5 min until the topping has set to a golden crust. Cool till tepid or, **better still**, serve cold.

A7G 235. Charity leaflets and letters. Miscellanea-domain: social science

Remember, every £6 you send will immunise a child and maybe save a life. Please send your gift in the envelope provided. Or, to join our campaign now and get your gift to us even faster, please phone 01 200 0200 and speak to one of our helpers, quoting your Access or Visa card number. **Better still**, if you can, please arrange to give regularly to UNICEF's work so we can carry our campaign for better child health care into the future.

A7G 915. Charity leaflets and letters. Miscellanea-domain: social science

100 acres of rainforest is devastated and disappears every minute of every day, cutting off our lifeblood, YOUR AIR SUPPLY.

MEAT ISN'T JUST MURDER, IT'S SUICIDE

YOU can do something about the situation, YOU can take personal responsibility for conserving the worlds finite resources, by not consuming meat and animal products. Cut down your meat consumption, **better still** cut out meat and slaughterhouse products altogether.

A7K 1260. Church magazines and leaflets. Unpublished miscellanea-domain: belief and thought

Representatives of Missionary orders will also be present. Cardinal Arinze will preach the homily. Cardinal Arinze is a Nigerian and is the head of the Pontifical Council for Inter Religious Dialogue in Rome. All friends and supporters of the Missions and the young churches are most welcome. Do come with a friend. **better still**, bring along a coach from your parish.

ABD 1070. The Economist Newspaper Ltd. Periodical-domain: commerce

This week the Community had second thoughts. Jacques Poos, the foreign minister of Luxembourg (which has just taken over the Community's rotating presidency), expressed the hope that he would be authorised to visit Baghdad on its behalf. It is hard to imagine the countdown to war continuing without an intensification of diplomacy. Yet getting talks started-whether between the Europeans and Iraq or, **better still**, the Americans and Iraq-is not the same thing as avoiding war.

ABG 2020. The Economist Newspaper. domain-commerce

In this recession firms have been much quicker to trim their fat. Indeed, instead of waiting for demand to slump, manufacturing firms cut jobs by 2% in the year before the recession took hold, lifting productivity by 4% in the year to the third quarter of 1990-four times the typical gain in efficiency at that stage of the cycle. **Better still**, by delving deeper into the figures Mr Roach finds that the biggest gains are in America's inefficient service industries. In the past two quarters manufacturing output per man-hour fell by an annual rate of 1.1%, roughly the same as in previous recessions, but non-manufacturing productivity-a good proxy for services-rose by an annualised 1.2% compared with a typical decline of 1.5% in past recessions.

ABS 3345. The National Magazine Company. Ltd. domain-arts.

But for a sudden, necessary purchase, it is worth scouring the charity shops at any season. For a tennor (10 pounds), I snapped up a dinner-jacket for an office party, and gave it back afterwards. An everyday grey suit cost me twelve pounds. Does the thrifty buyer never slip into anything new? Certainly. He haunts street markets. **better still**, off-street markets in open-plan warehouses, which have a roof, if not much else.

AC3 2063. Misfortunes of Nigel. Book-domain: imaginative

Every now and again, when he was writing, he would stop and lift the lid to gaze at Viola lounging in classic embroidered silks against the background of Hong Kong. She was remarkably like Eleanor, he thought, but better. She had that kind of gloss that only studio make-up and the last touches by a hairdresser can add. **better still**, she was only twenty-two, not in her bloody thirties. After a week of feeling lovelorn and dreamy he decided to contact her. His balls ached at the thought of her.

ADO 669. Get slim and stay slim. Book-domain: natural sciences

Plenty of fresh fruits and vegetables are also important. Dried fruits are especially high in fibre, as are pulses. It is necessary, even if you are trying to lose weight, to maintain adequate carbohydrate and fibre levels. At each meal try to have at least one form of good carbohydrate such as we have mentioned above. **Better still**, have one form of complex carbohydrate (something starchy like rice or bread or pasta) plus a piece of fresh fruit. Be careful not to accompany your chosen carbohydrate with large quantities of fat. If you are eating carrots and potatoes with your meal, do not add a knob of butter or margarine.

ADX 2150. Logic and design. Book-domain: imaginative

A subsequent fulfillment becomes the happy ending. Alternatively the violation can be inverted; like a black comedy, or the assertion of a stark revenge or retribution.

Useless information

Perhaps the essential clue to dramatisation was given in the discovery that new born babies enjoy solving problems. We enjoy mysteries, so long as they do not threaten our person. **Better still**, we enjoy solving mysteries: and if we cannot solve them then, when the auspices are right, they can acquire the aura of magic. To this end, disguise can be part of nature's game.

AL6 766 Daily Telegraph, electronic edition of 1992-04-17: foreign pages. Periodical-domain: world affairs

RAY ROURKE Twickenham, MiddxLetter to the Editor: Order of the bath SIR-With the present water crisis in the South-East, perhaps it would be helpful to adopt the war-time restriction on baths of no more than five inches of water. Or, **better still**, maybe we should question the present shibboleth that a bath or a shower a day is necessary for hygiene. I wonder what medical opinion is of this wasteful practice?

AMO 116 Club 18-30 summer holiday brochure 1990. Miscellanea-domain: leisure

In fact, many Club guests choose to take the full trips package at the very start of their holiday, which means they know that certain nights out and meals are already catered for-and you'll be amazed how much that can save you on the food and drinks bill. **Better still**, if you do choose to buy the full package of trips, we'll not only give you a tasty discount off the price, but also FREE membership of Club 18-30 Social, the biggest private club in the U.K.

ANB 329 Milan, the complete travel organizer. Book-domain: leisure
PIAZZA DEL DUOMO

It would be barely conceivable to start a journey of exploration through Milan other than in the Piazza del Duomo. As with all big cities, to the first-time visitor Milan is too big, too noisy, too fast, its people too busy, in too much of a hurry. But whether you are here for the first or merely the latest time, as you enter the square-**better still**, as you emerge into it, blinking away the bright Milanese light as you climb up out of the Metro-there can be no doubting its magical ability to conjure a timeless moment of calm from out of the bustle.

ANB 1302 Milan, the complete travel organizer. Book-domain: leisure
To continue, take Via dei Pellegrini, the Pilgrim's Road, or, **better still**, continue along Corso di Porta Romana to Piazzale Medaglie d'Ora where the old arch of the Porta Romana itself stands. The arch of Porta Romana ai Bastioni, to give it its full title, was built in 1598 to commemorate Margherita of Austria leaving the city on her way to marry Philip III of Spain, although the ramparts into which it was fitted had been erected half a century before.

AR9 541 The Save Britain's Heritage Action Guide. Book-domain: arts
In North America, emphasis is now placed not only on art history but also on what is termed "material culture"-that is, everything pertaining

to the lives and activities of all those who lived in the house. The importance of Calke was that (as at Erdig in North Wales) everything in the house was on offer. **Better still**, very little had ever been thrown away.

ARA 286 Stopping crime starts with you. Miscellanea-domain: social science
LUGGAGE AND VALUABLES

Never leave anything that looks valuable openly displayed in your car. If you can't take it with you, cover it up, **or better still**, lock it in the boot.

ARA 517. Stopping crime starts with you. Miscellanea-domain: social science
THEFT FROM CARAVANS

Breaking into and stealing from a caravan is usually the work of casual thieves. You can easily reduce the risk by taking a few simple precautions. Always close and lock all doors and windows when you leave your caravan-even if it's only for a few minutes. Keep any valuables out of sight, **or better still**, take them with you. For added security, you should consider fitting a good quality deadlock and an alarm.

ARA 596. Stopping crime starts with you. Miscellanea-domain: social science
FARMYARDS

Keeping your farmyard and the surrounding area well lit with security floodlights at night is a cost-effective way to help keep criminals away. Also-wherever possible keep valuable livestock, feedstuffs or other bulk materials as close to the farmyard as you can. A dog-**or better still**-a gaggle of geese not only act as a deterrent to a prowler, but also provide an excellent "alarm".

ARW 998. Spare rib. Periodical-domain: social science

Friday nights are hot at Apples and Snakes-every week they bring on a new lineup of outstanding poets and performers. This month look out for Maggie Nichols, Patience Agbabi and Sheila Hyde-for dates and times phone 081 690 9368

Performance Feasting on Air: a young woman is told to hold her tongue, **or better still**, bite it off. Paines Plough and the Theatre Ctr join up to chart the journey from the undersea world of youth to the dry land of adulthood.

AS1 142. Do-it-yourself home surveying. Book-domain: applied science

Moreover, the surveyor will feel you don't wish to involve yourself and his allegiance will be inclined towards the building society or bank, instead of to you which is as it ought to be. Ask your bank manager, solicitor and building society to recommend two or three surveyors, who must be chartered building surveyors and not estates surveyors, quantity surveyors or land surveyors. Ring them, **or better still** go to see them all, and ask if they are interested in carrying out the survey, how much they charge and when they can do it.

ASS 34. The Wibleton poisoner Book-domain: imaginative

Television documentary-makers asked them, respectfully, about exactly how they felt when they hacked their aged mothers to death or disembowelled a neighbour's child. This was the age of the murderer. And wasn't Edgar Lustgarten dead? He wouldn't, anyway, be known as the Wibleton Strangler, but as Henry Farr, cold-blooded psychopath. Or, **better still**, just Farr, cold-blooded psychopath.

ASU 124. Wainwright in the limestone dales. Book-domain: leisure

Cars may be parked on Birkdale Summit which is crossed by both the county boundary and the watershed. The walk to be described may most conveniently be undertaken by two parties, each with transport:

one car should be parked at the roadside quarry at Aisgill, and the other at Birkdale Summit. The two parties walk in opposite directions and exchange car keys as they pass midway or, **better still**, at a rendezvous at the conspicuous landmark of Lady's Pillar.

AYP 1090. Financial leaflets. Miscellanea-domain: commerce

The HeadStart 531 endowment mortgage-as its name implies-allows you to postpone 5% of your endowment mortgage payments this year, 3% next year and 1% in the final year. **Better still**, these amounts are subtracted from a mortgage rate which is fixed for three years at 13.99% (APR 15.0%). And as you'll know exactly what you'll be paying every month, HeadStart 531 is a perfect recipe for planning your budget with confidence.

B06 1073 Aromatherapy massage with essential oils. Book-domain: leisure

If used sensibly though, once a week perhaps, your skin will certainly benefit. It will begin to look and feel revitalised and dewy. Face-Packs A weekly face-pack, or mask as they are often called, can be applied to the face and neck after ordinary cleansing, **or better still**, after an aromatic bath or facial steam while the skin is still moist and warm and therefore, more receptive to whatever you put on it. Face packs are designed to balance skin secretions, to stimulate the circulation and to moisturise and tighten the skin.

B0P 52. Advanced coarse fishing. Book-domain: leisure

Keepnets too, should be large, not necessarily in length but in width. Much of the damage caused by keepnets is due to most of them being too narrow, so that as the fish lashes its tail back and forth the mesh brushes the protective mucus off and gradually wears the fin away. A wide net helps to prevent this happening and also allows the fish to turn round if they want to. **Better still**, put them straight back, or, if you wish to retain the fish for a photo, use a keepsack.

B0P 372. Advanced coarse fishing. Book-domain: leisure

If you are fortunate enough to have with you one or two baits, and you can flick these to the fish without scaring them off, it is interesting to see how, or even if, they respond. If they do respond you may be able to see if they approach it with caution or with carelessness. **Better still**, if you are in a position to present these baits on tackle to fish you can see, then you may learn more about fish behaviour in one hour than you would in a season of fishing "blind".

B1J 983. In all directions. Book-domain: arts

Judith took on the role of House Mother. She was a consummate actress and was accustomed to assuming roles; but she was also very good company, a highly intelligent young lady inordinately fond of Andrew Allan. Andrew was indulgent when Judith talked of her ambitions to star in a Broadway production, **or better still**, in a London West End success and we all voiced assurance and encouragement as one talks to a little boy who hopes to become Prime Minister.

B1J 1419 In good faith. Book-domain: belief and thought

"Have yourself a happy, merry dooby doo beebop tingaling little old Santa sleighbell in the snow dong along teetum yayaya fun among the mistletoe bloop a doop yeh yeh etc, etc." The temptation to go shopping with a pair of wirecutters and snip the leads to those hidden loudspeakers is immense. **Or better still** find the source, the cassette player, and rip out the cassette and jump up and down upon it until it is smashed into little pieces.

B1M 606 Health promotion and education leaflets. Miscelanea-domain: natural sciences

Like so many environmental issues, reducing the usage of CFCs to protect the Ozone Layer must involve every country in the world. Equally, it must involve every individual, as well as industries and governments, in each of those countries. Buy aerosols with non-CFC

propellants **or, better still**, use pump-action sprays or roll-on stick deodorants.

B1P 513 A companion to local history research. Book-domain: world affairs

A vast number of religious buildings have been surveyed by competent authorities, and detailed descriptions (with photographs and plans) are available from the Royal Commission on Historical Monuments (see Addresses, Appendix III). Even where the buildings are described in the Commission's published series, An Inventory of Historical Monuments in the County of..., the researcher should write to (**or, better still**, visit) the Commission's London offices for more information than has appeared on the printed pages.

B1R 777 How to use homeopathy. Book-domain: natural sciences

It likes damp, moist, airless places with a slightly more alkaline pH than is normally found in the vagina (normally slightly acid). Therefore wear clothing that is loose and airy. Jeans, trousers and tights are much loved by Candida. Preferably wear a skirt or culottes with loose underwear made from natural fibres **or better still** no underwear at all. Rinse underwear thoroughly after washing. Some people find a change of soap powder can help, especially a move away from a biological powder. Also avoid the use of vaginal deodorants, tampons and bleached sanitary towels. Soaps, bubble bath and the like are all alkaline and best avoided completely, especially the use of soap anywhere near the vagina.

B3G 1430 What every woman should know about retirement. Book-domain: social science

Loads should be divided equally before carrying them, so that there is no one-sided strain-and remember not to twist your back as you dump shopping on to a car seat. Sleep on a firm mattress-**or, better still**, a plank under the mattress. It may be that osteopathy or chiropractic

could help; and both osteopaths and chiropractors have had a long training which includes medical education and qualifies them to give valuable help with backache.

BLW 1574 Forty plus. Book-domain: belief and thought

But, not surprisingly, many parents continue to feel anxious, tense and sad about their children. I have been through all these emotions myself. I found comfort-although at times I had to struggle to do so-from knowing that God is the Father, par excellence, and he therefore knew exactly how I was feeling. **Better still**, he loves my children even more than I do and wants what is best for them. I prayed for them in their growing up years more than I had ever done before. I prayed that God would protect them, now that I no longer could, and that he would bring them close to him too. I have also learned to pray that God will do what he sees is best for them.

BM4 1435 The Alton Herald. Periodical-domain: world affairs

I hadn't bargained for the next difficulty: "It won't work," he commented, "because my son smokes and he'll take pity on me and give me one when I run out." "Why not try to stop with a friend and add an element of competition to the task. Perhaps a small bet on who can stop first? **Better still**, stop with your son and you won't be able to feed each other fags in a crisis," I suggested. "As soon as you wake up pop a piece of nicotine chewing gum into your mouth and chew it slowly whilst you are getting dressed and shaving. That will give you a boost of the drug to start the day without the nasties."

BMB 370 Business. Periodical-domain: commerce

Violins, one presumes, attract violins. The too-long text is set in hard-to-read sanserif and the clincher headline reads: "Honestly. Are you always as fit as you say you are?" Fiddle-faddle. My advice to agencies: send someone out with a quid or so to buy a magazine before you advertise in it; **or better still**, have those editorial folk over for a

Gordon's & Tonic. . . . Agencies that dream up advertisements to go in magazines could do worse than read the publications first

BMD 665 Country leaving. Periodical-domain: leisure

By all means go round the world once, work for a year in Sydney and sink a goldmine in Oklahoma, but come home to that beloved castle or cabin at Little Puddington you must. **Better still**, never leave Little Puddington at all if you wish to be a wholly fulfilled and creative person. For let's face it: the best artists and craftsmen in history have been stay-at-homes, and the greatest happiness has often been found in industrious obscurity.

BMT 1633 The elements of earth mysteries. Book-domain: belief and thought

The sense of touch is also a very fundamental one in that it is easier to get beyond the barrier of words and thoughts to direct experience this way. We can, at the very least, as I suggested in the opening passage, approach a site barefoot, making a direct link with the Earth. **Better still**, if the site is sufficiently isolated, we can remove our clothes completely (or go "skyclad", as the witches say). We can again feel the wind, the warmth and the cold on our body, which is a new experience for many and does, in some strange way, draw one closer to Nature for that reason alone. We can touch the site, embrace the trees and stones.

BN4 995 Here's health: the green guide. Book-domain: applied science
It is however up to all of us, developing countries included, to take into account the unique nature of the rainforests and to keep these jewels in the world's crown polished and shining. Take Action You do not buy tropical hardwood unless it has the Good Wood Guide seal of approval, **better still**, don't buy tropical hardwood before buying furniture, check whether the wood is tropical hardwood or temperate hardwood write to your highstreet bank, most of which are involved in lending large sums to developing countries, and ask them to reconsider their

debt-collecting policies The Government take a stance against the amount of tropical hardwoods imported into the UK

BN4 1930 Here's health: the green guide. Book-domain: applied science

In Japan, Sweden and some other European countries, consumer pressure has made unbleached paper products available. Modifications in paper production technology have also reduced the use of chlorine. Now it is up to the consumer to accept that white doesn't necessarily mean healthy and to opt for unbleached products. **Better still**, avoid paper altogether where possible; buy loose tea, and invest in a coffee percolator. Milk in returnable bottles is aesthetically pleasing, safer and a good deal more environmentally friendly than in cartons.

BNA 606 Here's health: the green guide. Book-domain: applied science
Positive thinking Think positive!

Every interview is valuable experience and good practice, so look on it as time well spent even if you are not hopeful about the outcome. **Better still**, be positive about yourself and your own good qualities. You are a worthwhile person so why should you be nervous?

BNL 638 Panorama: documentary. Speech recorded in leisure context
Use an automatic time switch on your lighting. Phone the police if you see anyone whom you regard as suspicious loitering close by or If you suspect a potential intruder is lurking nearby. When you answer the phone, just say "hello" and do not give your name and number. **Better still**, if you live alone, have an ex-directory number.

BPO 485 Race of scorpions. Book-domain: imaginative
And let's get rid of the powder. It's bound to be in the fort, and that overlooks the harbour. Mick Crackbene is there sitting outside that harbour with the Doria and at least one galley at his disposal. So why not increase his artillery, and give him all the fire-missiles he can carry.

Better still, get him to try and slip a man in through the sea-gate. A single explosion would silence their guns. Then we take by assault when the ditch is done. Or perhaps, if they're starved and weary of waiting, by then the people will force Lomellini to a surrender." He stopped. "What else can you think of?"

C85 508 The first of midnight. Book-domain: imaginative
You still hesitate? A conscience for his rights, I see. Let me put your mind at rest. Here is a shilling. My shilling is as good as the King's. No more and no less than any man takes for service with the fleet. You may take it on his behalf. He won't be needing it. Buy a few tankards of ale... **or better still**, buy yourself a place at the card table." The sneer was so obvious, Jess wondered Mr Lambert didn't hit out. But he was too fearful, she could see that and despised him just a little. The Captain had taken a small leather pouch from an inner pocket, pulled open the drawstring, extracted a shilling and was holding it out.

C85 3101 The first of midnight. Book-domain: imaginative
It was the first time she had been into the city since that awful night of the cockfight back in February. She wished there was a window in front, so she could see Midnight sitting up on the driver's seat beside Hawkins. **Better still**, have him inside. Perhaps then she'd learn how he felt. They'd exchanged one brief glance only since she'd run from the stable that morning. The glance had told her nothing except that he had retreated into himself again. She'd acted like a silly hen. All fussy and bothered! But if she'd stayed?

C97 374 Practical Fishkeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure
Shoaling All Corydorras species thrive when maintained in shoals- **better still** in species groups-although various species can be kept together as one main shoal. Species shoals ensure males and females develop together making spawning more feasible at a future date. Some species can be extremely difficult to spawn-but keeping large species

groups together until they are sexually mature can help. Breeding Corydoras

C9J 1622 Guitarist. Periodical-domain: arts

What we can do, though, is to illustrate, by example, who has the right in any given situation. Hopefully, that way, problems can be resolved quickly, easily and even amicably. **Or better still**, avoided. So over to Chris...OKAY THEN, ANSWER ME this: what's the difference between a guitar, a sandwich and a pet snake? Well, I'll tell you later...

C9K 2858 Guitarist. Periodical-domain: arts

It's a great melodic motif that moves through a I-VI-II-V progression-a serious R&B ballad. A good way of practising would be to take all these examples through all the keys. Along with all these grooves I've written some accompanying drum machine patterns, but do try to get together with a real drummer or, **better still**, a number of different drummers. It'll do wonders for your sense of cooperation and teamwork! TONY MUSCHAMP'S Bass Space THE HARMONIC MINOR

CAO 1185 Polo. Book-domain: imaginative

"I'm quite OK," said Ricky, slotting the gun back in its case, "and I would like to come to supper." "You would?" Daisy's jaw dropped. All they had in the house was six eggs for scrambling and the remains of Ethel's heart. As if reading her thoughts, Ricky said, "**Better still**, we'll go out." "Oh, no," said Daisy, appalled. "I didn't mean that. I wouldn't dream of foisting myself on you. And the children..." "Are quite capable of looking after themselves. I got my licence back last week, so it's a treat to drive someone." "I'm not dressed."

CAD 570 New Musical Express. Periodical-domain: arts
AND THEY CALL IT POPPY LOVE

Released this week, the debut Single by Poppy Factory "7x7" is a great wodge of ideas and sentiments.

It's loaded with the Things You Hope To Find In Singles (but seldom do): like mystery, space, and, underneath that, a deep-set sense of bitterness. It conjures up images of the old Nimble bread adverts with the girl in the balloon, or the bit in The Snowman where the kid flies over the coast. Only with a more macabre edge. **Better still** "7x7" suggests a band who have a mainstream appeal without the usual pithy approach of commercial bands. 67.

CAE 1436 New Musical Express. Periodical-domain: arts

Something of a drought today, in pop-yoof-electronic-media terms. You could check out theme park documentary EQUINOX or the tribute to recently-deceased avant-garde composer John Cage on OMNIBUS. **Better still**, do your homework.

CAG 85 New Statesman and Society. Periodical-domain: world affairs

It is important to begin with this sense of perspective, lest the impression be given that politics exists only for the benefit of those who practise it-a kind of hobby (or, **better still**, paid profession) for an educated élite who compete among themselves for the "prize" of being on the winning side that forms the next government. Consider, for example, the columnist Robert Harris' reflections on the election result in this week's Sunday Times.

CAT 359 Punch. Periodical-domain: leisure

But most worrying of all is Tarzan. Michael Heseltime, The Man Who Brought Down Mrs Thatcher, and last week the man who brought down the house in a dazzling Commons performance. The man with the most to make from Major's election defeat. What is Hezzy's game? IT is quite simple. He still wants to be leader- or, **better still**, prime minister-

and he knows that he is still in with a chance. His camp followers have been nodding their heads sagely and saying that all is not yet over and Hezzy may not be destined to live out his political life amid the ruins of the Department of the Environment—once he's pulled it down, that is.

CBX 1903 *Accountancy*. Periodical-domain: commerce

Being over-generous when pouring one's own is a well documented cause of excessive intake. And if your hand slips that often, you should consider the possibility that you have already developed an alcoholic tremor. Use a measure. **Better still**, find another way to unwind. Making love, walking the dog or knocking a squash ball about will do the job as effectively as a stiff drink, and they are less likely to hasten your demise. Remember that accountants and business executives have two and a half times the average death rate from alcohol-related diseases (doctors, incidentally, have three times the rate).

CCM 993 *Circle of friends*. Book-domain: imaginative

If there had only been some way they could have gone in the doors of University College together and come home on the bus each night, **or better still** got a flat together, life would have been perfect. But Benny had not grown up expecting life to be totally perfect. Surely it was enough to have got as much as she had. Amabel Hogan was wondering whether to change the main meal of the day to the evening. There were a lot of arguments for this and a lot against.

CCV 678 *Cox on Cox*. Book-domain: social science

The children were being encouraged to learn about sentences by using them in real contexts. Professor Stubbs provided a much lengthier example of class-room discussion to illustrate good practice in the teaching of linguistic terminology. The civil servants (not often wrong, but this time they gave bad advice) wanted to remove this long example from the body of the Report, and relegate it to an appendix, **or, better**

still, cut it out completely. I was determined to give it maximum prominence.

CDB 1967 *A fatal inversion*. Book-domain: imaginative

That was all very well but there were going to be a lot of things to pay. Rates, for instance. Adam found himself not at all sure what rates were but he knew that people who owned houses did pay them. And there would be bills for electricity and water. The guns could be sold and more of the furniture. Unless...Unless he could rent rooms out to people, **or better still**, gather a group of people here who all paid their way, start a commune in fact.

CDT 217 *How to live safely in a dangerous world*. Book-domain: imaginative

Everyone will either sympathize with your terrible squint or think that you are offering some form of invitation. No, this technique is only to be used when travelling home alone, late at night, through fairly deserted streets. Next time you are in the countryside, spend 15 minutes in the dark, **or, better still**, half an hour. You will be amazed by what you can see. Night vision is a powerful weapon available to every night traveller and, although not so effective in areas lit by street lights, it is still an essential part of your survival kit. Travelling by Car Any self-defence book will list all the basic precautions for car travel.

CE4 122 *Pressed flowers*. Book-domain: leisure

Another point to remember is that flowers will wilt badly, or even die, if they are left sitting in a hot car or office all day, so if you have to buy them hours before they will be pressed, put them in plenty of water as soon as possible **or, better still**, buy them on your way home and then they can be pressed fairly quickly. Immediately pressing a few flowers from this bouquet will ensure that they are preserved while in top condition, and mean that the remaining flowers can be enjoyed in a colourful arrangement.

CE4 700 Pressed flowers. Book-domain: leisure
Instead, use them in designs that have a much lighter, airier feel. If you are very keen to try pressing wild flowers, do go to the trouble of checking which species are protected and be strong-willed enough to leave them well alone. **Better still**, do not touch any plants growing wild but instead grow some in your garden, as you can then pick as many pieces from them as you like. Both the seeds and plants are available from specialist nurseries.

CE5 216 Undertaken with love. Book-domain: belief and thought
"Hang on a minute, stoopid," said Nigel in his normal tone. "We've got it!" Our offer had been accepted. We were the millers of Melin Meloch. There had never been a moment like it. So that was how it all began" the life, **or rather** the new life, **or better still** the Good Life. (I had a part in that-The Good Life TV series, I mean, and proud I was to play it. It must have been almost everybody's favourite comedy series of the time-possibly of all time.) For the next 21/2 years we spent as much time as we could at the melin.

CFP 554 Advertis from parents. Miscellanea-domain: commerce
Our charges are agreed in advance and our statements are fully itemized. All in all, it's a service which is now attracting over £100m a day from businesses across the country. Clearly, when it comes to your day's takings, it would be a crime to bank it anywhere else. If you suspect you could improve your business banking, simply return the coupon **or, better still**, call free on, anytime.

CFY 2099 My beloved son. Book-domain: imaginative
"How do you do?" "I do nicely, thank you. I bet you could do with a cup of tea? I've got a batch of scones in the oven; I must have known you were coming. You look hot; have you ridden all the way? Sit yourself down, **or better still** go into the sitting-room. That's it"-she waved them both away-"get yourselves into the sitting-room, out of

this." He found himself smiling widely as he went to obey her and for a moment he felt he had dropped into a home which was familiar to him.

CG1 442 Climber and hill walker. Periodical-domain: leisure
Another must for this briefly visiting the Mournes is the traverse of the north ridge of the Bloody Bridge, on the Irish ea coast, to the Trassey road near Tollymore Forest Park; **or better still**, on reaching the Hares Gap climb Bearragh, Meelmore and Meelbeg and descend the broad slopes to Fofanny Dam. You'll need two cars for this one, but a round can be made of the traverse by coming back via the Brandy Pad.

CH2 12357 The Daily Mirror. Periodical-domain: leisure
They added: "Some men might feel fortunate to experience this sort of thing." Hosiery pretty girl HERES a glimpse of what's new in the undie world-and there's a place for lace. Model Kimberly certainly looked sexy in it at London's Hosiery Show yesterday. Together, her lacy stockings and body cost around £30. **Better still** girls, you could get your guys to buy them. Then you can wear...and they can stare!

CH4 2231 Matilda. Book-domain: imaginative
They are the bane of my life. They are like insects. They should be got rid of as early as possible. We get rid of flies with fly-spray and by hanging up fly-paper. I have often thought of inventing a spray for getting rid of small children. How splendid it would be to walk into this classroom with a gigantic spray-gun in my hands and start pumping it. **Or better still**, some huge strips of sticky paper. I would hang them all round the school and you'd all get stuck to them and that would be the end of it. Wouldn't that be a good idea, Miss Honey?" "If it's meant to be a joke, Headmistress, I don't think it's a very funny one," Miss Honey said from the back of the class.

CJF 1625 A taste for death. Book-domain: imaginative

He got up and began slowly pacing in front of her. He said: "I suppose I ought to have thought of that. I would have thought of it given time. Paul's death has been such an appalling shock. I don't think my mind is working properly yet." "Then I suggest that it begins working. You and Barbara have to agree on your story. **Better still**, agree to tell the truth. I take it that Barbara was your mistress when you first introduced her to Hugo and that she remained your mistress after Hugo was killed and she married Paul." He stopped and turned to her. "Believe me, Lady Ursula, it wasn't intended, it wasn't like that."

CJG 1375 A taste for death. Book-domain: imaginative

Also in this study another pupil's comment was "But in this school they see you're different from them-like you would wear glasses-and they'll be calling you names." These disabled children sometimes showed resilience and determination, calling names back or, **better still**, ignoring unkind comments. Although the findings relate to physically rather than visually handicapped pupils, there are implications for teachers with disabled pupils in their classes and an indication of a special need to be aware of potential problems for secondary school pupils.

CJH 1134 Wainwright in Scotland. Book-domain: leisure

With the help of the train, a good expedition is available for hardy walkers: a path leaving Inverroy goes south through a low pass through the mountains to the head of Loch Treig, from which Corrou's lonely railway station may be reached; or, **better still**, done in reverse by taking the morning train to Corrou. Similarly using the train, and with less effort, the glen may be followed up-river to the station at Tulloch.

CJX 2406 Death in springtime. Book-domain: imaginative

No. It's the gamekeeper he's going to see. What should we do?" "Your men know this area best. Get one of them out here in plain clothes and

on a civilian motor-bike-**better still** a moped, it looks more innocent. And tell him to keep on the move." From the Brigadier's office the Captain telephoned Maxwell at the Excelsior, sending Bacci through to the communicating duty room to pick up the phone there. "Has there been a further message from them?" He nodded at Bacci for a translation.

CK5 3076 New Musical Express. Periodical-domain: arts

The real point is, country music is back-like it or not. And why is it suddenly fashionable? Because despite ignorance breeding a precious snobbery towards the seemingly "uncool", all it takes is one rock hero to mention Gram Parsons to inadvertently give the all-clear. The Jayhawks will fill that gap in your record collection between The Eagles and The Byrds. **Better still**, they're fresh, they release new albums with original material and you can watch them live. Who says we're living in the past? Tonight is very much here and now, even if between their own-perfectly harmonised-gems like "Take Me With You" and "Waiting For The Sun", we're treated to the odd classic cover version.

CK6 2456 New Musical Express. Periodical-domain: arts

Which is pretty bloody quick. Yet they're a tad more composed tonight, not averse to pausing for breath on occasion. Like, you can actually tell where the songs end and begin for once. **Better still**, for the first time in Sugar's brief living memory, the sound is sufficiently balanced for Mould's vocals to hold their own with his cranked-up guitar. And if the rumour about Kevin Shields presenting Mould with the very pedal (ab) used on "Isn't Anything" is true, it's not bloody wonder Sugar are slamming at the moment.

CKB 692 The raven on the water. Book-domain: imaginative

At sixteen, Coleby left school with two "O" levels, while Peter went on to the sixth form. Puzzled, Peter said: "I didn't realize you knew my

mother." "Oh yes." Coleby smiled. "Look, will you be in Plumford over the weekend?" Peter nodded. "Well, why don't we meet for a drink? **Or better still** for lunch. What about tomorrow?"

CKS 1198 Being a teacher. Book-domain: social science

If there remains an insistent voice that keeps telling you there is something "wrong" with sleeping twelve hours a day, or reminding you of how much there is to do, turning into a vegetable may not be an effective technique, and something more explosive or cathartic may be required. Any kind of physical stroking can aid relaxation. Having your neck and shoulders rubbed, **or better still** a full body massage, is a good investment.

CLG 1334 Do it yourself. Periodical-domain: social science

Never leave a chip pan unattended; **better still**, replace it with a thermostatically-controlled deep fryer. Don't dry tea towels above cookers, or trail appliance flexes across hotplates. Keep a fire blanket on the kitchen wall in case of emergencies. Heater Hazards Always place a fireguard in front of an unattended open fire, especially if there are young children in the family.

CLT 1597 Practical Fishkeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure

The calculation of wattages is simplified by accurate heater/stats. The new electronic models fall into 100, 200 or 300 watts for all sizes groups, where aquaria up to 24" x 12" x 12" or 60 x 30 x 30cm or near require a 100 watt electronic heater stat, 36" or 90cm aquaria need 200 watts and larger tanks need 300 watts **or better still**, two separate 200 watt models.

CMM 1110 Roses: questions and answers. Book-domain: imaginative

The serious damage occurs under cover of darkness, when the little blighters make tracks for the flower buds and burrow into them which, if it doesn't ruin them completely, means a damaged and distorted

flower when it opens. When you observe leaf-roll, it doesn't take a moment to pinch the leaf firmly between finger and thumb or, **better still**, to pick it off and burn it. All the biting pests above can be controlled by planned, routine, repeat.

CMP 2778 Sharpe's Waterloo. Book-domain: imaginative

They were retreating from the French attack, but they were not running. Instead they were marching backwards and pausing every few steps to fire steady and effective volleys at their French attackers. Those Frenchmen, Sharpe noticed, had deployed from column into a line that overlapped and outnumbered Saxe-Weimar's brigade, yet the Nassauers were fighting well. **Better still**, instead of retreating back to the crossroads, they were going to the cover of the dark wood which ran like a bastion down the left flank of the French route to Quatre Bras.

CTX 1397 What Personal Computer. Periodical-domain: applied science

SoftSet reads the current configuration of your PC and will automatically change the NIC's (Network Interface Card) setting to avoid any I/O (input/output) conflicts with other devices on the system (memory addresses, port usage, interrupt numbers). SoftSet can be run automatically, but there's also a manual mode if you need to control the configuration parameters explicitly. **Better still**, once a card is configured, the network drivers install as usual (there's a decent selection of LAN drivers).

CU1 379 Wisden Cricket Monthly. Periodical-domain: leisure

If therefore afforded a fair degree of personal relief, not to say pleasure, to see Shahid follow a career-best 132 against Kent with an equally estimable against Glamorgan, even if Nick Knight, with whom he has been competing since schooldays, has continued to get the nod when the side is at full strength. **Better still**, the legspin that once occupied as

prominent a place in his armoury as that stinging blade is gradually emerging from hibernation.

EA4 1090 Community Care. Periodical-domain: social science

No wonder they were in a tizz in Brighton. At the end of the letter is someone to contact if your codings haven't arrived by implementation date. I haven't managed to find out whether anyone from East Sussex actually rang up in a panic. If anyone in the SSD can shed any light on the matter, **or better still** on the origins of the letter, she or he will immediately be nominated reader of the week, be the envy of all and sundry, and receive a special prize.

EA7 672 France in the making 843-1180. Book-domain: world affairs

Indeed, towns were as anomalous as the independent lordships the count of Champagne was bent on integrating into his castellan network. Since what distinguished communities was their legal customs, anomalies could be reduced by greater legal uniformity within a whole castellany or, **better still**, a whole province. There was no problem in Normandy, where, by the middle of the twelfth century, one customary law obtained virtually throughout the duchy.

EDG 1177 Independent Electronic Edition of 1989-10-07. Business section-domain: commerce

As more and more shops go out of business, shoppers should be wary of putting down a cash deposit. If you put down a deposit and the firm goes bankrupt, you'll become one of the many unsecured creditors who wait for their share-out from the receiver. The best advice is not to place cash deposits on goods unless you are totally sure that the firm is financially safe. **Better still**, make the part payment with your credit card. Under the Consumer Credit Act, items costing more than £100 are protected if the supplier fails to deliver or the goods are faulty.

EF4 281 The third way: the promise of independent democracy. Book-domain: commerce

Profitability or, as some may prefer, greed was the dynamic-plus, to be fair, a romantic enthusiasm for railways as the most vivid expression of man's capacity to master his environment. "Let the great world spin for ever down the ringing grooves of change," wrote Tennyson, somewhat later, catching the romance and enthusiasm exactly but getting the detail of his metaphor badly wrong. **Better still**, for a sense of the triumphant achievement of the Industrial Revolution in its second stage, look again at Turner's Rain, Steam and Speed. The triumph and the achievement were Capitalism's. It is difficult to see how at that point in history it could have been otherwise.

EV1 1152 The Good terrorist. Book-domain: imaginative

She scratched delicately, not to say intimately, with her forefinger. The cold and dreadful pain that she never told herself was jealousy went through Alice. She could have fainted with it Certainly she was dizzy, and when her head cleared Muriel still stood there, complacently smiling, and scratching with that raised forefinger, like a bird's beak. Yes, she did look like a goose **or better still**, a gosing, lumpy and unformed; like a German Royal, with a smooth tight bosomy droop in front, and a face with protruding nose and gobby lips. Which face was now turning a pleased smile towards Alice.' I can hear him now, he's moving.'

EX5 800 Study for survival and success. Book-domain: social science

Your chair needs to support your spine, cushion your bottom and be at a convenient height for writing-but it does not need to be upholstered or to swivel or to have a head/footrest or whatever. Find a chair that suits your needs and stick to it. Once more, the familiar is comfortable and supportive, but don't neglect to get up and walk around the building-**or better still**, around the block-from time to time, to stimulate the supply of oxygen to the brain. Or try working in a standing position.

F8D 165 Practical Fishkeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure

Check with your casually that it's comfortable, yes? and does it feel quite firm for you? Not too tight though? No And those bits again, either tuck them in out of the way **or better still** fold them over and put a big plaster over the top to get them right out the way so no ends are left dangling, remember for most people you're doing this for they'll probably be returning to their place of work, okay, so they need to be safe to return to work, everybody okay on that lot?

FAC 1236 Lexical semantics. Book-domain: social science

It seems likely that this entailment is interfering with antagonism in 49- both events are interpreted as happening to the "global door", of which the door-panel is a part. The remedy, as before, is to avoid such contexts, and to use, to isolate the senses, only those contexts in which part does not entail whole (or, **better still**, contexts where part entails not-whole).

FAS 472 The other country. Book-domain: imaginative

TALENT CONTEST

At the end of the pier, an open-air theatre, a crowd who have paid to come in, wooden slats, the sea slopping out like beer in a cracked plastic cup, one scrunched cloud like a boarding-house towel, grey. ou're a contestant. Take my advice, leave now. Head for the Gaiety Bar or the rifle-range. **Better still**, slink to a seat, knot your handkerchief over your head and watch. The spoon-player has no chance. Farmyard Noises takes out his teeth. Ambitious.

FB8 137 Cinema Secrets: special effects. Book-domain: arts

Fast motion can be used to express erotic tension and desire, if the purpose is comic rather than romantic-if we had laughed at the romantic yearnings of Cecile or even Frankie, the film would be failing, even though the treatment of these themes is throughout as much comic as

tragic-"bitter-sweet" seems to be the compound word, **or better still** the mot juste is "douce-amère".

FBL 3075 Esquire. Periodical-domain: arts

"It's good not to work on serious projects all the time. The games are fun." Prototype for a digital compact camera Money METAL ALLY Gold and silver make good friends in bad times BY CHRISTOPHER FIELDSBUY NOW AT TEN-year-old prices-or, **better still**, at the prices of the 1970s! Reduced to clear in the bargain basement, with absolutely no rush to buy, are the world's two oldest investments and most trusted stores of wealth: silver and gold.

FBM 3897 Esquire. Periodical-domain: arts

It could equally be a Muscatel from Valencia or a Romanian sweetie. There is no point in ransacking the cellar for the finest bottled sunshine that has been put away for the special occasion. Pluck it from the supermarket shelf or from wherever it is cheapest. Now, as to pears, may I suggest the Doyenne of Comice, generally sold as Comice, or, **better still**, the Williams. Alan Davidson lists nineteen principal varieties in the exquisitely illustrated, lightly but learnedly written Fruit (Mitchell Beazley), and there are plenty of minor variations as well. What a wonderful thing is the pear. "A pear," wrote Edward Buryard, "should have such a texture as leads to silent consumption."

FBN 462 Practical Fishkeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure

Nitrates can be removed by biological systems, and by resins. Resins will remove phosphates, too. Carbon, zeolite, and resins have a limited life. Carbon will be completely coated by what it has removed after six weeks and must be discarded. Zeolite and many of the resins become fully charged and must be soaked in salt water, **or better still** have a steady trickle of salt water running to waste through them to recharge them. BUT DON'T BE ALARMED-most fishkeepers deal more than

adequately with their tap water by adding a conditioner and/or by aerating.

FBN 2521 Practical Fishkeeping. Periodical-domain: leisure

Throughout the summer the warm weather and increased activity of both pond fish and plants can lead to a number of problems in ornamental ponds. Fortunately these problems are relatively easy to control **or better still** prevent. Oxygen At summer temperatures the major water quality problem is due to a lack of dissolved oxygen which results in the fish gasping at the water surface, showing rapid gill movements and, in severe cases, dying.

FEX 1503 The vitality diet. Book-domain: leisure

Depression, poor appetite, bleeding gums, and poorly healing wounds were the main problems. Nowadays, vitamin C deficiency is rare. You would have to eat a very unhealthy diet indeed, avoiding all fresh fruit and vegetables. Smokers have lower levels of vitamin C and should take extra care with their diet-**or better still**, give up smoking.

FSN 750. Wedding speeches and toasts. Book-domain: imaginative

Two dangers with clichés such as "May all their troubles be little ones" are that older members of the audience have heard them before and that the previous speaker may use the same joke or saying. To create a more original effect well-known phrases and sayings can be contrasted with others which contradict them. To be sure of surprise and originality adapt the joke to a new locality or profession, **or better still** find a funny story based on a situation taken from real life. Avoiding UNSUITABLE SUBJECT MATTER The Victorians said that at the dinner table you should not discuss sex, politics or religion.

FU3 2871 Esquire. Periodical-domain: arts

COMMENTARY 4. (a) On MacDonald's character you should have indicated the telling phrase 'characteristic self-pity' and indicated the

implications of the penultimate paragraph.(b) There is little direct reference to this problem, but inferences can be made from the passage. These might be specific and show an apparently changing attitude (early resistance, later acceptance). **Better still**, one can infer from the passage that MacDonald's main purpose was to stay in power, and thus he would welcome a National Government if it enabled him to do so. 5.

G01 2364 Captives. Book-domain: imaginative

Outside the wind was blowing strongly again, wailing around the block of flats. He heard footsteps passing his door as someone made their way home. There was a thumping noise coming from above that was a record player. He got to his feet, staring up at the ceiling, wondering whether or not he should shout to the owner to turn the volume down. **Better still**, go up there and tell him. Scott finally decided to do neither.

G0M 1647 The holy thief. Book-domain: imaginative

It seems to me that he was waylaid and killed round about a quarter or half of the hour past six. Hardly later. Now if your lad could tell us just where he was, while he was supposed to be at Longner, and **better still**, bring us a witness to confirm it, that would go far to get him out of the mire."

G27 933 Canoeist. Periodical-domain: leisure

What ideas have you? Would you like more organized social events, better food tents or what? Contact your club representative to the Slalom Committee or, **better still**, write to the Slalom Exec with your ideas. If you don't and slalom continues to be so poorly attended it risks becoming a has-been sport. My own view, as a non-slalom paddler, is that slalom has become too specialized and is no longer in the mainstream of canoeing. Much of the equipment used at today's slalom is of no or very limited use for anything other than slalom.

G2V 1084 She. Periodical-domain: leisure

"People have changed in that they no longer seem to be quite so worried about pure sexual betrayal. It's more the affair with a possible future that devastates-the emotional betrayal and the recognition that he gave part of himself and what should have been your time and your lives to another person." A wife who forgives and forgets (or, **better still**, remembers) should beware of falling into the self-destructive doormat trap. "Don't," Penny Mansfield warns, "sink into the double bind of, "If I were good (or sexy or clever) enough, he wouldn't have done it...and if I were strong enough I'd leave him."

G30 1214 Treasure Hunting. Periodical-domain: leisure

Notice how people gather at certain spots: they crowd the sand at the foot of the steps leading from the promenade; and they gather in groups near the places where deck-chairs are hired, where ice creams are sold, or where swings and roundabouts occupy pitches on the beach. Memorise the locations where you spot the crowds **or better still**, make a few written notes.

G33 154 BBC Wildlife. Periodical-domain: leisure

You can hear the frogs, of course, revving up in the shallows, but not the rare great crested newts, which occasionally turn up in garden ponds all over the place. They only come to the surface after dark, and so you'd never know you had them without a torch. The third of my wildlife gift ideas is a magnifying glass, **or better still**, one of the new battery-powered pocket microscopes, no bigger than a couple of fountain pens.

GV2 287 Guilty knowledge. Book-domain: imaginative

"No answer. He must have gone out." "Good," said Oliver. "Then we can finish packing and go to the airport. If you want to phone Cobalt you can do it easily enough from London." "You wanted a day in Nice.

I can offer you half a day and then we can take the later flight." Then: "**Better still**, let's dash off to Nice now and have one more night here."

GWB 646 Wycliffe and the cycle of death. Book-domain: imaginative
I doubt if we shall get far by concentrating on opportunity; it's motive that matters in this case." "The brothers weren't exactly fraternal." "No, but I've yet to come across anything that looks like a motive for murder. Anyway, I'm off to talk to this character Swayne. You see what you can do with Alfred-**better still**, let Lucy Lane try; the feminine touch." Kersey called after him: "Shaw has fixed us up at the hotel on the prom- is that all right?" "Sounds luxurious. I wonder if our paymasters will stand for it." "They're still on out-of-season rates."

GX9 429 Newslime-royal bank of Scotland. Periodical-domain: social science

Barleycorn can reveal the details of the new Managers Car Scheme. All cars will be standard Ladas in corporate dark blue. Up to five pale blue RBS logos will be mounted on the side to designate the grading of the driver.(Just think of the whispers sweeping around the office when Jeremy or Karen are seen in the car-park adding-**or better still** subtracting-a logo or two.) Colleagues who rank as director or above will have no logos but will have the RBS coat-of-arms emblazoned on the front doors, while main board directors will in addition fly corporate flags from the front grill. The savings are astronomical, they tell me. Results reviewed at Corporate Banking conference

H0Y 1437 A Handbook of English language teaching terms and practice. Book-domain: social science

Do not be enslaved by the textbook. Use it to consolidate and revise, as much as a teacher'. Coursebook pictures are useful for setting and extending situations, for teaching additional vocabulary and idioms and for setting composition homework. Exploit the exercises included in the coursebook lesson. Use the recorded material if there is any, either in

the classroom or, **better still**, in the language laboratory if one is available.

H7F 2343 Walking on glass. Book-domain: imaginative
 'Oh yes?' They're still not good enough, though. I'm going to tear them up." Really?" You're difficult to draw. He looked up and down the street.' Will you pose for me properly some time?" You mean improperly. 'she said. He laughed.' **Better still**. But I'd settle for you sitting still for a while." Maybe. One day. Well, all right; yes, definitely. I promise. "I'll hold you to it." Do "So, are you going to come down?" he said. She really was stuck.

H7W 784 Bay of rainbows. Book-domain: imaginative
 His eyes had acquired a thoughtful gleam that made Polly's heart lurch erratically. She waited for him to continue speaking, but he simply studied her with a detached speculation that did nothing to soothe her ragged nerves. Unable to bear this silent examination a moment longer, she said the first thing that came into her head. "Surely it wouldn't be difficult to find another skipper? **Better still**, why not simply fly to Athens from here and charter another boat from the Kalamaki marina?" Impatience darkened his features. "How do you think it would look to my consortium if the chief designer and managing director of Bryce International, one of the major manufacturers of ocean racers, turned up in any other yacht but his own?"

H82 985 The chymical wedding. Book-domain: imaginative
 Henry Agnew saw that time coming. Look here." He showed me the page of the book-the passage had been furiously scored with a pen nib. "Well, it's here now-and it's time that silence was broken." Edward looked up again and stared into my frown. "Stay with it. Eventually things will come clearer. **Or better still**-ignore the words for the moment. Concentrate on the pictures. I think you'll find they speak the language of your dreams." From the densely stacked bookcases he took

down some lavishly illustrated volumes and left me alone to wonder at them.

H85 73 Coffin underground. Book-domain: imaginative
 And I'll tell you something else: what really frightened Roxie was that the kid might cooperate with Uncle Bow." Lane shrugged. He was never sure how to take his Phyllis. "It's been known," said Phyllis. The message about the tunnel went to John Coffin, who got into touch with the Port of London Authority and the Greenwich Pier management for information and, **better still**, maps. "No picnic, searching down there," said the man at the end of the telephone. "Do my best for you, but sometimes we don't know what we've got ourselves." Next morning in Queen Charlotte's Alley, Sarah Fleming was preparing a picnic for her brother Peter.

H94 793 Mask of deception. Book-domain: imaginative
 "Thank you," she said quietly, deciding not to protest at his reluctant gesture of chivalry. "Both of us are going to regret this," Lucenzo muttered, as they began to cross the bleak, unprepossessing square. She didn't, at first, because she was fascinated. Venice was obviously a city to be seen on foot or, **better still**, she thought dreamily, by slow gondola, because everything was on the human scale without a city block in sight. They trudged across the crunching snow over tiny, hump-backed bridges which spanned the silent black canals and wound their way through a labyrinth of deserted streets-some hardly wider than Lucenzo's broad shoulders.

H9Y 342 Thank you for having me. Book-domain: arts
 I'm growing mine at the moment for a part I've been playing, which accounts for its condition. And mine. Two inches on my hair and I look as if I've had my face thinned and people start speaking in hushed voices in my presence. Cut off the two inches, **or better still** four, add forty quids' worth of "body wave" and it's "My word, you do look well.

Have you been away?" I've always fancied one of those glossy little cap hairdos-"gamine", you know. Terrific if you've got a face like Bambi's mother and a figure like a bearpole.

HA6 1025 The waters of Eden. Book-domain: imaginative

"I'll do my best," she agreed, and he smiled his relief. "You're a wonderful girl. What would I do without you? I'm in the middle of things right now, but we should be able to snatch a word in half an hour if that's OK with you? **Better still**, why don't you come along to a party we're throwing tomorrow evening? It's a get-together for some of our clients and their wives, and hopefully for prospective customers, too.

A0J 30 Health promotion and educational leaflets. Miscellanea-domain: natural sciences

Always make sure you can be seen easily at night. Keep your front and rear lights in good working order and don't forget to switch them on. Wear light-coloured clothing or, **better still**, a reflective jacket.

Beware of careless traffic, especially in towns. Drivers tend to have a nasty habit of cutting corners without a thought for the cyclist on the inside.

A16 1070 Do it yourself magazine. Periodical-domain: leisure

However, he eventually sold it, and replaced it with another model. Following in my father's footsteps, I would like to build myself a Cliff Bowers saw bench. I have scoured magazines for any information on this subject, but so far, to no avail. I would be very grateful if any of your readers could assist me in obtaining an address to write to, **or better still**, a copy of the plans. I would be pleased to reimburse any costs incurred. KE Smith, Newport, Isle of Wight Can any of our readers help?

A6A 293 The rock file. Book-domain: arts

The national dailies can be dismissed quickly, especially the tabloids. Unless you can promote yourself as a bit-part player in some concocted yarn involving Madonna, outlandish sexual indiscretions, wilful substance abuse or, **better still**, all three, they aren't going to be interested.

ABK 372 The Economist. Periodical-domain: commerce

The parties of Helmut Kohl's coalition, citing wildly optimistic economic forecasts, promised Osis (easterners) the moon, yet insisted that the powerful German economy and the unsinkable D-mark would somehow pay for everything. Warnings from the opposition that the government's "No Tax Increases" slogan was no more than a vote-gathering lie were rebuffed as fear-mongering and, **better still**, as unpatriotic. The result? The clearly necessary tax increases required to pay for unification are now being forced down very unprepared throats. Mr Kohl's glossy coating of the bitter pill of economic union undoubtedly won him votes, but the coating

ABS 3345 Esquire. Periodical-domain: arts

But for a sudden, necessary purchase, it is worth scouring the charity shops at any season. For a tanner, I snapped up a dinner-jacket for an office party, and gave it back afterwards. An everyday grey suit cost me twelve pounds. Does the thrifty buyer never slip into anything new? Certainly. He haunts street markets. **Better still**, off-street markets in open-plan warehouses, which have a roof, if not much else.

ARA 596 Stopping crime starts with you. Miscellanea-domain: social science

FARMYARDS

Keeping your farmyard and the surrounding area well lit with security floodlights at night is a cost-effective way to help keep criminals away. Also-wherever possible keep valuable livestock, feedstuffs or other

bulk materials as close to the farmyard as you can. A dog-**or better still**-a gaggle of geese not only act as a deterrent to a prowler, but also provide an excellent "alarm".

B11 983 In all directions. Book-domain: arts

Judith took on the role of House Mother. She was a consummate actress and was accustomed to assuming roles; but she was also very good company, a highly intelligent young lady inordinately fond of Andrew Allan. Andrew was indulgent when Judith talked of her ambitions to star in a Broadway production, **or better still**, in a London West End success and we all voiced assurance and encouragement as one talks to a little boy who hopes to become Prime Minister.

B1P 513 In all directions. Book-domain: arts

A vast number of religious buildings have been surveyed by competent authorities, and detailed descriptions (with photographs and plans) are available from the Royal Commission on Historical Monuments (see Addresses, Appendix III). Even where the buildings are described in the Commission's published series, An Inventory of Historical Monuments in the County of..., the researcher should write to (or, **better still**, visit) the Commission's London offices for more information than has appeared on the printed pages.

C85 3101 The first of midnight. Book-domain: imaginative

It was the first time she had been into the city since that awful night of the cockfight back in February. She wished there was a window in front, so she could see Midnight sitting up on the driver's seat beside Hawkins. **Better still**, have him inside. Perhaps then she'd learn how he felt. They'd exchanged one brief glance only since she'd run from the stable that morning. The glance had told her nothing except that he had retreated into himself again. She'd acted like a silly hen. All fussy and bothered! But if she'd stayed?

C9J 1622 Guitarist. Periodical-domain: arts

What we can do, though, is to illustrate, by example, who has the right in any given situation. Hopefully, that way, problems can be resolved quickly, easily and even amicably. **Or better still**, avoided. So over to Chris...OKAY THEN, ANSWER ME this: what's the difference between a guitar, a sandwich and a pet snake?

CAG 85 Guitarist. Periodical-domain: arts

It is important to begin with this sense of perspective, lest the impression be given that politics exists only for the benefit of those who practise it-a kind of hobby (or, **better still**, paid profession) for an educated élite who compete among themselves for the "prize" of being on the winning side that forms the next government. Consider, for example, the columnist Robert Harris' reflections on the election result in this week's Sunday Times.

CAT 359 Punch. Periodical-domain: leisure

But most worrying of all is Tarzan. Michael Heseltine, The Man Who Brought Down Mrs Thatcher, and last week the man who brought down the house in a dazzling Commons performance. The man with the most to make from Major's election defeat. What is Hezzy's game? IT is quite simple. He still wants to be leader- or, **better still**, prime minister- and he knows that he is still in with a chance.

CCM 993 Circle of friends. Book-domain: imaginative.

If there had only been some way they could have gone in the doors of University College together and come home on the bus each night, **or better still** got a flat together, life would have been perfect. But Benny had not grown up expecting life to be totally perfect. Surely it was enough to have got as much as she had. Annabel Hogan was wondering whether to change the main meal of the day to the evening. There were a lot of arguments for this and a lot against.

CCV 678 Cox on Cox. Book-domain: social science

The children were being encouraged to learn about sentences by using them in real contexts. Professor Stubbs provided a much lengthier example of class-room discussion to illustrate good practice in the teaching of linguistic terminology. The civil servants (not often wrong, but this time they gave bad advice) wanted to remove this long example from the body of the Report, and relegate it to an appendix, or, **better still**, cut it out completely. I was determined to give it maximum prominence.

CDT 217 How to live safely in a dangerous world. Book-domain: leisure

Everyone will either sympathize with your terrible squint or think that you are offering some form of invitation. No, this technique is only to be used when travelling home alone, late at night, through fairly deserted streets. Next time you are in the countryside, spend 15 minutes in the dark, or, **better still**, half an hour. You will be amazed by what you can see.

CESS 216 Undertaken with love. Book-domain: belief and thought

"Hang on a minute, stoopid," said Nigel in his normal tone. "We've got it!" Our offer had been accepted. We were the millers of Melin Meloch. There had never been a moment like it. So that was how it all began" the life, or **rather** the new life, or **better still** the Good Life. (I had a part in that-The Good Life TV series, I mean, and proud I was to play it.

CG1 442 Climber and Hill walker. Periodical-domain: leisure

Another must for this briefly visiting the Mournes is the traverse of the north ridge of the Bloody Bridge, on the Irish ea coast, to the Trassey road near Tollymore Forest Park; or **better still**, on reaching the Hares Gap climb Bearnagh, Meelmore and Meelbeg and descend the broad

slopes to Fofanny Dam. You'll need two cars for this one, but a round can be made of the traverse by coming back via the Brandy Pad.

CH4 2231 Matilda. Book-domain: imaginative

They are the bane of my life. They are like insects. They should be got rid of as early as possible. We get rid of flies with fly-spray and by hanging up fly-paper. I have often thought of inventing a spray for getting rid of small children. How splendid it would be to walk into this classroom with a gigantic spray-gun in my hands and start pumping it. **Or better still**, some huge strips of sticky paper. I would hang them all round the school and you'd all get stuck to them and that would be the end of it. Wouldn't that be a good idea, Miss Honey?" "If it's meant to be a joke, Headmistress, I don't think it's a very funny one," Miss Honey said from the back of the class.

CJF 1625 A taste for death. Book-domain: imaginative

He got up and began slowly pacing in front of her. He said: "I suppose I ought to have thought of that. I would have thought of it given time. Paul's death has been such an appalling shock. I don't think my mind is working properly yet." "Then I suggest that it begins working. You and Barbara have to agree on your story. **Better still**, agree to tell the truth. I take it that Barbara was your mistress when you first introduced her to Hugo and that she remained your mistress after Hugo was killed and she married Paul." He stopped and turned to her. "Believe me, Lady Ursula, it wasn't intended, it wasn't like that."

CJG 1375 The visually handicapped child in your classroom. Book-domain: social science

Also in this study another pupil's comment was "But in this school they see you're different from them-like you would wear glasses-and they'll be calling you names." These disabled children sometimes showed resilience and determination, calling names back or, **better still**, ignoring unkind comments. Although the findings relate to physically

rather than visually handicapped pupils, there are implications for teachers with disabled pupils in their classes and an indication of a special need to be aware of potential problems for secondary school pupils.

CJH 1134 Wainwright in Scotland. Book-domain: leisure

With the help of the train, a good expedition is available for hardy walkers: a path leaving Inverroy goes south through a low pass through the mountains to the head of Loch Treig, from which Corrou's Lonely railway station may be reached; or, **better still**, done in reverse by taking the morning train to Corrou. Similarly using the train, and with less effort, the glen may be followed up-river to the station at Tulloch.

CJX 2406 Death in springtime. Book-domain: imaginative

No. It's the gamekeeper he's going to see. What should we do?" "Your men know this area best. Get one of them out here in plain clothes and on a civilian motor-bike-**better still** a moped, it looks more innocent. And tell him to keep on the move." From the Brigadier's office the Captain telephoned Maxwell at the Excelsior, sending Bacci through to the communicating duty room to pick up the phone there. "Has there been a further message from them?" He nodded at Bacci for a translation.

CKB 692 The raven on the water. Book-domain: imaginative

At sixteen, Coleby left school with two "O" levels, while Peter went on to the sixth form. Puzzled, Peter said: "I didn't realize you knew my mother." "Oh yes." Coleby smiled. "Look, will you be in Plumford over the weekend?" Peter nodded. "Well, why don't we meet for a drink? **Or better still** for lunch. What about tomorrow?" Peter said yes because it was easier than saying no.

CKS 1198 Being a teacher. Book-domain: social science

If there remains an insistent voice that keeps telling you there is something "wrong" with sleeping twelve hours a day, or reminding you of how much there is to do, turning into a vegetable may not be an effective technique, and something more explosive or cathartic may be required. Any kind of physical stroking can aid relaxation. Having your neck and shoulders rubbed, **or better still** a full body massage, is a good investment.

CLT 1597 Practical Fishing. Periodical-domain: applied science

The calculation of wattages is simplified by accurate heater/stats. The new electronic models fall into 100, 200 or 300 watts for all sizes groups, where aquaria up to 24" × 12" × 12" or 60 × 30 × 30cm or near require a 100 watt electronic heater stat, 36" or 90cm aquaria need 200 watts and larger tanks need 300 watts **or better still**, two separate 200 watt models. The good old formula for converting Centigrade (or Celsius) and Fahrenheit is: Using your free gift 1. Remove backing to reveal adhesive 2. Decide final position then align carefully-upright and square-but away from the glass.

CMM 1110 Roses questions and answers. Book-domain: leisure.

The serious damage occurs under cover of darkness, when the little blighters make tracks for the flower buds and burrow into them which, if it doesn't ruin them completely, means a damaged and distorted flower when it opens. When you observe leaf-roll, it doesn't take a moment to pinch the leaf firmly between finger and thumb or, **better still**, to pick it off and burn it. All the biting pests above can be controlled by planned, routine, repeat spraying with systemic insecticides. These pests were a headache at one time, but the modern rose-grower has a much easier life-and there is no excuse! The suckers:

EA4 1090 Community care. Periodical-domain: social science

No wonder they were in a tizz in Brighton. At the end of the letter is someone to contact if your codings haven't arrived by implementation date. I haven't managed to find out whether anyone from East Sussex actually rang up in a panic. If anyone in the SSD can shed any light on the matter, **or better still** on the origins of the letter, she or he will immediately be nominated reader of the week, be the envy of all and sundry, and receive a special prize.

EA7 672 France in the making 843-1110. Book-domain: world affairs

Indeed, towns were as anomalous as the independent lordships the count of Champagne was bent on integrating into his castellian network. Since what distinguished communities was their legal customs, anomalies could be reduced by greater legal uniformity within a whole castellany or, **better still**, a whole province. There was no problem in Normandy, where, by the middle of the twelfth century, one customary law obtained virtually throughout the duchy.

EID6 489 Gramophone. Periodical-domain: arts

A staggering portrayal by Dominique Visse in the Prologue (as Human Fragility), three very fine characterizations (Jocelyne Taillon as the Nurse, Alexander Oliver as a classic Iro and, rather unexpectedly, Martyn Hill as Eunetes), a decent Ulysses from Christophe Prégardien: the cast was without real brilliance, leaving stardom for the music and, **better still**, the ensemble work. Jacobs will record his Ulisse in late spring with a few more sparkling vocalists. His recording of Giulio Cesare has recently shown that he can succeed when his singers are on the same level as his musical ideas.

EV1 1152 The good terrorist. Book-domain: imaginative

wherever possible keep valuable livestock, feedstuffs or other bulk materials as close to the farmyard as you can. A dog-**or better still**-aelf was jealousy went through Alice. She could have fainted with it

Certainly she was dizzy, and when her head cleared Muriel still stood there, complacently smiling, and scratching with that raised forefinger, like a bird's beak. Yes, she did look like a goose **or better still**, a gosling, lumpy and unformed; like a German Royal, with a smooth tight bosomy droop in front, and a face with protruding nose and gobbly lips.

EX5 800 Study for survival and success. Book-domain: social science

Visual distraction may be the easiest to contend with. Many libraries offer study places, separated by physical dividers to cut down visual distractions, or, **better still**, carrels (partly-enclosed study cells) that cut out both visual and aural distractions. Elsewhere, choose a seat facing a blank wall, rather than one facing a pinboard with pictures, recipes, messages and other seductive images. A single, familiar image (e.g. a favourite photograph) may be reassuring and even inspirational.

EX5 800 Best. Periodical-domain: leisure

Your chair needs to support your spine, cushion your bottom and be at a convenient height for writing-but it does not need to be upholstered or to swivel or to have a head/footrest or whatever. Find a chair that suits your needs and stick to it. Once more, the familiar is comfortable and supportive, but don't neglect to get up and walk around the building-**or better still**, around the block-from time to time, to stimulate the supply of oxygen to the brain. Or try working in a standing position.

F8D 165 Blissed out. Book-domain: arts

Check with your casualty that it's comfortable, yes? and does it feel quite firm for you? Not too tight though? No And those bits again, either tuck them in out of the way **or better still** fold them over and put a big plaster over the top to get them right out the way so no ends are left dangling, remember for most people you're doing this for they'll probably be returning to their place of work, okay, so they need to be safe to return to work, everybody okay on that lot?

FAC 1236 Lexical semantics. Book-domain: social science

It seems likely that this entailment is interfering with antagonism in 49-both events are interpreted as happening to the "global door", of which the door-panel is a part. The remedy, as before, is to avoid such contexts, and to use, to isolate the senses, only those contexts in which part does not entail whole (or, **better still**, contexts where part entails not-whole). When this is done, the antagonism of the senses is easily seen: 50.? We took the door off its hinges and then walked through it.

FB8 137 Cinema secrets: special effects. Book-domain: arts

Fast motion can be used to express erotic tension and desire, if the purpose is comic rather than romantic-if we had laughed at the romantic yearnings of Cecile or even Frankie, the film would be failing, even though the treatment of these themes is throughout as much comic as tragic-"bitter-sweet" seems to be the compound word, **or better still** the mot juste is "douce-amère".

FBL 3075 Esquire. Periodical-domain:arts

Gold and silver make good friends in bad times

BY CHRISTOPHER FIDES

BUY NOW AT TEN-year-old prices-or, **better still**, at the prices of the 1970s! Reduced to clear in the bargain basement, with absolutely no rush to buy, are the world's two oldest investments and most trusted stores of wealth: silver and gold.

FBM 3897 Esquire. Periodical-domain:arts

It could equally be a Muscadel from Valencia or a Romanian sweetie. There is no point in ransacking the cellar for the finest bottled sunshine that has been put away for the special occasion. Pluck it from the supermarket shelf or from wherever it is cheapest. Now, as to pears, may I suggest the Doyenne of Comice, generally sold as Comice, or, **better still**, the Williams. Alan Davidson lists nineteen principal varieties in the exquisitely illustrated, lightly but learnedly written Fruit

(Mitchell Beazley), and there are plenty of minor variations as well. What a wonderful thing is the pear. "A pear," wrote Edward Bunyard, "should have such a texture as leads to silent consumption."

FBN 2521 Esquire. Periodical-domain:arts

Throughout the summer the warm weather and increased activity of both pond fish and plants can lead to a number of problems in ornamental ponds. Fortunately these problems are relatively easy to control **or better still** prevent. Oxygen At summer temperatures the major water quality problem is due to a lack of dissolved oxygen which results in the fish gasping at the water surface, showing rapid gill movements and, in severe cases, dying.

FEX 1503 The vitality diet. Book-domain: leisure

Depression, poor appetite, bleeding gums, and poorly healing wounds were the main problems. Nowadays, vitamin C deficiency is rare. You would have to eat a very unhealthy diet indeed, avoiding all fresh fruit and vegetables. Smokers have lower levels of vitamin C and should take extra care with their diet-**or better still**, give up smoking.

G2V 1084 She. Periodical-domain: leisure

People have changed in that they no longer seem to be quite so worried about pure sexual betrayal. It's more the affair with a possible future that devastates-the emotional betrayal and the recognition that he gave part of himself and what should have been your time and your lives to another person." A wife who forgives and forgets (or, **better still**, remembers) should beware of falling into the self-destructive doornat trap. "Don't," Penny Mansfield warns, "sink into the double bind of, "If I were good (or sexy or clever) enough, he wouldn't have done it...and if I were strong enough I'd leave him."

G33 154 BBC Wildlife. Periodical-domain: leisure

You can hear the frogs, of course, revving up in the shallows, but not the rare great crested newts, which occasionally turn up in garden ponds all over the place. They only come to the surface after dark, and so you'd never know you had them without a torch. The third of my wildlife gift ideas is a magnifying glass, **or better still**, one of the new battery-powered pocket microscopes, no bigger than a couple of fountain pens. So much of the wildlife s and crannies in old tree bark and brickwork, or the undersides of fallen leaves, and even in the depth of winter, you can take a mini-safari wherever you care to look.

GX9 429 NewLine royal bank of Scotland. Periodical-domain: social science

Barleycorn can reveal the details of the new Managers Car Scheme. All cars will be standard Ladas in corporate dark blue. Up to five pale blue RBS logos will be mounted on the side to designate the grading of the driver. (Just think of the whispers sweeping around the office when Jeremy or Karen are seen in the car-park adding-**or better still** subtracting-a logo or two.) Colleagues who rank as director or above will have no logos but will have the RBS coat-of-arms emblazoned on the front doors, while main board directors will in addition fly corporate flags from the front grill. The savings are astronomical, they tell me.

H85 73 Coffin underground. Book-domain: imaginative

And I'll tell you something else: what really frightened Roxie was that the kid might cooperate with Uncle Bow." Lane shrugged. He was never sure how to take his Phyllis. "It's been known," said Phyllis. The message about the tunnel went to John Coffin, who got into touch with the Port of London Authority and the Greenwich Pier management for information and, **better still**, maps. "No picnic, searching down there," said the man at the end of the telephone. "Do my best for you, but sometimes we don't know what we've got ourselves." Next morning in

Queen Charlotte's Alley, Sarah Fleming was preparing a picnic for her brother Peter.

H94 793 Mask of deception. Book-domain: imaginative

"Thank you," she said quietly, deciding not to protest at his reluctant gesture of chivalry. "Both of us are going to regret this," Lucento muttered, as they began to cross the bleak, unprepossessing square. She didn't, at first, because she was fascinated. Venice was obviously a city to be seen on foot or, **better still**, she thought dreamily, by slow gondola, because everything was on the human scale without a city block in sight. They trudged across the crunching snow over tiny, hump-backed bridges which spanned the silent black canals and wound their way through a labyrinth of deserted streets-some hardly wider than Lucento's broad shoulders.

H9Y 342 The forest of the night. Book-domain: imaginative

Im growing mine at the moment for a part I've been playing, which accounts for its condition. And mine. Two inches on my hair and I look as if I've had my face thinned and people start speaking in hushed voices in my presence. Cut off the two inches, **or better still** four, add forty quids' worth of "body wave" and it's "My word, you do look well. Have you been away?" I've always fancied one of those glossy little cap hairdos-"gamine", you know. Terrific if you've got a face like Bambit's mother and a figure like a beanpole.

HAC 4007 Articles from Practical PC. Periodical-domain: applied science

Product details: Intelli Draw Supplier: Aldus Tel: 031 220 4747 Price £149 Practically Speaking Speak out! Have your say in Practical PC's letters forum. Anything goes, of course, so get pen to paper (**or better still**, fingers to keyboard) and write to: Practically Speaking, X or A? Sir: Thanks for a great magazine, I am glad there is a magazine out now

that caters for us home users as well, instead of just for the corporate buyers with deep pockets.

HGG 1718 A bloody field by Shrewsbury. Book-domain: imaginative
 But those who could speak English spoke no Welsh aloud in Shrewsbury in those days, for feeling was running all the higher because the two races bred and mingled so closely here, and it was well to be known as a loyal king's man, and indulge other sympathies only in low voices round the hearth, **or better still**, in silence within the heart.

HH3 14181 Keesings Contemporary Archives. Periodical-domain: world affairs

Baby ban in East Timor "Keep young! Get sterilized!" Birth control programmes can take many forms-but few can be more dishonestly motivated than Indonesia's current assault on the population of East Timor. The World Bank-backed drive-which incidentally violates United Nations recognition of East Timor as an independent country-tells newlyweds that birth control (**or better still**, sterilization) is the key to health. Fuelling this propaganda are free supplies of birth control pills, capsules and IUDs are given out to Timorese who are used to paying a small fortune just to consult a doctor. Not surprisingly these devices are distributed with little or no instruction on correct use-thus increasing women's health problems.

HH6 1589 Gas circulators. Book-domain: leisure

A gas circulator is the answer where central heating is provided by a gas warm air system and the only other method of heating the domestic hot water is an electric immersion. To save installing a new Economy 7 hot water cylinder, the existing cylinder can be converted to direct or (**better still**) indirect operation by a wall-mounted gas circulator. In effect, this is a small boiler which will run more cheaply than an electric one and will reduce dependence on a single fuel.

HHV 15545 Hansard extracts 1991-1992. Miscellanea-domain: world affairs

Mr. Field: Why do we not throw off this hangover of socialism and instead celebrate a free enterprise day, a British export day or, **better still**, a low taxation day? Does my right hon. Friend agree that those who think that high taxation is the answer to recession are about to try to convince the electorate that suffocation is a form of first aid?

Mr. MacGregor: On the question about May day being a bank holiday, I can give my hon. Friend some comfort.

HPH 178 Christian Aid leaflets. Miscellanea-domain: social science

As there has been no movement on this issue, this action now needs to begin. Writing to members of F&S and direct contact by shop officers with members of F&S got the most votes, so you are now asked to sign, date and send the attached "model" letter to (who is Chair of both F&S and SSC), **or better still** write your own version of the letter, to make your feelings clear. Please use a stamp rather than the Christian Aid mail-the cost of your stamp can be refunded by the shop. If you feel moved to write to other Board members of F&S as well, please ask for a list of names and addresses

HPP 710 Spokes: unpublished letters. Miscellanea-domain: social sciences

Following on from my recent commitment to investment, I would like to nominate the Scottish Cycling Council, of which I am the Treasurer, for a donation from Ethical Investors Group, or, **better still**, sponsorship on a regular basis in return for carefully targeted publicity for EIG. The Scottish Cycling Council is the Scottish "arm" of the Cyclists Touring Club, the national organisation which promotes touring and campaigning.

HPT 871 Charles the Bald. Book-domain: world affairs

Some acs put a man outside it altogether: at a summer assembly in 846, a man guilty of sodomy with a mare was condemned' by the judgement of the Franks to be burned alive: On the other hand, outsiders could be welcomed in if they acknowledged the basic rules: a Viking recruit could swear fidelity in his own fashion' or, **better still**, accept Christian baptism.

HR9 371 They came from SW19. Book-domain: imaginative

He stuck to that. In fact he kept on repeating it. And he made it clear that he wasn't talking about regular reallocation of senior positions in the Church. So, by the late 1980s, the services resembled the kitchen of a fast-food restaurant during a busy lunch hour. People would get up, go to the opposite end of the room, jig about, go back to their seat (or, **better still**, someone else's), get up again and jog round the perimeter of the hall. As Rose got older, Wesley's orders got stranger and stranger.

HSH 61 The Dickens index. Book-domain: arts

A bird table is a good idea but not essential. Plastic mesh bags of peanuts suspended from a suitable branch, post or table are ideal, but you can also put out most kitchen scraps (not salted nuts, desiccated coconut or uncut bacon rinds), suet, sunflower seeds and grain. A shallow dish of water (**better still**, a pond) for drinking and bathing is very valuable, even in mid winter. Some birds, especially blue tits, use nest boxes in gardens.

HT3 1653 Undergraduate prospectus for entry 1992. Miscellanea-domain: social science

No preliminary academic qualification in Music is necessary, though it is an advantage to have some practical experience of the subject at however modest a level. Some interest in listening to music on record, or **better still** in the concert hall, is pre-supposed. Within the course,

certain more advanced options are available for those who have a good "H" or "A" pass in Music.

HWD. Family history and local history in England. Book-domain: world affairs

Canterbury was the senior court and for a time during the Commonwealth period-between 1655 and 1660-all wills were proved there. The researcher must also keep in mind the fact that some parishes were "peculiar jurisdictions" independent of the usual ecclesiastical courts. The thought and, **better still**, the taste of Theakston's "old Peculier" will help him remember this point, for this special beer is brewed at Masham, which was one of the richest peculiar jurisdictions in the country.

HY5 554 The rise of modern diplomacy 1450-1919. Book-domain: world affairs

Clearly diplomacy in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries was still far from modern. It lacked the impersonality and regularity of the highly organised machines which conduct present-day international relations. It was often difficult to persuade able men to accept diplomatic posts in distant capitals. As in the sixteenth century there was a persistent and widespread feeling that an administrative or, **better still**, court appointment at home provided much rosier prospects.

HY8 728 The special relationship. Book-domain: world affairs

Relaxation came only with the two Geneva conferences of 1954 and 1955. During these years the British were also pushing ahead with their own nuclear programme, while trying to ensure that American nuclear policies developed in ways which were compatible with or (**better still**) worked to the advantage of their own interests. The Americans, for their part, feared that British conduct in the Middle East was becoming increasingly heavy-handed and counter-productive. In their eyes the British were not adjusting sensitively enough to the emergence of

potent radical Arab forces, and were therefore putting at risk Western interests and influence in this region.

HY8 1300 Palestine and Israel. Book-domain: world affairs

Dulles's 'no' was followed by Nasser's nationalization of the Suez Canal. This provoked an almost universal howl of outrage in Britain. For Eden and certain other key figures such as Macmillan (now chancellor of the exchequer)-this Egyptian coup was immediately seen as an opportunity to humiliate **or better still** to bring down Nasser.

J56 413 Hamish: the story of a pathfinder. Book-domain: social affairs

My own case at this point was by no means typical of the average or a product of the time-some 12 years service, and my five years as an NCO pilot coming to an end. I had, however, a great deal of flying experience, but unfortunately measured only in hours in the air. This in the main was from following the pipeline in Mesopot to Damascus, **or better still** a rough track from Baghdad to Damascus, linked by a series of emergency landing grounds, staged on their way to Egypt.

J57 8 The British polity. Book-domain: world affairs

The task of the student of politics is to discern the distinctive features of that continuity and change, to generate concepts, and, if possible, to construct models and theories that will aid understanding of and serve to explain those distinctive features and the relationship among them. The distinctive features of a political system can be recognized by comparing that system with another **or, better still**, with many others. In discussing the merits of comparative politics, a student in a class of mine once objected to the whole exercise.

J78 1336 Media law. Book-domain: social science

Reform might come from Parliament simply taking the calculation of damages out of the hands of juries, and allowing judges to develop reasonably predictable scales for assessment after the jury has indicated

whether damages in the particular case should be substantial, moderate, nominal or contemptuous. In the absence of legislation, it may be that the Court of Appeal will prove more willing to strike down unreasonably high awards, **or better still** authorise trial judges to suggest appropriate financial parameters in their summings-up.

BETTER YET

AA2 282 The Guardian electronic edition. domain-leisure.

For 133 days in 1988 Lyle had led the US Money List, he had won the Phoenix, Greensboro and Masters titles and in the first months of 1989 he twice came second. It was an unsustainable pace and Lyle spent the rest of '89 in seclusion. The decade saw the emergence of three European women professionals capable of playing with the world's best and, **better yet**, two of them proving it. Laura Davies won the US Women's Open in 1987 and such is the power that she generates that any time she plays really well she wins. But whether she plays well appears to be a matter of chance. She is totally untaught, will not listen and makes so many basic errors in her set-up alone that consistency is obviously impossible.

AB3 623 The Economist. domain-commerce.

By the rigid conventions of its time, as one habitué recalls, it was "a den of iniquity", with a clientele "fascinated, intrigued and slightly terrified" by the radical sound of bebop. In stuffy Sydney, modern jazz made you feel liberated, **or better yet**, "hip"-possessing, as the film says, "esoteric knowledge not shared by the mainstream." But however enthusiastically they cultivated this aura, Australians were bound to feel themselves second-class citizens. According to one, "At El Rocco we were middle class-white Anglo-Saxon Protestants, pretending to be black Americans...."

APS 1233 Postmodernism and contemporary fiction. domain-arts.

The new role assigned to the reader is defined in Julio Cortázar's Hopscotch by the writer Morelli: **Better yet**, give him something like a facade, with doors and windows behind which there operates a mystery which the reader-accomplice will have to look for... What the author of this novel might have succeeded in for himself, will be repeated.... in the reader-accomplice. As for the female-reader, she will remain with the facade.... (Cortázar 1975: 408)

BN2 552 Gdansk. domain-world affairs.

The land we have to take from Russia, whether she is willing or not, must be large enough to allow us to resettle, in Bessarabia or northwest of there, all the Rumanians now living in Austria and Turkey (minus Rumanian Jews, who together with those of Poland, Russia and Austria, should be packed off to Palestine, **or better yet**, to Madagascar) ... The Germans are a peaceful people, but they have a right to live, and to live as Germans, and they are convinced of the fact that they have a mission for all the nations of the earth; if one hinders them from fulfilling their mission then they have the right to use force.

CAG 1078 New Statesman and society.

Hardest unimportant question to get out of my mind: that Nalgo ad about the poll tax-how come she's got a staircase in her kitchen? Brightest spot: the final, disgraceful death of the opinion poll industry, which I have been campaigning for since 1983. Every single psephologist, political pundit and pollster I must now resign, be sacked, **or better yet**, commit suicide. These morons set up meaningless polls, people like me tell them that they're meaningless, and then, when they turn out to be meaningless, they cry "

Amazing triumph for the Tories! They've confounded the polls!" This will also be the BBC's last election in its present form, something I will struggle to feel sad about.

CDR 997 Total helath and fitness. Miscellanea-domain: leisure

Consommés of beef, chicken, pheasant or game, and thin soups such as cock-a-leekie. Fresh vegetable soups also feature on some menus-but delicious as they are you should try to limit those made with cream (such as lettuce and asparagus). First courses such as asparagus (choose vinaigrette rather than butter, **or better yet**, fresh lemon to be squeezed over); oysters (almost no calories, but watch out for the buttered brown bread!); soured and smoked fish (the soured fish-usually herring-is lower in calories than the smoked, but both are fairly light); fish and vegetable terrines (though usually made with cream, you get very little in a slice); quails' eggs (without mayonnaise).

FVW 1831 Time's arrow. Book-domain: imaginative

I guarantee it... You could imagine him guaranteeing a lot of things, or at least saying he anteed things a lot. John said, "I do want to go on helping people." "Make a clean break and resume elsewhere. It's another plus you have no family." "That's necessary?" "**Better yet**," he said, "just leave New York. I hus far in it's all at State level. We're not talking San Cristobal. We're talking New Jersey. ere not even talking Canada." "That I don't need." "Our back-up could take the form of a defence fund and legal help." "What do you advise?"

H7F 2226 Walking on grass. Book-domain: imaginative

He pressed and pressed. He stood back in the street, the rain stinging his eyes, wetting him to the skin, getting in his mouth and eyes; warm rain, huge hard drops, slicking and sticking the clothes to his body; erotic, making his heart beat faster in a sudden, squally sexual fantasy; she would invite him in... no, **better yet**, she would turn up in the street, having been out, also wet to the skin, she would look at him... they would go in... Nothing. He walked all the way to Upper Street, near the bus-stops, before he found a free phonebox.

HAC 2856 Articles from practical PC. Periodical-domain: applied science

It's very impressive-you can even load the server software in a Desqview or Windows window and multi-task the whole thing, if you fancy trying to work with two machines at once. Talking about Windows, the file transfer section of FastLynx comes with PIF and ICO files to let you use it as a DOS program under Windows. **Better yet**, it also includes a VxD (virtual device driver) for use with Windows in Enhanced (386) mode, which actually speeds transfers up-which is not what you would expect, really. Summary.

HAC 6090 Articles from practical PC. Milan, the complete travel organizer. Book-domain: leisure

Manipulation PhotoFinish is at its best with 24 bit images-containing anything up to 16.7 million colours-but very few people have the hardware to display such complex images at the moment. Even so, it's perfectly possible-nay easy-to open a 24 bit image into a 256 colour environment under Windows (assuming your graphics card supports it-and most do), or, **better yet**, a 16 bit, 32,000 colour environment, and edit it there.

K5D 2066 The Scotsman: foreign news pages. Periodical-domain: world affairs

It is exactly like a Christmas present: it makes people feel good on the day. Think psychology rather than economics when you see the details, for Bill Clinton's success in changing the American mood is the best economic move he could make. **Better yet**, he's not pretending all is well. It is exactly like a Christmas present: it makes people feel good on the day.

OR RATHER

A6D 196 Sexual dissidence. Book-domain: arts

But the latter still involves psychic repression: the identity of the normal is inseparable from, rooted in, what it is not, what is socially excluded. In principle, of course, whether the repressed constituent of identity is outside or inside the subject makes a difference. But in practice how exactly might that difference be discerned? In both cases the repressed/ excluded remains subjectively/socially central. **Or rather**, the distinctions between the repressed and the excluded, the subjective and the social, break down, especially when we recall that the other is often constructed via, or in terms of, the proximate.

A6J 697 Three times table. Book-domain: imaginative

And all these pleasures, these frail joys that her most stringent discipline over the last couple of night-time hours had summoned up for her memory, they were simply not enough. They were not worth living for. Her mother had once told her scornfully about a crazy book produced on the contemporary new wave of evolutionary theory: a book which abandoned Darwin and returned to his predecessor, Larnark. **Or rather**, as Rachel had been at pains to point out, a misunderstanding of Larnark's theory of learned characteristics being inherited.

AB3 1118. Blissed out. Book-domain: arts

Over and over and over, 'til you think your cranium is set to bust. **MADNESS AND CIVILIZATION** Nick Cave is afflicted and empowered by a certain, crucial deficiency of humanity. **Or rather**, **more accurately**, he's estranged, wilfully, from the confining notion of "full" humanity that's been installed by the positive Aid popular culture-extroversion, civic engagement, the benign totalitarianism of caring/sharing/ opening up, the cult of health and efficiency.

AB3 1335 Blissed out. Book-domain: arts

Nor, conversely, does it aspire to art-pop status, because its aim is to be truthful to its mediocre soul. It is therefore neither fascinating, nor "literate"-just warm. If you want to know why the charts are no good these days, therefore, don't blame Radio One: blame Billie Holiday, Stax, Sam Cooke, Blind Lemon Jefferson even. **Or rather**, the people who decided that they were "relevant".

AC3 1022 Misfortunes of Nigel. Book-domain: imaginative

He enjoyed the brief flash of jealousy and the home comforts. Eleanor was just a stupid fan, of course. His wife was often right in her perceptions of people. Even if she wasn't attractive or sexy, Gina had some uses as a friend and confidante. He always told her about his affairs. He valued advice because he found it almost impossible to make decisions. **Or rather**, he could make them, but just didn't feel like abiding by them a few hours later. "

ACR 2390 Farmer's Weekly. Periodical-domain: applied science

Are they scuffed and dented and badly in need of a polish? Or are they gleaming and pristine like a cabinet minister's? We suspect that the latter may be the case. Not because of some remarkable upturn in rural shoe-care standards, but because farmers seem to be going to agricultural shows less these days and doing less tyre-kicking when they get there. **Or rather**, they're going, but not with cheque book in hand and buying intentions in mind.

ACS 773 The fifties: portrait of an age. Book-domain: leisure

Her smuggled photographs were highly prized and highly priced in Moscow. And though the whole cult was largely founded on a pout, a posture, a rear view of ponytail and hindquarters and some carefully arranged shower curtains, sheets and wet clothing, the significance of it was that a young woman created a new lifestyle indisputably of the

Fifties in which she took a man's attitude to sex. **Or rather**, showed that a woman's and a man's attitude to sex could henceforward be one and the same.

ADC 1269 The Oxford illustrated history of Christianity. Book-domain: belief and thought

We saw earlier the strong propitiatory element in the religion of the Germanic pagans with whom St Boniface dealt in the 720s. It had by no means disappeared from the Christianity of their descendants eighty years later. Between Carolingian times and those of the Saxon (or German) empire of the tenth and early eleventh centuries, the role of Christianity in the public order shifted. **Or rather**, the moral and educational aspects continued through the work of bishops, cathedrals, monasteries, and parish churches, while upon the image of the ruler in the West a new ceremonial character was superimposed.

AHK 1109 Daily Telegraph electronic edition of 1992-04-05 Leisure pages. Periodical-domain: leisure

Forget John Paul Getty. This was a party with everything. Over at the Dorchester Hotel we celebrated the elderly Jackie Mann and his wife Summe. I can think of fewer couples more deserving of homage. More's the pity, then, that they are in danger of drowning in soap suds. Last week the couple launched their memoirs, Yours till the End, co-written by Tess Stimson. **Or rather**, their memoirs were launched for them at a glib and glitzy party by Heinemann, the publishers. Sentiment engulfed it like the sea.

ALJ 1148 Bad dreams. Book-domain: imaginative

It was comparatively empty. She turned corners she was sure she had never encountered before. Had she taken the wrong route? Every room she looked into was the same. She came full circle around the house, and opened a door to find herself looking up again at the dangling corpse statue. Now, she could see that it even looked like Clive. **Or**

rather, as Clive would look if he were to live to the age of one hundred and fifty and then die. It really was a wretched thing.

APM 273 The message to the planet. Book-domain: imaginative

Nothing was said about this, it just happened. Franca had now perfected a method of smiling at everyone, but never catching anyone's eye. The episode of Alison's knee had been startling, but Franca had somehow shuffled it off, undramatised it. She had behaved like a sensible mother. Now, Alison and Jack were away, gone to Amsterdam. **Or rather**, they would now be on their way back, since they had decided (Franca could imagine the little conversation, she thought of it as a little conversation) to stay away only one night, instead of the three nights originally planned. Franca was sorry about the change of plan. She had said to herself, thinking of that absence, there's my chance!

A7J 1476 The charnel house. Book-domain: imaginative

She had not reflected upon what, alone, she would be, had perhaps assumed that she would sit motionless as a statue with vacant eyes. Instead of this, in the very act of shutting the door upon the departing couple, she became intensely aware of the house, as if she had now become the house. **Or rather**, as she then, standing tense in the emptiness felt it, she had become something exceedingly small, smaller than the jar of marmalade and more mobile, as small as a mouse, or as an electric spark, which was impelled to run very fast, invisibly fast, round and round the house, altering it in some way which was now imperative.

ASS 2484 The Wimbledon poisoner. Book-domain: imaginative

"Don't be silly, Henry!" she said, in a slightly querulous tone. Then she started reading a recipe. "I often think", he went on, "about having sex with men". Elinor looked at him over the rim of her magazine. "Well!" said Henry, "it would make a pleasant change from having sex with

you. **Or rather**, from not having sex with you". Elinor snorted "You are just being silly", she said, "and offensive!"

B20 2652 Look about and die. Book-domain: imaginative

"They were about to, but at this point the man, seeing what had happened, panicked and made a run for it himself on foot. Didn't get far, because a trigger-happy corporal put a bullet into his head on the spot". "Not Fedorov? Was he killed?" Epitot returned to his seat. "Yes and no. **Or rather**," he pursed his lips wryly, "no and yes. It was not Fedorov, but he was killed.

BMR 2036 Dirty tricks. Book-domain: imaginative

I needed the fantasy angle. I needed to call up the heroic days when Dennis was still around, and we were young and carefree, bonking our brains out while he shouted banalities from the foot of the stairs. In Dennis's presence I became an outlaw once again, and Karen my moll. When he was there we were Bonnie and Clyde, now he was gone we were Blondie and Dagwood. **Or rather**, now he was gone, I was Dennis. If I'd been smarter, or less vain, I might have realized that this meant that my former role was now vacant.

BNV 202 Pilot. Periodical-domain: leisure

But next day we were ready to take advantage of the high spring tide and fly. Manhandling the aeroplane down the slipway on an old flat-bed trolley, five of us took just twenty minutes to get the big beast bobbing happily on the briny. **Or rather**, it was bumping and grinding the heels of its expensive floats against the tarmac on a lee shore-so we all clambered aboard as quickly as possible.

CAJ 961 New Statesman and society. Periodical-domain: world affairs

In different ways, Mrs Thatcher's gifts did help Major to win, though it is hard to say he won, in the active meaning of the word. (This disparagement may be a mean-spirited and jealous response.) John

Major's inestimable contribution was to allow people to vote Conservative and still feel they were just about decent human beings. And that is the paradox of contemporary politics. **Or rather**, one of many.

CBO 799 Rich. Book-domain: imaginative

He ate steadily until he had to go. We played no games. He brought no present. We never tried to repeat the occasion. W. H. Auden once said that he learned to read by taking down the Encyclopaedia Britannica from his father's densely stocked shelves. My childhood was less literary. When I was six, my father taught me how to draw profiles. **Or rather**, faces. It was just that they were all in profile and virtually identical. For the next two or three years, I made elaborate paintings in which figures struck wooden postures and confronted each other in profile. The effect was Egyptian. I knew then that I was going to be an artist.

CEB 2086 A season for murder. Book-domain: imaginative

The youthful population ebbed and surged like a floodtide in and out of public houses and discos. Invariably some of them were drunk, others high on some weed, some too randy to notice anything but the opposite sex, and the remainder were too self-absorbed to notice anything." All right, let's go back to the events in the Market Square. **Or rather**, let's go back to the Friday before that. Last Friday. You were in Bamford, collecting signatures for a petition.

CR9 2682 The Economist. Periodical-domain: commerce

Questioned by MORI, an opinion-polling company commissioned by Egon Zehnder, an executive-search firm, only 13% of a 100-strong sample of chief executives from Brian's 500 biggest firms suggested that representing shareholders was among the top five contributions that outside directors could make to good corporate governance. Only 20%

of a similar sample of non-executive directors thought it might be. **Or rather**, those are the notions they volunteered unprompted.

CS2 599 The rational foundations of ethics. Book-domain: belief and thought

Yet I am puzzled as to whether that would mean that we should leave our radios on, so long as the music coming from them is beautiful, in order that our rooms be filled with beauty even in our absence. Although he holds that value can be realized in the absence of consciousness, Moore does not believe that situations not involving consciousness can be very good. **Or rather**, he holds that all the great goods of which we know involve consciousness; there may conceivably be others of which we are ignorant.

EDJ 1499 Taking it over. Book-domain: imaginative

We spent a long time on the sofa that evening, and I would have stayed the night if he'd asked me but he didn't. And that was all right too. He worries a lot, Stuart. He really wants to get things right. Not just for himself, and for us. He's terribly bothered about Oliver at the moment. I don't know what's happened to him. **Or rather**, I do. He tried to molest some poor girl at the Shakespeare School and got thrown out. Well, that's reading between the lines of what Stuart told me.

EDJ 2086 Taking it over. Book-domain: imaginative

I was about to explain when she sort of cut me off. Nothing she said, just a way she has of slightly turning and doing something else and not replying as quickly as she might. It's funny, but I seem to have known that little habit for the whole of my life already. So the holiday ideas been dropped. **Or rather**, changed. Just a long weekend, just the two of us. Take the car down to Dover first thing on Friday morning, then head off into France. Monday's a holiday, so we've got nearly four days.

EDJ 2714 Taking it over. Book-domain: imaginative

The husband is always the first to suspect and the last to know. Whatever happens... whatever happens, I'm the one that's going to get hurt. By the way, would you like a cigarette? Gillian The other two, they each want one thing, for me to be with them. I want two things. **Or rather**, I want different things at different times. God, yesterday I looked at Oliver and I had this strange thought. I want to wash your hair. Just like that. I suddenly got embarrassed. His hair wasn't dirty-it was all clean and flyaway in fact. It's wonderfully black, Oliver's hair.

FFP 436 Jerusalem the golden. Book-domain: imaginative

Sitting there, knitting, watching the television, knitting, her lips pursed over some unimaginable grievance, she listened, and nodded, and thought, and said yes. Clara, who had phrased the question so deviously, flinching in preparation from a brutal negative, thought that she must have misunderstood, and repeated the whole rigmorale, and her mother once more nodded her head and said yes. **Or rather**, she did not say! Yes-she said! We'll have to see,' but in her terminology this counted as a positive affirmative.

EGO 1900 Wigan Pier revisited. Book-domain: social science

Let us look at their respective relationship to work and home. Orwell used the miners as the classic case of the working class; through them he revealed its suffering and its stamina. But the relationships within which women laboured in the coal communities would have told him even more about class struggle than did his breathtaking chronicle of labour down there in the dark. **Or rather**, the men and women's relationship to each other-unlike the work of hewing coal which is not typical of work in capitalist economies-that relationship, even in its extremities, was typical of something that shaped class struggle in Britain.

EVS 107 Women of El Salvador. Book-domain: world affairs

The ventilation was very bad too. Many contracted lung diseases, rheumatism and allergies from the acidic ingredients they touched. The noise levels were deafening and you came off work feeling your head would explode. There were dangerous jobs and little in the way of safety precautions. One woman had her finger cut off in a slicing machine and never received any compensation. **Or rather**, her only compensation was receiving the sack. The supervisors constantly bothered the women, making insulting remarks and insinuating things. In many cases, in order to obtain a loan, the women would have to go to bed with one of the supervisors or the boss. Mexico, May 1982

EYX 801 Mind and brain. Book-domain: belief and thought

In believing this we believe that some causal circumstance necessitated the temperature of his knee. We could by measurement give a numerical specification of each of the parts of the causal circumstance-the operation of the heater, its relative location, and so on-and also such a specification of the effect. **Or rather**, we could replace our imprecise proposition with a precise one, numerically expressed. A further step, **or rather** a great deal of research, would be greatly more significant in terms of the question we are considering. This would bring us to something akin to the fundamental propositions of science.

EYX 1454 Mind and brain. Book-domain: belief and thought

It is fairly common to speak of these various things as events, states, and processes of consciousness, but we do not have a single wholly general term for them. I shall continue to speak in these and the more ordinary ways of the things in question, but it will be at least economical to have a single wholly general term for all of them. **Or rather**, it will be economical to use one of these terms in a yet more general way, to cover all of these things and also things that do not fall naturally into any of the mentioned ordinary or semi-technical

categories or ones like them. This will be the term 'mental event'. It will cover anything whatever that occurs within consciousness.

FB9 553 Summer's lease. Book-domain: imaginative

"Indulge in dessert?" "Oh, pudding," he said. "I shan't worry about pudding". "Just as well". Marcia Tobias was now disposing of a plateful of chocolate-coated balls with discreet efficiency. To his mind, she represented the sort of rare treat to which he was entitled, sixteen years after he married Molly. **Or rather**, he often thought, Molly had married him. He had been carried along by his wife's extraordinary power of making decisions, from the time when she had walked into the offices of Glebe and Pargeter, when his old father was alive, and told him that her great-aunt had left her some money and she had decided to invest it in a London house.

FBD 857 Ways of communicating. Book-domain: social sciences

That's why actions generally, although by no means always, do speak louder than words: because, paradoxically, they aren't meant to "speak" at all, and a fortiori aren't meant to speak what's false. That's all I have to tell you about how to tell the truth. **Or rather**, about how to try to tell it: since whether any such action of yours succeeds in doing what you want (giving your teller a true belief) will depend as we've seen on the truth of the beliefs which you also need in order to make you undertake that action. And I don't just mean the belief that you're trying to communicate.

FSP 1749 What's it like out? Book-domain: imaginative

He missed even the sight of them acutely. He had been sacked last week, for the fourth time in a year, after a row with an unpleasant restaurant owner who had a fat pink face that looked about to snort, and chase little feet on raised heels that he walked on as if they were trotters. The row had been about drinking; it generally was. **Or rather**, about finishing up customers' drinks, for when Albert came in on a

Monday morning drunk at his own expense none of his morally outraged proprietors had ever turned a hair. Hypocrites! he thought, and entertained a fugitive idea that Bella and Jim needed him.

G1A 1755 Flaubert's parrot. Book-domain: imaginative

Soft cheeses collapse, firm cheeses indurate. Both go mouldy. I was going to put my photograph in the front of the book. Not vanity; just trying to be helpful. But I'm afraid it was rather an old photograph; taken about ten years ago. I haven't got a more recent one. That's something you find: after a certain age, people stop photographing you. **Or rather**, they photograph you only on formal occasions: birthdays, weddings, Christmas.

G1M 3654. Lucifer rising. Book-domain: imaginative

"No," the Doctor sighed. "Ace is just confused. Legion's agent is someone else". "Who?" Bishop asked calmly. "I...I can't say". The Doctor's gaze momentarily flickered across the room, but too fast for Bernice to tell who he was looking at. "Really? You surprise me. **Or rather**, you don't. A transparent attempt to protect your former friend".

G2J 684 Marxism today. Periodical-domain: world affairs.

And this is unlikely to happen unless there is a European political union and unless Europe and Japan play a more autonomous international role. It will necessitate a fundamental self-questioning and transformation of the dominant parties of the Left and a rearrangement of the domestic political spectrum. For the next few years at least, the real messy world is likely to be unpredictable. **Or rather**, the most that one can predict is that the 1990s will be a period of yet more bumps and twists, swerves and U-turns, and unexpected developments.

GUID 529 A clubbable woman. Book-domain: imaginative

Evans let out a long whistle. The others merely looked stunned. Then Noolan and Sid Hope both spoke at once. "What grounds have you...?"

"What did it say...?" They both tailed off. "Your ball, I think, Willie," said Hope. "I'll answer you both. **Or rather**, I won't," interjected Common. "I won't reveal my grounds. Nor will I tell you what the letter said. The writer already knows. It concerns no one else."

708. GV8 3057 Love over gold. Book-domain: imaginative
He wasn't used to it. In any relationship, there was one who led and another who followed. Maybe only a pace behind, maybe almost shoulder to shoulder, but definitely there was an alpha person and a secondary one. He wasn't all that sure he wanted to be Mr Beta. **Or rather**, since he indubitably wanted a relationship with Alexandra, perhaps what he hoped for was to dictate the terms, rather than have them dictated to him.

GW0 696 Rain. Book-domain: imaginative

Lucy's eyes widened, but she tried not to betray her surprise. "Can you tell?" "You look just like her". Something in Lucy's heart warmed. "Did you know her well?" Jeanette shrugged. "You know how it is. She had a life outside. We all have." They watched for a while longer. **Or rather**, Lucy pretended to watch as her mind raced. She was seeking the next angle, the next approach, knowing that she'd have at the most a couple of minutes to make her pitch.

H8J 398 Gemini girl. Book-domain: imaginative

Usually, foot-high clutter meant a flurry of inspiration, but now it said, stalemate, you're stale, mate, you're stuck...New music would help, but it meant going into town and choosing. What a terrible task, she mocked herself, how we artists suffer. And then there was money. **Or rather**, there wasn't. With the lease on the studio, the rent was peanuts and she'd paid it all up front from the last exhibition, congratulating herself on being so sensible. What the hell did she buy anyway, apart from tobacco, coffee, wine, canned soup, baked beans, canned spaghetti?

HGL 2168 Deliria. Book-domain: imaginative

(The scampi is dodgy; later I will throw up in the smelly boat toilet.) An all-Polish ensemble, dressed in loud pantsuits of yellow and orange and red, performs "Girl from Ipanema" and other Latin favourites on an electric piano and Day-Glo drum set, before the electric butterfly. One old Irish couple slow-dances alone. They dance for hours. **Or rather**, they do not so much dance as cling to one another, rocking drunkenly with the tide. The woman has bleached orange hair and a shapeless tweed skirt; the man wears a rust-coloured suit and a bawdy fifties style tie, and a top hat. We are their only audience. We watch in silence.

HGS 492 Frankenstein unbound. Book-domain: imaginative

When I had paid the farmer off, I started my car, my remaining outpost of another century, and drove along a road which led close to the lake. Little I cared then who saw me. My superior self was on a quixotic errand! Quixotic or not, I had no real idea of where I was going. **Or rather**, I had an idea, but it was of the vaguest.

HGU 422 The Laughter of Heroes. Book-domain: imaginative

Keith is always forgetting his Filofax. He tells everybody his sister gave it to him for Christmas and he doesn't really want one, but what with the job and all his meetings it comes in handy. This is true: it is useful. But secretly Keith feels a black man with a Filofax looks stupid. If anybody said this to him, Keith would hit them. **Or rather**, he wouldn't, but he would want to. These days he has decided to be the sort of man who does not hit people. Losing his Filofax all the time is a problem.

HTG 2897 Clubbed to death. Book-domain: imaginative

He stood up. "I don't envy you your job, Mr Milton, but I hope you're having some fun out of featherstonehaugh's. At least we're more interesting than the Athenaeum". "Thank you, Mr Fishbane. You've been most helpful". "Any time," said Fishbane. "Oh, by the way,

Sergeant Pooley, give my regards to his Lordship. **Or rather**, on second thoughts, perhaps you shouldn't. It might remind him of a few school episodes he will have made sure to forget". With a charming smile Fishbane left them.

HTJ 1522 A game of sudden death. Book-domain: imaginative

Tens of thousands of spectators were expected, providing an ideal target for terrorist attack-even without the presence of Princess Jane on the final day. Hammond Wilde was equally emphatic that the event should go ahead. Nearly all the internationally famous players had agreed to participate. **Or rather**, their managers had agreed on their behalf.

J17 3052 A landing on the sun. Book-domain: imaginative

I stopped in the lane for a moment, as I often do, before I climbed the steps to the front door, and looked in through the windows. The lights were off in the living-room, but the television was on and I was amused to see a little bluish-grey man talking seriously to the empty armchairs. Anne and Millie were both in the kitchen and they were having a serious talk as well. **Or rather**, they were having a serious silence. Millie was standing at the table with her hands resting on the back of a chair, looking down at the tablecloth. Anne was at the stove, with her head turned towards Millie. She was watching her intently. I had the impression that they had reached a moment of reflection in some important exchange.

JXT 4114 Conspiracy of love. Book-domain: imaginative

You have to speak to Arnie, she told herself firmly. You have to speak to Arnie and tell him everything. Not about Guido. He needn't know about Guido. Guido had nothing to do with what she had to tell him. For Guido, she realised, had only been the catalyst that had finally forced her to confront her true feelings for Arnie. **Or rather**, her lack of feelings, she admitted shamefully. Guido hadn't stolen her affections from Arnie. There hadn't been much in the way of affection to steal.

No, that wasn't quite true, she corrected herself, frowning. She had been fond of Arnie. In a way, she still was.

AOU 129 So very English. Book-domain: imaginative

Of course today, England is a part of Europe, but when Neela was growing up, England never saw itself as a part of Europe. If it ever did, it was always as a part which was apart, separate, a "recious stone set in the silver sea. A sceptered Isle!" Nela was aware of this difference. But what did this difference mean to Neela? **Or rather** how did it feel?

AOU 1748 So very English. Book-domain: imaginative

The phrase has always interested me. It means something has been said or something has happened that has put the subject of the remark in an uncomfortable place. Is "Englishness" a comfortable place? If as Marx said, the working class have no country, what does it mean to have a place in a culture anyway? And what language do we use to name that place, **or rather** whose language? What if your place has been described for you as being a so-called "minority", or an "emerging voice"? What are the multiple repertoires of identity buried in this word Englishness? What does it mean to be "English" when so many people are disenfranchised in this country? Here where the streets are not paved with gold, but with garbage.

A18 342 Dostoevsky. Book-domain: arts

It's no accident that Svidrigailov is the only one in the novel to handle yellow paper money, just as it's no accident that children are frightened of him and run away "in indescribable terror" because (so we understand in our bones) they smell death on him, **or rather** the unattachment to life which defeats even Sonya Marmeladov. The girl who has reached the human being in Raskolnikov the murderer is left for the last time by Svidrigailov "bewildered and frightened, and filled with vague and oppressive suspicions". He has just walked out into a spectacular summer storm.

A18 380 Dostoevsky. Book-domain: arts

He suggest that behind Rasokhinov's sister's loathing of him there lurks attraction, and he states flatly that she and his own wife were once in love with each other; and perhaps he is right. Ghosts visit him, he says. He frequents a seedy restaurant- "You see this wretched tavern I spend all my time in, and I enjoy it, **or rather** it's not that I really enjoy it, but one must have somewhere to perch": this is the form which the Dostoevsky no-home takes with him, likewise the transpersonal motif first voiced by Marmeladov in this novel, that a man must have somewhere to go.

A1A 184 Exploding English. Book-domain: arts

This is not to say that the English cannot absorb or debate French or other foreign ideas. This was evidently done in the friendly but sharp exchanges in Kernode's seminar in the early seventies. But it is another matter to use these ideas, **or rather** the names of their originators, primarily as weapons against an insular establishment. How thoroughly, one wonders, have the ideas been understood? Some English academics are genuinely at home with them, in a way that is directly related to their familiarity with French intellectual culture.

A1B 597 Studies in Erza Pound. Book-domain: arts

Swinburne read Greek and took English metric in hand; Rossetti brought in the Italian primitives; Fitzgerald made the only good poem of the time that has gone to the People; it is called, and is to a great extent, a translation or mistranslation. There was a faint waft of early French influence. Morris translated sagas, the Irish took over the business for a few years; Henry James led, **or rather** preceded, the novelists, and then the Britons resigned en bloc; the language is now in the keeping of the Irish (Yeats and Joyce); apart from Yeats, since the death of Hardy, poetry is being written by Americans. All the developments in English verse since 1910 are due almost wholly to Americans.

A38 65 Independent electronic edition of 1989-10-07 motoring pages.

Periodical-domain: applied science

This is not a hardship, as the AX is blessed with one of the lightest and quickest gear changes around. The diesel never feels slovenly and can be hurried along snaking back roads with the sort of haste which soon makes you forget that derv, not four-star (or unleaded), goes into its fuel tank. Another way the AX deceives is by the noise it makes, **or rather** the lack of it. Once, all diesels sounded like taxis all the time. The baby Citroen tends to give the game away only when started from cold. At 70mph it is hard to tell what fuels the car, and only at idle, windows down, does the noise start to irritate. Even then, it is not so bad as to give you taxi syndrome.

A4H 221 Independent electronic edition of 1989-10-11: foreign news pages. Periodical-domain: world affairs.

Chirac declares war on the carFrom SARAH LAMBERT in Paris PARIS is suffocating. Like most large cities, it can no longer cope with the traffic that blocks the city centre almost all day and the Mayor of Paris, Jaques Chirac, presented a plan to the city fathers yesterday to restore the capital to its residents. But the residents are the problem, **or rather** the lack of them. People are leaving Paris at the rate of some 20,000 a year, chased out by soaring property prices and the shortage of rental accommodation-especially of flats big enough for a family. The flight to the suburbs accelerates every year.

A68 1955 Michael Ramsey: a life. Book-domain: belief and thought

Since the twelfth century the Bishop of Durham had a manor, and lived here except during the Commonwealth when bishops were in exile and this was the seat of the general who governed the North. In spare half-hours he would wander in the market-place and streets and shops of Bishop Auckland and talk with the people. He liked to sit on a bench in the square and talk with, **or rather** be talked to by, the old retired miners. In 1954 he completed the restoration of the chapel, which was

ravaged by death-watch beetle. It had once been the great hall of the castle, and is among the fairest buildings of the twelfth century which Britain possesses.

A69 78 Reflections of a statesman. Book-domain: world affairs.

There is no such impossibility. Alleged Limiting Factors At various times three different factors have been alleged to justify the limitation of the production of houses: the "capital investment programme"; labour; and materials, especially timber. None will withstand logical examination. The capital investment programme is, **or rather** purports to be, a plan for the employment of available resources of manpower and materials. If more output is obtained from the same manpower-which it is here contended could and should happen-then the allocation of resources so far as manpower is concerned will be unaffected. There remains, therefore, only the factor of materials.

A6D 319 Sexual dissidence. Book-domain: arts

As in the Fall narrative, which it resembles in more ways than one, there seems to be no going back; our original innocence, the wholeness of an original bisexuality, is never retrievable. Sexuality is the Fall into desire as lack. This leads some adherents of psychoanalysis, especially those of a Lacanian disposition, to regard sexual difference-**or rather** hetero/sexual difference as it should really be called-as both tragic and heroic. Once again the psychoanalytic narrative echoes a theological one. For Judith Butler this renders the Lacanian narrative "ideologically suspect" in that it remains rooted in "romanticization or, indeed, a religious idealization of failure, humility and limitation before the Law" (Gender Trouble, 56).

A6D 594 Sexual dissidence. Book-domain: arts

In so far as I understand the logic here, heterosexual sodomy is surrogate homosexuality and homosexual sodomy is surrogate heterosexuality-**or rather** surrogate heterosexual incestuous genital

intercourse. Perhaps such interpretations are intriguing not so much because of their rather desperate commitment to the metaphysical primacy of heterosexual genital intercourse-that is merely banal-but because they reveal the tortured cultural and psychic logic which that commitment entails.

A6J 149 Three times table. Book-domain: imaginative

Now her memory refused the whole thing; simply refused to countenance the next few months. Phoebe could remember no details, could recall only with an effort that was profitless, the numbing passivity that had fallen on her. She had never convinced herself of the reality of her pregnancy, she had never done anything about it. She kept the pregnancy to herself-**or rather** kept it from herself, and from everyone else, for too long. Now, quite suddenly, Phoebe was wide awake again. She sat bolt upright in her bed and said aloud, "Damn," and then, "damn, damn, damn". She was meant to be thinking about happy things. She was meant to be persuading herself that life was worth living.

A70 178 Best. Periodical-domain: leisure

However, I do usually bow to tradition and give waiters and hairdressers a little extra. If people are made aware that the better the service, the more they earn, then it really is an incentive to work hard and perform well, says Tony, 28. "Tipping-**or rather** not tipping is a good way of showing your disapproval as well as your appreciation".

A0P 90 Leonard Cohen: prophet of the heart. Book-domain: arts

If the girl noticed that he didn't refer to them as her parents she gave no sign. She sat stiff and tense with her finely sculpted head held high. "Not at first," she said and he sensed a faint diffidence creep into her voice. "My parents and I hadn't been on good terms for some time. I went back to live with them-**or rather**, to stay with them-in the middle of May.

AAM 38 The Guardian electronic edition of 1989-11-08 News and features. Periodical-domain: social science
 The political animal's eyes were burning again. "I want the Midland Bank". Nationalise the banks? Outrageous! But he didn't want to nationalise them, he just wanted them-for himself. There was a long gap. His neighbour cleared his throat. His neighbour was the sales manager of the Midland Bank in Sheffield. He looked at Jimmy Boyce, **or rather** he looked at his tie-all red and blue, almost patriotic, and yet the tie still hung at that curious angle. It reminded him of shop stewards with their sleeves rolled up in those endless conferences when it was said that the country was being held to ransom. It reminded him of the big shots in the trade union movement having sandwiches at Number 10 all those years ago.

A7Y 70 The Guardian electronic edition of 1989-12-22 Leisure pages. Periodical-domain: leisure

The message here is that romantic cliches may safeguard you from a heart attack and prevent you making a fool of yourself. Health hazard ranking: six. THE JOKER: He may also decide to give sexy underwear that doesn't actually fit, or, if he is feeling malicious, spicy chewing gum for the loud mouthed-gun that cements the hips together. A typical present might be a bomb, **or rather** a hand-grenade alarm clock.

AB3 1119 Blissed out. Book-domain: arts

Nick Cave is afflicted and empowered by a certain, crucial deficiency of humanity. **Or rather, more accurately,** he's estranged, willfully, from the confining notion of "full" humanity that's been installed by the positive Aid popular culture-extroversion, civic engagement, the benign totalitarianism of caring/sharing/ opening up, the cult of health and efficiency. Morbidly inward, unforgiving, Cave goes against the grain of the times by being sick but refusing to be healed and integrated.

AB9 1743 Death of a partner. Book-domain: imaginative
 He gazed at his hands, and visibly played this back to himself, then looked across at McLeish, and put his glasses on. "Look, I'm not saying Angela actually refused. Sorry, I can hear how it sounds. She said-**or rather** I did, to her solicitors-that she would consider it again in a year or so when everyone was calmed". McLeish flipped back through his notes. Catherine was so quiet that she might as well not have been in the room and it occurred to him that he must train her to make some unobtrusive signal to him when she thought he was missing something.

ABF 3210 The Economist. Periodical-domain: commerce

Territorial disputes give rise to elaborate tournaments in which workers extend their legs to walk on stilts and drum their antennae on each other's abdomens. When one colony is markedly smaller than the other, and so cannot field an imposing team, it is raided, the queen is killed, and workers, pupae and larvae are carried off to be set to work in the victors' nest. The kings (**or rather,** queens) of slave-owners are the Amazon ants, who are splendid at killing and enslaving other ants but have grown so dependent on their slaves that they cannot dig their own nests, care for their young or even get their own food.

ABJ 3306 The Economist. Periodical-domain: commerce

Yet, for another 15 years or so, people in Wall Street and the City of London still told visitors that hostile bids were taboo. Now they are two a penny-**or rather** they were until 1990. Soon enough, they will be again.

ABP 379 Introduction to English law 10th edition. Book-domain: social science

(Certain detailed modifications of the effect of the rule against perpetuities are now enacted by the Perpetuities and Accumulations Act 1964.)

Infants: At birth a child enters the condition of infancy-a condition which ceases at the age of 18 years, **or rather**, at the first moment of the day preceding the eighteenth birthday. In what follows the term "infant" will be used in its strict sense of a person who is in the condition of infancy as above defined. It would be a mistake to regard the condition of infancy as one of uniform incapacity throughout and for all purposes.

ABP 687 Introduction to English law 10th edition. Book-domain: social science

There are no prohibitions against the formation of associations or societies for any lawful object-religious, social, political, philanthropic, or the like. The law does not, however, regard such societies (unless formally incorporated) as having any corporate personality; it sees only individuals, owning property, it may be, in common, with rights and duties towards each other flowing from the contract, **or rather** series of contracts, to be found in the society's rules: for on every change in the membership a new contract must be implied. Such contract or contracts may be varied if, and only if, the rules so provide, by a majority of the members or by a specified majority.

AC3 110 Misfortunes of Nigel. Book-domain: imaginative

He mistrusted stories about "friends". People often say "a friend" did this when they mean themselves. He'd used the same technique sometimes as a prelude to complaining about his marriage. Karen went on. "It's marvellous how good second-hand flowers can be. I often clean them out of the church after the wedding. The brides usually keep their bouquets, **or rather** whoever caught them does. I caught one at my friends wedding last week. You know what that means, don't you?" She nudged him meaningfully. "I was able to sell it again, too, with a renewed fill round the edge.

AC3 817 Misfortunes of Nigel. Book-domain: imaginative

Perhaps it was just gastric flu. There was a nasty strain of it doing the rounds at the moment, and she didn't sound that unwell now. It was probably a mercy that she'd been sick. If his wife had put anything on the cake it would be long gone by now. "Well, give me a ring when you're up in London, **or rather** before-when you're better, that is. You must come to tea again. I'll ring you". He hadn't meant to say that. It just slipped out. Eleanor's warm, inviting voice had that effect on him. Oh well, if she was unwise enough to come to tea, Gina was unlikely to try the same thing again.

AC3 963 Misfortunes of Nigel. Book-domain: imaginative

They had all been lucky to be seen out with him. When he was a famous, rich, literary-establishment figure living in Antbes or somewhere they would all realize it. IT WAS THE SUMMER HOLIDAYS AND ANTHONY HAD COME HOME FOR good, **or rather** until he found a job. The house felt overcrowded and lacking in privacy with him there. It was big enough for two but not really for three, especially when one of them was a great big loud. Anthony was always on the phone, rushing about like a bull in a china shop, or lying in bed till twelve with one or other of his girlfriends.

AC3 1041 Misfortunes of Nigel. Book-domain: imaginative

After all, she was all right to flirt with at parties and escort him occasionally. All the other literary women he knew were old bags of whom he would be bitterly ashamed. He would keep Eleanor on tap for these occasions by writing the odd letter and by making the odd phone call too, when he could quietly use an office phone. He would drop her, of course, sooner or later-**or rather**, he would engineer it so that she dropped him.

AC6 1796 A poet could not but be gay. Book-domain: imaginative

I often wondered if he enjoyed using my toothbrush as much as I enjoyed using his. It was a new slant on the eternal problem of the one who kisses and the one who is kissed. I was usually the active partner, **or rather** it was usually I who initiated a kiss or an embrace. He was my Rimbaud, certainly: I was the Vierge Folle. But I could be both Verlaine and Rimbaud. He was always Rimbaud. Today, of course, the test of love between men would be their willingness to share not just a toothbrush but also a razor. Dana did not shave as often as I did.

ACS 764 The fifties: portrait of an age. Book-domain: leisure

Though it was far from being a great film it altered the boundaries and opened the way for the New Wave of realism, cinema vérité. That was the end of the cinematic euphemisms for making love the misty dissolve, the rocketing fireworks or rearing waves which had been the director's equivalent of the novelist's three dots... With all eyes-**or rather** all lenses-on her, Bardot soon put her emancipated amorality into practice. Before filming was finished, she had left Vadim, her director husband, for Jean-Louis Trintignant, her actor husband in the story, a situation which Vadim took with apparent aplomb as he continued to encourage her to strive for even more realism in his rival's arms.

ACV 1887 The forest of the night. Book-domain: imaginative

While they were drinking the tea, a young apprentice arrived. Leaving him in charge and promising to return, Stanley drove Emily and Mungo home. By now the rain had stopped, though there was no sign of the pirate privy. Emily got Stanley to drop them off at Vic's house; **or rather** his father's house, since strictly speaking Vic's address was the shed. Walking down the path to the side gate, Mungo caught a brief glimpse of a waxy, bald head at a downstairs window. The eyes seemed to be staring at him with peculiar intensity, as though he were a rare specimen whose every move must be observed.

ADG 1000 How do I look? Book-domain: social science

I wear jeans to university, as everyone else does. But I've become scruffier and scruffier, and although I do keep myself immaculately clean, I can't be bothered about my clothes any more. They get washed whenever I can be bothered, or whenever my mother raids my bedroom. My culture-**or rather**, that of my parents-affects every aspect of my looks. Most young Asian or Asian-Mauritian girls have long hair; very few have short hair. Short hair is strictly forbidden for me not only because of my culture, but because of my lesbianism. This, incidentally, is viewed as a serious, punishable defect.

ADK 1577 Making an impact. Book-domain: commerce

I fell into bed only to be woken by the telephone an hour later at 1.30am. "Airforce One and Two will leave for Washington in one hour-please be downstairs in twenty minutes, packed". The President had seen the polls forecasting heavy defeat and had decided on a high-profile last-ditch effort to free the Iranian hostages. It didn't work but we all-**or rather** most of us-lost our sleep to fly in Airforce Two. The following morning six of the travelling journalists showed up innocently for breakfast in Chicago wanting to know where everyone had gone. They had not been reachable when they were phoned in the night!

AEO 2307 Lying together. Book-domain: imaginative

I'm sorry! Your tone was so stern and pure and preachy, it excited me. I often get excited in church. I sometimes stimulate myself under my muff. My muff under my muff? But I will try to give it up. I didn't understand some parts of your letter. I'm a woman, **or rather** a girl, and not clever. How can you say women are not inferior to men? Take Frau Grossman, all she thinks about is finery and food, whereas Dr Grossman has his spectacles always in a book. I think husbands should have the right to beat their wives, because they're so often vain and stupid and silly.

AHC 1141 Daily telegraph electronic edition of 1992-04-04 Leisure pages. Periodical-domain: leisure

It was, as the Duchess said in her speech, an exciting event because Derbyshire had so few smaller manor houses of this type open to the public-and what made it all the more special was the fact that Eyam Hall is still the family home of the Wrights, who built (or rather rebuilt) it, a few years after the plague, in 1671.Eyam is, in short, a little gem. Set above a handsome forecourt, the stone house has four well-spaced bays, mullioned windows, parapets and gables.

AL3 852 Daily telegraph electronic edition of 1992-04-17 Leisure pages. Periodical-domain: leisure

By IAN RIDLEYTT WAS a beautiful, sunny, crisp winter's day with spring but a whisper, summer a rumour. Still, there was cricket of a sort being played, mostly by Robin Smith. England's Player of the Year was not really timing the ball, but heaven help the opposition when he does. Yesterday Sussex felt the power, or rather half-power, of the man in a 50-over friendly against Hampshire at Southampton. Smith, opening the innings, made 74 from only 53 deliveries in the first hour of the day, striking two sixes and 13 fours, before retiring to give someone else some practice.

AM6 850 Drama as education. Book-domain: social science

I think there are many American teachers who would agree with me, but those kinds of "packs" have an unfortunate way of creeping onto the desks of teachers who do not know any better and the resulting work may not only be irrelevant but harmful. But there are those in England, too, who also fail to see that participation in drama has two faces, or rather, a face and a mask: the "game" of drama where a group of participants share a significant experience, and a theatrical performance where a group of actors present the drama so that an audience might have a significant experience.

AM6 1046 Drama as education. Book-domain: social science

In other words, the actor's behaviour is not expressive. What the audience is watching is Lear's expressive behaviour, not the actor's. Torney extends this point to all art. A painting, a symphony or a play is not expressive of the artist or the performer-it is expressive of itself. This is not its weakness but its strength: all meanings are made explicit (or rather "embodied") would be a better term, for "explicit" suggests the exactness of a diagram, a map, a formula or a telegram) within the art product.

AN4 345 Mary Leapor: a study in eighteen century women's poetry. Book-domain: arts

Judging from Freemanle's recollection, Leapor enjoyed some local celebrity: I remember I saw, two or three Years before my Acquaintance with her commenced, a Book about the Size of a common Copy-Book (but something thicker) fill'd with Poems of her writing, that much pleas'd me. I thought them extraordinary Performances for a Girl of her Age, and one that had so little Advantage (or rather none at all) either from Books or Conversation.

AN8 8 The meddlers. Book-domain: imaginative

Last night. He'd upset her thoroughly, and obviously she was still sulking, because she would never have got up before him otherwise. She was going to use the sainted patience ploy, the one he found most difficult to handle. He would have much preferred the hysterical crying, the accusations of lack of love for her to that. But he'd had that last night-or rather, in the small hours of the morning. And now she was going to pile it on thick and heavy. And with a short night's sleep behind him and a miserable hour ahead of him before he could get away to the hospital, the day would be spoiled before it started. He almost groaned as he got out of bed.

ACW 992 Frankie. Book-domain: imaginative

He is conscious of Marjorie's watery blue eyes scanning him speculatively over the rim of her teacup, inviting further discussion of Sandra, but he can't face it, not this morning, not with a day's work ahead of him. Not at any time, to be honest. Discussion of Sandra's sex-life could easily stray into the area of his and Marjorie's sex-life, **or rather** the lack of it, and he would rather not go into that. Let sleeping dogs lie. Vic compares the kitchen clock with his watch and rises from the table.

APM 127 The message to the planet. Book-domain: imaginative

Ludens followed, closing the door behind him. In the sitting room too the curtains had been drawn against the sun. The room was a little dusky, it smelt of flowers which Franca had picked in the garden that morning. Jack did not like flowers, **or rather** said he was "bothered" by them, and they were banished from the upstairs rooms. There were two plump "sewing chairs" and an embroidered hassock and blue china dogs on the mantelpiece, small rugs, a desk below an oval mirror, refugees from other parts of the house.

APM 1727 The message to the planet. Book-domain: imaginative

We've only just met again after being apart for years. How can I know what you've been thinking all this time? Words can do something. What is it like, what is it about ?" "Oh well," said Marcus, capturing his left hand again, "I suppose it's about what makes human consciousness possible, **or rather** it's about what human consciousness is, which is to say what, and how, the world is, how anything is.

APM 2248 The message to the planet. Book-domain: imaginative

Ludens had picked up from the floor a sketch, acrylic on paper, representing (perhaps) a pale human figure emerging from a dark marsh or river. "Oh, a person!. I like that". Jack snatched it from him and tore it in two. "I said I liked it!" "Well, fuck you! I'm sorry, I'm not myself.

Or rather I am myself, my new self. Don't worry about me, I'm better than I seem".

APR 16 Possession. Book-domain: imaginative

And dozed and waited through eternity Until the tricky hero Herakles Came to his dispossession and the theft. Randolph Henry Ash, from The Garden of Proserpina , 1861 The book was thick and black and covered with dust. Its boards were bowed and creaking; it had been maltreated in its own time. Its spine was missing, **or rather** protruded from amongst the leaves like a bulky marker. It was bandaged about and about with dirty white tape, tied in a neat bow. The librarian handed it to Roland Michell, who was sitting waiting for it in the Reading Room of the London Library.

APS 242 Postmodernism and contemporary fiction. Book-domain: arts

Though there is no real reason not to talk of "the new novel", the term nouveau roman has always been retained, perhaps for a certain alluring foreign frisson. Similarly, English has never chosen to find an equivalent term for avant-garde. There may in this adoption of French terms be some covert assumption that postmodernist writing, like cooking-**or rather** cuisine-is something best left to the French. There may even be an emblematic quality in the image which Fowles records as the inspiration for The French Lieutenant's Woman; of Sarah Woodruff poised on an extreme, southerly edge of England, staring across the Channel towards an imaginary lover.

ARD 176 Screen. Periodical-domain: arts

In the absence of this "classical" formation, we are looking for tendencies and trends much less sharply and universally defined, but no less definitive for tracing the particular mutation of the novelistic effected by television. It should also be added that there is, of course, a history to ill this; **or rather**, to complicate matters, there are several

quite separate histories determined by the historical development of different national broadcasting systems.

ARF 28 In search of a cure. Book-domain: natural sciences

This was his third notable discovery, and, like its predecessors, he did not pursue his observations, which were extended and given wider prominence by Felix Hubert d'Herelle (1873-1949). He called it bacteriophage; later it was found to exist in many forms; **or rather** there were many bacteriophages, each associated with the bacteria of particular species.

ASS 2430 The Wimbledon poisoner. Book-domain: imaginative

Her head, which was rotating at a different speed and a contrary motion to her brushing arm, reminded him of a duck in a shooting gallery. It had a difficult-to-hit quality about it, an almost larky imperviousness to attempting to interfere with it. Still flexing his fingers, he started to dig them into the base of her neck, **or rather**, in the area where her neck might be assumed to begin. He found his hands full of dry, papery skin which, as he worked his way closer to her windpipe, came up and away like a curtain of strudel dough.

AMS 1581 Do it Yourself. Periodical-domain: leisure

Beyond Rawthey Bridge, where the river changes direction, the road gradually enters a different terrain, more open and bare, the last few miles crossing a bleak moorland overlooked by Wild Boar Fell and its northern ridge. Despite its classification as an A road, it is relatively quiet and only an occasional car will disturb a walker's appreciation of the scenery. I once walked, **or rather** limped, the thirteen miles of tarmac, plagued by a protruding nail in the sole of my shoe which was digging a small crater in my heel, and during the whole journey not a single vehicle passed me.

B19 92 Fighting cancer: a personal story. Book-domain: belief and thought

"You've got something in that there stomach of mine". I hoped the radiologist would respond. Thankfully, he did. "There's something there..." "In my liver? My doctor thought it might be my liver". "Your kidney?" "My kidney!" I had never before consciously thought about my kidney-**or rather** my kidneys--hardly realising that I had any.

B34 1607 Tiller's girls. Book-domain: world affairs

It was theatre practice to put dancers in dressing-rooms situated at the top of the building which was totally illogical as troupes always had more changes of costume than solo acts and less time to complete them. On Broadway they appreciated the benefits of the most modern theatres in the world. Although still on the top floor, they now had lifts, **or rather** elevators, to take them up and once inside the dressing-room each Girl had her own mirror well lit by bulbs surrounding three sides just as they had seen in the films. Instead of tripping over their shoes while doing quick changes, each chair had pockets where they could thrust them on

RESUMEN DE PROYECTO DE TESIS DOCTORAL

TÍTULO:

AN ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH DISCOURSE MARKERS OF REFORMULATION

ANTECEDENTES

El actual proyecto de tesis doctoral aborda el estudio de una serie de marcas lingüísticas pertenecientes al grupo de elementos denominados **MARCADORES DEL DISCURSO** que tienen como principal finalidad la reformulación de un segmento discursivo anterior o de una parte de éste. Los elementos lingüísticos concretos a los que nos referimos reciben la denominación de **MARCADORES DE REFORMULACIÓN** o **REFORMULADORES** a lo largo del presente estudio.

Ya desde la década de los años setenta ha ido en aumento el interés por un conjunto de unidades lingüísticas que, tradicionalmente, han recibido denominaciones muy diversas y de las que hemos elegido la de marcadores del discurso. El interés por estas unidades es tan grande que su estudio se ha convertido en toda una “industria” que produce al año cientos y cientos de estudios al respecto, tanto desde un punto de vista descriptivo como teórico, o incluso de ambos, y en lenguas muy diversas. De hecho, es posible afirmar que el estudio de los marcadores del discurso se constituye durante las décadas de los años ochenta y noventa en una auténtica disciplina que atrae a un sin número de estudiosos pertenecientes a campos como la Pragmática y el Análisis del discurso y también a otros ámbitos relacionados, como puedan ser la Sociolingüística o la Adquisición de segundas lenguas.

Del mismo modo, y gracias a su versatilidad, los marcadores del discurso se han utilizado en numerosas ocasiones como herramientas para confirmar las hipótesis de

teorías recientes, tales como la *Teoría de la Argumentación de la Lengua* (Anscombe y Ducrot 1983) o la *Teoría de la Relevancia* (Sperber y Wilson 1984), o de otras poseedoras de una trayectoria más larga, como las teorías de *Lingüística Textual* (Van Dijk 1977, Halliday and Hasan 1979) o de *Análisis del Discurso* (Sinclair y Coulthard 1975, Stubbs 1983, Schiffrin 1987, McCarthy 1993), entre otras.

En este sentido, nuestra tesis doctoral se ofrece como una contribución al estudio de los marcadores del discurso y del fenómeno de la marcación del discurso; en concreto, este trabajo intenta ser una aportación dentro del área específica de la reformulación del discurso y de las unidades léxicas que realizan tal función, es decir, los denominados Reformuladores o Marcadores de Reformulación. Estos elementos lingüísticos ya han sido objeto de análisis en otras lenguas, especialmente en francés, donde se acuñó la noción de reformulación (cf. Antos 1982, Gülich y Kotschi 1983, Roulet 1987, Adam y Revaz 1991, y Charolles and Coltier 1984, entre otros), pero también han recibido gran atención en la lengua italiana (Rossari 1990, 1994) o la española (Fuentes 1987, 1993, Casado 1991, Pons 2000, 2001, Briz 1993, 1995, 1998, Portolés and Zorraquino 1999, *inter alia*). Este ejemplo nos sirvió de estímulo para investigar el fenómeno de la reformulación en la lengua inglesa.

Al contrario que en el caso de las lenguas antes mencionadas, y en la medida de nuestro conocimiento, no hemos encontrado ningún estudio sistemático en inglés sobre estas unidades, ni sabemos de ningún proyecto para elaborar una taxonomía de las unidades léxicas que podrían o deberían incluirse dentro de la denominación de reformuladores. Exceptuando las breves indicaciones de algunos de los gramáticos clásicos más importantes (Quirk et al. 1985) o de otros posteriores (Downing y Locke 1992), nada se sabe sobre los reformuladores ni las funciones que éstos desempeñan en

la lengua inglesa. A pesar de esta situación, varios estudiosos de estas unidades han señalado el vacío existente sobre marcadores de reformulación. Entre ellos destaca Pons (2001:233) quien reconoce que, aunque el inglés es, sin duda alguna, la lengua en la que más y quizás mejor se hayan descrito los marcadores del discurso, nada se sabe de sus reformuladores ni de cómo se codifica el fenómeno de reformulación en la lengua inglesa.

OBJETIVOS

El objetivo de la presente tesis doctoral es contribuir al estudio e investigación de los denominados marcadores del discurso en general, así como aportar nuestra contribución particular al estudio de un tipo específico de dichos marcadores del discurso, a saber, el grupo de lo que hemos venido denominando marcadores de reformulación o reformuladores dentro del ámbito anglo-sajón. Así pues, los objetivos de este proyecto de tesis doctoral podrían resumirse de la siguiente forma:

Objetivo 1: proporcionar una definición adecuada del fenómeno de la reformulación en el ámbito anglosajón; de esta manera, podremos establecer las bases de un estudio posterior detallado del grupo de unidades léxicas que desempeñan la función reformuladora en la lengua inglesa.

Objetivo 2: elaborar una taxonomía justificada de un grupo de marcadores de reformulación en inglés junto con su clasificación en diferentes grupos y sub-grupos, de acuerdo con el tipo de reformulación que realizan con respecto a un segmento de discurso previo.

Objetivo 3: llevar a cabo el análisis exhaustivo de dos de los diferentes grupos de marcadores de reformulación en lengua inglesa, a saber, de los grupos de **EXPLANATION** (Explicación) y **RECTIFICATION** (Rectificación); sobre la base de dicho análisis, delimitar las funciones semántico-pragmáticas que dichos marcadores realizan, así como determinar las relaciones que es posible establecer entre los miembros de uno y otro grupo.

Para llevar a cabo los objetivos anteriormente mencionados, es necesario, en primer lugar, determinar qué es una reformulación, o bien delinear en qué consiste la actividad

de reformulación. Así pues, la noción de reformulación que se maneja en este proyecto es la siguiente “Una reformulación es una recharacterización del segmento discursivo previo, bien en su totalidad, o sólo en parte del mismo”. A continuación, se ha de confirmar la pertenencia a los denominados marcadores del discurso de un grupo de unidades léxicas cuya función es la de reformular.

Para tal finalidad, el marco teórico vertebrador de nuestro estudio es el de Fraser (1999), quien establece una serie de características definitorias y no-definitorias del grupo de unidades lingüísticas que él denomina marcadores del discurso. Así pues, la lista de posibles marcadores de reformulación que obtuvimos de la literatura revisada en varias lenguas, así como de la observación directa del uso de estos marcadores por hablantes nativos o en los medios de comunicación, se sometió a análisis para corroborar si cumplían con las características establecidas por Fraser como definitorias para la noción de marcador del discurso. Las dos propiedades que comparten las unidades propuestas como reformuladores son las de **CONEXIÓN** y **AUSENCIA DE SIGNIFICADO VERACIONAL**. El siguiente paso consistió en la inclusión de este grupo de reformuladores en la amplia clasificación que Fraser había hecho de los marcadores del discurso en cuatro clases fundamentales, a saber, los marcadores Aditivos, los Contrastivos, los Implicativos y los Elaborativos. A continuación, y gracias a sus características especiales, constatamos que el grupo de marcadores de reformulación no era sino un sub-grupo dentro de los denominados Elaborativos. Los marcadores de Elaboración, por su parte, se caracterizan por expandir algún aspecto del segmento discursivo que es anterior o parte del mismo, de tal manera que la nueva formulación parafrasea, delimita o amplía el contenido de la anterior. Así pues, hemos optado por

diferenciar dentro del grupo de los Reformuladores de Elaboración dos sub-clases o sub-grupos que son los marcadores de **REFORMULACIÓN** y los **AUMENTATIVOS**.

En este sentido, es también un objetivo de esta tesis doctoral realizar el estudio de un grupo de marcadores de reformulación que forman parte del grupo de marcadores de Elaboración, en tanto en cuanto conllevan una recharacterización del mensaje contenido en el segmento discursivo anterior. Este grupo de marcadores de reformulación puede a su vez subdividirse en cuatro clases atendiendo al tipo de reformulación llevada a cabo sobre el segmento discursivo primero. Así pues, los cuatro grupos que pueden diferenciarse son los siguientes:

- 1. EXPLICACIÓN**
- 2. RECTIFICACIÓN**
- 3. CONCLUSIÓN**
- 4. RESUMEN**

Igualmente, dentro de cada uno de estos subgrupos es posible agrupar los reformuladores en diferentes categorías de acuerdo con el significado semántico de los mismos y el tipo de reformulación que efectúan. De este modo, dentro del grupo de los reformuladores de Explicación se incluyen las categorías de **CLARIFICACIÓN**, **IDENTIFICACIÓN** e **ILUSTRACIÓN**. Igualmente, dentro del grupo de Rectificación se distingue entre los reformuladores que marcan una **REFORMULACIÓN NEUTRA**, aquellos que realizan una **REFORMULACIÓN Y PRECISIÓN**, y aquellos que implican una **REFORMULACIÓN Y MEJORA**.

DISCUSIÓN

Una vez que se ha establecido la taxonomía de marcadores de reformulación en inglés, podemos proceder al estudio detallado de dos de los grupos de reformuladores anteriormente mencionados; en concreto, el grupo de marcadores de Explicación y de

Rectificación. Así pues, los marcadores objeto de un estudio detallado en este proyecto de tesis doctoral son los siguientes:

-Grupo de Explicación: **THAT IS TO SAY, IN OTHER WORDS, IN PLAIN WORDS, IN SIMPLER TERMS, IN MORE TECHNICAL TERMS, TECHNICALLY SPEAKING, FOR EXAMPLE-INSTANCE, NAMELY y VIZ.**

-Grupo de Rectificación: **(OR) MORE PRECISELY, (OR) MORE ACCURATELY, OR RATHER, (OR) BETTER YET-STILL.**

El corpus de análisis sobre el que basamos nuestro estudio y los resultados que de él se derivan es el *British National Corpus* (BNC en adelante), un corpus que recoge alrededor de 100 millones de palabras de inglés contemporáneo y que combina textos escritos y orales seleccionados de fuentes muy diversas, de tal forma que los ejemplos constituyen muestras del uso real que de la lengua inglesa hacen sus hablantes. De esta manera tanto el análisis como los resultados tienen una base fiable, puesto que se trata de textos reales usados por hablantes reales, al menos en lo referente al inglés británico. Mediante el uso del BNC hemos podido obtener una visión bastante precisa del fenómeno de la reformulación en lengua inglesa, o al menos lo suficientemente representativa como para basar en ella nuestros resultados sobre la utilización de los reformuladores analizados. Así pues, aunque somos conscientes de las limitaciones que el uso de un corpus puede suponer (por ejemplo, el hecho de que el uso determinado de un marcador no esté registrado), consideramos que su uso es sumamente provechoso porque permite al investigador basar sus resultados en datos provenientes del uso real de la lengua. Por todo ello, el BNC se ha utilizado como fuente primaria para el análisis de la ocurrencia de los reformuladores, de sus propiedades sintácticas y de las funciones semántico-pragmáticas que éstos desempeñan.

Para la obtención de ocurrencias dentro del corpus nos servimos de búsquedas globales de las unidades léxicas objeto de análisis; tras un proceso de filtrado, donde se eliminaban aquellos usos que no eran discursivos, (es decir, adverbiales) procedimos al estudio del marcador. El número de ejemplos analizados ha dependido de la versatilidad del reformulador en cuestión; así, por ejemplo, marcadores como *in other words* y *that is to say* mostraron un gran número de ocurrencias, por lo que finalmente estudiamos alrededor de doscientas de las mismas.

El análisis de tipo descriptivo consta de varios niveles. En primer lugar, procedimos a estudiar las características gramaticales y sintácticas de los reformuladores seleccionados (debido a las limitaciones de espacio, los resultados de estas pruebas sintácticas vienen recogidas en el *Apéndice I* y no se incluyen dentro del análisis propiamente dicho). El análisis sintáctico incluyó de las siguientes partes:

A. El análisis de la distribución sintáctica del marcador en cuestión; es decir, se anotará: si el marcador aparece introduciendo el segundo segmento discursivo, o lo que es lo mismo en posición inicial según el esquema **S1.DM.S2**; si, por el contrario, el marcador aparece en posición media, es decir insertado en el segundo segmento discursivo; si el marcador aparece en posición final en el segmento discursivo.

B. El análisis de las combinaciones de los marcadores seleccionados con los diferentes tipos de oraciones, a saber, con oraciones declarativas, interrogativas e imperativas.

C. La combinación de los reformuladores seleccionados con marcadores pertenecientes a los paradigmas identificados por Fraser (1999), es decir, combinación con **AND** de los aditivos, **BUT** de los contrastivos, con **SO** del grupo de implicativos, o con **THEN** de los temporales.

D. El análisis del tipo de reformulación efectuada por el marcador, es decir, si la reformulación es **PARCIAL** y sólo afecta a una parte del segmento discursivo previo, o si, por el contrario, es una reformulación **TOTAL** y afecta al segmento discursivo en su totalidad.

Una vez que llevamos a cabo esta primera aproximación a un estudio de los reformuladores seleccionados, procedimos a analizar las funciones semántico-pragmáticas desarrolladas por estos marcadores. La delimitación de dichas funciones se realizó a través del análisis de una serie de ocurrencias obtenidas en el corpus de análisis en el que se basó. Así pues alrededor de unas cien o ciento cincuenta ocurrencias de cada marcador fueron objeto de un estudio detenido para determinar las funciones de los reformuladores seleccionados. Junto con el análisis de las funciones que realizan los marcadores, y que vienen determinadas fundamentalmente por el significado semántico del marcador, llevamos a cabo un estudio del dominio de uso que presentaba cada marcador. A tal fin, recurrimos a la división tripartita de los dominios de uso establecida por Sweetser (1990): los dominios del **CONTENIDO**, de los **ACTOS DE HABLA** y de la **MODALIDAD EPISTÉMICA**. En consecuencia, y dependiendo del funcionamiento del marcador en cuestión en uno, dos o, incluso, los tres dominios, podemos hablar de dos tipos fundamentales de reformulación (atendiendo a la distinción que también hacen Knott y Sanders, 1998):

SEMÁNTICA: una relación es semántica si los segmentos discursivos presentes entran en relación a través de su contenido proposicional. Este nivel lingüístico equivaldría al dominio del contenido dentro de la división tripartita de Sweetser.

PRAGMÁTICA: una relación recibe la denominación de pragmática si los segmentos discursivos relacionados lo están gracias a la fuerza ilocutiva de uno o de los dos segmentos relacionados. Así pues, este nivel lingüístico equivaldría a los dominios epistémicos y de actos de habla de Sweetser.

Una vez que realizamos el análisis detallado de las diferentes funciones que realizan los marcadores en cuestión, procedimos a delimitar las relaciones que existían entre reformuladores pertenecientes a una misma clase o grupo, así como las relaciones establecidas con marcadores de otros grupos. Así pues, procedimos al análisis de las relaciones existentes entre los marcadores de los dos grupos seleccionados (el de Explicación y el de Rectificación): primero entre marcadores de un mismo grupo, y a continuación con relación a los marcadores del otro grupo. Este procedimiento implica aplicar un test de sustitución semántica, de manera que se pueda delimitar qué marcadores pueden funcionar en contextos que no son aquellos en los que aparecen originariamente. De este modo es posible delimitar la existencia de un **HIPERÓNIMO** dentro de cada uno de los grupos, es decir, un marcador que puede realizar todas las funciones del resto de marcadores de su grupo que, a su vez, pasan a ocupar una posición de **HIPÓNIMOS** con respecto a éste. Igualmente, era nuestro objetivo comprobar si algunos reformuladores presentaban usos que podrían considerarse **SINÓNIMOS**, o si, por el contrario, sus usos eran **EXCLUSIVOS** de ese grupo con respecto a los otros marcadores. Así pues se pueden diferenciar dos niveles de análisis: en primer lugar, se analizan los marcadores pertenecientes a un mismo grupo; en segundo lugar, se intenta establecer las relaciones que los mismos mantienen con marcadores del otro grupo, si es que mantienen alguna.

RESULTADOS

Una vez que ha quedado establecido el procedimiento de análisis, procedemos a presentar los resultados obtenidos.

El primero de los grupos sometido a análisis era el grupo de los reformuladores de Explicación. El análisis de las diferentes funciones semántico-pragmáticas de las unidades que conforman este grupo arroja las siguientes conclusiones:

- En primer lugar, el reformulador *that is to say* se presenta como uno de los más versátiles de su grupo. Así, cuando la reformulación que su uso conlleva es de tipo semántico es posible identificar las siguientes funciones para el mismo: Explicación, Definición, Identificación, Rectificación, Ilustración y Resumen. Cuando, por el contrario, la reformulación afecta el nivel pragmático o de las presuposiciones, la función principal es la de introducción de una Conclusión; dicho con otras palabras, el uso de *that is to say* introduce una conclusión derivada de lo explicitado en el segmento discursivo anterior, o bien de lo implicado en el mismo. Este marcador se usa también en discursos monológicos y dialógicos, y funciona en los tres dominios de uso identificados por Sweetser.

- En relación al reformulador *in other words*, éste también funciona en los dos niveles antes señalados: el semántico y el pragmático. En el primero de ellos se han identificado las siguientes funciones: Explicación, Definición, Identificación, Rectificación, Resumen e Introducción de una Restricción. En lo que respecta a su uso en el nivel pragmático se ha identificado la función de introducción de una Conclusión, al igual que ocurriera con *that is to say*. En el caso de este marcador, el abanico de conclusiones se amplía a: una simple conclusión, la conclusión de un acto de habla, o una conclusión causal-epistémica. Este marcador puede utilizarse igualmente en los tres dominios de uso indicados por Sweetser y también aparece en discursos monológicos y dialógicos.

- En este sentido, *that is to say* se presenta como el hiperónimo del marcador *in other words*, puesto que puede utilizarse en todos los contextos donde aparezca éste.

- En lo que respecta al sub-grupo de marcadores que reformulan bien hacia la simplificación bien hacia la complejidad semántica (es decir, *in simpler terms*, *in plain terms*, *simply speaking*, *to put it more simply*, *to put it more plainly*, junto a *technically speaking* y *in more technical terms*) se ha constatado que su uso se limita al nivel del contenido, de manera que no suelen presentar un uso pragmático (Knott and Sanders 1998). Del mismo modo, tan sólo se ha constatado su uso en el dominio del contenido y del acto de habla, mientras que su uso está totalmente excluido del nivel epistémico.

- En relación a los marcadores de Identificación *viz.* y *namely*, tan sólo se ha registrado su presencia en casos de reformulación parcial, donde es un constituyente del segmento discursivo anterior el que se reformula. Del mismo modo, su uso se reduce al dominio del contenido y está excluido del dominio de los actos de habla y del epistémico.

En lo que respecta a las relaciones que se pueden establecer entre ellos, la aplicación del test de sustitución semántica arroja las siguientes conclusiones, en lo que respecta a la forma en que se relacionan los marcadores de este grupo:

- El marcador *in other words* se presenta como hipónimo del marcador *that is to say* que ostenta el estatus de *hiperónimo* con relación a éste y al sub-grupo de marcadores que reformulan hacia la simplificación o la complejidad semántica. En este sentido, *that is to say* puede reemplazar a *in other words* in todos los usos de éste, pero además presenta un uso exclusivo que no comparte con *in other words* y que es el de
Ilustración.

- Se ha constatado que, al tener *that is to say* el estatus de hiperónimo con respecto a *in other words*, puede también reemplazar al sub-grupo de marcadores hacia la complejidad o la simplificación semántica en cualquiera de sus usos contextuales. Al mismo tiempo los marcadores de este sub-grupo presentan usos totalmente *exclusivos*, puesto que unos reformulan y presentan una nueva formulación que simplifica el contenido semántico del primer segmento discursivo, mientras que los otros reformulan y presentan un nuevo segmento que gana en complejidad semántica.

- En lo que respecta a *that is to say* y los marcadores del grupo de Identificación, a saber, *viz.* y *namely*, habría que señalar que *that is to say* puede reemplazar a estos en sus contextos originales. No obstante, se ha observado que *that is to say* no puede reemplazar a *viz.* o *namely* en aquellos casos donde la asignación de identidad se canaliza por medio de una ilustración que se presenta en el S2. *That is to say* quedaría excluido de este uso, que es, por tanto, exclusivo de estos marcadores de Identificación.

- En lo que respecta a *viz.* y *namely*, estos reformuladores comparten la mayoría de sus usos, pero no pueden considerarse sinónimos totalmente. Es decir, existe al menos un uso donde *viz.* difiere de *namely*. En concreto, hemos observado que en aquellos casos donde se asigna referencia a un constituyente del segmento discursivo S1 a través de una ilustración, el reformulador *namely*, normalmente exige que la ilustración contenga más de un ejemplo para ilustrar el S1. Por el contrario, con *viz.*, la ilustración en S2 puede contener uno o varios ejemplos. Esto convertiría a *viz.* en hiperónimo de *namely*, ya que el primero puede usarse en todos los contextos donde el segundo ocurre normalmente. La otra diferencia entre ambos reformuladores concierne sus usos sintácticos y distribucionales, puesto que *viz.* está restringido a contextos escritos y

posición inicial, mientras que *namely* admite mayor movilidad y puede aparecer en registros hablados.

- Finalmente, y en lo que respecta a la relación entre *that is to say* y los marcadores del grupo de Ilustración *for example* y *for instance*, hay que señalar que es posible substituir a éstos por *that is to say* en aquellas situaciones en donde el primer segmento discursivo se explica a través de una ilustración. Sus usos, en estos casos, presentan un cierto solapamiento. En cualquier otro de sus usos es imposible reemplazar *for example-instance* por *that is to say*, puesto que el tipo de reformulación que realizan es diferente y sus usos son exclusivos.

El segundo grupo de análisis es el de Rectificación. Dentro de este grupo se ha procedido a agrupar a los reformuladores de la siguiente manera:

-Rectificación Neutra: **OR RATHER**

-Rectificación y Precisión **(OR) MORE PRECISELY-ACCURATELY**

-Rectificación y Mejora: **(OR) BETTER STILL-YET**

Así pues, las funciones identificadas para el reformulador *or rather* se sitúan dentro un tipo de reformulación donde la rectificación que se realiza con respecto al primer segmento discursivo puede abarcar desde una rectificación mínima hasta una rectificación máxima, donde el S1 y el S2 o sus mensajes se oponen totalmente. No obstante, el tipo de reformulación que lleva consigo el uso de *or rather* se ha calificado como neutra, dado que el hablante no hace explícita su preferencia por el segundo segmento discursivo en relación con el primero. En muchos casos el resultado podría aproximarse a una reformulación parafrástica de *that is to say*, de ahí que *or rather* comparta algunos usos con *that is to say*.

En medio de estos dos marcadores encontramos a *(or) more accurately-precisely*, los cuales podrían parecer sinónimos a primera vista. No obstante, un estudio detallado de los mismos ha arrojado las siguientes conclusiones:

- Estos marcadores presentan usos comunes cuando la reformulación afecta el contenido semántico del segmento discursivo reformulado.
- En otras ocasiones, ambos pueden presentar usos exclusivos. Así, *(or) more accurately* opera en aquellos casos donde la reformulación implica la recaracterización de cantidades y de enunciados contra los hechos. Por el contrario, solamente es posible utilizar *(or) more precisely* en un dominio epistémico y de actos de habla.

En lo que respecta a *(or) better still-yet*, estos marcadores se han considerado sinónimos, y solamente se ha analizado uno de ellos con detalle, en concreto, *(or) better still*. Su función es bastante clara: en primer lugar, su uso puede conllevar una reformulación y una rectificación que, en ocasiones, puede ser mínima, con lo cual los segmentos reformulados se parecen; en segundo lugar, su uso puede implicar una reformulación drástica, de manera que el segundo segmento reformulado se opone totalmente al primero. En cualquier caso, el uso de *(or) better still-yet* implica claramente una preferencia por parte del hablante hacia el segundo segmento discursivo que rectifica y mejora el mensaje del S1.

En lo que se refiere a las relaciones establecidas entre los marcadores de estos grupos, no es posible señalar a ninguno de ellos como hiperónimo. El hecho de que *(or) better yet-still* se usen frecuentemente en el dominio del acto de habla impide que puedan ser reemplazados por ninguno de los otros marcadores de su mismo grupo. Del mismo modo, el tipo de reformulación que efectúan dichas marcadores nos indica

claramente que el segundo segmento discursivo se presenta como preferible al primero en tanto en cuanto el mensaje de S1 queda rectificado y mejorado.

De la misma manera, *or rather*, que sería el elemento que marcaría una reformulación más neutral, podría reemplazar a los otros marcadores, pero la reformulación perdería el sentido de reformulación y mejora o refinamiento que se obtiene con ellos.

Así pues, las posibilidades de sustitución semántica se reducen a reemplazar (*or*) *more accurately* y (*or*) *more precisely* por *or rather* en aquellos usos donde la reformulación se limita al contenido proposicional del segmento discursivo, y además, en aquellos casos donde la rectificación es mínima y presenta al segundo segmento como una mera paráfrasis del segundo.

Con este proyecto de tesis doctoral hemos intentado definir los marcadores de reformulación en lengua inglesa como una clase pragmática, es decir, como un conjunto de expresiones léxicas procedentes de diversas clases gramaticales que indican una relación secuencial entre un segmento discursivo S1 y otro que lo sigue. A tal fin, realizamos el estudio de un grupo de marcadores que se engloban dentro de la categoría de los marcadores de Elaboración (Fraser 1999), y que se caracterizan por llevar a cabo la recharacterización del segmento discursivo anterior o de algún aspecto de éste. Los marcadores de reformulación se han dividido en cuatro grupos principales pero, debido a las limitaciones de espacio impuestas por este tipo de estudio, sólo hemos realizado el análisis exhaustivo de dos grupos, el de Explicación y el de Rectificación. Con nuestro estudio esperamos haber contribuido a ampliar los conocimientos de estas unidades discursivas dentro del ámbito anglo-sajón y, al mismo tiempo, haber contribuido a un mejor conocimiento de los marcadores del discurso en lengua inglesa.